Conservation of this volume was made possible through the generous support of PETER WARRIAN and the Friends of the Library

PIMS
PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.
On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.
The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,*
*December 1857.*
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREvisa AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

DISNEY PROFESSOR OF ARCHAEOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE; RECTOR OF COCKFIELD, SUFFOLK; LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLES.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary of Contents</td>
<td>xl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, Liber Primus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cap. xxxix.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liber Secundus</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.
INTRODUCTION.

The remainder of Higden's First Book, or Map of the World, is taken up with an account of England, and this is given in much more detail than any other, occupying in fact nearly a third of the whole book (capp. xxxix.-lx.).

In the thirty-ninth chapter he announces the ten divisions under which he proposes to treat of England, viz., its name, site, productions, marvels, principal divisions, adjacent islands, roads, rivers, cities, and counties. He then enlarges on the first of these, and notes that the island was originally called Albion, a name which he connects with the whiteness of its marine rocks, and afterwards Britannia, so called, according to Higden, from Brutus, the grandson of Æneas, in accordance with the Trojanising notions which held our medieval historians spell-bound. Upon the Saxons or Angles conquering it, it obtained the name of Anglia, for which Higden gives more than one derivation, not forgetting the jocularly pious etymology of Pope Gregory, recorded

---

1 Dr. Liagard points out that Nennius says he extracted his history of Brutus "ex veteribus "scriptis veteran nostrorum;" which, as he observes, makes it older than Geoffrey or Tyssilio. Hist. of Eng. c.i. p. 14, note (6th ed., 1854). Some accounts make Brutus the great grandson of Æneas. See p. 442 of this volume.

2 He refers to Isid. Hist. Etym. lib. xv., as deriving Anglia "ab angulo orbis." The passage does not occur in that book, and I much doubt if Isidore gives any such derivation anywhere. But Higden's citations are so frequently inaccurate that I am compelled to say of his quotations and references generally, Curret lector. (See vol. i. p. xxiii. note.) With regard to the derivation itself, Bede has led the way to it, who speaks of the native country of the Angli as "illa patria, quae "Angulæ dicitur." Hist. Eccl. lib. i. c. 15. According to a late Italian tradition, Anglus was a son of Ascanius. Très de Numism. et de Glypt. Méd. coul. et ciss. en Italie. vol. i. p. 2, Paris, 1834.
in Bede's well-known story. He refers also to Solinus (c. 22), as well as to Alfred of Beverley, for the importance of Britain, who speak of it as in a manner "another world."

Higden next proceeds to speak of the site and dimensions of Britain in his fortieth chapter, and begins by defining its position nearly in the words of Pliny (lib. iv. c. 30, ed. Hard.) to whom, as well as to Bede, he also refers for the duration of the longest day in Britain. The length and breadth of the island are set down according to the estimates of Solinus and Alfred of Beverley, and the circumference according to that of Bede; thus giving eight hundred miles for its length from the Land's End to the extremity of Caithness; two hundred miles for its breadth, measuring from St. David's to Yarmouth; and between three and four thousand for its outline.

The natural productions of the island are enumerated in the forty-first chapter. It is to be regretted that Higden, instead of stating facts which must have come within his own knowledge, should have done little else but remand us to the classical authors Pliny and Solinus, and to earlier medieval writers, as Isidore, Bede, William of Malmesbury, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon. There is little or nothing in their accounts of the animals, plants, and minerals of England to call for

---

1 Lib. ii. c. 1. (Not lib. i., as Higden says.)
2 I have failed to find the passages quoted.
3 The MSS. both of the text and versions refer to lib. ii. c. 77, and this reference has been consequently allowed to stand in the edited text (p. 6). Higden does in fact quote from this book and chapter later on, p. 8, where he only gives Pliny.
4 Pliny (lib. ii. c. 77) makes it xvi. hours, and so does his copyist, Marcianus Capella (see Haydonin's note); but Higden makes Pliny as well as Bede (lib. i. c. 1, not c. 11) say xvii. The MSS. of Bede appear to agree in xvii.
5 Solinus, c. 22. I cannot discover the citation from Alfred in his Annals.
6 The true greatest length is about 587 miles, and the true greatest breadth about 360 miles; the outline scarcely admits of satisfactory measurement. Bede excludes the tongues of the longer promontories.
INTRODUCTION.

remarks here. 1 Higden himself remarks principally on the richness of our ores, marbles, and other minerals; of our exports of wool to Flanders, of iron and lead to Gascony, of salt to Ireland, and of white metal (so Trevisa renders *ara nivea*) to all Europe.

An enumeration of some of the marvels of England marvels follow, which may be passed over lightly (c. xlii.). They are principally derived from Alfred of Beverley, 2 Giraldus Cambrensis, and William of Malmesbury. Among the marvels are recounted various petrifying springs and windy caverns, while others are of a magical or supernatural character in connexion with lakes, mountains, and caves. 3 In conclusion it is observed that in no country are there more bodies of saints preserved from corruption than in England, as instanced in St. Ethelreda, St. Edmund, St. Elphege, and St. Cuthbert.

In his forty-third chapter Higden gives an account of the principal parts of Britain, which are England, Wales,  

---

1 The assertion of Isidore, which however I cannot find in his *Origines*, that wolves were scarce in Britain in his time, i.e. early in the seventh century, is somewhat surprising, when we remember how numerous they afterwards became in the reigns of Athelstan and Edgar. In Higden's own age they were, perhaps, scarcely extinct, in spite of the vigorous war of extermination waged against them by Edward the First.

2 Alf. *Bev. Ann.* lib. i. p. 6. (Ed. Hearne.) The names of places which are given here and elsewhere, require more topographical knowledge than I can claim to identify with their modern sites in all cases. One of these is Peccum or Pectum (p. 22), for the identity of *c* and *t* in the MSS. becomes, in cases like this, very embarrassing: As MS. C. has Pekkum, I had supposed in the note that some Pekkham was intended, and there are three places bearing this name in Surrey and Kent. But in Henry of Huntington, *Mon. Hist. Brit.* for Peccum we have "in monte qui vocatur Pea," which strongly suggests the Peak of Derbyshire to be meant; and I have now very little doubt that this is so (see Mr. Dimock's glossary to Giraldus Cambrensis, vol. vi. p. 253). In the same place mention is made of one Cherdholo, or Sherdeholo, which only tends to mislead; but in Henry of Huntington the word is written Chederholo orchederholo, which leaves little doubt that at Cheddar in Somersetshire is to be sought the cavern described.

3 The observation of Alfred that it is not clearly understood how or for what purpose Stonehenge was constructed is even now scarcely antiquated.
and Scotland. The ancient names of these he derives from three sons of Brutus; Loegria (England) from Locrinus; Cambria (Wales) from Camber; Albania (Scotland) from Albanactus. With the exception of a small extract from Bede's first book, Higden quotes no authorities in this chapter. The fountain-head however of much of what he says is no doubt Geoffrey of Monmouth. The chapter ends with a somewhat lengthy account of Offa's Dyke, which long separated England from Wales. We learn at the same time from the concluding sentence that in Higden's time Englishmen and Welshmen were found living together on both sides of the dyke, more particularly in Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire.

He then proceeds to give some account (c. xlv.) of the principal islands adjacent to Britain, viz., the isles of Wight, Anglesey, and Man, which are described from Bede and Giraldus Cambrensis; a few observations about the Isle of Thanet being added from Bede. He observes, apparently from his own knowledge, that various superstitions (as selling wind to sailors) prevailed in the Isle of Man.

Higden's account of the Four great Royal Roads (c. xlv.) is more important, and has given rise to a good deal of discussion. He tells us, from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that Molmutius, king of the Britons, protected ploughs, temples of gods, and city roads by the privilege of refuge; and that in after times his son Belinus defined and reconstructed four royal roads, which should

---

1 Bed. Hist. Ecd. i. 3, ii. 9, iv. 16 (not 15, as Higden says).
3 The reference is to lib. ii., which is false. Lib. 1, c. 25, seems to be intended; but Higden has added sundry absurdities, which Bede has not.
4 Geoffrey does not mention the names of the roads; his first road was probably the Foss road; "the second, there can be doubt," says Dr. Guest, "was meant for the Roman road which passed from South Wales through Monmouthshire to Gloucester, and thence to Winchester and Southampton." It is impossible to fix the identity of the others, as he thinks, beyond dispute. See Archaeological Journal, No. 54.
have this privilege exclusively. Higden defines these four to be, the Foss, Watling-street, Ermyngestreet, and Rykenfeld-street, and he gives the course of them all. Dr. Guest speaks of Higden’s account of the two roads, the Watling-street and the Foss, as (with some exceptions) accurate and important, and observes that “the minute details into which he has entered, more particularly with respect to the Watling-street, are extremely valuable.” About the other roads, Ermingstreet and Rykenfeld-street, there is some difficulty and uncertainty, and the reader is referred to Dr. Guest’s paper for a learned disquisition upon them.

Passing lightly over his account of the courses of the three famous rivers, the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber (c. xlvi.), as well as their political significance, taken principally from Alfred of Beverley and William of Malmesbury, we arrive at his enumeration and description of the ancient cities of Britain (capp. xlvii. and xlviii.). The sources from which he derived his information are not always set down; but some parts of his account are taken from William of Malmesbury’s work, De Pontificibus; from the Itinerary of Giraldus, and from Bede’s Ecclesiastical History. He quotes likewise from Geoffrey of Monmouth and Alfred of Beverley. Upon the whole these chapters contain a good deal of interesting matter, especially what relates to the changes of names which certain towns and cities underwent. The cities and

---

1 The privilege was known in Norman times as the King’s peace. Gal. Mon. lib. ii. c. 17; lib. iii. c. 5.
2 It deserves attention that for Rikeneldstreto one MS. of Higden has Hikenilstreto. It seems probable that Higden himself made a confusion between the Roman road called Rykenfield-street, passing through Warwickshire and Staffordshire (whose course may be seen in the map of Britannia Romana in the Monumenta Historica of Petrie) and the British trackway or Icknield-street, passing from Old Sarum towards Bury St. Edmund’s.
3 For his account of Gloucester, Lincoln, and Leicester (pp. 60, 62,) see Gal. Mon. iv. 15; ix. 3; ii. 11.
4 His statements, however, must not be received implicitly. Thus he makes Brutus build a city Tri novantum, which Laud afterwards called Caerlud; and the Angles,
towns described are Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, York, Edinburgh, Alcuid (for whose identification the reader

still later, termed it Lundene; a form changed by the Normans into Loundres, and called in Latin Lon-
donia (p. 56). It may be that Trinovantum or Augusta Trinoban-
tum occupied the site of London; this opinion has been maintained, though not without doubts, by various scholars, from C. Stephens to our own time; but it was a great mistake in Higden to suppose that London is an English name, seeing that it occurs in slightly varied forms in Tacitus, Plutarch, Eumenius, and Ammianus Marcellinus, as well as on Roman coins of the fourth cen-
tury. But I now perceive that he was misled by Geoffrey of Monmouth (iii. 20), and Alfred of Beverley (i. p. 12). His account of Canterbury (p. 56) is substantially correct (setting aside Radindibra and his Caerkent), but Dorovernis, not Dorobernia, is the earliest medieval or English form of the word, as coins and charters prove beyond doubt (Numism. Chron. vol. iv. p. 120). Dorobernia was in use A.D. 790, as appears by a charter so dated, and continued so to be till about the middle of the tenth century, when we find Cantwaera occurring on coins of Edgar. "Urbs " quae nec Cantuaria vocatur," says Lanfranc (Will. Malm. Gest. Pont. i. p. 207. Sav.), "antiquis " temporibus ab ipsius terra in-
"colis Dorobernia vocabatur." At what time however it first-
came into use for the name of Dover it would be interesting to
know. It is, of course, older than Higden, but it may be suspected to
be later than the Conquest. Flo-
rence of Worcester, at the beginning
of the twelfth century, writes, "Doroberniam, id est, Cantuariorum " civitatem," (Chron. s., A.D. 851),
as though Dorobernia was then obsolete as a name of Canterbury;
he calls Dover sometimes Dorvera, sometimes Dorvernia (see Mon. Hist. Brit., Index), as if no other place in Kent then bore such a
name. Dorobernia is used for Dover by Henry of Huntingdon, lib. i. (p. 694. B. in Mon. Hist. Brit.), and Alfred of Beverley (p. 120). Dover, Dofera, Dorfran, and Dofra are forms which occur on coins of Etheldred II. and Canute; and we have also Doferen and Dofre on those of Harold I. and William I.
In the 14th century it was often
called Dovorria. Duggd, Monast. iv.
pp. 530–532, ed. Lond. 1823. In the
Itinerary of Antoninus Can-
terbury and Dover are named Du-
rovernum and Dubris respectively;
so that the medieval or English
names are, in fact, only modificat-
ions of the Roman names. Again,
in what Higden says of Lincoln
(p. 62), it is manifest that he was not aware that in Roman times it
was called Liadum, before it was
changed in medieval times into Lindecolinium. It would take up
too much space to pursue Higden's
topography farther. One of the
more important sections is that
which relates to Chester, which is
in good part original, though to
some extent taken from Gir. Cambr.
(Itin. Cambr. lib. ii. c. 11.) The sup-
posed tomb of the emperor Henry IV.
may consult Higden himself, Carlisle, Hexham, Caerleon, and Chester, besides brief allusions to a few others.

With regard to the enumeration of the British names of towns with which the forty-seventh chapter opens, which is taken from Alfred of Beverley, there can be little doubt that the fountain head of some of the information is the sixty-seventh chapter of Nennius.

Higden's account of the shires of England (c. xlix.) is professedly taken from Alfred of Beverley, but there are many things in Higden of which Alfred says nothing. His enumeration moreover of the different laws which prevailed at different times and places (c. i.) is to some slight extent borrowed from the same source, though without acknowledgment. Higden would seem to have added much from some legal authority which he does not name. The law terms which occur in the laws of

---

1 In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (Index) and in A. K. Johnson’s *Dictionary of Geography* it is identified with Dumbarton. Higden evidently inclines to Aldburgh, in Yorkshire (p. 67, where he refers to Gal. Mon. iii. 17), but thinks Bede means some place close to Carlisle, which he assuredly does not. Higden has made a confusion between the two Roman walls.

2 It may be here observed that the orthography of medieval names of persons and places differs a good deal in the various MSS. of Higden; their variations have been conscientiously noticed; but the contractions which abound, and the similarity of certain letters to one another (particularly c and t, u and n) increase an editor’s difficulties considerably. I am now convinced that Ebranecus, which I have edited (p. 64, &c.), following Gale, should be Ebrancus. Possibly Mevania (p. 36, where see note) should be changed into Menavia; see Hearce on Alfr. Bev., p. 154.

3 *Annal*, lib. i. p. 9.

4 See his *Annals*, lib. vi. p. 97.

5 In the notes I had supposed that the *Chronicon* of John Brompton was the fountain-head of his account, being misled by Cave, who considers (*Hist. Lit. s. v.*) that Brompton wrote about A.D. 1198. But it
Edward the Confessor, and which are explained by Higden, vary somewhat in the different MSS., and I am happy to acknowledge the kind assistance which Dr. Bosworth has rendered me in editing the text of some of them.  

The fifty-first chapter, on the succession of kingdoms in Britain, is taken, according to most MSS., from Alfred of Beverley. It gives an epitome of the forms of government from Brutus to Julius Cæsar, from Cæsar to Septimius Severus, thence to Gratian; and proceeds at length to describe the cessation of Roman power and the foundation and durations of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy. The history and chronology are not always accurate, but it is an interesting chapter nevertheless.

1 "I have," (he writes), "a great objection to conjectural readings, "but I think you will be safe in reading "self finde in warde, p. 94, 13, "(see Note 18, B., pellfindinward). "It will then read in Anglo-Saxon: "In-fangen jeof self finde in warde, "i.e., a thief taken within his own "word or lordship; or as in your "text, 'id est, infra sumn [attachia- "mentum] capere ream.' I think "that in your MSS. the A.S. p is "probably written p or p, easily "taken for l or p. "(1.) Flht-wite and (2.) Flit-" (3.) Wite are both good com- "pounds. "(1.) Flht, fyht, feoht, e ; "fighting, from feohtan to contend, "fight. 

"(2.) Flit, es; n. Strife, conten- tion, from flitan to strive, quarrel. "(3.) Wite, es; n. A fine, a fine "or penalty to the state or crown. "All the other words are clear "enough." 

2 Both versions however as well as MS. B., omit the reference. The words do not occur, I believe, in Alfred; the substance occurs more or less in every chronicle of Eng- land. 

3 It is hardly credible that Higden should mean that all the Roman emperors who were rulers of Britain, from Septimius Severus down to Gratian, were of British extraction; but I scarcely know how else to inter- pret his words: Reges tamen habuit ex scipso a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum. The usurper Gratian here meant, who died A.D. 407, was indeed a native of England (Orosius, vii. 40.), and some claim Magnus Maximus to be one also; but Higden's assertion is beyond doubt erroneous. Carausius, who, as well as Allectus, kept exclusive possession of Britain in spite of the other emperors, Dioclesian and
INTRODUCTION.

Higden devotes no less than six chapters to the history of episcopal sees in England. He begins by alluding to the well-known story of the three archiepiscopal sees, (London, York, and Caerleon,) and the twenty-eight episcopal sees in the time of Lucius, whose occupants were called flamens, and refers to Alfred of Beverley as his authority; but the original historian of this and of many more legendary accounts transferred to the Polychromicon is Geoffrey of Monmouth. Higden then describes the episcopal constitutions of the Saxons, as well as the ancient regulations of the Welsh episcopate, which, till the time of Henry the Second, made no profession of subjection to any other church. Beginning with Canterbury, the principal see, he proceeds to mention the temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric in the time of Offa, and the restitution of the primacy to the archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Kenulfhus. In like manner he slightly touches on the varied fortunes of the other archbishops, viz., of York and Caerleon; and proceeds to name the suffragan bishops of England and Wales in order, mentioning the changes of the sees of some of them and the extinction of others, noticing also the creation of new sees from time to time; and concludes by an enumeration of the bishoprics as they existed in his own

Maximian, was not a Briton. Again, the chronology of the departure of the Romans from Britain is false. Magnus Maximus went over with the British soldiers to Gaul against the Emperor Gratian in 383, and the Roman mint does indeed appear to have ceased in England in his reign; but there were Romans fighting in Britain towards the middle of the fifth century. (See Mon. Hist. Brit. Chron. Abstract.)

The account of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is more trustworthy. Eadgar however, and not Athelstan, "solus et primus monarchiam An-
"gliae tenuit" (p. 108), though Athelstan says as much of himself. (Hawkins' Silver Coins of England, pp. 61, 65.) Athelstan's conquests, moreover, are misdated by a century (p. 108); but this may be a slip or a blunder of the scribes, which however, if it be one, occurs also in the versions.

time, when thirteen bishops were subject to the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England, and four were under the archbishop of York, the primate of England.

The principal authorities referred to for England are Bede and William of Malmesbury, and for Wales, Giraldus Cambrensis. He also makes a good many statements on his own authority. This part of his work has evidently cost him some labour, and it appears to be one of the most trustworthy parts of his history.¹

Higden next enters (c. lviii.) on the subject of British ethnology, and enumerates seven tribes or peoples who successively inhabited the country or settled therein; viz., the Britons, Picts, Scots (from Ireland), Saxons or

¹ I have compared a good deal of it with Professor Stubbs' valuable Registrum Sacram Anglicanum, and find that it commonly agrees; Higden however converts the bishopric of Leicester into a bishopric of Chester; an error arising from the name Legecestria being common to the two. Considering that Higden himself long dwelt in Chester, his blunder is the more extraordinary. That it is a blunder there can, I think, be no doubt; the following extract from a letter of Professor Stubbs will allay all misgivings. "The original authority for placing Wilfrid's Meretian bishopric at Leicester is the list of bishops appended to Florentine of Worcester, which is of course much earlier than Florentine's own time. This gives a list of the bishops of Mid-Anglia, 'nominis Presulium Leegeresian.' Of these, Leofwin, see. xi., united the 'Leegeresian' and Lindsey bishoprics into the modern diocese of Lincoln in the time of Edgar; proof that the maker of the list believed Leicester to be the place signified, as indeed is quite certain with reference to all the later bishops. Totta, Faderht, Uuowa, Werenbert, Rot(h)un, Aldred, and Ceoldred all sat at Leicester. In 874 the Danes conquered Middle Anglia, and thenceforth the see was at Dorchester in Oxfordshire. I believe there is no doubt about this. And the statement about Wilfrid stands on the same authority. I should question whether Chester could be regarded as a Middle Angle or Mercian town in Wilfrid's time, and certainly no bishop could unite Chester and Lindsey without including Lichfield also. The confusion between Chester and Leicester in the early chronicles is very trying, but on this point I am quite sure." William of Malmesbury also, who gives a list of the bishops (Gest. Pont. iv. p. 289, Sav.) clearly meant Leicester to be their see; Legecestria est civitas antiqua in mediterraneis Angliis; but Higden as clearly meant Chester (p. 128).
INTRODUCTION.

Angles, Danes, Normans, and Flandrians. His authorities are Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Giraldus Cambrensis, Marianus Scotus, and Alfred of Beverley, and he also interpolates various remarks of his own.

In tacit allusion to the Trojan story about Brutus, Higden considers the Britons the first inhabitants of our island, and that they came over from Armorica four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome.¹

It is remarkable that he does not consider the Romans as worthy to be reckoned among the peoples who settled amongst us, but passing them over without notice, he proceeds to say that the Picts came over from Scythia in Vespasian's time, first to Ireland, where the Scoti dwelt, and thence to the northern parts of Britain, about Caithness. Bede, from whom the account professes to be taken, probably intended Scandinavia by Scythia, but says nothing about Vespasian, and seems to place their arrival at a more remote period;² their connexion with the age of Vespasian is due to Geoffrey of Monmouth,³ from whom Higden has derived other untrustworthy statements in this chapter.⁴ Higden then quotes Giraldus

¹ Notwithstanding all our laborious examinations, both of literary records and of archaeological monuments, we are scarcely even now able to replace the medieval fragments on this subject by anything which can well be called historical. "Who were the first inhabitants of "Britain, is among the unsettled "questions of history," says Professor Pearson (Early and Middle Ages of England, c. i., London, 1861); and if the question is ever to be settled, it must be by a careful comparison of the remains of man and of the art of man found in this country with those found in other countries.

² See Bede, lib. i. c. 1., where Smith observes that the Scoti, who came after the Picts, appear to have arrived, in Bede's opinion, "ante "Romana tempora."

³ Lib. iv. c. 17.

⁴ As that Carausius gave a settlement to the Picts in Scotland (lib. v. c. 3). Higden's speculation that we must understand the south of Scotland seems to be a castle built on air. Stukeley however persuades himself of the reality of Carausius' expedition into Scotland, which he places A.D. 290 (Med. Hist. of Carausius, pp. 128-138), as does also Dr. Lingard (Hist. Engl. c. i. p. 35). The additions to Nennius
Cambrensis (De Instruct. Princ., lib. i. c. 6.) in favour of the view that the Picts are the same as the Agathyrsi, and of Gothic stock.  

He proceeds to relate the migration of some of the Scoti from Ireland under the leadership of Reula to the district of Argyle, in the country which several centuries afterwards became known as Scotland. This Dalriadic kingdom, which is commonly dated from the beginning of the sixth century, expanded itself, according to Higden, into a dominion over the whole of Scotland in the reign of Kenneth MacAlpine, king of Scots, in the middle of the ninth century, who destroyed the Pictish kingdom of the north of Scotland.

He next tells us how the Saxons, or as the Britons called them Germans, being invited by the Britons against the Picts and Scots, by degrees forced the Britons into Wales, and extended their own empire as far as the Scotch sea; and at length, in the reign of Egbert, were known by the common appellation of Angles or Englishmen.

The Danes, who kept invading the country from the reign of Egbert to that of the Confessor, left, according to Higden, no trace behind, and like the Picts completely died out.

The best modern critics, according to Professor Pearson, consider Pict (painted) as merely the Latin rendering of Briton, and that the Picts are consequently not of Gothic origin; he thinks them of the Kymric variety. Pearson, as above, c. ii. p. 17 (note). Dr. Lingard feels confident that they are the Caledonians under a new name (Hist. Engl. c. i. p. 39).

On the obscurity and difficulty of the history of this event, for which Higden's authority is Giraldus, see Penny Cyclopaedia, s. v. Scotland. According to Giraldus, the Pictish chiefs were fraudulently murdered at a banquet. His account is tinged with a mythological colouring, but may very possibly be founded on fact.
The Normans, who came in with the Conqueror, remained in possession of the soil in Higden’s time, the English being still in a state of subjugation.

The Flandrians, or Flemings, are the seventh and last people, according to Higden, who settled in the island. He tells us, from Alfred of Beverley,¹ that King Henry I. gave them a temporary abode at Melrose in Roxburghshire, but that he afterwards removed them to Haverfordwest in Wales; and it appears that their descendants remain there to this day, being readily distinguished from the aboriginal inhabitants both by language and manners.²

Higden sums up by saying, that as the Picts and Danes had vanished, there were five nations at present living in the island, viz., the Scots in Albania or Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and English mixed in the whole island.

The fifty-ninth chapter, on the languages of the natives of Britain, is almost entirely Higden’s own. The Scotch and Welsh (he observes) retain their own dialects nearly pure, as mingling but little with the other tribes; though the Pictish element may perhaps have somewhat entered into the Scotch speech. The Flemings had adopted the English language, and spoke it tolerably well. The English dialects were originally three, Southern, Midland or Mercian, and Northern or Northumbrian; being due to as many German tribes. These forms however, which extended east and west, became much corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The midland dialect partook of many northern and southern forms, so that a midlander might understand these in some degree; but a North-Englander and a South-Englander were barbarians to each other. Higden observes that one great cause of the corruption was the neglect of the English language in schools, boys being always taught to construe

¹ See lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.
their lessons in French, and, among the noble class, to speak French from their infancy. Trevisa inserts here an interesting passage, in which he notes a great change since Higden's time. He tells us, writing in 1385, that in all the grammar schools of England English was then taught and French laid aside; and that gentlemen taught their sons French less than formerly. He also observes, in reference to Higden's assertion that the Anglo-Norman French is one and the same in all England, that there are as many forms of French, in France at least, as of English in England. Another cause of the debasement of our language is due, in Higden's judgment, to the affectation of the words and language of their betters by the ignorant rustics, who "francigenated" or fenchified their talk to the utmost of their power.

The sixtieth and last chapter of the first book, on the manners of the English, is mostly by Higden, who has certainly shown little disposition to paint his countrymen in too favourable colours. His bombastic and not very intelligible periods warn us that he must not be taken too literally. Among our faults he especially reckons the discontented spirit in every class, which affects to appear and to be thought above itself. Thus the yeoman affects the squire; the squire the knight; the knight the duke; the duke the king. Consequently such a variety of dress had been introduced that a man's clothes gave little indication of his degree. Gluttony, drunkenness, dishonesty, and irreligion appear to have taken deep root amongst us. The first two vices he dates more especially from the days of Harthacnut (1041–1042), whose death was occasioned thereby.

Among our better qualities he enumerates our aptitude for every kind of industry, our desire to visit foreign

---

1 The authors of the change were, it seems, John Cornwaile, a master of a grammar school, and his pupil, Richard Penerich.
INTRODUCTION.

parts with a view to learn, our bravery in war, and the excellent discipline of our soldiers, both horse and foot.

He observes that the southerners were more civilized and gentle than men of the north; those of middle Anglia occupying an intermediate position, socially as well as geographically.¹

The Welsh Flemings, he observes from Giraldus,² had become in a manner anglicised by contact with the English; they were industrious, enterprising, and equally successful in the arts of peace and of war. They were addicted, however, to some singular superstitions, such as divining with the boiled shoulder bone of a ram, by which they both dived into futurity, and saw, as by a kind of clairvoyance, what was going on or had been performed afar off. They entertained a cordial hatred towards the Welsh.

Thus ends Higden's First Book, or Geographical Introduction to his Universal History. Of the sixty chapters of which it is composed, twenty-nine are occupied with an account of Great Britain and Ireland, twenty-two of these, all comprised in the present volume, being devoted to England alone, the country, as he tells us himself, on whose account he compiled and elaborated his chronicle. This is the only part of his introduction of which, as being to some slight extent original, the historian or antiquary can well make use;³ the remainder, relating to foreign parts, being derived from other sources, and those not always the most trustworthy.

¹ Higden quotes from Henry of Huntingdon (lib. vi. p. 359, Sav.), the prophecy of a holy anchorite, which bears every appearance of being composed after the event. It was written, or ought to have been written, in the time of king Egelfred or Egifred, by whom he intends Ethelred the Second, who is called Egifred by Roger de Hoveden (p. 472, Sav.) and William of Malmesbury. (Gest. Reg. ii. § 159, p. 255, Hardy.)

² Hic. Cambr. i. 11.

³ It has been published by Gale, Hist. Brit. Script. xv. pp. 191–212. The only other portion of this volume contained in his collection are parts of lib. ii. c. 27 (nearly all), and c. 28 (a few lines); they occupy less than a folio page. See Gale, n.s. pp. 212, 213.
The book however, taken as a whole, is not without its value, as indicating the geographical knowledge of a writer, who in his own and in the next age was widely read and generally followed. The second book has for its prologue (cap. i.) a comparison between man and the world. The geography of the world is properly followed by the history of the world, that is of man, who is himself the microcosm or little world. He then proceeds to point out the similarities between man and the world in their dimensions, composition, and operations. The doctrine of the microcosm is as old as Pythagoras, or at least was espoused by some of his disciples, and found numerous adherents in after times, and has survived almost down to our own age. Higden's application of it may be in good measure his own; at least he refers to no authority, except for slight details. For the facts in natural history which he adduces in illustration he is indebted principally to

---

1 See the anonymous Life of Pythagoras in Phot. Bibl. Cod. 249 (p. 440, ed. Bekk.), where we learn that man is called a little world, not only because he is composed of the four elements, but also because he possesses all the forces of the world. Higden's account is an expansion of these views.

2 See a note on Nicholas Ferrar, pp. 239, 240, Cambridge, 1855, by my learned friend Mr. J. E. B. Mayor, to which add that Nathan Wanley wrote a book entitled The Wonders of the Little World, or a General History of Man, first published in 1678 (fol. London). It was re-printed with additions in the last and also in the present century. Wanley much resembles Higden in style, and he sometimes refers to the same examples. See more especially his eighth chapter (On the strange constitution and marvellous properties of some human bodies), in which he refers to the great toe of Pyrrhus. See Higden, p. 188. Robinet, who considered certain natural objects, as the brain-stone coral, to be types of parts of man, died in the present century. See also Shakesp. Rich. II. Act V. sc. 5, and the notes. (Clar. Press Series).

3 As St. Gregory the Great. The "Homily on the Ascension," as Higden calls it (p. 182), occurs in his Moral. in Job, lib. vi. vol. i. p. 190 (ed. Ben. Paris, 1705). The "Homily on Advent" (quoted at p. 184) will be found among In Evang. Homil. (vol. i. p. 1439). The passage of Plato to which he alludes, p. 180, is, perhaps, Phaed., p. 81. E. (ed. Steph.) ; but if so, it is not quite accurately rendered.
INTRODUCTION.

Pliny,¹ and in a smaller degree to St. Augustine, Hugutio, Livy, and Avicenna; for the historical allusions he refers to Pliny and Seneca. On these we need not dwell; but merely observe that for the only historical facts or pretended facts in this chapter, not otherwise known, we are under obligation not to Higden, but to Trevisa, who relates some marvellous peculiarities in the constitution of one Roger Bagge, and (in the following chapter) in the conformation of a child born in Lorraine, on the eye-witness of one of his own parishioners at Berkeley, William Wayte.² But on these points, as well as on the details and speculations given by Higden respecting monstrous forms of the human species, as cyclopes, sciapodes, &c., which form the subject of his second chapter, we shall only say that he is indebted for almost all his remarks to St. Augustine and to Isidore of Seville. He does not, like Augustine, entirely repudiate the notion of the Antipodes, and cites with approbation the astronomical views of Marcianus Capella on this subject.

Higden’s third chapter is a rhetorical flourish on the differences between man and the world. Before his fall he had prerogatives above the rest of nature; afterwards he fell below the creatures themselves, being destitute of their natural defences, as he observes from Pliny.

The fourth and fifth chapters comprise his History of the First Age of the World,³ which commences with the creation of Adam, and ends with Noah’s flood. The greatest part of it is naturally taken from Scripture, but a few speculations and traditional details are added from

¹ Whom in one instance he misnames Trogus (p. 196). Some other of his references to Pliny are more or less erroneous (see pp. 190, 196, 198, 214, 422 notes). His capitulation of lib. vii. (see pp. 176, 178, 188, 194, 200) apparently differs a little from that now adopted; his chapters are capp. 17, 16, 15, 18,

² See pp. 195, 209.

³ His division of the history of the world into six ages agrees with that of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39.), from whom he probably takes it. It was adopted by various other writers.
Pseudo-Methodius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville Hugutio Pisanus, Jerome, and Josephus, which scarcely require to be discussed in this place.

In adjusting his chronology he has made constant use of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39) and of Marianus Scotus, whom he mentions at the beginning of his Polychronicon (lib. i. c. 2) as one of his main authorities in this matter. From them he probably derives most or all that he knew of the patriarchal chronology followed by the Septuagint, which differs from the Hebrew text.¹

The History of the Second Age of the World, from Noah's departure from the ark to the birth of Abraham, is comprised in the sixth, seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters. The eighth chapter, however, is in a great measure anticipatory, being occupied with an account of the rise and progress of the great empires of the ancient world generally, some of which originated in times long posterior to Abraham. Higden commences his sixth chapter with a notice of God's covenant with Noah after he came forth from the ark, as signified by the rainbow, and notes from Petrus Comestor the figurative or rather fanciful significance of its outer and inner colours.² After remarking that "secundum sanetos" there was neither rain nor rainbow before the flood, and that neither fish, flesh, nor wine were in use till after the flood, he proceeds to give a pedigree of Shem's children, noticing the differences between the chronology of the Hebrew text and that of the Septuagint, till he at length comes down to Terah and the birth of Abraham, at which point the second age terminates,

¹ Thus Marianus writes:—Septuaginta interpretes ante natum Seth duxerunt annos ducentos triginta, et postea annos septingentos (col. 4, ed. Bas. 1559). This is in substance, though not in words, what we have in Higden, p. 220.

² Here and elsewhere the number of the chapters as cited by Higden does not agree with the capitulation of the Historia Scholastica in the edition which I have consulted, printed at Lyons in 1543; and I am inclined to believe that his copy was differently capitulated; but the trivial variations cause but little difficulty.
INTRODUCTION.

comprising 992\textsuperscript{1} years according to the Hebrews, or 1072 according to the LXX., which leads him to discuss the cause of the diversity after Bede and Augustine.\textsuperscript{2} He takes this occasion to say, following Eusebius, that from Adam to Abraham we have no history either of the Greeks or barbarians.\textsuperscript{3}

Higden now takes into account the other sons of Noah and their descendants, and begins by borrowing from the spurious "Revelations" of Methodius a history of Ionichus, a son of Noah, who reigned as far as the sea Eliochora, that is to say, as Methodius explains, the region where the sun rises, or, in other words, the Indian Ocean; his disciple Nemphrot or Nimrod ruled in Babylon among the children of Ham.\textsuperscript{4} In Nimrod's time, according to Higden, following Josephus, the tower of Babel was built; and he observes in conclusion from Petrus Comestor, that Nimrod was the first founder of Nineveh as well as of Babylon, and the inventor of fire worship.

The seventh chapter, which mentions the seats of the first descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sieyon, which

\textsuperscript{1} For doceutos in the Latin text of the MSS. (which Trevisa also read) we should, no doubt, read non gentes with the Harleian translator.

\textsuperscript{2} The quotations, like many others, are derived from Marianus Scotus (coll. 49, 50.)

\textsuperscript{3} The passage occurs in the author's preface to his Chronicon (i.e. his Canon), translated by St. Jerome, which is the Chronicle of Eusebius as known to Higden. (See Hieron. Op. t. viii. p. 57, ed. Migne, and Higd. Polychron., vol. i p. 38.) It will be found at p. 32 of the Armenian version of the entire work (the second part), published by Ancher in 1818; see his remarks, Prof. § v. p. xiv. Higden seems, however, to derive much of his acquaintance with Eusebius' chronicle from Marianus Scotus, who quotes it by name frequently, and more often copies it tacitly. This passage is quoted by him from Eusebius at lib. i. act. ii. (col. 72, ed. Basil, 1559.)

\textsuperscript{4} See Pseudo-Method. Revel. Sig. a. vii., ed. Bas. 1504. His words are (in the Latin version): Ionichus antem filius Noe tenuit introitum in Etham usque ad mare quod vocatur Eliochora; id est, regio solis in quo solis ortus fit, et habitavit ibidem. For the very late production itself see Cave's Hist. Lit. § v. Methodius.
were founded nearly contemporaneously with the first dispersion of nations, is mostly derived from St. Augustine and from Isidore of Seville, a few unimportant remarks being added from other authors. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded each other, became most notable for their progress, but Higden promises to take first into consideration the earlier kingdoms contemporary with Assyria.

The eighth chapter gives an outline of the three kingdoms which arose, according to Higden, about the same time as the Assyrian monarchy, viz., those of Scythia, Sicyon, and Egypt.

For the first the longer text ¹ gives no authority, but the latter part of the account is certainly derived from Justin. The former portion has the appearance of being to some extent borrowed from Isidore.²

The notice of the kingdom of Sicyon is taken from Petrus Comestor,³ who derives it in all likelihood from Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius.⁴ There is, however, some slight variation in the number of years during which the kings are said to have reigned.⁵ Higden in conclusion notes an imaginary discrepancy in the chronology of Dionysius Exiguus.⁶

---

¹ The shorter MSS., C. D. prefix Willelmus here and before §§ 4, 5, 6. William of Malmesbury is usually so cited in this work, and the only other William mentioned by Higden in his catalogue of authorities is William of Rievaulx, who may perhaps be the same as William of Newbury. (See Cave and Hardy.) I do not know whence these citations from William are derived. For the last sentence, see Justin, lib. ii. c. 3., whose Zopyrion is transformed into Zephiro by Higden.

² Hist. Lib. Gen. c. 64. (not 60, as Higden says.)


⁴ 967 (Arm. version); 962 (Jerome's version); 971 (Petrus and Higden).

⁵ Dionysius says that in the 50th year of Terah, Europs, whom Higden miscalls Cecrops, was the second king of Sicyon, (not quod regnum Sicyoniorum incepit), and that Agialens, the first king, reigned 52 years, i.e., according to his computation, in the 28th year of Nahor. This differs from Petrus only by four years, who places him in the 24th year of Nahor. See Marinus Scotus, who follows Dionysius (coll. 69-71).
The account of the third kingdom, Egypt, is nearly all derived from Eusebius, more or less blundered,\(^1\) one sentence being added from Josephus.

Fourth in order, but first in time, the Assyrian kingdom is described in outline. A well-chosen passage adapted from Augustine commences the section, followed by another, taken from the same chapter of Petrus, but ultimately derived from Eusebius,\(^2\) which brings the history down to the death of Sardanapalus. Higden then gives in his own view the state of Assyrian affairs afterwards, and following the language of Scripture, calls Sennacherib, &c. kings of Assyria, whom he considers to have been independent, but not monarchs of the whole country (reges potentes, quamvis non monarchæ), of whom Sargon was the last. He goes on to say that some consider a Median monarchy over the entire East arose after the death of Sardanapalus, beginning with Arbaces, and ending with Astyages, (whom Cyrus overthrew, and so transferred the empire to Persia,) or in other words that the Assyrian kings, so called, were but Median tributaries. In saying this he seems to express his disagreement with Eusebius, who makes no more mention of an Assyrian kingdom after the death of Sardanapalus. Still giving no authority he proceeds to the end, and notices the rise of the Babylonian and Chaldean kingdoms, giving a catalogue of their kings according to his own view.\(^3\)

After this he traces the Persian kings from the begin-\(^4\) The Persian kings.

---

\(^1\) Jerome’s version says: “Porro apud Ægyptios xvi. potestas erat, quan vocant dynastiam; quo tempore regnavant Thebeï, qui præfaerant Ægyptiiis annis cxe.” (col. 108.) But Higden says (p. 260): “Deinde Thebeï tenuerunt xvi. dynastias,” which completely destroys the sense. It is not worth while to point out other errors.

\(^2\) See Hier. u. s. coll. 337, 339.

\(^3\) It is mostly derived from Mariano Scotus (who refers to Josephus), but with variations of spelling (coll. 52.) Higden has Balhasar, qui et Nabor, (Naboris read in the printed text of Marianus), but Josephus has Nabonnedus (Ant. x. 11), writing elsewhere (Lib. i. c. Ap. § 29) Nabonnedus. Ruffin, however, has Naboa. See the notes in Havercamp’s edition, vol. i. p. 539.
INTRODUCTION.

ning to the end of the monarchy, professing herein to follow Giraldus; but Eusebius seems to be the original source from which the history is mostly drawn. He gives little besides their names, some of which are corrupt.

Having observed that Alexander the Great absorbed the kingdom of Persia into that of Macedonin, he goes on to add that this kingdom, which lasted 636 years, was founded by Caraus, whom he erroneously calls Cranaus, and lasted till the capture and dethronement of Persen by the Romans. This computation nearly agrees with Eusebius. He concludes by remarking that there were other kingdoms of Greece in Sicyn, Argos, Athens, Sparta, and Epirus, which, like Macedonia, ultimately formed part of the great empire of Rome. For this section, as well as for the following, the MSS. of the longer form of the Chronicle refer to no authority; in the shorter form reference is made in each case to William of Malmsbury.

The concluding section sketches the rise and progress of the Roman empire, from the Latin, Alban, and Roman kings, to the consuls, tribunes of the people, dictators, and emperors. Tacitly following St. Jerome’s version of the Canon of Eusebius, he makes Philip Senior the first Christian emperor. He seems also to allude to the

1 The Chronographia metrica of Giraldus may possibly be intended (see De libris a se scriptis, Gir. Cambr. Op., tom. i. p. 414.), but I rather suspect that Giraldus is an error.

2 See Euseb. Chron. pars. 1, p. 50; pars. 2, p. 19 (ed. Auch.) for the list of kings, and Euseb. Canon, s. a. 1487 for what is said of Judith, and s. a. 1540 for Esther; and compare Marianus Scotus passim.

3 He has Ermeides for Smerdis; Fogodianus for Sogdianus; to say nothing of smaller errors.

4 Higden errs in saying "quem occiderunt Romani."

5 He makes Caranus begin to reign 1203 years after Abraham; and Perseus’ reign to end 1850 years after Abraham.

6 See Euseb. Canon, s. a. 2261. But the words "primusque omnium ex Romanis imperatoribus Christianus fuit" have no counterpart in the Armenian version, and are probably an addition by Jerome himself. (See Aucher’s note, p. 197.)
INTRODUCTION.

fabulous donation of Constantine to the pope at the conclusion.

The ninth chapter is devoted to the early history of Assyria, from the times of Belus, the son of Nimrod, and second founder of Babylon, and of Ninus, the son of Belus, and second founder of Nineveh. The chapter concludes with the exploits of Semiramis, wife of Ninus, who had also a son of the same name. The authorities referred to are St. Augustine, Orosius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, and Justin. It would be useless to dwell upon the history, where all is mythology and fable. Higden in the same chapter discusses the origin of pagan idolatry from Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, St. Augustine, and an Alexander who is doubtless Alexander Neckham. He also mentions from St. Jerome a strange superstition connected with the worship of Fortune. In the course of his quotations are many things which may reasonably be questioned, but their discussion need hardly be entered upon in this place.

The histories of Abraham and the patriarchs comprised in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth chapters need not detain us long. The life of the former is mostly taken from Genesis, a few particulars about him being added from Josephus and Petrus Comestor. Melchisedech's history and interview with Abraham are slightly enlarged from St. Jerome and Petrus Comestor; from the latter Higden explains the meaning of Kirjath-Arba to be the City of Four. From the same authority he tells us that the Jews give their sons names, when they are circumcised, in allusion to Abram's name being

---

1 See Fabricius, Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin. s. v. p. 174. His Mythologia has not, I believe, been printed.

2 As the identification of Zoroastes, king of Bactria, with Ham, and of Belus with Baal. They are

VOL. II.


3 The Rabbins and St. Jerome are the original authorities for this view, which seems contrary to the derivation given in Josh. xiv. 15. See Mr. Grove's remarks in Smith's Dict. of the Bible, s. v.
changed into Abraham at the time of his circumcision; also that Keturah, Abraham's wife after Sarah's death, was Hagar under a new name. For the other patriarchs, Isaac, Jacob, and his family, as well as Lot, Higden has scarcely anything to say which is not contained in the Old Testament, though he sometimes prefers to refer to other books, and not to the original authority itself.

The eleventh and twelfth chapters contain a few particulars relating to the early traditions of Greece and Egypt; Higden regards them as real events, and, like Eusebius and others, assigns dates to their occurrence. His remarks on Minerva and Prometheus are mostly taken from St. Augustine; also those on the kingdom of the Argives, and on Egyptian affairs. The last are further illustrated in some slight degree from Isidore, Petrus Comestor, and Hugutio Pisanus. The myths of Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres, are related from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. It is needless to say anything of these in this place; but it may be related Higden's knowledge of them is not very profound.

1 The derivation of Ishmael's descendants, the Saracens, from Sarah (p. 292), occurs in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2., and in Mariannus Scotus, Col. 76.

2 St. Augustine's remarks, if indeed they be his, quoted by Higden (p. 304), about Potiphar, arise from the misrendering; as it would seem, of the LXX. and Vulgate. The identification of Potiphar with Potipherah is very questionable, and is not mentioned with favour by Augustine, Quest in Gen. 136. (tom. iii. Col. 307, ed. ant. v. 1760.) But Higden appears to copy not from Augustine, but from Petrus Comestor, capp. 88 and 92.

3 The events which Higden notices are in several instances tacitly taken from Eusebius; his history of Cres, for example, p. 294. Cf. Euscb. Can. s. a. 56, p. 37, Auch. The dates however do not always accurately correspond. Higden's date of the Ogygian deluge (p. 300) is 265 years after Abraham; the MSS., however, vary; in Eusebius it is eleven years earlier. See Euscb. Chron. s. a. 254, and Mig- ne's notes, col. 142. Mariannus Scotus places it (col. 80), 260 years after Abraham.

4 Thus we have (p. 296) professedly from St. Augustine: "Ap- " paruit virgo Tritonia nomine, " quam Graeci Minervam dicerunt." The passage about Tritonia is in De
INTRODUCTION.

Higden's account of Moses (capp. xiii. and xiv.) is mostly to be found in the Pentateuch, though he prefers to derive it from secondary authorities, such as Josephus and Petrus Comestor.¹ There are however traditional stories mingled with the scriptural account, nearly all of which are preserved by Josephus.² In the same chapters are brief allusions to Grecian history and mythology (see summary of contents), on which we need not dwell,³ for which Higden refers to Josephus.

Civit. Dei lib. xviii. c. 8., but St. Augustine (as may be supposed) does not say that Minerva is a Greek name; this error was derived from Petrus Comestor, who doubtless was thinking of the same passage, but in ignorance of Greek wrote "apud laecum Tritonidem " virgo apparuit, quam Greci " Minervam dixerunt." Hist. Gen. c. 76. Elsewhere, when Higden professes to refer to St. Augustine, he is in reality closely copying Petrus Comestor. At p. 310, his account of Prometheus agrees almost word for word with Petrus (Hist. Gen. c. 86), though he refers to Aug. C. D. lib. xviii., meaning no doubt c. 8, which however does not contain all that Petrus says, and which Higden transfers. Probably in Higden's MS. of Petrus, the authorities were set down in the margin. Higden's reference in the same place to Isidore, lib. xiii. should be lib. xix. [c. 32,], and ought to be prefixed to the sentence beginning Et etiam ; but here also he is really copying Comestor.

¹ Higden, when he refers to the Pentateuch directly, misquotes it. Thus at p. 318, and at p. 324, he refers to Genesis, when he should have written Exodus. At p. 328 Genesis is similarly an error for Exodus; but, as most MSS. omit all reference, this false reference may not be due to Higden himself.

² As the name (Thermuth) of Pharaoh's daughter; the treading under foot of Pharaoh's crown by Moses; the war of Moses against the Ethiopians; his marriage with Tharbis, daughter of the king of Ethiopia; and a few other smaller matters (Ant. ii. 9, 10.) The story of Moses burning his tongue with live coals is taken from Petrus Comestor (Hist. Lib. Exod. c. 5.), and does not, I believe, occur in Josephus. Petrus indicates that it is derived from Hebrew sources. The story about Moses making a ring of memory and a ring of forgetfulness, also preserved by Petrus (Hist. Lib. Exod. c. 6), savours of an Arabian origin. See Higden, p. 322.

³ For Dasanenus, which is the name by which he tells us (p. 336) that Marianus Scotus calls the Phe-nician Hercules, we should perhaps read Dosenaus, as in Hierold's edition of Marianus, col. 90. Eusebius, in Jerome's version, has Desinaus; in the Armenian, Desaudas; in SYN-cellius, Dibdas. See Hier. Op. tom. viii. col. 182, and the notes in Mig-ne's edition (Paris, 1846), and Euseb. Can. vers. Arm. p. 59. (Auch.)
St. Augustine, and Orosius; he has likewise tacitly incorporated some parts of the Canon of Eusebius. 1

The history of Joshua is very briefly contained in the fifteenth chapter; with the exception of the length of his government, which is added from Josephus, 2 and of the confirmation of his dying covenant, by the pouring out of water, related from Petrus Comestor, 3 the whole may be found in the Old Testament.

The allusions to profane history and mythology are numerous, but mostly brief. Some of them are evidently taken from Eusebius, or rather from his copyist Marianus Scotus, as, for example, those relating to Erichthonius, Phenix, Cadmus, and Asterius. 4 He is more particular about the legends relating to Jove and Saturn, for which he refers to St. Augustine, Isidore, Eutropius, as well as to Alexander Neckham and Heinricus, who may be Henry of Huntingdon. Higden himself properly points out the inconsistencies in the accounts which authors have delivered. In this chapter we have (from Isidore) an example of the rationalizing method of explaining myths, viz., in the case of Europa, which in a succeeding chapter is set forth at length.

In the following chapters Higden gives an account of Jewish affairs under the judges, most usually assigning

1 As the building of the temple of Delphi by Eryschthon (p. 334). This is also included in the Chronicle of Marianus Scotus, cap. Moses, as well as the change of the name Aerea into Egypt.

2 The allusion to Josephus (Ant. Jud. v. 1, § 29.) occurs in the midst of a sentence said to be taken from Isidore, Elym. lib. v. No such passage occurs there, nor elsewhere in Isidore, so far as I know. The versions may be right in omitting all reference.

3 Hist. Lib. Jos. c. 16, where both quotations on p. 346 will be found. I have in vain sought for Comestor’s authority for his statements, which are very positive and explicit. At p. 346, 1. 5, Petrus and not Genesis (see versions) must be the true reading.

4 Higden’s reference to Marianus as the authority for saying that Asterius and not Jupiter is the father of Rhadamantius and his brothers, shows that he did not consult Eusebius himself in this instance, from whom Marianus borrows. See Euseb. Can. s. a. 570, and Marianus Scotus, Col. 94.
one chapter to each judge in order. He also takes notice of profane history, as the events occur in the times of the government of the successive judges. The sixteenth chapter is devoted to a notice of Othniel, the first of the judges, and to mythical events in Greece and Italy supposed to be contemporary, particularly the birth of the Delian Apollo, and of the Theban Bacchus; also the introduction of letters into Greece and Phenicia by Cadmus and Phenix. These and other matters in this chapter are tacitly derived, as usual, from Eusebius, probably through Mariannus Scotus. The only authors referred to in this unimportant chapter are Petrus Comestor, St. Augustine, and Isidore.

The Jewish history in the times of Ehud is related very briefly in the seventeenth chapter. The allusions to Grecian history and mythology are numerous, and mostly the same as those given in Eusebius; they are often expressed in the very words of Jerome's version. Of Hercules we have a full account at the end of the chapter, derived from Justin, Lucan, Virgil, Claudian, and others. Following St. Augustine, he considers that more heroes than one bore the name of Hercules; and mentions the opinion of some, that the word itself signifies a glorious man.

The eighteenth chapter is devoted to the explanations of the Greek mythology which have been proposed by St. Augustine and others, and to the different kinds of fables current in antiquity. Higden quotes Eusebius\(^2\) as an authority for saying that mythological

---

1 From this chapter we infer that Higden was not absolutely ignorant of Greek, or at least not ignorant of the numerical value of the Greek letters. It is curious to observe the improvement of the sentence in the later form of the chronicle. But his knowledge perhaps well nigh ended with the alphabet; he manifestly shows ignorance of the language in various places.

2 The heading is, *Eusebius in Chronicis*. I have in vain searched the Canon of Eusebius for the passage. It is true that Eusebius places a good many of the myths in Ehud's time in the body of his chronicle.
fables were invented in Greece principally in the time of Ehud, and Augustine's opinion that they arose between the time of Joshua's death and the Trojan war. It is not necessary to say anything here of the different kinds of fables, or of the interpretations given to the different myths. Higden refers in the course of his remarks upon them to St. Augustine, Isidore, Peter Comestor, and Alexander Neckham. He concludes with an account of Mercury and his inventions.

The history of the judges is continued in chapter nineteen, which contains the history of Deborah (or, as Higden, in common with Petrus Comestor, writes her name, Delborah) and of Barak. He notices, from St. Augustine, the fall of the Argive kingdom, which is translated to Mycenae, and the rise of the Laurentine monarchy in Italy. The death of Liber Pater, the reign of Midas, and the foundation of Troy, are introduced here after Eusebius, though without reference to any authority.

Higden proceeds in the twentieth chapter to notice very briefly the history of Gideon, and observes, from Josephus, that Tyre was founded in his days. He then touches on the histories of Minos, Theseus and the Minotaur, Helen, Deedalus, his son Icarus, and his nephew Perdix, from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. This leads him to describe the various Labyrinths from Hugo Pisanus. From the same authority he gives an account

1 See p. 378. Comestor, who refers to Walafred Strabus, strangely supposes the chorus introduced into Greece to be a kind of musical instrument. See Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 9. The passage quoted at p. 376 occurs in c. 8 of the same book, but Comestor places the event in time of Gideon; this is not the only chronological discrepancy between Higden and Comestor. The former places the rape of Helen in the time of Gideon, quoting the words of Comestor very closely (p. 382), who places it in the time of Jair. (Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 11.)

2 The citation is probably derived from Marianus Scotos, cap. Gedeon, who, copying Eusebius, refers to his Ant. Jud. lib. iii. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 3.

3 Hugo however does but copy Isidore, lib. xv. cap. 2. § 36.
INTRODUCTION.

of the plague which afflicted the Athenians in consequence of their murder of Icarus and of the suicide of his daughter Erigone; and of its expiation by images oscillating in the air.  

The histories of Abimelech and Tola are briefly related in the twenty-first chapter, in which Higden introduces (after Eusebius) allusions to the battle of the Lapithae and the Centaurs, and to the departure of Medea to Colchis. From Justin an account is given of Faunus, king of Italy, and of his wife Fatua; also of the birth of king Latinus. He concludes with an account of Vesores, who is possibly the same as Sesostiris, king of Egypt, and his war with the Scythians, and thence passes to the origin and history of the Amazons, herein copying pretty closely the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters of the first book of Orosius. After alluding to the history of Jair in his twenty-second chapter, Higden mentions (after Eusebius) the opinion of some that Carthage was now founded. He alludes also (still following the same authority,) to the war of Minos with Daedalus, and ends this short chapter with an account of the introduction of the Latin alphabet into Italy by Carmentis, mother of king Latinus, and one of the Camenae, to which is appended a brief history of the four stages of Latinity; the whole being taken from Isidore. Of Jephthah, the successor of Jair, Higden mentions little more than the name (c. xxiii.), but immediately passes on to mention the rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus, the first king. He then tells us, from Isidore, that the Erythrean Sibyl flourished in his reign, and gives an account of the ten Sybils, and a derivation of the word Sibylla. From St. Augustine, who places

---

1 Hugo derives his account from Servius on Virg. Georg. ii. 389. See also Facciolati, Lex. s. v. Oscillum.  
2 Lib. i. c. 4. (not 10.), and Lib. ix. c. 1. (not 7).
INTRODUCTION.

The Argoantic expedition and the Trojan war.

Sacred and profane history in the times of the later judges, Elon, Abdon, and Sampson.

Return of the Greeks from Troy; certain miraculous accounts discussed.

Trojans' affairs.

the Erythrean Sibyl in the time of Romulus, he quotes a prophecy of hers relating to Christ. He then goes on to give an account of the Argonautic expedition and of the Trojan war, principally from Justin and Dares Phrygius. The history of the latter is pursued throughout the whole of the twenty-fourth chapter, which also relates (or rather, barely alludes to) the government of Israel by Ibzan, or, as Higden writes it, Abessa.¹

In the twenty-fifth chapter we have brief notices of Elon (Aylon. Higden; Ahialon, Vulg.), and of some variations of chronology of Josephus and Eusebius, tacitly derived from Marianus Scotus;² also of Abdon or Labdon, in the third year of whose government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. He then goes on to remark, from St. Augustine, that the Greeks on their return home from Troy met with many disasters, mentioning particularly the change of the companions of Diomed into birds. This gives Higden an opportunity of bringing together a number of curious stories to the same effect from Varro, Pliny, St. Augustine, Apuleius, and William of Malmesbury. These need not be discussed here, entertaining as they are. He concludes with quotations from St. Augustine and Giraldus,³ which incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.

Higden now passes on (c. xxvi.) to the affairs of the Trojans after the siege of Troy, and relates the wanderings of Eneas to Sicily and Africa after Martinus Polonius,⁴ but expresses his doubts about the truth of his meeting with Dido, as Eneas probably lived more than three centuries before Carthage was built, if Justin and

¹ The Vulgate (Jud. xii. 8) has Abesan; Petrus Comestor (Hist. Lib. Jud. c. 13) calls him Abessan.
INTRODUCTION.

others are to be trusted. He then proceeds to relate, after the same Martinus, the conquests of Eneas in Italy, the foundation of Lavinium, and the death of Eneas, who was succeeded by his son Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa. He left his kingdom to Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother, because his own son Iulus, from whom the Julian family sprang, was of too tender an age. For these events Higden appears mainly to follow Eusebius, Marianus Scotus (cap. Samson), and Martinus Polonus, but there is some error in the references in his MSS. (see notes.)

1 He then, following Eusebius, makes mention of the events in the time of Sampson, such as the escape of Ulysses from Seylla and the Sirens, and the murder of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, by Orestes. 

2 He concludes by observing (after Eusebius) that some place Homer's age here, but notes the variations of ancient authors in determining the time when he flourished.

Our author now approaches the fabulous history of Britain. After slightly touching the history of Elie (noticing the variations in chronology between Josephus and the Septuagint), and of Ruth, and of the recovery of Troy by Hector's sons after Eusebius (who however places the event earlier) he proceeds, still following Eusebius, with the succession of the Latin kings. Silvius Posthumus, the third king, son of Eneas, and brother of Ascanius, now begins to reign, whose son Brutus, according to the British accounts, invaded Britain. The Roman account, he observes (with which

---

1 I now believe that Eutropius is an error for Eusebius, whose Canon (s. a. 870) contains part of Higden's account.

2 The word Εὐγεύσιορος (p. 438), which perplexed me (see notes), is taken from Marianus Scotus (cap. Samson), who intended regnum or rex to be supplied. (In Eusebius, however, whom he miscopies, the name occurs in the column headed Atheniensium [regum] s. a. 854.) But Pyrrhus was doubtless king of some part of Northern Greece, perhaps Epirus, as the later kings of Epirus claimed affinity with Achilles. See also Isidore, xv. i. § 43.
INTRODUCTION.

Eusebius agrees), differs from our own respecting the father of Brutus, and then, after entering minutely into the pedigree and history of the Latin kings, he concludes that Silvius Posthumus cannot be the father of Brutus. He proceeds, however, with the history of Brutus according to Geoffrey of Monmouth; and in due course notices his invasion of Britain, of which he became the first king, after his destruction of the giants. The British history is now slightly interrupted by a notice of Samuel and his chronology according to Josephus; but Higden soon returns to it, and notices, after Geoffrey, the reigns of Locrinus, son of Brutus, and of his wife Guendolena, who murdered him.

In the twenty-eighth chapter we have an account of Saul, and of the length of his reign according to Josephus; also a notice (after Eusebius) of the succession of the Latin kings, and of Codrus, the last king of Athens, which he partly derives from St. Augustine. Higden then reverts to Britain, and, following Geoffrey tacitly, relates that Maddan succeeded his father Locrinus, leaving two sons, Mempricius and Maulus.

With Saul's death terminates the third age of the world, from the birth of Abraham to the reign of David, and Higden notices the unimportant variation of the chronology between Isidore and Josephus.

In bringing the second volume of Higden to a close, I should observe that I have occasionally consulted two MSS. of Trevisa's translation, which were not made use of in the first volume. The older of these (γ. of the notes) is Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. in the British Museum. In the last printed catalogue it is said to be wanting, "Desideratur;" but a note in the copy in the Museum

1 Hist. Reg. Brit. lib. i. c. 3, et seqq. Alfred of Beverley (p. 10. et seqq.) copies his account, to whom Higden also refers.
2 Lib. ii. c. 6. Geoffrey writes Malim for Maulus; Alfred has Manlim (p. 13.)
3 Some corrections of the text made by their aid in vol. i. will be found in the addenda to the present volume.
INTRODUCTION.

says, "Restored, J. Holmes." It had been seen by T. Smith, who wrote the Catalogue of the Cotton MSS. printed at Oxford in 1696, and afterwards by the Hon. W. Burton in the following century, who annotated the copy in the British Museum. It is likewise mentioned in the Report on the Cotton MSS. after the fire, printed in 1732. The MS. is in quarto, on vellum of 296 leaves, each page containing about 37 lines, and is rubricated and slightly illuminated. It contains moreover the Dialogue of Dominus and Clericus, and Trevisa's Epistle to Lord Berkeley. It is injured by fire, though not very considerably; a few leaves however at the beginning and end are only partially legible. It would seem to be written towards the close of the fourteenth century, or rather a little later. Some extracts from it have been lately printed in Mr. Morris's Specimens of Early English, whose book first made me acquainted with its existence.\(^1\) It differs much from the standard MS. and \(\alpha\) in the forms of the pronouns, and preserves in some cases the true text, where they have corrupted it. The other MS. (\(\beta\) of the notes) which has been collated in cases of difficulty is MS. Harl. 1900; it has been sufficiently described in the Harleian Catalogue of 1808. It would appear to belong to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Cockfield Rectory,
February 13, 1869.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST—(continued).

Cap. XXXIX.

Great Britain or England. Various designations of the island.

Originally called Albion, from its white rocks. Afterwards denominated Anglia by the Angles, the derivation being uncertain. Considered by some another world in itself. Charlemagne's opinion of its fertility. - - pp. 2-6.

Cap. XL.

England, continued. Its site and dimensions.

England's position defined in reference to Spain, Germany, and France. The channel fifty miles across at Boulogne. The longest day has eighteen hours. England is broadest in the middle. Richborough the first city that attracts the eye of sailors. Britain is in length eight hundred miles, in breadth two hundred, in circumference between three and four thousand. - - - - - - pp. 6-12.

Cap. XLI.

England, continued. The richness of its natural productions.

The climate of England more dry than that of Ireland; not more healthy. Cattle and horses abundant; also various wild animals and birds; freshwater fish in great numbers, particularly pike and eel. Fish used as food for hogs. Whales, porpoises, and seals often taken, many shell-fish also, as the pearl-mussel; others are used in dyeing. Wolves are met with in small quantity. Salt wells and hot springs also occur. Metals abundant, copper, iron, lead, tin, and silver. Marl, chalk, amber, various marbles, white and red clay for earthenware and bricks. Wool, hides, skins, iron, lead, salt, and white metal among its principal exports. England a rich and noble country, sufficient for its own needs, and indispensable to the rest of the world. - - - - pp. 12-20.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. XLII.

England, continued. The marvels therein explained.

Britain contains hot springs, over which Minerva presides, which are splendidly decorated as baths. In Peccum (the Peak of Derbyshire?) are caverns full of mighty winds; and at Cherdhole (Cheddar?) is an endless cave under ground. At Stonehenge are marvellous stones of unknown origin and significance. Britain has several wonderful lakes; one containing sixty inhabited islands, surrounded by sixty rocks, and having sixty rivers flowing into it. Also a lake, which becomes hot or cold according as the bather desires. Other lakes with various miraculous qualities. Petrifying springs near Winchester and Bath. Prophetic fluctuations of the Dee near Chester. No salmon found in Bala lake, though abundant in the Dee. Many bodies of saints preserved in England uncorrupt, as SS. Ethelreda, Edmund king of East Anglia, Elphege, Cuthbert. pp. 22-30.

Cap. XLIII.

England, continued. The principal divisions of the island.

After the time of Brutus Britain was divided into three parts: Loegria, now England; Cambria, now Wales; and Albania, now Scotland; so named from Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus, sons of Brutus. Their limits described. Full account of Offa's dyke, which afterwards artificially separated Wales from England. pp. 30-34.

Cap. XLIV.

England, continued. The islands adjacent to Britain.

The Isle of Wight described; its dimensions. The dimensions, population, and fertility of the Isle of Anglesey. The Isle of Man and its superstitions. The Isle of Thanet. pp. 36-42.

Cap. XLV.

England, continued. The Royal Roads.

Immunities attached to ploughs, temples and city roads by Molmutius, king of the Britons. King Belinus, his son, to
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

prevent ambiguity, defined and repaired four royal roads to be maintained in all their privileges. The Foss road; its course traced. Watling street; its course traced. Erming street; its course traced. Rikenild street; its course traced. pp. 42-47.

CAP. XLVI.

England, continued. The famous rivers.
The Thames, Severn, and Humber divided the ancient kingdoms of Loegria, Cambria, and Northumbria. Course of the Thames described; it was the boundary of the kingdoms of Kent, Essex, Wessex, and Mercia. Origin of the name Sabrina, or Severn. Course and character of the river. Derivation of the name Humber. Its course and affluents. - pp. 48-52.

CAP. XLVII.

England, continued. The famous cities and towns.
Enumeration of ancient British towns and their more recent appellations. Description of several of the more important cities and boroughs: London, Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, Leicester. pp. 52-62.

CAP. XLVIII.

England, continued. Cities and towns, continued.
Description of York, Edinburgh, Alcluid or Aldborough, Carlisle, Hexham, Lindsey, Lindisfar or Holy Island, Chester. pp. 62-84.

CAP. XLIX.

England, continued. The counties or shires.
England contains thirty-two provinces or shires, called counties. The nine southern counties anciently governed by the law called West Saxenelaga. They are Kent, Sussex, Surrey, Hampshire, Berkshire, Wiltshire, Somersetshire, Dorsetshire, and Devonshire. The fifteen eastern and northern shires governed by the Denelaga. They are Essex, Middlesex, Suffolk, Norfolk, Hertfordshire, Huntingdonshire, Northamptonshire, Cambridgeshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire,
Leicestershire, Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Lincolnshire, Yorkshire, Durhamshire, Northumberland, Carlisleshire with Cumberland, Applebyshire with Westmorland, Lancashire with its fifteen small shires. The eight midland and western counties governed by the Merchenelaga; viz., Oxfordshire, Warwickshire, Gloucestershire, Worcestershire, Herefordshire, Shropshire, Staffordshire, Cheshire. Explanation of the terms wapentake, hundred, cantred. Ancient extent of Northumbria. William the Conqueror’s survey of the country. pp. 84–90.

**CAP. L.**

*England, continued. Different kinds of laws and law terms explained.*

Laws of Molmutius; Merchenelaga; Westsaxenelaga; Dene-laga. Laws of Edward the Confessor. Explanation of various law terms therein contained. - - - pp. 90–96.

**CAP. LII.**

*England, continued. The separate kingdoms and their limits.*

Line of British monarchs unbroken from Brutus to Julius Caesar. The island tributary to Rome from his time to that of Septinius Severus. The island had kings of its own from Severus to Gratian; when the British succession failed, the Romans were sovereigns. The Picts and Scots harressing the island, the Roman soldiers were withdrawn by Magnus Maximus. The Britons invite the Saxons against the Picts. The Saxons conquer both Picts and Britons, set up kings of their own and found the Heptarchy. This lasted till Athelstan’s reign, the first king of all Britain. The Danes infested the kingdom for a hundred and seventy years from the time of Ethelwolf; and held the throne thirty years. The Norman Conquest. The kingdoms of the Heptarchy briefly described. Limits and durations of the kingdoms of Kent, of the South Saxons, of the East Saxons, of the East Angles, of the West Saxons, of the Mercians, of the Northumbrians. Northumbria divided into two provinces, Deira and Bernicia, separated by the Tyne. The Mersey separated Mercia from Northumbria. pp. 96–108.
England, continued. The Episcopal sees.

Three archiepiscopal and twenty-eight episcopal sees in Britain in the time of Lucius. The former were London, York, Caerleon. Augustine constituted Canterbury the principal see in place of London. Temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric. York always an archiepiscopal see, but Scotland at length ceased to be subject to its jurisdiction. In king Arthur's time this archbishopric was removed from Caerleon to St. David's. Sampson, the twenty-fourth bishop of St. David's, retired in consequence of the prevalence of the plague to Dol in Brittany; twenty-one archbishops from Sampson to the time of Henry I. Up to this time the Welsh bishops were wholly independent of the authority of any other church. From the time of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Henry II., the Welsh bishops became subject to that see. Two primates now in England; the archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England; the archbishop of York, primate of England. From and after the time of the Conqueror various sees, (Dorchester, Lichfield, Thetford, Sherburn, Wells, Cornwall, and Selsey,) were translated to more important cities. The bishop of Rochester is only the chaplain of the archbishop of Canterbury, and has no diocese.

England, continued. The Western bishops.

Foundation of the sees of Dorchester (near Oxford) and Winchester. The see of Sherburn separated from Winchester by archbishop Theodore. King Edward the Elder created the sees of Wells, Crediton, and St. German in Cornwall. Ramsbury created soon after. All these sees, except Winchester, translated to larger places by William the Conqueror.

England, continued. The Eastern bishops.

The sees of Dunwich and Elmham founded. The former see suppressed. In the Conqueror's time Elmham transferred to Thetford. William Rufus removed the see of Thetford to Norwich. Henry I. separates Ely from the see of Lincoln.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. LV.

England, continued. The Midland bishops.

Lichfield the only original see in Mercia. It was in Offa's time an archbishopric. Succession of bishops of Lichfield. Archbishop Theodore constituted three additional sees for Mercia viz., Worcester, Chester, and Lindsey. The see of Dorchester was then transferred from Wessex to Mercia. William the Conqueror removes the see of Lindsey to Lincoln.

pp. 126-130.

Cap. LVI.

England, continued. The Northern bishops.

York the only original see of Northumbria. Early civil and ecclesiastical commotions have disturbed the succession of York. Aidan, bishop of Lindisfarne, in the district of Bernicia. Archbishop Theodore ordains Tumbert to the see of Hexham, Eatas to Lindisfarne, Eadhed to Ripon, Trumwyne to Whithorne in Galloway. These four sees gradually became extinct. Their history traced. Durham takes the place of Hexham and Lindisfarne in the reign of Ethelred II. The see of Carlisle founded by Henry I. - pp. 130-136.

Cap. LVII.

England, continued. The Number of the episcopal sees.

The archbishop of Canterbury has four Welsh bishops and thirteen English bishops under his jurisdiction. Enumeration of these; the limits of their dioceses. The York metropolitan has only two suffragans. The archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England; the archbishop of York, the primate of England. The rights of either primate. This subject to be discussed more fully hereafter. - - - pp. 136-142.

Cap. LVIII.

England, continued. The different Tribes that peopled the country.

The Britons the first inhabitants of the island. They came over from Armorica to the south of Britain four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome. In Vespasian's time the Picts came from Scythia to the north of Ireland, where
they found the Scots dwelling. These recommended them to settle in the north of Britain about Caithness, and promised them aid against the Britons. The Picts and Scots intermarry. The Picts said by some to be synonymous with the Agathyrsi or with the Goths. The tyrant Maximus, A.D. 383, carried them to Gaul to aid him against Gratian. Carausius, the tyrant (circa 290) gave them a dwelling-place in the south of Scotland, where they have since remained mingled with the Britons. This tract afterwards belonged to Northumbria, but was at length made by Kenneth (Macalpine), king of Scotland (circa 840), part of his own dominions. The Irish Scotoftwards (circa 500) came over with their chief Renda to Scotland, and settled about Argyle. The Saxons or Angles assisted from Germany by the Britons against the Scots and Picts, drive the Britons themselves into Wales. In the time of Egbert, king of the West Saxons, all the natives of England were called Angles. The Danes next invade the country and ravage it for about two hundred years; they afterwards fail. The Normans next come over with duke William. Last of all, men of Flanders sailed hither in the reign of Henry I., and settled at Haverfordwest. In Higden's time the Scots lived in Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and Angles mixed in the whole island. The Danes have vanished insensibly, but the Picts were exterminated by fraud by the Scots. - - pp. 142-156.

CAP. LIX.

England, continued. The languages of the natives.

The native dialects are of the same number as the native tribes. The Scotch and Welsh being less mixed with the rest retain their dialects most uncorrupt. The Flemings of West Wales speak English fairly. The English dialects were formerly three, southern, midland, and northern; these originated with the three Germanic tribes who peopled these districts; they became corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The corruption of English is increased by two causes; the first is, that boys construe their lessons in school in French, and are taught to speak French to the neglect of their own language; the second is, that rustics endeavour to ape their betters and to appear as Frenchified as possible. The three English dialects extend east and west across the island, and consequently the inhabitant of Mid-Anglia is better able to understand a North Briton or a South Briton than these can understand each other. The Northumbrian dialect, especially in Yorkshire, is almost un-
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Intelligible to the southerners, who have little intercourse with their less civilised countrymen of the north, whither the Court seldom repairs. - - - - pp 156-162.

Cap. LX.

England, continued. The manners of the natives.

The Welsh Flemings brave and enterprising, apt for the arts of war and peace, English in feeling, hostile to the Welsh. Their superstitions. The southern English are of a more quiet and mild disposition than the northern; the midlanders intermediate in character. Gluttony, drunkenness, and excess of apparel, are vices especially English. Skill of the English in war; their love of travel, and wide dispersion over the world. Their industry of all kinds. Pope Eugenius' praise and blame of the nation. Higden's invectives against their fastidious and discontented spirit, ever affecting the dress and manners of those above their own station. A prophecy of a holy hermit against their vices. - - - - pp. 164-174.

BOOK THE SECOND.

The History of the World down to the Destruction of the First Temple.

Cap. I.

The Prologue. Man. His likeness to the World.

A description of the countries of the world must be followed by the history of the world's actions. The great world was made for the little world, which is Man, on whom the Creator impressed the likeness of the great world. Man and the world resemble each other in three respects; in their dimensions, in their composition, and in their operations.

(1.) As from the zenith to the nadir the distance is as great as from east to west, so the height of a man from head to foot is as great as the space from the end of one extended arm to that of the other.

(2.) Secondly, in the great and little world the natural disposition is similar; its parts and members correspond to one another, and a dislocation of any part is followed by disturbance in both. The world and man are both framed on a system of adaptation and gradation. Existence, life, and
sensation are common to man and the three kingdoms of nature. They are also composed of the same four elements, fire, water, earth, and air. The very word ἄνθρωπος is, as it were, a tree upturned (ἀναρρότη), his hair being the roots, his arms and legs the branches.

(3.) In their operations both man and the world have much in common. Both develop their powers; both have their childhood, youth, and age. His energies resemble those of the elements and of the planets. As the outer world, especially in its extremities, has its miracles, so has man. In the human face, consisting of few parts, there is such diversity that of the many thousands of faces scarcely any two are alike. Various miraculous and venomous powers found in some tribes of men. Marvellous qualities found in the parts of some men's bodies. The great toe of Pyrrhus; the teeth of the son of Prusias; the eyes of Strabo and Tiberius. The mental powers of others no less marvellous. The memory of Seneca and Cineas. The manifold capacity of Caesar. Sexual mutations and other peculiarities of physical structure and constitution of various persons. Different kinds of conception in women.

Cap. II.

On human monsters.

The Cyclopes, Sciapodes, and Antipodes. Other monstrosities, as the change of men into beasts; also the natural change of one animal into another.

Cap. III.

Man's unlikeness to the world.

Man's state before the fall; he had special prerogatives above the rest of the world; he was in perfect harmony with himself, flourishing without decay of strength, unchanging and incorruptible, with Paradise for his dwelling-place, and with God for his reward. After the fall his honours were taken from him; and he is compared to the beasts that perish. Nay, he is even inferior to them, for whereas animals have the natural defence of hide, bristles, hair, feathers, or scales, he is naked and helpless, and can of himself only weep. He is weighed down by the anxiety of life and the necessity of death. He, unlike other animals, is the enemy of his own species. He is exposed by a righteous punishment to continual wars from without and to continual wars from within.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. IV.

The creation of Adam.

The First Age of the World.—Adam fell after the mid-day of his creation. His change of state from weal to woe. In his fifteenth year he begat Cain and his sister Calmana; and in his thirtieth Abel and his sister Delbora. Birth of Seth differently reckoned in the Hebrew text and in the Septuagint. Adam is buried in Kirjath Arba, i.e., the City of Four. Brief notices of Seth, Enos, Canaan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, and Lamech, with the chronological variations of the Hebrew and of the Septuagint. — pp. 218-224.

Cap. V.

The posterity of Lamech.

Lamech introduces bigamy; he is the father of Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcaim, and Noema their sister. The arts of building, music, agriculture, weaving, metallurgy, and sculpture now invented or improved. Lamech accidentally shoots Cain while out hunting. The longevity of the patriarchs not incredible. The corruption of mankind, and the birth of the giants. Adam's prophecy. The construction of the inscribed column of brick and marble, which should be proof against fire or flood. The marble column still extant in Syria. Noah and his family. The construction of the ark. The deluge. Termination of the first age of the world. Its duration variously computed. — pp. 214-236.

Cap. VI.

The posterity of Noah.

The Second Age of the World.—Noah leaves the ark. The rainbow. The symbolical significance of its colours. Before the flood was no rain or rainbow, nor use of flesh, fish, or wine. Death of Noah. His sons and their posterity. The genealogy of Shem pursued. Short notices of Arphaxad, Canaan, Salah, Heber, Phaleg, Regu-n (or Ren), Sarug, Nahor, and Terah, the father of Abraham, with whose birth the second age of the world terminates. Its duration differently estimated in the Hebrew and in the LXX. Observations on the discrepancy. No Greek or barbarian history before Abraham.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Ionicus, a son of Noah, reigns as far as the Indian ocean. His prophecies. Nimrod, his disciple, founds Babylon and reigns there. The tower of Babel built in the time of Nimrod, who also founds Nineveh, afterwards enlarged by Ninus, and introduces fire worship. — — — pp. 238-250.

**CAP. VII.**

*Of Noah's children, and the kingdoms founded by their posterity.*

Shem's descendants occupied the south countries from the East to Phenicia. Ham's posterity extended from Sidon by the sea to the Straits of Gibraltar. Japhet's children ruled over Mid Asia, from Mount Taurus northward, and over all Europe as far as the British ocean. From the first dispersion of nations the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon commenced about the same time. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded one another, were the principal empires as regards their progress. The kingdoms which were coeval with Assyria must be treated of first. — — — — — — — pp. 250-258.

**CAP. VIII.**

*On the kingdoms of Scythia, Sicyon, Egypt, Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome.*

The kingdom of Scythia took its rise in the time of Sarug, the ancestor of Abraham. Thanaus the first king. The river Tanais named after him. This kingdom subdued Asia, and conquered Darius, Cyrus, and Alexander. The kingdom of Sicyon commenced in the time of Nahor, Abraham's great-grandfather, and lasted under thirty-two kings till the time of Eli. Dionysius, however, places its commencement a little later.

The kingdom of Egypt began likewise in the time of Nahor. Fifteen dynasties before Abraham. Then sixteen dynasties of Thebes. After them eighteen Diospolitan dynasties. From the time of Cambyses Egypt was under seven Persian kings. It had then ten kings of its own, till Artaxerxes Ochus re-conquered it for Persia, which held possession till the time of Alexander. The Lagidæ or Ptolemies, of whom Cleopatra, subdued by Augustus, was the last. Egypt thenceforward subject to Rome.
The kingdom of Assyria, the earliest of all, was founded by Belus, the son of Nimrod, and lasted till the reign of Sardanapalus, who died in the reign of Uziah, king of Judah. Arbaees then transferred the kingdom of Assyria to the Medes. Assyria, however, had still governors of its own, though not monarchs, as Pul, Tiglath-Pileser, Shalmaneser, Semacherib, Esarhaddon, Sargon. In the time of the elder Cyrus, who overthrew Astyages, the kingdom of the Medes was transferred to the Persians.

In the time of Hezekiah, king of Judah, arose the great kingdom of the Babylonians and Chaldeans, governed by seven kings, of whom Belshazzar or Nabar was the last. Cyrus slew him and joined his kingdom to his own.

The monarchy of Persia founded by Cyrus. The names of the kings. Alexander annexes Persia to Greece.

The Macedonian kingdom began under Crannus (Caranus) in the time of Uziah, king of Judah, and lasted till the reign of Persicus, slain by the Romans. There were other Greek kingdoms at Sicyon, Argos, Sparta, Epirus, all of which fell before the power of Rome.

The kings of Italy, of whom Janus was first, lasted till Tarquin the Proud, six being Latins, fourteen Albans, seven Romans after the foundation of the city. Consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators successively governed the Roman State down to the time of Julius Caesar. Thenceforward Emperors ruled. Augustus reduced the world to one monarchy. Philip Senior, the first Christian Emperor. Constantine the Great made Constantinople a second seat of empire, leaving to the Pope the dignity of the Apostolic See. When Charlemagne, king of France, became Emperor of the West, the title of Roman Emperor remained at Constantinople alone. — — — — — — pp. 258-274.

Cap. IX.

The empire of Ninus and Semiramis.

Belus, son of Nimrod and king of Babylon, is succeeded by his son Ninus, who reigned over almost all Asia, except India. Abraham is born in his reign, about 1300 years before the building of Rome. Ninus builds Nineveh, subdues Zoroaster, king of Bactria, and burns his books on magic. After the death of his father Belus, he made an image of him; hence arose idolatry. Baal and Beel, which occur in various combinations, are forms of Bel, the general name for idol. Further remarks on the origin of idolatry and of the heathen gods and superstitions from Alexander Neckham, Isidore, Augustine, and Jerome. Upon the death of Ninus, who was killed by an
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

arrow in war, his wife Semiramis reigns, feigning herself to be his son. She conquers Ethiopia and India. She is at last murdered by her own son Ninian. Dress and manners of the Assyrian court.

CAP. X.

The History of Abraham.

The Third Age of the World.—Abraham, the son of Terah, was born two hundred and ninety-two years after the flood. He and his father migrate from Ur of the Chaldees to Haran in Mesopotamia. After Terah's death he goes to Shechem, and thence to Pentapolis, and at length descends into Egypt. He teaches the Egyptians arithmetic and astronomy. He returns from Egypt, and settles near Hebron, or Kirjath-Arba, i.e., the City of Four, because the four greatest patriarchs were buried there. He pays tithes to Melchisedech, who is said to be the same as Shem. Some connect the institution of the Jubilee with Abram. His main Hagar becomes the mother of Ishmael and the Saracens. Abraham and his family receive the covenant of circumcision. His name then changed to Abraham; hence the Jews give their sons names when they are circumcised. Destruction of Sodom.

CAP. XI.

History of Isaac and his family. Early history of Greece.

Birth of Isaac; death and burial of Sarah. Abraham marries Hagar, now called Keturah. Isaac marries Rebecca. Cres reigns in Crete; he is one of the Curetes. The appearance of Minerva at the lake Tritonis; she invented spinning and other arts. Rise of the Argive kingdom under Inachus; his son Phoroneus first gave laws to the Greeks; Phegeus, his brother, invented chapels in honour of the gods. Their sister Isis, or Io, teaches the Egyptians agriculture and letters: her sistrum. The birth of Epaphus a fable, as his mother Io was in the time of Isaac, while his father Jupiter lived in the days of Joshua. The flood in Greece in the reign of Ogyges.

History of Jacob, son of Isaac by Rebecca. He serves Laban; his artfulness. Joseph, his son, is sold into Egypt to Potiphar, an eunuch. Potiphar becomes priest of Heliopolis. Death and burial of Isaac. Pharaoh's dream. Jacob comes into Egypt.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. XII.

History of the patriarchs concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Apis, third king of Argos, comes into Egypt; and is there after his death worshipped as Serapis. Apis appears annually in the form of a bull emerging from the Nile. In the reign of Argus, fourth king of Argos, corn began to be cultivated in Greece. Jacob dies, is embalmed, and afterwards buried in Hebron. Legends of Prometheus, Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres. Joseph dies, and he and his brethren, as they die, are buried in Hebron. Their bones afterwards translated to Shechem.

pp. 306-314.

Cap. XIII.

History of Moses.

Moses, the son of Amram, was born in the time of the Pharaoh known as Amenophis. Pharaoh's cruelty to the Israelites; their male children cast into the Nile. Moses is saved by Thermuth, the daughter of Pharaoh. Moses brought before the king when an infant; he tramples the king's crown, on which an image of Jove is carved, under foot. His narrow escape from being killed; he then severs his own tongue with burning coals, and is accordingly supposed to have acted in the matter of the crown in childish simplicity. Moses in process of time leads the Egyptians against the invading Ethiopians, whom he blockades in Saba, the royal city. Tharbis, the king's daughter, surrenders the city to Moses, on condition of his marrying her. Tharbis opposed his return to Egypt; but he gave her a ring of forgetfulness, and so returned. While visiting his brethren in the land of Goshen, he slew an Egyptian who had smitten an Israelite. The deed being known, he fled into the land of Midian, and married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro the priest. Legends of Antaeus, Phaeton, and Deucalion. Cecrops the first king of Athens. - - - - pp. 314-326.

Cap. XIV.

History of Moses concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Moses and Aaron stand before Pharaoh, who refuses to let Israel go. The plagues of Egypt. The Exodus. The miracles in
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

the wilderness. Moses receives the law and constructs the tabernacle. The spies are sent into Canaan, and return. The Israelites wander in the desert forty years. Death of Moses. Cæcrops leaves Egypt and builds Athens. Corinth, anciently called Ephyra, built five years earlier. Io, afterwards called Isis, marries Telegonus in Egypt, by whom she has Epaphus. The temple at Delphi built by Erysichthon. Lacedæmon founded. Arcas, king of Argos, names Sicyonia Arcadia after himself. Egypt, formerly known as Aerea, receives its present name. History of Danaus and Egyptus. Legends relating to Bacchus, Mercury, and Hercules.


Cap. XV.

History of Joshua; early history of Egypt, Greece, and Italy. Legends about Jupiter and Saturn.

Joshua succeeds Moses; his acts; he governs Israel twenty-six years. Ericthonius; Busiris; Phenix and Cadmus. Rape of Europa. Her children. Agenor, king of Libya, and his family. Rationalistic explanation of the legend of Europa and her brothers. Jupiter reigns in Crete; the Cretans who show his tomb are mis-called liars by the lying Greeks, who feign him to be God of gods. History of Jupiter and Saturn considered. Joshua, before his death, makes a covenant with the people, and confirms it by pouring water on the ground. The heathen ratified covenants with the blood of a pig. The reasons for each, and the difference between them.

- - pp. 338–346.

Cap. XVI.

Othniel. Early history of Greece and Phenicia.

Chushan, king of Mesopotamia, subdues Israel. Othniel, Caleb’s brother, delivers the Israelites, and becomes their judge forty years. The eight years of servitude must be reckoned as part of the forty years. Birth of Apollo, (not the Delphian Apollo, who lived earlier,) in Delos; and of Bacchus in Thebes. Cadmus brings letters to Greece, and Phenix to Phenicia. The latter were written in vermilion. Numerical value of the Greek letters. Demeter and Danae lived at this time. Foundation of Corinth.

Cap. XVII.

History of Ehud and Shamgar. Notices of many ancient heroes, especially Hercules.

Ehud, a left-handed man, delivers Israel from Eglon, king of Moab. He was the son of Gera, the son of Jamin, or Gemminus. Shamgar slays six hundred Philistines with a plough-share. Notices of various events in the lives of Triptolemus, Orcus, Proserpine, Persens, Helle, Amphion, Pelops, &c. Exploits and labours of the later Hercules. - pp. 352-362.

Cap. XVIII.

Explanations of the mythical narratives of antiquity.

Myths arose principally in the time of Ehud. The fables of Esop. St. Augustine and Isidore explain away the myths of Erichthonius, Geryon, the Gorgons, and others, so as to bring out a historical sense. The different kinds of fables; those of Menander, Esop, Hesiod. The traditions relating to Mercury belong to the time of Ehud. Musical instruments then invented. Introduction of the chorus into Greece. pp. 362-378.

Cap. XIX.

History of Deborah and her contemporaries.


Cap. XX.

History of Gideon and his contemporaries.

SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XXI.

Histories of Abimelech and Tola, and their contemporaries.

Abimelech, son of Gideon by a concubine, slays his brethren, all except one. He judges Israel three years, and is succeeded by Tola, who remains in office twenty-three years. Battle of Lapithae and Centaurs. Medea goes to Colchis. Faunus reigns in Italy. War of Vcesores, king of Egypt, with the Scythians. The Amazons. - - pp. 388-394.

CAP. XXII.

History of Jair, and contemporary events.

Jair and his thirty sons, who rule over thirty cities. After his death Israel became subject to the Philistines and Ammonites. Carthage now founded according to some. The nymph Carmentis introduces the Latin alphabet. Different stages of the Latin language. - - pp. 394-396.

CAP. XXIII.

History of Jephthah and his contemporaries.

Jephthah, the son of a harlot, judged Israel six years. Rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus. The Erythrean Sibyl now delivers her prophecies concerning Christ. There were ten Sibyls in all. Derivation of the word. Succession of the kings of Athens, one of whom Demophon, aids the Greeks in the Trojan war. The Argonautic expedition. Jason's subsequent expedition to Troy, which he laid waste, and returned home, carrying off Hesione, daughter of Laomedon, king of Troy. - - - - pp. 398-406.

CAP. XXIV.

History of Ibzan and of the Trojan war.

Ibzan of Bethlehem was judge of Israel seven years. Priam promises to forgive the Greeks all injuries, if his sister Hesione were restored. This being refused, the Trojan war breaks out afresh. The history of that war traced to its close. - - - - pp. 406-418.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

Cap. XXV.

History of Elon and Abdon, and of the return of the Greeks from the Trojan war.

Elon, of the tribe of Zebulon, judges Israel ten years. Variations of chronologers. Abdon judges Israel eight years. In the third year of his government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. The Greeks on their way home met with many troubles. The companions of Diomede were changed into birds, and haunted a temple of Diomede (who had miraculously disappeared, and was held as a god) near Mount Garganus in Apulia. Varro confirms the story by the changes of Ulysses’ companions into hogs, and of certain Arcadians into wolves. Augustine heard stories of Italian witches who turned men into beasts by giving them cheese. Apuleius’ account of himself. A similar account related by William of Malmesbury, in the time of Peter Damian. St. Augustine’s story about Prsestantius. He and Giraldus incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories. pp. 418-430.

Cap. XXVI.

The wanderings of Eneas after the fall of Troy.

Accompanied by Anchises and Ascanius he comes to Sicily, and while intending to sail to Italy is driven by a storm to Africa, where, according to the common account, he meets Dido, who falls in love with him. But there are chronological reasons against the common account, as Eneas seems to have lived three centuries before Carthage was built. Dido burns herself to death on a funeral pile. Eneas comes to Italy, allies himself with Evander, who reigned in the Palatine Mount, and in the end overcomes the Tuscan and Latins, and builds Lavinium, named after his wife, Lavinia, a daughter of king Latinus. Ascanius (or Iulus), son of Eneas by Creusa, succeeds Eneas, who fell in fighting against Mezentius; he leaves Lavinium and builds Alba Longa. He is succeeded by Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother.

In the time of Sampson, who judged Israel twenty years, occurred the events of the Odyssey. Pyrrhus is slain by Orestes. Homer now flourished, according to some. Age of Homer uncertain. pp. 432-440.
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

CAP. XXVII.

History of Eli and his contemporaries. Early History of Britain.

Eli presided over Israel forty years, according to Josephus and Isidore, but according to the Septuagint for twenty only. Ruth's history. The sons of Hector recover Troy. Silvius Posthumus begins to reign. Brutus, the son of Posthumus, occupies Britain. Discrepancy between the Roman and British accounts about the father of Brutus. Brutus, whose mother died in childbirth, kills his father when out hunting. Expelled from Italy into Greece, he arrives at length after various wanderings in Britain, destroys the giants, and becomes first monarch of the island, which he calls after his own name. He builds Trinovantum, now called London. He begets three sons, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and after governing Britain for twenty-four years, dies. The kings of Sicyon come to an end.

Samuel governs Israel twelve years; his institution of the schools of the prophets. Locrinus, son of Brutus, reigns in Britain. His wife, Guendolena, who slew him, reigns after his death for fifteen years.

CAP. XXVIII.

History of Saul and his contemporaries.

Saul reigns over Israel twenty years according to Josephus. Eneas Silvius, son of Posthumus, reigns over the Latins thirty-one years. Codrus, the last king of Athens, begins to reign. He provokes his own death in order to insure victory to his country. Change of government at Athens.

Madden, son of Locrinus and Guendolena, reigns in Britain forty years, and begets Mempricius and Maulus. Death of Saul and his sons. The third age of the world now concludes.

pp. 448-450.
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Vol. 1.

Introd. p. xii., notes, col. 1, l. 9. In Chester Cathedral an arched monument is still to be seen in the wall of the south aisle near the choir, which corresponds perfectly with the description quoted, and it has been recently supposed by some antiquaries, as I learn, to be the tomb of Higden. The opinion, so far as I can judge, seems to be well founded.

Page xviii., line 13. "There was . . . facts of the case." This sentence must be cancelled, and the first three lines of the note also. Roger Frend was abbot of Chester, not in Higden's time, as my argument required, but about a century earlier.

Page xxv., line 12, for Jerusalem read Jerusalem.

Page xxxii., note, col. 1, l. 18, and p. 256, note 20, for Auroch read Aurochs.

Page 64, line 1, for omnis read omnis.

Page 190, line 11, for Moysis read Mysi with the MSS. It had escaped me that this is the Latin form of the genitive in the Vulgate, &c.


Page 224, line 3, for sepeliebatur read sepeliebatur.

Page 335, line 28, for he read be.

Pages 394-430. This metrical description of Wales is published by Mr. T. Wright among the poems of Walter Mapes, Camden Soc., 1841, to whom some old lists of his works ascribe it. Mr. Dimock, however, has shown (Pref. to Gir. Cambr., vol. vi. p. li.) that there is no reason to doubt that Higden is the author. Mr. Wright's text, which I have examined throughout, has not a single variable reading of importance.

Vol. 2.

The erroneous and defective references which have been corrected in the introduction or notes are not noticed here.

Page 6, line 5. Solinus, add cap. 22 here and at pp. 10, 14, 22.

Page 10, line 4. After quartodecimo, add cap. 6.

Page 10, line 6. After Giraldus add Top. Hib. i. 3; where also the citation at p. 12, l. 10, occurs.

Page 10, line 7. Orosius, add lib. i. c. 2.

Page 10, line 12. After primo add cap. 1; the same chapter is referred to pp. 12 (ter.), 16, 142, 150.

Page 14, line 15. The true reference is to Plin., lib. xvii. c. 4 (al. 6).

Page 26, line penult. After Itinerario add ii. 10.

Page 38, line 4, insert semicolon after villas, and cancel it after cantredis.

Page 48. After Alfridus add lib. i. p. 8, who has rheuma for fleuma.

Page 50, line 14. After quarto add p. 283 (Sav.).
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 54, line 19. After secundo add p. 234 (Sav.), and p. 254 (Sav.) at p. 58, l. 10.

Page 56, notes, col. 2, line 11, cancel C. D.


Page 62, line 15. After tertio add p. 258 (Sav.).


Page 66, line 15. After Britonum add lib. iii. c. 17.

Page 70, line 2. The first citation from William of Malmesbury occurs lib. iii. p. 258 (Sav.); the other (l. 17) at p. 279 (Sav.).

Page 74, line 1. After Itinerario add ii. 11. But little of the description of Chester is found in Giraldus; it is probably due to Higden himself.


Page 84, line 5. After Alfridus add lib. vi. p. 97; and lib. vi. passim after Alfridus at p. 100, l. 2; and lib. iii. p. 32, after Alfridus, p. 110, l. 3.

Page 110. After primo, l. 15, add p. 195 (Sav.), (in part).

Page 130. After tertio, l. 17, add p. 269 (Sav.). For the other reference to William (l. 10), which I cannot find in lib. iv., compare Will. Malm. De Pont., lib. i. p. 292 (Sav.); also Bed. lib. ii. c. 20.

Page 132, line 7. After tertio add p. 259 (Sav.).

Page 132, line 11. The early part occurs at Bed. lib. iv. caps. 3, 4; the latter (beginning sed et ipse down to exstiterat) is mostly from c. 12; we should read, however, with Bede and Trevisa, Ecgyfrid for Oswy. After this Higden begins to speak for himself; but the information is no doubt derived from William of Malmesbury (De Pont. passim).

Page 134, line 5, for post read primo, see note.


Page 146, line ult. After Gaunfridus add lib. v. c. 3.


Page 162, line 4. After tertio add p. 258 (Sav.).

Page 164, line 3. Cancel Giraldus.


Page 172, line 8. After sexto add p. 359 (Sav.).

Page 176, line 7, for assimilantur read assimilantur.

Page 190, line 14. See Senec. Contr., lib. i. in princi. (t. iii. p. 50, Elz.).


Page 226, line 3. Tubal; Tubal, the reading of D, is correct.

Page 226, lines 6 and 22. See Joseph. Ant. Jud., lib. i. c. 2. But Petrus, whom Higden follows, has more than Josephus about Jabal.

Page 230, lines 7 and 14. See Joseph., u.s., c. 3, § 3 and § 1. (The latter citation occurs in Petrus, cap. 1, whence Higden derives it.)

Page 232, line 6. See Joseph., u.s., c. 2, § 3 (quoted from Marianus, col. 46, by Higden, almost word for word).

Page 236, line 7. The true reference is to Joseph., u.s., lib. 1, c. 3, § 3. For the other allusions, see Isid., lib. v., c. 39; Hieron. Op., t. viii. col. 71 (Migne); Marianus Scotus, col. 48; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vi. b.

Page 237, line 12. Print the words in Roman character, and substitute comma for colon after quarto.
Page 244, lines 21 and 22. See Isid., lib. v. c. 39; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vii.
Page 248. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., c. 4, § 3.
Page 252, line penult. For Britannicum read Britannicum.
Page 274, line 17. After primo add c. 4.
Page 280, line 14. After octavo add c. 11.
Page 290, line ult. The statement is really derived from Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 57.
Page 296, lines 2 and 4. Tritonia and Pallene are preferable readings. So Augustine and Isidore (lib. viii. c. 11, § 75).
Page 296, line 21. For Deebore read Delbore.
Page 310, line 7. The true reference is to Isid. xix. c. 32; but Petrus, c. 86, is Higden's real authority, who has more than Isidore.
Page 314, line 1. After quinto add c. 39.
Page 330, line penult. After tertio add cap. 1.
Page 334, line 16. After primo add cap. 11.
Page 334, note, col. 1, l. 5. For Vers. read Venet.
Page 336, line 12. See Joseph., u. s., lib. i. c. 15; but he does not give the name of Afer's daughter.
Page 338, line 2. After quinto add cap. 39, but Isidore has 27, not 28.
Page 350, line 5. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 3.
Page 350, line penult. Demetra occurs in Jerome's version of Eusebias, and in Marianus Scotus; it is rare as a form of the ablative. See Pape, s. v.
Page 372, line 16. See Macrobius sup. Somn. Scip., lib. i. c. 2, and c. 1 for what is said of Plato and Cicero in the same extract.
Page 384, line 6. After quintodecimo add cap. 2, § 36.
Page 388, line 15. After quadragesimo tertio add cap. 1; and after secundo, p. 402, line 3, add cap. 7.
Page 396, line 4. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 4.
Page 398, line 8. After octavo add c. 8.
Page 418, line 8, sqq. Tucitly copied from Marianus Scotus, col. 105.
Page 424. After secundo add § 171, p. 282 (Hardy).
Page 434, line 1. After octavodecimo add cap. 6.

TREVISA'S TEXT, AS EDITED, COLLATED WITH MS. HARL. 1900 (B.) AND MS. COTTON. TIBER. D. VII. (γ,) IN CERTAIN DOUBTFUL PASSAGES.

Vol. 1.

Page 13, note 14] in caas, β; on caas, γ. This reading is correct.
Page 15, note 9] Pat is wanting in β and γ, and should be cancelled.
ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 21, note 1] β. inserts I only after hat, and omits it before take; γ. is much burnt, but seems to have hat y wyte in pe byggynynge. This reading at any rate completes the sense.

Page 87, note 10] Read fether with a.; vpery, γ.

Page 89, note 9] Read his with β. γ. Cx.

Page 95, note 2] β. and γ. also omit of pe tyme, rightly.

Page 95, note 3] Read languages with β. γ. Cx.

Page 119, note 13] Read to fully with a. β. γ.

Page 155, note 1] Read wythe is wonder with a. β. γ.


Page 175, note 8] Read pe empere with a. β.; the empery, γ.

Page 187, note 9] osels, β.; osels, γ. This reading is correct.


Page 189, note 1] Read wel fiste with a. β. γ.

Page 193, note 6] The words in brackets occur also in β. γ.

Page 197, note 10] Omit in before jilke with γ.; β. however has it.

Page 213, note 2] a falle (i.e. fallen), γ., rightly; a nalle or a nalle, β.

Page 227, note 2] in, β. γ.

Page 251, note 1] γ. omits the sentence in brackets; β contains it.

Page 277, note 7] omit the clause with β. γ. Cx.

Page 303, note 3] seyle, β. γ.

Page 317, note 9] Read of wenchs with β. γ.

Page 373, note 6] for chirche yerde, β. and γ. have chirche heyn.

Page 403, note 6] seges, β.


Page 419, note 15] β. and γ. agree with text.

Page 419, note 16] β. and γ. agree with Cx.

Vol. 2.

For this volume the readings of β. are given in the notes throughout; those of γ. are mentioned here up to p. 211, after which they also are recorded in the notes.

Page 7, note 13] after β. add, and γ.

Page 9, line 1] Read, with γ., ef.

Page 21, note 2] γ. agrees with text.


Page 39, line 20] longe ye be, γ.; which adds wel schort after cold, below.

Page 49, note 4] β. and γ. have atwyne, correctly.

Page 83, line 4, lotynge] luttynge, γ.

Page 83, line 14, here is here] orb (erh, β.) ys jar, γ.

Page 85, note 1] β. and γ. agree with the text.


Page 183, note 1] add, and γ.

Page 207, note 7] γ. has seceye.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

CAP. XXXIX.

De Britannia Majori jam Anglia dicta.¹

Post insulas oceani libet Britanniam² describere,
cujus terrae gratia haec presens lucrbrata est historia;
ubi dicetur:—

Incipiant capitula.

i⁰. De varia insulae nuncupatione.
ije. De situ ejus et dimensione.³
iij⁰. De ejus prerogativis⁴ attollendis.
iv⁰. De mirabilibus in ea⁵ stupendis.
v⁰. De partibus ejus principalibus.
vi⁰. De insulis collateralibus.
vij⁰. De plateis ejus⁶ regalibus.
vijj⁰. De famosis fluminibus.
ix⁰. De antiquis urbibus.
x⁰. De provinciis et comitatibus.

¹ Majori . . . dicta] om. A.C.D.;
quia et Anglia. Beda libro primo,
B.
² libet Britanniam] Britannia
restat, B.; A. omits libet.
³ et dimensione] om. B.
⁴ prerogativis ejus, B.
⁵ ejus, B.
⁶ ejus] Added from Gale; om.
A.B.E.
De Britannia. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

After the yles of the ocean hit pleaseth vs to describe Briteyne, for cause of whom this presente story and chronicle was compiled. Where hit schalle be seide firste of the diuersite of names of that yle. In the secunde of the site of hit and dimencion. In the thrydde of the prerogatuyres of hit to be extollede. In the iijthe of mervayles and wondres hit be haide in wondre. In the xthe of the principalle partes in hit. In the vjthe of yles colateralle to hit. In the vijthe of the kynges hye wyes. In the viijthe of famose floodes. In the ixthe of olde citees. In the xthe of prouinces and of schires. In the xjthe of lawes and of the hard wordes of hit. In the xijthe of the realmes and of the merkes of theyme.

1 ilond, Cx., who has various other slight alterations in this chapter.  
2 be] om a.  
3 twelfe, a.
De varia insula nuncupatione.

PRIMITUS hæc insula vocabatur Albion ab albis rupibus circa littora maris a longe apparentibus; tandem a Bruto eam acquirente dicta est Britannia. Deinde a Saxonibus sive Anglis eam conquirentibus vocata est Anglia; sive ab Angela regina, clarissimi ducis Saxonum filia, quæ post multa tempora eam possedit; sive, ut vult Isidorus, Etymolog., quinto decimo, Anglia dicitur ab angulo orbis; vel secundum Bedam, libro primo, beatus Gregorius videns Anglorum pueros Romanæ venales, alludens patriæ vocabulo ait: Vero

---

1 et quando, A.
2 The numbers and divisions of the chapters are not given quite uniformly in the MSS. of the text and versions.
3 Britannia Majori primo nomen fuit Albion, C.D., which omit all the preceding part of the chapter.
4 dicitur, B.
5 proclarissimi, C. (not D.)
6 qui, B.
7 possedit eam, B.
8 ut vult secundum Ysidorum, C.D.
9 de gestis Anglorum added in C.D.
10 Romanæ om. C.D.
of bishopriches\(^1\) and of bissoppes sees; pe fourtenpe how many manere men haued woned and i-dwelld\(^2\) in pat lond.\(^3\) Pe fifteenpe\(^4\) of longage,\(^5\) of maneres, and vasage of men of pat lond. \textit{De varia insulae nuncupatione.} Firste pis ilond hiȝte\(^6\) Albion, as it were pe white lond, of white rokkes aboute pe clyues of pe see pat were i-seie wide.\(^7\) Aftirward Bruyt conquered pis lond and cleped hit Bretayne after his owne name; panne Saxons oper Englische conquered pat\(^8\) lond, and cleped hit Anglia, pat is Engelonl; oper it hatte Anglia, and lond pat name of a quene pat owed pis lond pat hec Angela, and was a noble dukes douȝster of Saxouns. Opere as Isidre saiþ, Eth. 15, Anglia haþ pat name, as hit were an angul and a corner of pe world; oper, as Beda seiþ, libro primo: Scint\(^9\) Gregorio seiþ\(^10\) Englische children to selle\(^11\) at Rome, and he accored to pe name of pe lond, and

\begin{quote}
In the xiiij\(\text{th}\) chapitre of byschopryches, and of the sectes of peim. In the xiiij\(\text{th}\) of how mony, what peple, and when that londe was inhabite. In the xv\(\text{th}\) of the langage of the inhabitatores of hit, and of the maneres of theyme. \textit{Of diversite of names of the yle of Britayne}.\(^12\) That yle was calledde firste Albion, of white hylles appereinge a ferre abowe the brynkes of the see. And at the laste hit was calledde Britayne by Brute getteng hit. After that hit was calledde Englonlde of the Saxones other Englishe men conquerenge hit. Other elles hit was calledde Anglia, of Angela quene and doȝter of the nowble duke of Saxones, whiche hade that londe in possession by mony yeres. Other elles, after Ysoder, Ethi., xv\(\text{th}\) lio, Anglia, whiche is calledde Englonlde, toke of hit of an angle of the worlde; other elles, after Bede in his firste booke, blessedde Gregory seenge childer of Englonlde to be sette furthe to be solde at Rome seide: Now truly thei may be calledde Englishe men (Angells or Angellysmen),\(^13\) for the
\end{quote}

\(^1\) bishops riches, a.
\(^2\) have dwelled, Cx.
\(^3\) ylond, Cx.
\(^4\) fifteenep, a.
\(^5\) langage, Cx.; longe age, MS. and a.
\(^6\) hit, a.; heyte, Cx.
\(^7\) fro ferre, Cx.
\(^8\) this, Cx.
\(^9\) Seyn, a.
\(^10\) seiþ, a.
\(^11\) to sellynge, a.; (not Cx.)
\(^12\) This is marked cap. xl. in Harl. MS.; but the capitulation is here and elsewhere brought into agreement with the Latin text.
\(^13\) The words in a parenthesis are inserted in a later hand.

Cap. XL.

De situ ejus et dimensione.

seide: 1 Sopeliche aungelis, for hir face 2 schynep as aungelis; for pe noble of pe lond schone 3 in pe children 4 face. Alfr. De Brytysche Anglia is 5 i-cleped pe ower world; and for grete plente of al good pe Grete Charles eleped hit his owne chambr. Solinus. Pe egge 6 of pe Frenshe clif 7 were 8 pe ende of pe world, nere pat pe ilond of Bretayne is nyh worthy to haue pe name 9 of anoper world. 10 Alfr. Pis ilond is i-cleped insula, for hit is in salo, pat is pe see, and is often i-bete wip dyuers cours of wateres and 11 stremes and wip 12 wawes of pe see.

De situ eius et dimensione. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. This Britayne is acounted an holy lond bothe in oure stories and also in stories of Grees, and is i-sette aforn aSc 14 Germania, Gallia, Fraunce, 15 and Spayne bytwene pe north and pe west and pe see bytwene. Pis lond is fifty myle from ehere of theyme dothe JifFe grete resplendence lyke to an MS. Harl. angelle; for the noble of the londe schewethe in the siȝte of the childre. That londe of Englonde is callede as that other worlde, whom Grete Charles the kyng e. 59. b. callede his chambr for pe habundaunce of plente of alle goode thynges. Solinus. For the costes of Fraunce scholde be as an ende of the worlde, but that Britayne desequte the name of an other worlde. Alfr. That londe of Englonde is callede an yle, in that hit is trewblode ofte with waters and with pe incurses of enmyes.

Of the site and dimencion of hit. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. That londe of Britayne lyethe from the costes of Germany, of Fraunce, and of Speyne, betwene the northe and weste, departed from themye by the see. That londe is

1 Cx. inserts They ben.
2 name face, MS.
3 schoon, a.
4 So also a. and Cx.
5 So Cx. and β.; Anglians, MS.
6 edge, Cx.
7 clyve, a.
8 sholde be, Cx.
9 So Cx.; names, MS.
10 If the ylond of Brytaynne were not, which is worthy to haue the name, Cx.
11 wip, a., Cx.
12 wip] om. a. (not Cx.)
13 a noble, Cx., and β., which seems right.
14 sette agaynset, Cx.
15 We should probably read or Fraunce.
Hæc abest a Gessoriae Morinorum gentis littore proximo trajectu milium quinquaginta. Beda, libro primo, capitulo undecimo. Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali mundi vertice jacet, lucidas sæstae noctes habet; ita ut sæpe medio noctis tempore in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneat vespertinum, an jam advenerit matutinum, utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem per plagas boreales redeunte; unde fit ut plurimæ longitudinis habeat dies in sæstate, (sicut eontra noctes in hieme,) id est horarum xviij. Et iterum in hieme noctes sunt horarum xviij. et dies sex; cum tamen in Armenia, Macedonia, Italia, caeterisque ejusdem lineæ regionibus longissima dies sive nox sit solummodo xv. horarum æquinoctialium; brevissima vero dies sive nox novem duntaxat horas compleat. Plinius. In Meroe insula, quæ caput est Æthiopum, sic fit ut longissimus dies sit duodecim horarum æquinoctialium; Alexandræ Ægypti xiiij. horarum; in Italia xv.; in

1 Hoc, B.
2 Normannorum, B.; Gellaria Armoricorum, C.; Gessarico Armoricorum, D.
3 miliariorum, C.D.
4 capitulo xi] om. A.C.; B.D. omit the reference. It should be primo.
5 adveniat, A.; ecenerit, B.
6 So C.D.; longas, A.E.
7 sicut...xviij.] Scilicet horarum xviii., et noctes breves, scilicet horarum sex, B.
8 sint, E.; habet, D.
9 horarum] om. A.
10 cum... Macedonia] Achaia et, C.D.
11 ejusdem libet, B.
12 Meroe, B.
13 duodecim sit, B.
14 Ægypti] om. C.D.
15 horarum added in B. and Gale.
from the peole of Gesserike and from the brynkes in that MS. Harl. cuntre in the nyeste place by 1 myles. Beda, libro primo. And for cause that londe lyethe in the northe partes of the worlde, hit hathe liȝhte nyȝhtes in the somer, in so moche that a question is made oftetymes abowe the myddes of the nyȝhte whejer hit be day or nay for cause of suche liȝhte; for the sonne is not ferre vnder the erthe from that cuntre, wherefore that cuntre hathe daies in the somer of a grete lengthhe, and longe nyȝhtes in the wyntere; that is to say, the daies be of xvij. howres in somer, and the nyȝhtes in wyntere of xvij. howres, and the day of xj. howres. Sythe in Armenia, Macedoyn, Ytaly, and other regions of the same costes, the longeste day other nyȝhte is but oonly of xv. howres equinoctialle, and pe moste schorte day other nyȝhte dothe complete oonly but ix. howres. Plinius. In an yl callede Meroris, which is as the hede of men of Ethioppe, where hit is that the longeste day is but of xij. howres equinoctialle, and at Alexandria in Egipte

---

1 Cx. omits the last four words. A space for two lines left blank in a. The text seems corrupt.
2 ilond, a., Cx.
3 hede, Cx.
4 hit, Cx.
5 whether, Cx.
6 equitid oper, a.
7 the, Cx.
8 goodr, a.
9 in pe, a.
10 egzlene, a.
11 Sentence varied in Cx.
12 after, Cx.
13 egzlane, a.
14 dice, a. (omitting houre); and so Cx.
15 Also in, Cx.
16 per] om. Cx.
17 chief, a.
18 black men, Cx.
Britannia xviij. Apud insulam Tīiae senis\(^1\) mensibus aestivalibus dies habetur\(^2\) continuus, et iterum senis\(^1\) mensibus brumalibus nox continua. Isidorus, libro quartodecimo. Britannia intra\(^3\) oceanum quasi extra orbem posita, adversa Gallis\(^4\) ad prospectum Hispanicæ sita\(^5\) est. Giraldus. Oblonga est et amplior in medio quam in extremis. Orosius. Britannia per longum extenditur ab austro in boream; ab euro habet Galliam,\(^6\) ab austro Hispaniam,\(^7\) ab aquilone Northuegiam,\(^8\) ab occasu Hiberniam; cujus proximum litus transmeantibus civitas apparat quæ dicitur Rutupi\(^9\) portus. Beda, libro primo. Quæ\(^10\) a gente Anglorum nunc corrupte vocatur Reptacestre.\(^11\) Solinius. Britannia octingenta millia passuum in longum\(^12\) detinet,\(^13\) si quis eam a Totenesio\(^14\) littore usque in Calidonicum angulum metiatur. Alfridus.\(^15\) Hoc est a loco qui Penwihtistert\(^16\) dicitur\(^17\) xv. leugis\(^18\) ultra Muchilstow\(^19\).

---

\(^1\) saevis, Gale, (twice).
\(^2\) habetur] om. B.
\(^3\) inter, A ; extra, C. (not D.)
\(^4\) Gallis, B.
\(^5\) sita] om. C.D.
\(^6\) Galliæs, C.D.
\(^7\) Hispanius, C.D.
\(^8\) Northuegiam, A.; Norwegian, B.
\(^9\) Rutupi, B.; Rutipi, Gale; Rupti, C.; Rutuphi, D.
\(^10\) Qui, B.
\(^11\) Repacestrietus, Gale.
\(^12\) in longum] longa, C.D.
\(^13\) continet, Gale (not Soliius).
\(^14\) Cathenies, B.
\(^15\) Alfridus, B., and so throughout.
\(^16\) Penwithistret, B.; Penwithistrete, Gale.
\(^17\) Hoc . . . dicitur] Hoc est a lo penwithistrete vocato, qui situs est, C. D.
\(^18\) So A.E.; leuciis, D., Gale.
\(^19\) So Michelstowe, B.C.; Michelsteve, A.; Michelstowe, D.; Michelistowe, Gale.
in Italia of fiftene houres; in Bretayne of eyȝtene houres; in pe lond pat hatte\(^1\) Tile alle pe sixe somer monipes is day, and alle pe sixe wynter monipes is nyght. Isidorus, libro quartodecimo. Britayne is i-sette wyn yvne ocean, as it were wyп oute pe world, and is i-sette nȝzenst Franque and Spayne. Giraldus. Bretayne is euen longe\(^2\) and larger in pe myddes\(^3\) pan in pe endes. Orosius. Bretayne streecẹp in lengẹ pe oute of pe soup [into pe north, and in pe soup]\(^4\) est side he\(^5\) hap Franque, in pe soup Spayne, in pe norp Norway, and in pe west Hibernia, pat is Irlond. Whan schipmen passip pe next clif of pat lond, pei seep a citee pat hatte Rutpinoup\.\(^6\) Beda, libro primo. Pat cite is now i-cleped schortliche of Englische men Reptacestre. Solinus. Bretayn is eyȝte hundred myle in lengẹ, and he be i-mete\(^7\) fro pe clyf of Tottenys to pe angle of Calidoun. Alfr. Pat is from pe Penwythis strete\(^8\) fiyten[ne]\(^9\) leges byȝonde Mochel\(^10\) Stowe in Cornwayle anon to Catenesse pat is byȝonde Scotlond. And Bretayne is more pan two hundred

of xiij. houres, and in Ytaly of xv. houres, in Britayn MS.HARL. other Englonde of xvij. houres; and the day in somere is\(^11\) continually by vj. monethes in an yle callede Tile, and nyȝhte continually by vj. other monethes. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Britayne is putte betwene the ocean, as with owte the world, sette as vn to the prospecte of Speyne. Giraldus. That londe of Englonde is longe, more large in the myddes of hit then in the extremites. Orosius. That londe of Britayne is extendede by lengthe from the f. 60. a. sowthe in to the northe, hauenge on the este to hit Franque, on the sowthe Speyne, on the northe Norway, on the weste Yrlonde, nye to the brynkes of whom a cite dothe appere to men sailenge in the see, whiche is callede Rutipi portus. Beda, libro primo. Whiche cite is callede now of the peple of Englonde Reptacestre. Solinus. Britayne conteynethe in longitude lx\(x\)(m\(1\) passes, what man that wylle take the measure of hit from Totenaise vn to the angle of Calidonia. Alfr. That is from a place that is callede Penwithstre, by xv. leukes behynde Mochillestowe in Cornwaile, vn to Catenesse: hauenge in latitude moo then ij. c. m\(1\).  

\(^1\) glonde named, Cx. 
\(^2\) evelange, a.; endlange, Cx. 
\(^3\) myddel, Cx. 
\(^4\) Added from a. and Cx. 
\(^5\) and he, MS. (not a. or Cx.) 
\(^6\) Rutpinoup, a. 
\(^7\) moten, Cx. 
\(^8\) Penwithisstert, a.; Penwithisstert, b.; Penwithstre, Cx. 
\(^9\) fiyten, a.; xv. myle, Cx. 
\(^10\) Mychels, Cx. 
\(^11\) is of vj. houres continually, MS. originally; but the cancel is apparently by the first hand.
in Cornubia usque Catenesse, quae est trans Scotiam. In latitudine autem habeat plus quam ducenta milia passuum a Menevia, scilicet que est in extremo Walliae, usque ad Gernemutham in Northfolchia. Beda. Exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum prouinciarium tractibus, quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragesies octies septuaginta milia passuum contineat.

CAP. XLI.

De prærogativis insulae attollendis.  
Giraldus in Topographia. Ut Gallia Britanniam, sic Britannia Hiberniam vincit serenitate, sed non salubritate. Beda, libro primo. Quia hae insulae opima est frugibis et arboribus, alendisque apta pecoribus ac jumentis, vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans, sed et avium atque bestiarum diversi generis terra marique, fluviiis piscosis atque fontibus praecordarum copiosis, isicio potissime abundat et anguilla. Wilhelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Ita ut rustici projectis piscibus suos pascant. Beda, libro primo. Capiuntur ibi scipissim delphini et vituli marini,
De prærogativis huius insulae attollendis. Capitulum quadragesimatum primum.

Giraldus in Topographia. As Francæ passe ὁ Breteynæ, so Breteynæ passe Ærlond in faire weder and nobiletæ, but nouȝt in helpe. Bedæ. For pis ilond is beest and bringeþ forþ trees and fruyt and reþeræ and oper bestæ, and wyn groweþ pere in som place. Pe lond hap plente of foules and of bestæ of dyuers manere kynde; pe lond is plenteuous and pe see also. Pe lond is noble, copyous, and riche of nobil welles and of nobil ryueres wip plente of fische; pere8 is grete plente of small fische, of samon, and of elys.9 Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. So þat cherles10 in som place fedeþ sowes11 with fische. Bedæ, libro primo. Pere beþ ofte ̄take dolphyns, and see calues, and baleyues,

passes from Meneuia, which is calle12 Seynte Dauid, whiche MS. HARL. place is in the extremite of Wales, vn to Gernemowthe13 which is in Norfolke: the circuite of whom conteynethe, after dyuerse auctores, x (*)(*) tymes viijthc and lxxthc m1 of passes.

Of the prerogatyses of that yle to be enhauncede. Capitulum quadragesimatum primum.

Lyke as Francæ excellethe Britayne, so in lyke wyse Britayne excedetho Yrlonde in beaunte, but not in wholesommesse. Bedæ, libro primo. For that londe is moste plenteuous in cornes and trees to be norischede, which is apte to bestæ; plenteuous of bryddes bothe in the see and londe of dyuere kyndes; habundante in waters fulle of fische, specially of pyke and cle. Willelmus de Pont, libro tertio. Where fisches be so habundante that charlæfed theire swyne with fische. Bedæ, libro primo. Fysches whiche be callede dolphynes be taken there oftymes, and porpas,

---

1 vttermeste, a., Cx.
2 in, Cx.
3 Gernemouth, a.; Yarmouth, Cx.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 topicis, MS., and similarly elsewhere.
6 is best to bryng forth, Cx.
7 ruther, Cx.
8 So a. and Cx.; þat, MS.
9 eles, a.
10 the peple, Cx.
11 their swyne, Cx.
12 So Harl. MS.
13 Yarmouth is written above the word in a later hand.
necnon et balsæae, exceptis variorum ca conchyliorum generibus, in quibus sunt et musculas inclusam continentes margaritam omnis quidem coloris, id est rubicundi, purpurei, jacintini, prasini, et maxime candii. Sunt et abundantes cochleae, quibus tinctura coecinei coloris efficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior.

grete fisches as hit were of whales kynde, and dyuers manere schelvische. Among pe\(^1\) schelvisch beep muscles\(^2\) pat hauep wip yyne hem margery perles of alle manere colour and hewe, of rody and rede, of purpur and of blew, and speciallich and moste of whyte. Pere is also plente of schelvischpe pat me dyep wip reed fyn\(^3\); pe redenesse perof is wonder fyn\(^4\) and stable, and steynep neure wip colde ne with hete, wip wete ne wip drie; but euere pe edere\(^5\) pe hewe is pe\(^6\) fairer. Pere beep also salt welles and hote welles; per of rennep stremes of hote bathes i-deled\(^7\) in dyuers places, acordynge for man and womman, and for alle manere age, olde and yonge. Basilius seip pat [pe water pat]\(^8\) rennep and passep by veynes of certayn metal takip in his cours grete hete. Pis ilond is plenteous of veynes of mettals, of bras, of iren, of leed, of tyn, of siluer also. Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitolo sexto. In pis ilond vnder pe torf of pe lond is good marl i-founde; pe prist of pe fatyncse driep himself peryn: so pat euere pe pickere pe felde is i-marled, pe better corn it wil bere. Pere is also anuer manere white marle, pat pe lond is pe better foure score yere pat pere wip is and other grete fisches, excepte diuerse kyndes of schelvisch fisches, as museles, in whom margarites be founde of euery colour, as reede of a purpulle colour, and of the colour of a iacinte, but moste specially white margarites. Also there be schelvisch fisches habundantly with whom a nowble reede colour is made and diode. The beautuous redennesse of whom may not appaire in eny tyme tho the hete of the somme, neither tho the injury of reyne, but euery the more hit is werede, and in age, hit is the moore feire in colour. Also in that loude be welles of salte and hoothe waters, and bathes conueniente to euery kynde by distincte places, for after the grete clerke Basilius water receyveth a feruente qualite when hit rennethe by diuerse mettals. Also that londe is plenteous in mony veynes of mettals, as of brasse, of yrne, of lede, of tynne, and of syluwr. Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitolo sexto. Also there is founde in that yle vnder the erthe a kynde of erthe, whom men calle marle, whiche caste in to thefeldes causeth grete plenteuousnes of corne. Also there is founde an other kynde of chalke, whiche dispersede infeldes maketh them plenteous vn to the lxxx. yere folowenge. Solinus. That yle

---

1 'whiche, Cx.
2 'mossles, a.
3 'that men dyen ther with fyn reed, Cx.
4 'fayr, Cx.; fayn, a.
5 'elder, Cx.
6 'pe] om. a. (not Cx.)
7 'to deled, a.; departed, Cx.
8 'Added from a. and Cx.
Gignit etiam 1 hæc insula lapidem gagatem, 2 cujus si
decorem 3 requiras, nigro-gemmeus 4 est; si naturam,
aqua ardet, oleo extinguitur; si potestatem, attritum 5
calefactor applicita detinet; 6 si beneficium, hydropicis
eam potantibus confert. 7 Beda. 8 Incensus ab igne ser-
pentes fugat; calefactor applicita detinet, 8aque 9 ut
succecum. 10 Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Ibi oves
lanigene, ferarum et cervorum multitudo, sed pauci
lupi. Ideoque oves ibi 11 tutius sine custodia in 12 caulis
relinquuntur. Ranulphus. In ea quoque sunt urbes 13
multæ speciosæ et opulentæ, flumina magna et piscosa,
nebora peculia 14 spatiosa, gleba terræ mineris et
salinis copiosa. 15 In ea quippe 16 sunt lapidicinæ marmo-
ris vari, saxi rufi 17 et albi, mollis et solidi, calcis-
que 18 candidæ. Est etiam 19 ibi 20 argilla alba et rubea
ad componendum vasa fictilia, et tegulis tingendis 21
velut altera Samia multum accommoda; 22 denique

1 et, A.
2 gagantem, C. (not D.)
3 colorem, C.D.
4 nigra gemma, B.C. (not D.)
5 attritu] om. B.
6 si ... aque] om. B.
7 confer, C. (not D.)
8 libro primo added in C.D.
9 aque] om. A.
10 succinctum, B.
11 ibi] om. C. (not D.)
12 custodia in] om. B.
13 civitates, C.D.
15 abundans, C.D.
16 quoque, C.; quidem, D.
17 rubi, C.
18 calcis et, B.; candidi, MSS. (not Gale.)
19 ibi quoque, C.D.
20 ibi] om. A.
21 tingendis] om. C. (not D.);
Trevisa read tegendis.
22 Clause abbreviated in C.D.
gendrethe a ston that is callede iette. If thou inquire the MS. HARL.
beawte of hit, hit is blacke; if thou inquire the nature, hit brenmeth in water, and is extinte with oyle; if thou inquire the vertu of hit, that ston made hoothe with rubbenshe dothe attracte chaffe to hit. If thou inquire the benefite, hit helpeth moche men hauenge the dropyce, drynkenge hit. *Beda.* That ston made in powdre, and caste in to the fire, expellete serpentes. *Isidorus, libro quinto-decimo.* There be schepe plentuous in wolle, and moche dere of diuerse kyndes, fewe wolphes, perfore schepe be lefte in more suerte in theire places. R. In that loade be many feire cites, grete waters and fulle of fishe, and plentuous in wodes, where be also mynes of stones diuerse in colour, redde and white, softe and harde, and white chalke. Also there is white cleye and redde, where of thei make pottes

---

1 Reference added from a. and Cx.
2 ye wil knowe, Cx.
3 of ] om. a.
4 Added and restored from 3 and Cx.
5 chaufed, Cx.
6 if, a.
7 watt, a.
8 Cx. (who prints succunus) has considerable omissions in the previous sentence.

\[\text{Added from a. and Cx.}\]
\[\text{So a. and Cx.; felde, MS.}\]
\[\text{So a. and Cx.; wordes, MS.}\]
\[\text{wclt} \text{right, Cx.}\]
\[\text{quareres, a.}, \text{quareis, Cx.}\]
\[\text{soft, Cx.}\]
\[\text{chakl, a.}\]
\[\text{lym, a.}\]
\[\text{make pottes, crokkes, Cx.}\]
\[\text{brand, a.}\]
\[\text{cowere, Cx.; and so often.}\]
lanam ejus zelat Flandria, coria et pelles Norman-
nia, ferrum et plumbum Vasconia, mineras et sales
Hibernia, aera ejus nivea universa sitit Europa. Alfri-
dus. Ceterum Britannia omni materia asfluit, quae
pretio 2 ambitiosa seu usu 3 necessaria est ferrariis, et
salinis nunquam deficit. Unde et quidam metricus in
laudem 4 ejus sic prorupit. 5 Henricus de Prerogativis

Angliae: Versus: 6

Anglia terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,
Anglia plena jocis, gens libera digna 7 jocari ;
Libera gens, cui libera mens et libera lingua,
Sed lingua melior liberiorque 8 manus.
9 Anglia, terrarum 10 decus et flos finitimarum,
Est 11 contenta sui fertilitate boni.
Externas gentes consumptis rebus egentes,
Quando fames laedit, recreat et reficit.

1 coria et pelles, B.
2 quae pretio] quod predicto, C.
(not D.)
3 visu, D. (clerical error.)
4 et... laudem] in laudes, C.D.
5 scribitur, C.D.
6 de... Versus] om, C.D.; A.B.,
Gale omit all the reference.

7 plena, B.
8 liberaque, B.
9 Item Henricus, A. B.
10 terra, A.
11 Et, Gale.
were in pe other Samia, pat hatte Samos also. Flaundres ¹ londe, pe wolfe ² of pis londe, and ³ Normandie ⁴ pe skynnes and pe velles; ⁵ Gasquyn ⁶ pe iren and pe leed; Irlond pe ore and pe salt; [al] ⁷ Europa londe and desirep ⁸ pe white metal of pis londe. Alfridas. ⁹ Bretayne hæp i-now of alle matire ¹⁰ pat pere nedeþ begge ¹⁰ and selle, oþer pat ¹¹ is nedeþ to manis vse; ¹² þere lakkþ neþer ¹³ salt ne iren. Þerfore a versifioure in his metre preyseþ the lond in pis manere: Engelond is good lond, fruytful of þe wolfe, but ¹⁴ a corner; Engelond ful of pleyn, fremen well warþy to pleye; þie men, þie þonges, hert þre; free þeþ al þe þesend; ¹⁵ here lond is more þre, more better ¹⁶ þan here tonge. Also Henricus: ¹⁷ Engelond hiþ of londe, ¹⁸ þouver of londes al aboute; þat londe is ful payde wip fruyte and corn ¹⁹ of his owne. ¹⁰

Stranige ²¹ men þat neþeþþ, 
þat lond wel ofte releueþ. 
Whan hunger greueþ, 
þat lond alle suche men ²² sedeþ.

and tylestones. The wolfe off which londe men of Flaundres ¹ M S. H A R L. lünde greytely; and Normandy, the leder of hit and skynnes; Vasconia yrne and lede. Whiche Britayne is a londe habundante in metalles, and in pleasure that is necessary to the lyfe of man, in to the lawde of whom a metricion seith: Englonde is a plentiful londe, and an angle of the worlde. That londe is fulle of disportes, whiche peple is worthy to make disportes, the tonge of whom is goode, and the honde more liberalle. Item Henricus sic. The londe of Briteyne is the worschipp and floure of regiones of the costes of the see, whiche londe is contente with the propre fertilitie of hit selfe, refreschenge other straunge pepele hausenge nede

¹ So a. and Cx.; Flaundreþ, MS. ² lounde wel the wolfe, Cx. ³ So a. in, MS. ⁴ Holand, Cx. ⁵ fèlles, Cx. ⁶ Guen, Cx. ⁷ Added from a. and Cx. ⁸ So a. and Cx.; Gir., MS. ⁹ So a. and Cx.; manure, MS. ¹⁰ lye, Cx.; bigge, β. ¹¹ Þer, a. ¹² eys, a. ¹³ neure, a. β. ¹⁴ but it is, Cx.; and similarly else-where.

¹⁵ ledyn, a.; lydæn, β.; alle þeir thynges, Cx. ¹⁶ and better, Cx. ¹⁷ Henre, a.; Henr, β.; Her., MS. Cx. omits the word. ¹⁸ í beauteous (sic) of lond, Cx. Perhaps of lond in the text should be simply cancelled. ¹⁹ good, a. β. and Cx. ²⁰ From this point Trevisa seems to have intended verse. ²¹ So Cx. and β.; stronge, MS. and a. ²² men siche, β. The text is capriciously altered in Cx., mere or less throughout.
Commoda terra satis mirandae fertilitatis
Prosperitate viget, cum bona pacis habet.
Anglorum portus occasus novit et ortus,
Anglica classis habet quod loca multa juvet;
Et cibus et census magis hic communis habetur,
Nam de more viri sunt ibi magnifici.

*Item Alfridus sic*: 4

Illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata
Glebis, lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis.
Insula praedives, quae toto non eget orbe,
Et ejus totus indiget orbis ope;
Insula praedives, ejus miretur et optet
Delicias Salomon, Octavianus opes.

---

1 *occasionem, E.*
2 *Anglia, A.D.*
3 *multa loca, B.*
4 *Item Alfridus sic* ] So A.B.; placed after *opes* in E.; reference omitted in Gale and D.
5 *Glebes, C. (not D.)*
6 *eguet, E.*
7 So Gale and the versions; Octavianus, MSS.


Pat lond is good i-now,
Wonder moche 1 fruyt berep and corn.2
Pat lond is wel at ese,
As long as men lyuep in pese.3
Est and west al lond
Knowep hens ri;年来 wel of Engelond.4
Here schippes fondes,
And ofte helpep meny londes ;
4ere mete [pey[re] 
Men hauep more7 comyn alle way.

For here pat craftes
Men wole gladliche 3eue 3iftes.8
In londe, in 9 strenede
Wel wyde men 10 specke of Engelonde ;
Lond, hony, melk, chese,
Dis ilond schal bere the prys.11
Of alle loundes riches 12 pis lond hath node to noon ;
Alle loundes moot 13 secche helpe nedes of pis allone.
Of likynge 2ere won
Wonder 14 myzSalomon.
Riches 2at pere is an
2ern15 wolde Octanian.16

1 moche, a.
2 The text must have suffered here. Cx. has: That lond bereh fruyt and corne good ynowgh
3 So a. and Cx. ; at ese, MS.
4 Eeste and weste in eche lond ber knownen well the hauenes of Engelond, Cx., who has some other variations.
5 For heue in text (hauens, β.) perhaps we should write hauens.
6 [pey] and, Cx., perhaps rightly; bar mete, bar money, β.; [pey] is probably intended in MS.
7 So a. and Cx. ; money, MS.
8 And for to lerne men gladly yeue yeftes, Cx.
9 and, a. β., Cx.
10 me, β.
11 price, a.
12 riche, a. β.
13 wast, Cx., with other slight variations.
14 wonderful; a ; wondrye, β.
15 zern desire, Cx.
16 Octanian, β.
Cap. XLII.

De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.¹

Solinus. Sunt in Britannia fontes calidi opipario² ex cultu³ apparati⁴ ad usus mortalium, quibus fontibus prestul est numen Minervae, in cujus æde perpetui ignes nunquam canescunt in favillas;⁵ sed, ubi ignis tabet,⁶ vertitur in globos saxeos. Alfridus? Cum Britannia in se plura⁸ contineat⁹ mirabilia, quatuor tamen praeceteris habet miranda. Primum est, quod apud Peccum¹⁰ ventus egreditur de cavernis terrae tam valide ut vestes injectas ejiciat.¹¹ Secundum est, quod¹² apud Stanhenges juxta Sarum lapides mirae magnitudo,nis in modum portarum elevantur, ita ut portae portis superpositae videantur; nec tamen liquido¹³ penditur qualiter aut quare ibi sunt¹⁴ constructi.¹⁵ Tertium est apud Cherdhole, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe¹⁶ sint¹⁷ ingressi, terræ spatia et flumina videntes, nunquam¹⁸ ad finem venire potuerunt. Quartum est,¹⁹ quod pluvia videtur de montibus elevari

¹ C. omits title. De mirabilibus, Anglie, D.; stupendis, om. B.
² opipario, A.B.
³ et cultu, C.D.
⁴ exculti apparatu, Solinus, c.
⁵ faviUam, C. (not D.)
⁶ tabuit, C.D.
⁷ Alfridus] om. A.B.
⁸ plurima pluram in se, B.; plurima in se, D.
⁹ continet, A.B., Gale.
¹⁰ Peccum (or Pectum), A.B.D.E., Gale; Peckham, C. This form leads us to suppose Peckham to be the place meant; see however the versions.
¹¹ rejiciat, A.B., Gale; repellat, C.D.
¹² quod, added from B.; Gale's text is mutilated.
¹³ tamen liquido] liquide, C.D.
¹⁴ sint, C.D.
¹⁵ constructe, A.B.
¹⁶ sæpe] after ingressi in Gale.
¹⁷ sint] om. B.; sunt, D.
¹⁸ nunquam, A.
¹⁹ est] om. C.
De mirabilibus in ea stupendis. Capitulum quadragesimum secondum.

Solinus. In Brytayne beep hooté welles wel arrayed and i-hiżt1 to pe vso of mankynde. Maistresse of pilke welles is pe grete spirit of Minerva. In hire hous fyure durep2 alway, pat neuere chaungep into askes but [pere]3 pe fyure slakep, it chaungeth into4 stony clottes. Alfr. In Bretayn, beep many wondres; neuerples fourp beep most wonderful. Pe firste is at Pectoun; pere blowep so strong a wynde out of chenes5 of pe erpe, pat it castep vp aţen clopes pat me castep yn. Pe seconde is at Stonhenge by sides Salisbury; pere beep grete stones and wonder huge, and beep arered an hiţ as hit were ʒates; [so pat pere semep ʒates]6 i-sct vppon opep ʒates; nopeles hit is nouţ clereliche i-knowe noper perceyued7 how and wherfore pey beep so arered and so wonderlicpe i-honged. Pe prúde is at Cherdi-hole; 8 pere is grete holowness vnder erpe; of9 meny men hauep i-walked ĵeryyme and i-seie ryuerees and streemes, but nowher konnep pey fynd non ende. Pe ferpe is pat reyn is y-seie arered10 vppon pe hilles and anon11 i-spronge

Of meruailles in hit to be hade in wondre. Capitulum quadragesimum secondum. MS. HARL. 2261.

Solinus. Sythe the yle of Britayn contecyneth in hit mony thynges to be hade in meruayle, neuertheless iiij. thynges ar to be hade in meruayle in hit specially afore other thynges. The firste is at Pectun, where the wynde goethe furthe so faste that hit castethe owte clothes caste in to hit. The secunde is at Stanhenges, nye to Salisbury, where stones of a grete magnitude be exalte in to the maner of ʒates, that thei sene as ʒates putte on ʒates, where hit can not be clerely perceyvede how and wherfore the stones were sette there. The thrydde is at Sherdehoole, where a holo place is vnder the erthe in to whom mony men haue entrede, seenge waters in hit, cowthe not come to thende of hit in eny wise. The iiijthe is, that reyne is scene to be eleuate from hilles, and to be diffutede anon throu the

---

1 addressed, Cx. 6 Added from a, β, and Cx.
2 endureth, Cx. 7 apparented, Cx.
3 [here] Added from Cx. and β; a. has be pe; where would seem the truer reading. 8 Cherdihoole, Cx.
4 and in to, a. 9 ofte, Cx.
5 chynes, a. Cx. 10 reyed, Cx.
6 Added from a. β, and Cx. 11 noon, a.
et cito per campos\(^1\) diffundi. Est etiam in ea stagnum sexaginta insulas habitables continens, quod\(^2\) sexaginta ripibus ambitur, in quarum\(^3\) qualibet aquila nidificat, et sexaginta\(^4\) flumina fluunt in illud,\(^5\) quorum nullum ad mare progradit prater unum. Est ibi\(^6\) stagnum muro lapideo et latericio circumdatum, in quo frequenter lavantur homines; quibus fit lavacrum unicuique, sicut voluerit, frigidum seu\(^7\) calidum.\(^8\) Sunt in ea fontes salis longe a mari, quorum aquæ per totam hebdomadam salæ sunt usque ad horam nonam\(^9\) Sabbati, et tunc dulces usque ad diem Lunæ,\(^10\) a quibus decoquitur sal candidum et\(^11\) subtile. Est etiam\(^12\) in ea stagnum cujus aqua tantam habet efficaciam, ut si totus exercitus\(^13\) patriæ astaret juxta et faciem dirigeret versus\(^14\) undam,\(^15\) unda eos\(^16\) attraheret violenter, vestibus humore madefactis;\(^17\) similiter et equi traherentur; si autem facies hominum fuerint averse,\(^18\) non nocebit\(^19\) unda. Est etiam fons\(^20\) in quo nee a quo fluit rivus,\(^21\) et tamen in\(^22\) eo capiuntur.

---

\(^1\) *diversa*, B.
\(^2\) *quod* om. C.D.
\(^3\) *quarum* added from A.C.
\(^4\) *insulas ... sexaginta* om. B.
\(^5\) *eo*, C.D.
\(^6\) *ibi* in ea, C.; et ibi, B.; om. D.
\(^7\) *vel*, A.
\(^8\) *calidum seu frigidum*, B. Sentence slightly transposed in C.D.
\(^9\) *nonam* om. B.
\(^10\) *Lunæ* om. E.
\(^11\) *et* om. A.
\(^12\) *etiam* om. B.; autem, A.
\(^13\) *populus*, A.
\(^14\) *ad*, B.
\(^15\) *et ... undam* om. D.
\(^16\) *illos*, A.B.C., Gale.
\(^17\) *repletis*, C.D.
\(^18\) *adversæ*, B.
\(^19\) *nocet*, C.D.
\(^20\) *fons* om. E.
\(^21\) *Tumus*, C.
\(^22\) *in* om. A.
about in þe feeldes. Also þere is a grete pond þat con-
teyneþ þre score yloundes couenable for men to dwelle ynne: 
þat pond is i-clipped\(^1\) aboute wip sixe roches; vpon 
cueriche roche is an egles nest.\(^2\) And þre score ryueres 
renneþ into þat pond; and noon of hem alle renneþ into 
þe see, but oon. þere is a pond i-closed aboute wip a 
wal of tyle and of stoon. In þat pond men wascþep and 
bajeth wel ofte; and curieche man feleþ þe water hoot 
or colde, riþt as he wolde\(^3\) hymself. þere beep salt welles 
fer fram þee\(^4\) see, and beeth salte alle þe woke longe, forto 
Saturday\(^5\) at none; and fresche from Saturday at none for 
to Monday. þe water of þese welles,\(^6\) whan hit is i-sode, 
torneþ in to smal salte, faire and white. Also þere is a 
pond, þe water þeroþ hap moche [wonder]\(^7\) worchyng;
for þeyh al an oost stood by þe pond and torned þe\(^8\) face 
thiderward, þe water wolde drawe hem violentliche toward 
þe pond and wete al her clopes. So schulde hors be drawe 
in þe same wise. But\(^9\) þif þe face is a weyward\(^10\) from 
þe water, [þe water]\(^11\) noyeth nouþ. þere is a welle þat no 
stroem renneþ perfrom,\(^12\) hoper þerto, and þit foure manere 
feldes and cuntre nye to theyme. Also there is a water 
conteynenge lx. yles inhabitable, which is compassed 
abowte with lx. hilles, in everyche of whom an egle maketh 
a neste, and lx. waters floo in to hit, of whom þere gpethe 
noon to the see but oon. Also there is a water compassede 
with a walle of ston of tyles, where men be waschen ofte-
tymes, which is to euery man after his pleasure either 
hoot other colde. Also there be welles of salte in hit, 
ferre from the see, the waters of whom be salte by alle 
þe weke vn to the howre of none in Saturday, and then the 
waters be fresche; of whiche water white salte is made and 
subtile. Also there is a grete damme in hit, the water of 
whom maketh moiste the clothes of men hauenge their 
siþte directe to hit, and drawenge theym towarde hit, f. 61 b. 
thanþe hit were a grete hoste, the water is of suche 
efficacite; and if the faces of men be turnede from hit, that 
water schalle not greve theyme. Also there is a welle in 
whom a ryuer is not, neither a ryuer floethe from hit, in

\(^1\) hyclipped, Cx. 
\(^2\) egle his nest, a.; varied in Cx. 
\(^3\) wole, a.; will, Cx. 
\(^4\) So MS.; þe, a. 
\(^5\) Saturday, a. 
\(^6\) þis, a. (not Cx.) 
\(^7\) Added from a. and Cx.; the later omits moche. 
\(^8\) theyr, Cx. 
\(^9\) And, Cx. 
\(^10\) be turned away, Cx. 
\(^11\) Added from a. and Cx. 
\(^12\) ffo, Cx.
quatuor genera piscium, et habet\(^1\) fons tantum\(^2\) xx.\(^3\) pedes in longitudine et xx. in latitudine,\(^4\) nec tamen est profundus, sed usque ad genua, ripas altas habens\(^5\) ex omni parte. In regione Wenta est fovea a qua ventus fiat incessanter, ita\(^6\) ut nemo possit subsistere ante eam. Est etiam in ea stagnum, quod facit lignum impositum\(^7\) durescere in lapidem, si per annum in eo\(^8\) manserit, unde formantur ligna in cotes. Est in cacumine\(^9\) montis sepulcrum, cui quilibet accedens et se dimetiens inveniet mensuram quantitatem; et si peregrinus vellassus aliquis\(^11\) ibi flexerit\(^12\) genua ad illud, nullum\(^13\) illico sentiet tedium.

*Giraldus in Topographia.* Juxta monasterium Wynburnense,\(^14\) quod est\(^15\) non longe a\(^16\) Bathonia, est nemus fruticosum;\(^17\) cujus ligna, si in aquam vel in terram vicinam per annum\(^18\) ceciderint, in saxum convertentur.\(^19\) *Giraldus*\(^20\) in *Itinervario.* Sub civitate Cestria currit flumen Dee, quod hodie disterminat\(^21\)

---

\(^1\) habet autem, C.D.
\(^2\) centum, C. (not D.)
\(^3\) xx.] om. C.
\(^4\) et . . . latitudine] om. B.
\(^5\) habetque ripas altas, B.
\(^6\) ita] om. B.
\(^7\) impositum] om. C.D.
\(^8\) si ibi per annum, &c., C.D.
\(^9\) caujusdam, ins. C.D.
\(^10\) sue] om. A.
\(^11\) aliquis] om. C.D.; before vel in B.
\(^12\) flexerit ibi, B.
\(^13\) multum, B.
\(^14\) Wynburnense, B.; Wimburnense, A.
\(^15\) est] om. B.
\(^16\) non longe a] prope, C.D.
\(^17\) frutuosum, Gale.
\(^18\) per annum] om. B.
\(^19\) convertatur, B.D.
\(^20\) Idem, C.D.; Itinere, B.
\(^21\) dedit, C.D.
fische bep i-take þere yyne. Pat welle is but twenty foot long and twenty foot brood, and nouȝt depe bot to pe knæ, i-closed wiȝ hiȝe bankes in eueriche side. In þe contray aboute Wynchestre is a den; 1 out of þat den alwaye blowep strong wynd, so þat no man may endure 2 forto stonde to fore þat den. Þere is also a pond þat tornẹþ tre to iren, and hit be þerynne al a þære; and so treen be i-schape into whetstones. 3 Also þere is in þe cop 4 of an hille a burielles: euerich man þat comþep and meteþ þat buriel, he schal fynde it euene rɪʒt 5 of his owne mete; 6 and þiþ a pil-gryme knælep 7 þerto, anon he þchal be al fresche, and of werynnesse schal he fede none noye. 8 Giraldus in Topo-graphia. Fæte by þe mynystre 9 of Wynburney, þat is nouȝt fer from Bapæ, is a wode þat bereþ moche fruyt; 10 of þe trees of þat wode falle into a water oþer grounde þat þere is nyl, and lyce þere alle aþere, þe trees tornþep into stones. Giraldus in Itinerario. 10 Vnder þe cite of Chestre remneþ þat ryuer Dee, þat now to deleþ 11 Engelond and

whom iij. kyndes of fisches be taken; whiche welle hathe the MS. HARL. oonly xxxiv foote in longitude, and xxiv foote in brodenes, which is not deipe but to the knees of a man, hauenge hye brynkes to hit on every side. Also in the cuntre callede Wenta is a diche, from whom the wynde blawethe incessantly, in so moche that a man may not stonde afore hit. Also there is a water in that cuntre that turneth a tre in to a ston if hit tary in þat water, where trees or woode be fomende in to whetstones. Also there is a beryalle in the toppe of an hille, where every man com-mynge schalle fynde his measure and quantite; and if a pilgrume, other yles a wery man, boo his knees þer to hit, he schalle not fede eny disease. Giraldus in Topographia. Also there is a woode fulle of frute nyce to the monastery of Wynneburne, not ferre from Bathe; the woode of hit putte in to a water nyce to that place by a yere be turnede in to a ston. Giraldus in Itinerario. Also there remnethe a water vnder the cite of Chestre namede Dee, whiche di-

---

1 a den or a cave, Cx.  
2 Cx. here does not substitute dure.  
3 westones, a.  
4 toppe, Cx.; c and t are almost identical in MSS., and both readings are good.  
5 rɪʒt ou. Cx., who often omits nel in similar passages.  
6 meete, a.; lengthe and mesure, Cx.  
7 kneoleþ, a.  
8 Sentence varied in Cx.  
9 mynster, Cx.  
10 Reference added from a. and Cx.  
11 to deleþ, departeth, Cx.
Angliam a Wallia, quod singulis mensibus, ut asserunt accola, vada sua solet mutare; et utri finium Anglie seu Cambrie, alveo relict, magis incubuerit, gentem illam eo anno succumbere et alteram prævalere certum habent pronesticum. Iste fluvius Dee de lacu cui nomen Pymbelmere originem ducit; et cum flumen salmonibus abundet, nusquam tamen in lacu salmo reperitur. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo. Considerandum est quantus divinae pietatis fulgor ab initio suscepit fidei populum Anglorum illustraverit, quod nusquam gentium in una provincia reperiantur tot sanctorum post mortem illibata corpora, finalis incorruptionis simulacrum præferentia, sicut patet in beatis Etheldreda, Edmundo rege, Elphego, Cuthberto. Quod ideo fieri credo celitus, ut natio extra orbem pene posita ex consideratione talis
Wales; pat ryuer eueriche monpe chaungep his foordes, as
trevisa.
men of pe contrey tellep, and luene ofte pe chanel; but
where 1 the water drewe more toward Engelond oper toward
Wales, to what side [pat hit be, pat 3ere men of pat
side] 2 schal haue the worse ende and be overcome, 3 and
men of pe oper side schal haue pe better ende and be at
here abone. When pe water so chaungep his cours, it bondep
suche happes. Pis ryuer Dee renneth and comep out of a
lake pat hi3t Pymbilmere. In pe ryuer is grette plente of
samoun, neuerpeles in pe lake is neuere samoun 4 i-founde.

Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo. Take hede how
great li3t and bri3tnesse of Goddiss myldenesse hap by
schyne 5 Englishe men, seppe 6 pey torned first to ri3tifull
byeue. So pat of 8 no men in oon 9 prouince bep i-founde
so meny hool bodyes of men after hir dep in liknesse of
eure lastynge lif 10 pat schal be after pe day of dome, as it
wel semeth in pese 11 holy seyntes Etheldred, Edmond the
kyng, Elphege, and Cuthbert. 12 I trowe pat it is i-doo by
special grace of God alle my3ti, for pe nacioon pat is i-sette,
as it were, wip oute pe worlde, schulde take hede to duryng
of bodies wip oute corrupcioun and rotyng, and be pe 13

uidethe Englonde from Wales, which is wonte, as hit is
seide, to chaunge his furdes in eueri monethe; and wherpe
hit do draue more nye to the partes of Englonde other
cilles of Wales, the peple do prenestente a faile to the
peple to whom hit is more nye. Also this water callede
Dee hathe his begynnenge of a water callede Pimbelmere,
and this floode of Dee is habundante in salmones, and vn te
this tyme presente a samon was not founde in that water
from whom the water of Dee commethe. Willelmus de Regi-
bus, libro secundo. Hit is to be considerate how that diuine
powere hathe ly3htede the peple of Englonde sythe that
thi toke the feithe of Criste, where so many seyntes be
not founde in any other prouince as in that; as of Seynte
Edwarde, Seynte Edmunde the kyng, Elphegus, Cuthberte,
and Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, with many other seyntes;
which y suppose to be causede by the inspiracion of Godde,
that a nacioon as putte with owte the worlde thro pe con-

1 whether, a., Cx.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 oversett, a., Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.; is a samoun, MS.
5 he shewed vpon, Cx.
6 So a.; sith, Cx.; sobeliche, MS.
7 right, Cx.
8 So a. and Cx.; if, MS.
9 eon, a.
10 lif] om. a.; enuelastynynes, Cx.
11 vis, a.
12 Cuthberd, a., Cx.; the latter adds, and Seynt Edward and many other.
13 So a. and Cx.; beeb, MS.
incorrupteae fidentius ad spem resurrectionis animetur.

CAP. XLIII.1

De partibus insulæ principalibus.

Cæpit2 Britannia3 post Bruti primi4 tempora tres habere5 partes principales, scilicet, Loegriam, Cambriam, Albaniam,6 quae nunc Scotia dicitur.7 Loegria a Locrino,8 Bruti primogenito, denominata9 hodie vulgato vocabulo Anglia dicitur, cujus limites primo fuerunt fretum Gallicanum ad ortum et10 austrum. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.11 Et ad aquilonem duo maris brachia altrinsecus in terram12 longo spatio irrupiunt,13 quamvis ad se invicem non pertingant;14 quorum orientalis sinus incipit duobus ferme milibus15 a monasterio Ebbircurnig16 ad occidentem urbis17 de Pemiltoun, et habet in se urbem Guydi;18 occidentalis vero sinus habet ad dextram19 sui

---

1 Misnumbered 34 both in E. and Cx.
2 Insula, B.
3 Cæpit Britannia[ Brittaniam, (-ie, D.) insula, C.D.; Cæpit Brit-
tannia insula, A., Gale.
4 primi] om. B.
5 cæpit habere, C.D.
6 Albaniam . . . dicitur] et Scotia-
tiam, C.D.
7 quæ . . . dicitur] om. B.
8 Logria a Locrino, B.
9 dicit, C.D.; om. B.
10 ad, C.
11 capitulo duodecimo] om. C.; septimo, D. The text is correct.
12 in terram] om. E.
13 interrupiuntia, B.
14 quamvis pertingant] om. C.D.
15 miliaribus, B.C.D.
16 Herbercurnig, C.; Ewircurnig, B.; Ebbureurnig, A.; Abercurnig (i.e. Abercorn), Bede. (The termination in the MSS. may either be -ing, or -nyg. See Trevisa.)
17 urbis] om. C.D.
18 habet . . . Guydi] fluit in illud flumen Tweede, C.D.; Gyndi, B.
19 a dextra, B.
more bolde and stedefast for to triste 1 on pe final arisyng of
deed bodies forto laste enermore after pe day of done.

De partibus Britanniae principalibus. Capitulum quadragesimun tertium.

After pe firste Brutes 2 tyme pe ilond of Bretayne bygan
for to haue [r]e 3 principal partes, pat heep Loegria, and 4
Cambria, pat is Wales, and Albania, pat is now 5 Scotland.
Loegria had pat name of Locrinus [pat was Brut his son
eldest, and hatte Loegria, as hit were Locrinus] 6 his lond;
but now Loegria hatte Engeland. Pe meeres and pe marke 7
were per of somtyme pe Frenshe see bope by est and by
soup. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo. 8 And by
north tweie armes of pe see pat brekpe fer in to pe lond,
eyper a 9 est oper. But he 9 rechepe nouz 10 to gidres; pe
est arme of pilke twayne bygynepe aboute a tweie litel
myle fram pe ministre of Ebburcuring 10 in pe west side
of pe citee of Penultoun; in pat arm 11 is 12 a town, pat
hatte Guydy. Pe west arme of pilke twayne hap in pe

sideracion of that corruptele scholde be more bolde in feithe
MS. HARL.
to the hope of the resurreccion.

Of the principalle partes of Britayne. Capitulum
quadragesimun tertium.

The yle of Britayne began to haue iij. principalle partes
in hit after the firste tyme of Brute, that is to say, Loegria,
which is callede now Englonde, takenge the name of hit
of Locrinus the firste son of Brute, and Wales, and Albania
that is now Scottelande. The merkes of whom were firste
the see of Fraunce at the este and at the weste. Beda, libro
primo, capitulo duodecimo. Also in the northe partes of that
centre be ij. floodes brekenge vp eiche from other by a
grete space, thauzhe thei towche not to gidre, the este parte
of whom begynnethe allemoste by the space of ij. myles
from a monastery callede Eburcreting, at the weste of a
cite callede Penultoun, which hathe in hit a cite callede
Tweda. The ooper parte of the weste see begynnethe at

1 truste, a., Cx.
2 Brutys, a. (not Cx.)
3 [r]e So MS., a., 8, and Cx.; but the correction is certain.
4 and] om. a. and Cx. (Interlineated in MS.)
5 now is, a.
6 Added from a. and Cx., who has a few deviations.
7 merkes, Cx., which is better.
8 vicesimo, Cx., wrongly.
9 they, Cx.
10 Eburcreting, Cx.
11 So a. and Cx.; armes, MS.
12 Added from a. and Cx.
urnem minutissimam\(^1\) Alcluid, quod lingua eorum sonat petram Cluit, et ponitur juxta flumen\(^2\) nominis sui Cluit.\(^3\) **Ranulphus.** Volunt tamen quidam Loegriam apud flumen Umbrae terminari, nec ulteriorius versus boream debere extendi.\(^4\)

Secunda pars Britanniae Albania sive Scotia dicitur; ab Albanae Bruti filio sic denominata;\(^5\) extendit se a duobus\(^6\) marinis brachis prædictis usque ad mare Norguie;\(^7\) versus\(^8\) aquilonem. Pars tamen austriana Albania,\(^9\) que est a fluvio Twydy\(^10\) usque ad mare Scoticum, a Pictis quondam inhabitata, pertinuit aliquando ad regum Northimbrorum\(^11\) Berniciorum;\(^12\) a primis videlicet regum Anglie\(^13\) temporibus usque duin rex Scotorum Kynadius,\(^14\) Alpini filius, Pictos deleret, et sic\(^15\) partem illum regno Scotiae annecteret.\(^16\)

Walliaque et Cambria.

Albania sive Scotia.

\(^1\) urnem minutissimam\[ om. C.D. \]
\(^2\) flumen\[ om. B., and space left before Cluit. \]
\(^3\) ponitur . . . Cluit\[ et fluit in illud flumen Sulwach, C.D. \]
\(^4\) Slightly altered in C.D.
\(^5\) sic denominata\[ nuncupata, C.D. \]
\(^6\) a duobus\[ propri a, C.D. \]
\(^7\) Norwegiae, C.D.
\(^8\) versus\[ ad, C.D. \]
\(^9\) Albaniae\[ om. C.D. \]
\(^10\) Twydi, B.; Tridi, A.; Tweede, D.
\(^11\) Northanhiubrorum, B.; Northan- ahymborum, Gale; Northanhiubrorum, D.
\(^12\) Berniciorum\[ om. B. \]
\(^13\) Anglorum, C.D.; regum Anglorum, B., Gale.
\(^14\) Kynardus, A.B.; Kinadius, D.
\(^15\) sic\[ om. C.D. \]
\(^16\) sociaret, C.D.
\(^17\) sic dicta\[ nuncupatur, C.D. \]
\(^18\) hanc ex orientis parte, C.D.
\(^19\) Sabrina, A.
\(^20\) ab Anglia, C.D.
ri^t 1 side a strong citee pat hatte Alcluid, 2 pat in hire longage hatte Cluitstoun, and stondep vppon a ryuere pat hatte Cluit also. [R.] 3 Som men wolde mene pat Loegria endep at Homber, and strecheup no 2onder 4 northward. Pe seconde party of Breteyne hatte Albania, pat is Scotlond, and hap pat name of Albanactus Brutis 5 sone, and strecheup from pe tweye forsaide armes of pe see norpward an to pe see of Norwery. Nopelis pe soupe partie of Albania pere 6 Pictes woned somtyme, and lith from pe water of Twyde an to pe Scottische see; al pat longed somtyme to pe kyngeydem of Norphumberlond, Bremencorum, 7 pe north side of Norphumberlond, from pe firste tyme of [Englishe kynges to pat tyme] 8 whanne Kynadius, kynge of Scotlond, pat was Alpinus his sone, dede away pe Pictes, and so ioyned pe 9 contrey to pe kyngeydem of Scotlond. Pe pride party of Breteyne is Waflin, 10 pat hat Cambria also, and hadde pat name Cambria of Camber, Brut his sone; for he was prince of Wales. In pe est side 11 Seuerne departed somtyme bytwene Englonde and Wales. [But now in pe north side pe ryuere Dee at Chestre, and in pe south pe ryuere pat

the ryhte parte of Alcluid, a cite which is putte nye to MS. HARL. Cluid, a floode of that name. P. Some men wille Loegria, now callede Englonde, to haue an ende at the floode off Humbr, and not to be extended forther towards the northe. The secunde principalle parte of Englonde was callede Albania, other Scottelande, takedown the name of hit off Albanactus the son of Brute, which extendeth the hit from the seide ij. waters to the see of Norwery towards the northe. Neuerthesse, the sowthe parte of Scotlond, which is from the water of Twyde vn to the Scottes see, was inhabite somme tyme of the Pictes, which perteynede somme tyme to pe centre of Northumbrelonde in the firste tymes of kynges of Englonde, vn tylle that Kynadius, kynge of Scottes, son to Alpinus, destroyede the Pictes, and annecte that parte to the realme of Scottelande. The thrydde parte of Bri-teyne is callede Wales, callede Cambria of Camber the son of Brute, whom the water of Seuerne departede somme tyme from Englonde, where now the floode of Dee departeth the hit in the northe at Chestre, and the water other floode callede

1 right, a.
2 Alcluid, a.; Alcluid, Cx., who has Clintstone, and Clynt below.
3 Reference added from Cx.
4 forther, Cx.
5 Brut his, a.; Brutpes, Cx.
6 where as, Cx., who varies the construction.
7 Bremencorum, a.; Brenycorn, Cx.
8 Added from a. and Cx.; a. has children for kynges.
9 pat, a., Cx.
10 Wales, Wallia, a., Cx.
11 side of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
et flumen Vaga apud castrum Strigulense\(^1\) in austro Walliam ab Anglia secernit. Insuper et rex Offa, ad perpetuam regnorum Angliæ et Walliæ distinctionem habendam, fecit fossam perlongam,\(^2\) quæ ab austro juxta Bristolliam sub montibus Walliæ\(^3\) jugiter se extendit in boream, fluminaque\(^4\) Sabrinæ et Dee in eorum pene primordiis\(^5\) transcindit,\(^6\) et sic usque ad ostium fluminis Dee ultra Cestriam,\(^7\) juxta castrum de Flynt,\(^8\) inter collem\(^9\) Carbonum et monasterium de Basingwerk,\(^10\) in mare se pretendit.\(^11\)

Hujus fosse famosissime\(^12\) extant adhuc vestigia, quam eum armis præterger\(^\text{di}\)\(^3\) tempore Sancti Edwardi regis cunctis Cambriigenis poenale fuit, procurante hoc comite Haraldo,\(^14\) sicut\(^15\) inferius dicitur;\(^16\) sed hodie\(^15\) hine inde ultra citraque fossam illam\(^17\) potissime in provinciis Cestriae, Salopire, Herfordiæ, Wallici eum Anglis passim sunt permixti.

---

\(^1\) Trigulense, D.
\(^2\) prolongam, D.
\(^3\) Walle, B.
\(^4\) fluviosque, C.D.
\(^5\) primordiis pene, B.
\(^6\) transcindit, A.
\(^7\) Costre, B.
\(^8\) castra deflint, D.
\(^9\) sub colle, C.D.
\(^11\) extendit, C.
\(^12\) famosæ, C.D.
\(^13\) transgredi, C.D.
\(^14\) Haroldæ, Gale.
\(^15\) sicut . . . hodie] om. C. (not D.); hodie, om. B.
\(^16\) infra dicitur, D.
\(^17\) prædictum, C.D.
At the castle of Strygeleum departed England and Wales.\(^1\) Also kyng Offa, forto haue a distincieion for evermore bytwene \(\text{pe kyngdoms of England and of Wales, made a long deche}^2\) \(\text{pat streecchep forp oute of pe soup side by Bristowe unde pe hilles of Wales norpward, and passep pe reuers Seuarne and Dee almost at pe hedes, and anon to pe moup of pe ryuer Dee by\(\text{z}^3\)onde Chestre faste by pe castle, and \(\text{reunep forp bytwene Colhille and pe ministre of Basyngwerc}^4\) in to pe see. \(\text{pis diche is zit in many places i-seyn. In Seint Edward his tyme Walsche men schulde not passe at diche wip wepon vppon a grete payne, and pat was at erle Haroldus procuryng, as hit is i-saide wip yonne.}^5\) Bot now in eiper side bope of \(\text{z}^6\) and half and on \(\text{pis half pe diche, and specialiche in pe schires of Chestre, of Schrouysbury, and of Herford in meny places becep Englische men [and Walsche men] i-medled to gidres.

\(\text{Vaga departethe Wales from Englonde in the sowthe at the castelle Strigulense. Also kyngne Offa causede a longe diche to be made vn to a perpetuall distincieion of the realmes of Englonde and of Wales, which extendeth the hit f. 62. b from the sowthe nye to Bristolle, unde the hilles of Wales, in to the northe; which diuideth as the begynnenges of the waters of Seuarne and of Dee, and protendeth the hit vn to the durre of the floode of Dee behynde Chestre nye to the castelle of Flynhte, betwene Coolehille and the monastery of Basingwerc. As zitte the stappes of that famose dyche remayne, which diche to passe was a grete payne to Walse men, becenge in armes in the tyme of kyng Edward, that erle Haraldus procureng that, as hit schalle be exresseded afterwarde, but now Walse men bene permixte with Englische men ouer either diche, and specially in the provinces of Chestre, of Schroppeschyre, and of Hereforde.}\n
\(^{1}\) Added from a. \(\beta\). and Cx., who has \text{Strigelyn.}
\(^{2}\) diche, a.
\(^{3}\) to, Cx.
\(^{4}\) it, Cx.
\(^{5}\) Basingwerke, \(\beta\), Cx.
\(^{6}\) as it shal be sayd here after, Cx.
\(^{7}\) of ] a, a, Cx.
\(^{8}\) a, Cx.
\(^{9}\) Added from a. \(\beta\). and Cx. (Walsshmen.)
De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus.

Et praeter insulas Orcadas, quas Claudius Caesar ad Britanniam pertinere fecerat, habet Britannia tres insulas sibi propinquas, quasi tribus Britanniae partibus praeterna principalibus correspondentes. Nam Loegria ad austrum adjacent insula Vecta; Wallia ad boream insula Monia, quae Angleseya dicitur; Scotiae ad occasum insula Eubonia, quae Mevania sive Man dicitur. Omnes pene ejusdem sunt quantitatis, de quibus hic per ordinem. Beda, libro primo, capitulio tertio. Insula Vecta, quam Vespasianus a Claudio missus subjugavit, pretenditur ab ortu in occasum xxx. milibus, ab austro in boream xij. milibus, et distat a meridiano Britanniae littore sex milibus in oriente sui parte, et tribus milibus in occidentali. Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quindecimo. Hujus insulae mensura se-

---

1 Et om. C.D.
2 quasi ... partibus] tribus partibus secis, B.
3 Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.
4 adjacent ad austrum, B.
5 dicitur] om. E.
6 Mevania, B.—v and n are so similar in the MSS. that it is hard to say what they read. I have followed Petrie's orthography in the text. See Mon. Hist. Brit., Index. Gale has Menania here, but Mevania below.
7 fere, C.D.
8 hic om. C.D.
9 usque ad, C.; ad, D.
10 milliaribus, B.C.D.
12 milliaribus, B.C.D. (twice.)
De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

Bretayne haπ pre ilondes pat beęp nygh and longeπ pertoπ alle wip outh pe ylondes Orcades, as hit were answeringe to pe pre cheef partes of Bretayne. For pe yle of Wight1 longeπ and lieπ to Loegrin, pat is Engelonde; pe ilond Mon, pat hatte Englescie2 also, longeπ to3 Wales; and pe ilond4 Eubonia, pat hat tweie [opere]5 names, and hatte Menania6 and Man also, longeπ7 to Scotland. And alle pees pre ilondes, Mon, Wight,8 and Man, beęp almost i-lich moche and of pe same quantitie; of pe which pre ar al orewe now folowep our speche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio. Claudius sent Vespasianus, and Vespasianus wan Wighte,9 and Wighte10 streccheπ outh pe est in to pe west pritty myle long, and out of pe soup in to pe norþ twelue myle, and is in pe est side sex9 myle from pe soup cleef10 of Bretayne, and pre myle in pe west side. Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto.

Of yles adiacente and nye to Briteyne.

Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

And the yles excepte whom Claudius Cesar causeπ to perteyne to Briteyne, that londe hathe iij. yles nye to hit as corespondente to thre principalle partes of Briteyne: for the yle of Wyѣhte lyethe nye to the sowthe parte of England. And at the norþte parte of Wales is an yle whiche is callede Monia other Anglesey, and also the yle of Man at the weste parte of Scotlande, whiche be allemoste of oon quantitie, of whom hit schalle be seide by ordre. Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio. That yle of Wyѣhte, whom Vespasian sende11 from Claudius did subiugate, is pro thyroided from the este in to the west by xxxvi myles, beenge from the sowthe in to the norþte by xiiij. myles, and from the side of the sowthe see of Briteyne by vii. myles in the este parte of hit, and by thre myles in the weste. Beda, libro quarto capitulo quinto decimo. The measure of that

1 Wif, a. 2 Anglesea, a., Cx. 3 MS. has mon before Wales (not s. or Cx.) 4 So a. and Cx.; Engelond, MS. 5 opere] Added from a. and Cx. 6 Menania, Cx.; see above. 7 which longeth, Cx. 8 Wif, a. 9 sxe, a. 10 cleve, a. 11 So Harl. MS.
cundum estimationem Anglorum est M.c.c. familiarum.  

2 Giralddus in Itinario, libro secundo.  

Insula Monia, quæ et Angleseya, brevi maris brachio quasi duobus miliaribus separatur a Northwallia et continent ccclxij. villas pro tribus cantredis; computatur quasi xxx. milia habens in longum sed xij. in latum; et dicitur cantredus, composito nomine tam Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terre portio, quanta centum villas continet.  

In hujus insulae laudem proverbialiter solet dici Cambrice sic: Mon Mam Kymry, quod Latine sonat Monia mater Cambrie; nam aliis terris victu deficientibus, hæc gleba praepollet adeo ut hæc in annona, montes Snaudoniae in pastura totius Cambriae populo et armentis videtur sufficere; unde et illud Virgilii aptari sibi possit:  

Et quantum longis carpunt armenta diebus, Exigua tantum gelidus ros nocte reponit.
The met 1 of his ilond, as Englische men gessep, is a pow-
sand houses holdes and two hundred. Giral dus in Itinerario.
Mon, pat hatte Angleseia also, is departed from pe 2 Nor-
Wales by a shrott arme of pe see, as it were twoe myle
broode. In Mon beep pre honred townes pre score and
pre, and beep acompte for pre candredes, pat beep pre
hundreds. Pe ilond is, as it were, pritty myle longe
and twelue myle brood. 3 Candredus 4 is so moche land
as conteyned an honred townes; pat name Cantredus is
i-made oon of tweeie longages, of Brittische and of Iriseshe.
In preisyng be this ilond Walsche men beep i-woned to
seie a prouerbe and an olde sawe, Mon mam Kembry, pat is
to menyngy in Englische Mon moder of Wales. For whan
oper longes lakkep mete, pat long is so good pat hit semep
pat it wolde fynde corn i-now for alle pe men of Wales.
And so it semep pat pe hilles of Snowdonia 5 wolde fynde
pasture i-now for al Wales to pe bestes perof. 6 Perfore
Virgile is vers may be accordyng pe reto:
As moche as gnawes
Bestes [longe] 7 innip dawes,
So moche eft bringepe
Dew cold 8 in a nyzt.

yle after the estimacion of peple of Englondo is of m'ec. MS.HARL.
townes 9 other howscholdes. Giral dus in Itinerario. The
yle of Monia, whiche otherwise callede Anglesey, is de-
partede from Northe Wales by ij. myles, as by a lytelle arme
of the see, whiche conteyneth ecc. lx. and iij. townes, and
hit is acompte for as thre cantredes, hauenge as xxx1
myles in longitude and xij. myles in latitude; and a cantrede
is callede as welle in the langage of Englonde, as in the
langage of Irlonde, a porcion of erthe other grownde con-
teynenge an c. townes. In to the lawde of whom hit is
wonte to be seide prouerbialy in Walsche, Monia mam 10
Kymry, whiche sovndethe in Englische, Anglesey is the
moder of Wales; for other longes wontenge vitelles that
centre is habundante, in so moche that Angleseye in corne
and Snowdon hilles in pasture scholde suffice as by esti-
macion alle the peple of Wales and alle the bestes of that

---

1 mesure, Cx.
2 pe] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.
3 brood] om. Cx. (typogr. error ?)
4 Cantredus, „ Cx.
(but Candredes above.)
5 Snowdonia, a.
6 for alle the bestes of Wales, a.
7 Added from a. b. and Cx.
8 old dece, Cx.
9 places, MS. (first hand).
10 man, Harl. MS.
In marino brachio, quod hanc insulam a Northwallia \(^1\) secernit,\(^2\) est vorago naves attrahens \(^3\) et absorbens instar Scyllae seu \(^4\) Charybdis, nisi \(^5\) pleno mari subtiliter transnavigetur.\(^6\) Ranulphus. De mirabilia hujus insulae vide supra capitulo Wallia.\(^7\) Giraldus in Itinerario. Tertia insula, quae \(^8\) Eubonia sive Mevania \(^9\) dicitur,\(^10\) inter Hibernicam \(^11\) Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwodias,\(^12\) quasi in umbilico maris, media jacet.\(^13\) Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono. Haec duas continet partes, quasi \(^14\) insulas; quarum prior ad austrum et situ amplior et ubertate felicior nongentarum sexaginta familiarum est juxta \(^15\) Anglorum estimationem; secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet.\(^16\) Giraldus in Topographia. De qua quondam insula \(^17\) cui regioni, Hiberniae scilicet an \(^18\) Angliae, applicari deberet exorta contentione,\(^19\) quia \(^20\) venenosos vermes ad vectos admisit, eam Britanniae applicandum

---

\(^1\) Northwallia, Gale.  
\(^2\) Slightly abbreviated in C.D.  
\(^3\) trahehat, D.  
\(^4\) et, C.D.  
\(^5\) nisi . . . transnavigetur] om. C.  
\(^6\) navigaretur, A.  
\(^7\) Slightly abbreviated in C.D.  
\(^8\) quae] om. C.D.  
\(^9\) Manavia, B.  
\(^10\) sive Man, ins. B.  
\(^11\) Hiberniam, E.  
\(^12\) Galwedias, D.  
\(^13\) adjacet, C.D.  
\(^14\) partes quasi] om. C.D.  
\(^15\) est juxta] secundum, C.D.  
\(^16\) continet, C. (not D.)  
\(^17\) insula] om. C.D.  
\(^18\) cel, C.  
\(^19\) tentio, A.  
\(^20\) qui, Gale.
In pat arme of pe sec, pat departeth bytwene pis ilond Mon Trevisa, and Norp Wales, is a swolowe pat draweth to schippe pat seillep, and swolowe hem yp, as doop Seylla and Charylbidis, pat beep tweie perilous places in pe see of myddel erpe; perfore me may nou^t seile by pis svolve six but sily at pe ful see. B. Of pe meruailles and wondres of pis ilond Mon, loké in pe chapitres of Wales. Giral dus in Itinario. Pe pridded ilond pat hatte bope Eubonia and Menania, pat is Man, stoundep in pe myddes by trishe Hulster and pe Scottishe Galeyce, as it were in pe nauel of pe see. Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono. Pis ilond Man conteynep as hit were tweie ilordes; pe firste is soupward, pe more contray and better corn load, and conteynep nyne hondred housholde and pe score. Pe seconde conteynep pe space of pre hondred and moo, as Englishe men tellep, Giral dus in Topographia. Som tymne was strfy wherpe pis ilond Man schulde ligge to Britayne oper to Irland, and for venemous wormes pat were i-brou^t pider leuc jere hit was i-dened pat the ilond Man schulde longe to Bretayne. [B.] And in pat ilond is cuntro to their pasture. Also there is a swalo in that MS. HARL. 2261. arme of the see whiche dothe departe Northe Wales from that yle, drawenge schippe to hit, with owte that schippemyn passe hit subtily at the fulle see. B. The redor of this processe may fynde of other mervailes of that cuntro in the chapitre of Wales. Giral dus, in Itinario. That other yle whiche is calde Euvonia, other elles the yle of Man, is seide to be as in the mydde see betwene Vlster in Yrlonde, and the Scottes of Galaweye. Beda, libro primo, capitulo nono. Of whiche yle a contencion was made wherpe hit scholde perteyne to Englonde, other elles to Yrlonde, and men brou^hte wormes and vermy to hit, and for cause that loude suffreded the wormes to lyve, thei seide that grownde to longe to Englonde and not to Yrlonde.

1 that departeth this loade and Northe Wales, Cx.
2 swolow, a.; swolow, Cx.
3 draweth shippes to it, Cx.
4 Cx. inserts by.
5 Cilla and Caribidis, MS., a.; and Cx.
6 swolow, a.
7 So a. and Cx.; Man, MS.
8 chapitre, a. Sentence varied in Cx.
9 myddel, a., Cx.
10 Galway, a.; Gallewaye, Cx.
11 gessi; a.; gessi, Cx.
12 Man, MS. (clerical error.)
13 longe, Cx.
14 Added from a. and Cx.
15 2261. for as moche as, Cx.
16 So a. and Cx.; wordes, MS.
17 jogged, Cx.
18 Reference added from Cx.
censuerunt. 

Ranulphus. In illa insula vigent sortelegiae, superstitiones, atque præstigia; nam mulieres ibidem navigaturis ventum vendunt, quasi sub tribus fili nodis inclusum; ita ut, sicut plus de vento habeere voluerint, plures nodos evolvant. 

Ibi frequenter ab indigenis videntur etiam de die homines prius mortui, decapitati sive integri, juxta modum suae mortis; ut autem alienigenae et adventitii hoc videre possint, ponunt pedes super pedes incolarum, et sic videre poterunt quod incolae vident. 

Beda, libro secundo. Hæc insula ab initio fuit a Scotorum gente inhabitata. Thanatos insula juxta Cantiam, a morte serpentum sic dicta, quos dum ipsa nesciat, ejus tamen terra aliunde apportata angues interimit; cujus gleba plurimum ferax uberem creditur benedictionem contraxisse ab adventu Augustini, prothodoctoris Anglorum, ibidem primum applicantis. 

CAP. XLV. 

De plateis regalis. 

Gaufridus. Statuit Molmutius rex Britonum versusinus tertius et primus eorum legifer, ut aratra colonnium, templa deorum, viaeque ad civitates ducentes,
sortilege and wichecraeft i-vsed. For wommen pere sellip schipmen wynde, as it were i-closed vnder pre knottes of prede, so pat pe more wynd he wol 1 haue, he wil vnknette pe mo knottes.2 Pere ofte by day men of pe lond seep men pat beep dede to forhonde, byheded oper hole, and what3 deep pei deide. Aliens settep here foot vppon feet of men of pe lond [for to see such sightes as the men of that lond don].4 *Beda, libro secundo.* Scottes woned first in pis ilond. Thanatos,5 pat is Tenet, and is an ilond byside Kent, and hap pat name Thanatos of dep of serpentes, for pere beep none, and pe erpe perceof sleep serpentes i-bore6 in to oper londes. Pere is nobil corn lond and fruytiful;7 me trowep pat8 pat ilond was i-halowed and i-blessed of Seynt Austyn, pe firste doctour of Englische men; for pere he aryued first.

De plateis regalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molinceius, kyng of Britouns,9 was pe pridde and twenty of hem, and pe firste pat 3af hem lawe. He ordeyned pat10 plowzmen solowes, goddes temples,11 and

\[p.\] In whiche yle wychecraeft ys exercisde moche, for MS. *Harl. 2261.*

Of the kynges hie weyes.

Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molimiceius, the xxiiijth kyng of Briteyne, and the firste maker of lawe of theyme, ordeyned that the ploes of f. 63. b. tillers, the temples of goddes, and the weis ledenge to cites

1 will, a.; wold, Cx.
2 *the mo knottes he must vndo,* Cx.
3 *wat,* a.
4 Added from Cx., who omits *lond* by typogr. error; B. has *lond*, but makes various blunders.
5 So a. and Cx.; Thanathos, MS.
6 *i-bodere,* a.
7 *fruytiful,* a.
8 *hit is supposed that,* Cx.; and similarly often.
9 *Molimiceius, a.* ; and so bellow; Molimiceius, Cx., and Molimiccius below.
10 *pat jat,* MS. (not a. or Cx.)
11 MS. adds: and hize temples (not a. or Cx.)
immunitate confugii gauderent, ita ut nullus reus ad aliquod istorum trium confugiens pro tuitione ab aliquo invaderetur. Verum quia procedente tempore de viis, cum non essent certis limitibus distinctae, orta esset dissensio, Belinus rex, filius Molmutii praedicti, ad subducendum omne ambiguum, quatuor regales vias omni privilegio munitas per insulam strui fecit. Quorum viarum prima et maxima Fossa dicitur, ab austro in boream extensa, que incipit ab angulo Cornubiae apud Totenenesse, et terminatur in fine Scotiae apud Catenesse. Ranulphus. Verius tamen secundum alios incipit in Cornubia, tendensque per Devoniam, Somerse, juxta Tettesbury, supra Coteswold, juxta Coventry, usque Leircestre procedit; indeque per vasta plana versus Neuwerk diutius progrediens apud Lincolniam terminatur. Secunda via principalis dicitur Watling-strete, tendens per transversum prioris viarum.

1 Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.
2 est, D.
3 rex] om. C.D.
4 Melinici, B.
5 esse [esse], B.; omnem, E.
6 sterni, A.C.D., Gale.
7 Cotenesse B. C.D.add:—"ten-
8 dasque per Devoniam, Somer-
9 sete, juxta Teakesbury, supra
10 Coteswolde, juxta Coventriam,
11 usque Leicestrim, per Lincoln-
12 niam usque Berwickam, tandem, &c.
13 que] om. B.
14 Teakesbury, B.; Teekisbiri, A.; Tetteburyam, Gale.
15 Cotiswolde, A.
16 Coventrium, Gale.
17 Leycestre, B.; Leicestrim, Gale.
18 Vulturnum, A.B.; Newarck, Gale.
19 Ranulphus . . . terminatur] om. C.D.
hiȝe weies, pat ledep to citees and townes, schulde have pe freedom of socour; so pat eueriche man pat fley to eny of pe pre for socour for trespass pat he hadde i-do sho schulde be safe for pursuuyt of alle his enemyes. But afterward, for pe weyes were not so sette wip certeyn markes, pe weies were vncesteyn and strif was bygonne.7 Perfore Belinus pe kynge, pat was pe forsaide Moluncius his sone, for to putte awey al doute and strif, made fourue hiȝe kynge 6 weies i-privueleged [wiȝ al privilege] 7 and fredon, and pe weies streccheþ poruȝ out 8 pe ilond. Pe firste and pe grettest of pe fourue weies hatte Fosse, and streccheþ out of pe south in to pe norþe, and bygynþ from pe corner of Cornewayle at Totteneyes 9 and endþþ in pe ende of Scotland at Catenesse. 10 Neuerþeles more verreyliche, as oþer men telleþ, Fosse bygynþ in Cornewayle,10 and passeþ forþ by Deuenschirle and11 by Somersee, and forþ bysidþe Tettebury vpþon Codeswolde12 bysidþe Conentre anon to Leyceþtre, and so forþ by wynde pleynes toward Newerke, and endþþ at Lynceþle. The seconde chief kynges hiȝe wey hatte Watlyngestrete, and streccheþ þwart13 over

scholde ioye the immunitie of confute, so that noo man gilty fleeþe to eny of these thre scholde not be borowede of eny man for his defence. And within a litel space folowenge there was movede a grete disseccion of the weies, in that there was noo certitude in theyme. Wherefore Belinus kyng, and son to Molunicius, causede iiij. hie weyes to be made thro Englonde, defendede and storede with grete privelige to remove alle dubitation. The firste of whom, and the moste, begynþeth in an angle in Cornewaile at Tottleþnesse, and is extendede in to the norþe, and terminate in the ende of Scotelonde at Katenesse. 10 Neuerþelesse that weye begynþeth more truly, after somme men, in Cornewaile, goþeþ by Deuenschirle and Somersee, nye Tewkesberþy on Cotteswolde, and from that coste to Conentre, and soc vn to Liþreþestre, and so furþe thro a grete pleyne, is terminate at LYnceþle. The secunde principalle weye is calleþd Watlingestrete, goþeþ ouþertherwe þe firste weye,
viz., 1 ab euro 2 austro in zephyrum septentrionalem. Incipit enim 3 a Dovoria, 4 transiens per medium Cantiae 5 ultra Thamisiam 6 juxta Londoniam 7 ad occidentem Westmonasterii, 8 indeque procedit juxta 0 Sanctum Albanum ad occidentem per Dunstapulum, 10 per 11 Toucestre, 12 Wedunam 13 ad austum Lilleburne, 14 per Atheristoun 15 usque ad montem Gilberti, 16 qui 17 m 18 Cec Wreken dicitur; deinde transcindit Sabrinam juxta Wrokcestre, 19 tendit ad Strettoun, 20 et inde per medium Walliae usque ad Cardigan in mari Hibernico terminatur. 21 Tertia via dicitur Ermingestrete, 22 tendens a zephyro in eurum; 23 et incipit a Menevia 24 in Westwallia, procedens usque 25 ad portum Hamonis, 26 que modo dicitur Southampton. 27 28 Quarta via dicitur Rikenildstrete 29 tendens ab Africo 30 in boream vulturnalem, et incipit a Menevia praedicta, tenditque per 31 Wygorniam, per Wycum, 32 per Birmyncha, 3 Gale, Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfeld, 34 Eboracum, usque ad ostium Tyne 35 fluminis quod Tynmoutha 36 dicitur. 37


Fosse out of pe soup est in to pe norþ west, and bygynneþ at Douere, and passeþ by pe middel of Kent ouer Themse bysides Londoun by West Westmynstre, and so forþ by Seint Albun in pe west side by Donstaple,¹ by Streþforde,² by Toucetre, by Wedoun, by Souþ Lilleburne, by Atherestoun,³ anon to Gilbertys hill, þat now hatte Wrekene, and forþ by Scuarne, and passeþ by sides Wrokcestre, and þanne forþ to Stratton, and forþ by þe myddel of Wales anon to Cartigan,⁴ and endþ at þe Irische⁵ see. Þat þe pridde way hatte Erimingestrete,⁶ and streceþp out of þe west northwest in to þe est souþest, and byginneþ in Meneuia þat is in Seint Deuys⁷ lond in West Wales, and streceþp forþ anon to Souþ Hampþoun. Þe ferþþe hatte Rycneueldes strete, and streceþp out of þe south west in to þe norþ est, and bygynneþ in Meneuia in West Wales, and streceþp forþ ⁸ by Worceþre, by Wycombe, by Birminghun,⁹ by Lichefeld, by Derby, by Chesterfelde, by ¿ork, and so forþ anon to Tynemouþe.

that is to say, from the sowthe este in to the northeweste; MS. HARL. begynnenge at Dover, and goenþe thrþo the myddes of Kente vn to Temmyse, nyþe to London at the weste of Westmynster; goenþe from thens to Seynte Albanes at the ywste, by Dunstaple, thrþo Stratforde, Toucetre, Wedunam, at the sowþe of Lilleburne, thrþo Atheriston, to þe hille of Gilberte, þat is calleþe now Wrekene; and from that hit kyttethe ouer Scuerne nyþe to Worceþre, and so Stratton, and from thens thrþo the myddes of Wales, and is endede at Cardigan in the see of Yrlonde. The þridde principalle way is calleþe Emyngestrete, whiche begynnethþe at Seynte Davides in Westewales, goenþe to Sowþe Hamþon. The iiiþþe principalle wey is calleþe Rikenilde⁹⁰ Strete, goenþe from Seynte Davides pro Worceþre, thrþo Birþmicham, Lichþfelde, Derby, Chesterfelde, Yorke, and to the floode of Tyne that is calleþe Tynnemowþe.

¹ Douþtble, a. ² Streþfoþe, a. ³ Atherþestoun, a. ⁴ Cardigan, a.; Cardykan, Cx. ⁵ Eþrice, a. ⁶ Eþrimingestreþe, a.; Eþrimyngeþreþte, Cx. ⁷ Davþes, a.; Dauid, Cx. ⁸ So a.; for, MS.; Cx. has some omissions, and a few slight variations of orthography. ⁹ Birþmicham, a. ¹⁰ Bikenilde, Harl. MS.
Alfridus. Tria per Britanniam fluunt famosa flumina, quae ex universis pene nationibus transmarina per totam insulam navigio feruntur commercia; videlicet Thamisia, Sabrina, et Humber, quorum alveis per ampla ostia oceani marinum fluenta influens et refluens tres insulae principales provincias, quasi tria regna, disterminat; id est, Loegriam, Cambriam, et Northimbriam. Ranulphus. Thamisia videtur componi a nominibus duorum fluminum, quae Thama et Isa. Thama currens juxta Dorcestram cadit in Isam; inde totus fluvius a suo exortu usque ad mare orientale dicitur Thamisia. Nempe juxta urbem Tettebury, que tribus milibus ad boream [Malmesburia] ponitur, Thamisia ex fonticulo versus orientem decurrente] ac plateam Fossre transcindente, provinciasque Glovni̇ae et Wyltoniae disterminante, qui secum alios foniculos profluendo trahens apud Cirecestriam grandescit. Inde quoque versus Hamptonam tendens, per Oxoniam, per Walyngfordiam, per Radyngum, per
De famosis fluminibus.

Capitulum quadragesimatum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famous ryueres renenge poru; Britayne; by pe whiche pre ryueres marshaundis of byzonde see comep in schippe into Bretayyne wel nyh oute of alle manere nacioyns and loundes. Pe pre ryueres beep Themse, Senarne, and Humber. Pe see ebbe and howep at pe moupes of pe se2 pre ryueres, and depar tep [pe]3 pre provynces of pe ilondes, as hit were pre kyngdoms, for to wynne;4 pe pre parties beep Logricia, Cambria, and Norphumbria, pat beep Wales, Englonde,5 and Northumberlond. R.6 [Dis]7 name Temse8 semep i-made oo name of tweye names of ryueres,9 pat beep Tane and Ise. For pe ryuer Tane renenge bysides Dorchester, and fallep in Ise; perfore al pe ryuer from pe first heede anon to pe est see hatte Temse. 'Tense bygymenep bysides Tettebury, pat is pre myle by norp Malhensbury; pere Temse springep of a welle and renenge estward, and passepe pe Fosse, and depar tep Gloucestreschire and Wiltschire, and drawep wip hym meny oper welles streames,10 and wexep grete at Grecestre, and passep forpe pane toward Bamptoun,11 and so forpe by Oxenforde, by Walyngforde, by

Of the famous floodes in hit.

Capitulum quadragesimatum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famous floodes floo thro Britayne, to whom and thro whom marshaundise commethe allemoste from alle naciones and regiones by schippe, whichbe Thamys, Senarne, and Humber, whiche waters depar te three princi-palle provynces as thre realmes, that is to say, Englonde, Wales, and Northumberlond. Thamisia, whiche is callede Themmys, semethe to be compownde of ij. waters, whiche be callede Thamia and Issa. That streme callede Tane renenge by Dorchester fallethe in to Ise, perfore alle that water renenge soo togededre is called Tammyse.
Londoniam. *Willelmus*<sup>1</sup> *de Pontificibis, libro secundo.*<sup>2</sup> Apud Sandicium portum labitur in mare orientale, nomenque suum retinet ultra Londoniam per x.l. miliaria, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum<sup>3</sup> et Estsaxonum,<sup>4</sup> Westsaxonum,<sup>5</sup> et Merciorum. *Ranulphus.* Sabrina fluvius Britanniae<sup>6</sup> dicitur Habren,<sup>7</sup> ab Abren, filia Estrildis, quam Guendolena regina submersit in ea, sed per corruptionem Latinæ linguae<sup>8</sup> dicitur modo Sabrina. Oritur quoque in medio Walliae, transitque<sup>9</sup> primo versus orientem usque<sup>10</sup> Salopiam ; inde vergit ad austrum usque ad Brugges,<sup>11</sup> Wygorniam, Gloucestrian,<sup>12</sup> et apud Bristoliam labitur in mare occidentale, fuitque terminus aliquando<sup>13</sup> Cambriæ et Loegriæ. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.*<sup>14</sup> Sabrina est alveus gurgite rapax, arte<sup>15</sup> piscosus, in quo<sup>16</sup> furor<sup>17</sup> voraginis seu potius vertiginis ab imo verrens<sup>18</sup> arenas conglobat in cumulum, ripasque<sup>19</sup>  

<sup>1</sup> A. adds generally *Malmesburyensis* in this and similar references.  
<sup>2</sup> Extract transposed and altered in A.B.D.  
<sup>3</sup> *Cantiorum,* A.  
<sup>4</sup> *etiam Saxonum,* B.  
<sup>5</sup> *Westsaxonum* om. B.  
<sup>6</sup> *Britannice,* A., which is better.  
<sup>7</sup> *Abren,* A.  
<sup>8</sup> *linguae* om. C.D. (reading *Latine.*)  
<sup>9</sup> *transit quoque,* C.D.  
<sup>10</sup> *ad,* ins. A.  
<sup>11</sup> *Brieges,* D.  
<sup>12</sup> So written at length in A.; *Gloucestr,* E. It is often difficult to say whether the Latin or English form is intended, when the word is contracted. The Latin form has been preferred in the Latin text, when sanctioned by MS. authority. *Glavernum,* C.; *Glovernium,* D.  
<sup>13</sup> *aliquando* added from A.B., Gale.  
<sup>14</sup> *libro quarto* om. B.  
<sup>15</sup> *flavius,* B.  
<sup>16</sup> *arte . . quo* in eo, B.  
<sup>17</sup> *in quo furor* in furor, C.D.  
<sup>18</sup> *vergens,* C. (not D.)  
<sup>19</sup> *que* om. C.D.
Redyng, and by Londoun. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* At pe haven of Sandwiche it fallep into pe est see, and holdep his name fourty myle by3ond Londoun, and departed somtyne bytwene Kent and Essex, Westsex and Mercia; pat is as hit were a greet deal of [myddel] 3 Engeloide. Seuarn is a ryuer of Bretayne, and hadde Habren [in Britoun, and hap pat name Habren of Habren]. 4 pat was Estrildes doughter. Guedolen pe quene drenched pis Habren perynee; perfore pese Bretouns eleped pe ryuer Habren after pe woman pin pat was adraynt [perynee], 5 but by corupte Latyn tonge hit hauet Sabryna, Seuarn on Englishe. Seuarn byginnep in pe myddel of Wales, and passep first toward pe est anon to Schroesbury, and pane tornep soujpward anon to Brigge-norpe, Wircetre, and Gloucestre, and fallep in to pe west see besides Brystowe, and departed somtyne 7 bytwene Engelond and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Seuarn is swift of streme, fische craft is pere yyne, wooldnesse of swolwynge and of whirlynge water castep vp and gaderep to hepe grete hepes of grandel. Seuarn is ofte vyppé and

---

*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.* The water of Thommyse takenge the originall of hit nye to Tewkesbury of a lytelle welle, floethe by Oxforde, London, vn to the haven of Sandwiche, goenge per in to the este see, reteynenge the name of hit paste London by x14 myles, which was somme tyne as a cause terminative of men of Kente, of Este Saxones, West Saxones, and of men of the Marches. Scuerne, a floode of Britayne, is calde Habren, of Habren doughter of Estrilde, whom a qwene calde Guendolena drownede in hit, but now hit is calde Sabrina, by the corruption of the langage of Latyn. That water of Scuerne begynnethe in the myddes of Wales, and goethe firste toward the este vn to Schrewisbury, after that hit turnethe in to the sowthe to Brugges, Worcestre, and to Gloucestre, fallenge in to the see at Bristowe, which was somme tyne a terme of Englonde and of Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.* Scuerne is a perellous streme fulle of fische, in whom is such a movenge that hit turnethe vp the gravitye from the bothom of the water, and makethe theymè in a grete hepe

---

1 Reference added from Cx., who has c. (i.e. capitulo) for libro.
2 In some place, Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 Added from a. and Cx., who has Britons.
5 The, Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 Departeth in some place, Cx.
8 Ofte aryset, Cx.
suas frequenter transcendit. Ranulphus. Humbra\textsuperscript{1} quoque ab Humbro, rege Hunorum, in ca\textsuperscript{2} submerso nomen sortita est,\textsuperscript{3} primo ab australi parte Eboracensium\textsuperscript{4} arcualiter\textsuperscript{5} decurrens,\textsuperscript{6} inde provinciam Lindisensem, quae olim ad Mercios spectabat, a reliqua plaga Northimbrana disterminat; hanc autem\textsuperscript{7} Humbram multum adaugent\textsuperscript{8} flumen\textsuperscript{9} Trent et Ouse\textsuperscript{10} in eam cadens.

CAP. XLVII.

De antiquis urbis.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Regio Britanniae quondam erat civitatibus nobilissimis viginti octo\textsuperscript{11} insignita,\textsuperscript{12} preter castella innumera,\textsuperscript{13} quae et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, et serris erant instructa firmis-simis. Alfridus.\textsuperscript{14} Civitatum nomina hae erant: Caerlud, id est, Londonia;\textsuperscript{15} Caerbranc,\textsuperscript{16} id est, Eboracum; Caerkent, id est, Cantuaria; Caergorangon, id est, Wygorna; Caerlirion,\textsuperscript{17} id est, Lakecrestria; Caer-

\begin{tabular}{l}
\textsuperscript{1} Humbria, B.D. \\
\textsuperscript{2} eo, B. \\
\textsuperscript{3} arcualiter sortita est nomen, B. \\
\textsuperscript{4} Eboracensium] Eboraci, B.; urbis Eboracii, C.D. \\
\textsuperscript{5} arcualiter] om. B. \\
\textsuperscript{6} decurrunt, C.D.; with other slight alterations. \\
\textsuperscript{7} ante, A.D. \\
\textsuperscript{8} anaug, C.D.; adaugt, B. \\
\textsuperscript{9} fluvius, C.D. \\
\textsuperscript{10} et Ouse] om. A.B.C.D. \\
\textsuperscript{11} viginti octo before nobilissimis, B. \\
\textsuperscript{12} Slightly abbreviated in C.D. \\
\textsuperscript{13} innumera, B. \\
\textsuperscript{14} Alfridus] om. C.D. \\
\textsuperscript{15} Londonium, Gale; Londinum, D. \\
\textsuperscript{16} Caerbranc, D. \\
\textsuperscript{17} Caerlirion, C.; Caerleirion, B. \\
\textsuperscript{18} Lakecrestria, B.; Leicestria, A.; Leicestria, D., Gale.
\end{tabular}
passe pè brynkes. Pe Humber hâp pè name of Humber, kyng of Hunes, for he was adreynt pè peryrne, and renne first a crook out of pè south side of York, and paune departe pè province of Lyndeseye pat longede somtyme to pè Merces from pè oper contray Norpumberlond. Trent and Owse renne in to Humber, and makep the ryuer ful greet. Tryvira. Pe Merces were men as hit were of myddel Engelond, as it is i-seide wip yune.

De antiquis eribibus. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The kyngdom of Bre-tayne [was] somtyme i-hight wiþ twenty noble citees, wiþ oute welle many castelles pat were wiþ walle, wiþ tours, wiþ ʒate, wiþ barres, stalworliche i-buld. Alfridus. Dese were pe names of pe citees: — Caerlud, pat is, Londoun; Caerbrank, pat is, York; Caerkent, pat is, Caunterbury; Caergorangon, pat is, Wireestre; Caerlirion pat is, Leyestre; oftetymes goenge over the brynkes of hit. Also that water callede Humbre toke the name of Humber kyng of Hunes drownede in hit. Whiche rennethe firs in the maner of a bawe from the sowthe parte of Yorke to the province Lindesience, whiche longede somme tyne to the Marches, doth diuidc Noi'thuinbrelondc from that other plage; whom the floodes of Trente and of Owse fallenge in to hit cause to be eucreasede gretely thro them.

Of the olde Cites in hit. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The region of Britayne was made nowble somme tyne with xxij noble citees, excepte castelles innumerable, which were made with sure walle, towres, ʒates, and lokkes. Alfridus. These were the names of the citeis: — Caerlud, London; Caerbrance, Yorke; Caerkente, Caunterbery; Caergorangon, Worcestre; Caerlirion, Leireestre;
clau, id est, Gloucestria; Caercolde, \textsuperscript{1} id est, Colcestria; Caerrieci, \textsuperscript{3} id est, Chichestria, quae olim apud Saxones vocabatur Cissancestria; \textsuperscript{4} Caercri, \textsuperscript{5} id est, Cirencestria; Caerguent, \textsuperscript{6} id est, Wyntonia; Caergrant, \textsuperscript{7} id est, Cantebrugge; Caerleil, \textsuperscript{9} id est, Lugubalia; \textsuperscript{10} Caerperis, id est, Porcestria; \textsuperscript{11} Caerdorn, \textsuperscript{12} id est, Dorcestria; Caerludcoit, \textsuperscript{13} id est, Lincolnia, \textsuperscript{14} sive Lindecollinum; \textsuperscript{15} Caermerthyn, \textsuperscript{16} id est, urbs Merlinii; Caersegent, id est, Silcestria, \textsuperscript{17} quae super Thamisim non longe a Radingo \textsuperscript{18} ponitur; Caerleion, \textsuperscript{19} sive Caerlegion, \textsuperscript{20} id est, Urbs Legionum, quae post Legecestria dicebatur, sed modo Cestria dicitur; \textsuperscript{21} Caerbadun, \textsuperscript{22} id est, Bathonia, quae aliquando urbs Achamanni \textsuperscript{23} vocabatur; \textsuperscript{24} Caerpaladour, \textsuperscript{25} id est, Septonia, \textsuperscript{26} quae hodie vocatur \textsuperscript{27} Shaftesbury. \textsuperscript{28} Ranulphus. Sunt et alia urbium nomina in chronicis reperta ad intelligendum obscuriora, de quibus omnibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt dicenda. \textsuperscript{29}

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. Londonia, \textsuperscript{30} est civitas super Thamisim flumen \textsuperscript{31} posita, opima civium divitiis, \textsuperscript{32} negotiatorum commerciis; unde fit ut quando ubique \textsuperscript{33} in Anglia sit victualium caristia, \textsuperscript{34} ibi minus \textsuperscript{35}

\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} Gloucestria, A.B.;
\item \textsuperscript{2} Caercolde, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{3} Caerrieci, B.; Caerrieci, A.;
\item \textsuperscript{4} Caercri, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{5} Cawescesther, B.; Cissancestria, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{6} Caercri, Gale; Caerrieci, D.
\item \textsuperscript{7} Caerwen, C.; Caerweent, D.
\item \textsuperscript{8} Caerterant, C.
\item \textsuperscript{9} Cantebrugge, A.; Cantebrigia, D.
\item \textsuperscript{10} Caerleil, B.
\item \textsuperscript{11} Lugubralici, B.
\item \textsuperscript{12} Portchestre, B.; Porcestre, D.
\item \textsuperscript{13} Caerdorn (sic), D.
\item \textsuperscript{14} Caerleil, B.
\item \textsuperscript{15} Lidcolnum, B.
\item \textsuperscript{16} "sive L" om. B.; Lindcollinum, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{17} Caermerthyn, B.
\item \textsuperscript{18} Selcestria, Gale; Silcestre, A., and so perhaps in the other MSS. (Silcestre). Higden's MSS. more commonly have the Latin form in words of this termination.
\item \textsuperscript{19} Redyngo, B.; Redingo, A.
\item \textsuperscript{20} Caerleion, C.; Caerleoun D.;
\item \textsuperscript{21} Caerlegion, A.
\item \textsuperscript{22} "quae . . . dicitur" om. C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{23} "Caerbadon, C.D."
\item \textsuperscript{24} Achamanni, B.
\item \textsuperscript{25} "quae . . . vocabatur" om. C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{26} "Caerpaladour, Gale."
\item \textsuperscript{27} Septonia, B.
\item \textsuperscript{28} Shaftesbury, B.
\item \textsuperscript{29} Shaftisburia, Gale; Shaftisburi, A.
\item \textsuperscript{30} This passage is as follows in C.D.: "De iatarum urbinum majoribus et quibusdam alis ad cognoscendum obscuvioribus hic per ordinem est dicendum."
\item \textsuperscript{31} London, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{32} "fluvium, C.D."
\item \textsuperscript{33} "dictiurumque, C.D."
\item \textsuperscript{34} "ubique" added from A.B.C.D., Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{35} "linest, B."
\end{itemize}
\end{footnotesize}
Caerclaw, Gloucester; Caercolden, Colchester; Caersee, Chichester, which was called somme tyme by the Saxons Cissanachestre; Caericeri, Cirencester, called now Ciciter, shortly; Caerwente, Winchester; Caergraunte, Cambrige; Ligubalia, Caerfild; Caerperis, Portechestre; Caerdrom, Dorchestre; Caerlucedoit, Lyncolne; Caemerythyn, the cite of Merlyne; Caersegent, Silchester, which [is] on Thanys nye to Redynghe; Caerthleon, other Caerlegion, that is the cite of legiones, which was callede Legecestre, now callede Chestre; Caerbadon, Bathe, which was callede somme tymne the city of Achamannus; Caerpaladin, which, callede somme tyme Septon, is callede now Shaftesbury. R. Also there be other names of cities founde in cronicles obscure to the intellecte, of whom we schalle say somme thynge by ordre. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. London is a nowble cite sette on Thanys, hauenge in it nowoble marshauntes, wherefore when derthe off vitayles is in Englonde, there thai be moste dere;
De civitate Cantuaria.

1 venditur, C.D.
2 forsitan, B.
3 Gnaufridus] om. C.D.
4 construxit[ added from A.B.C.
D., Gale.
5 Trenomatam, B.; Trinomantum, Gale.

De Wyntonia.

1 venditor, C.D.
2 forsitan, B.
3 Gnaufridus] om. C.D.
4 construxit[ added from A.B.C.
D., Gale.
5 Trenomatam, B.; Trinomantum, Gale.

Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
7 qu[ om. A.C.D.
8 Lud, ins. C.D.
9 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
10 Tandum, C.D.
11 Londonia, C.D.; Lundine, A.
12 et Francigener, ins. C.D.
13 sunt, B.
14 qu[.. Londonia] om. C.D.
15 Radbildubrac, B.; Radulhibras, D., Gale.
16 Lulf, B.
17 regis Leill octari] Leil, Britonum rex octavus, C.D., which is better.


Cantuarium caput Cantia construxit rex Rudulhibras, filius regis Leill, octavus, quam vocavit Caerkent, quam postmodum ab Anglis dicta est Dorobernia, quae alia est a Dorovernia supra litus maris Gallicani situta, et distante ab ista duodecin miliaribus Anglicanis; tandem Dorobernia dicta est Cantuaria.

Wyntoniam urbem constituit rex Rudulhibras predictus, quam vocavit Caerguent, quam postmodum ab Anglis dicta est Wenta sive Wynecestria, a venditor, B.

19 Caerkent, A.
20 est] om. B.
21 quae alia—Cantuaria. Thus in C.D.; "Quidam tamen adhue contendunt Doroberniam esse proprium nomen urbis Dorover; ine sae Doroverie que super Gallicanum fretum situta est; ac commodum transfretandi portum præbet, et distat a Cantuaria duodecin miliaribus."—C.D.
22 In C.D. the order of the sections is changed.
23 civitatem, B.
24 construxit, A.B.C.D., Gale.
25 Radulhibras, B.
26 predictus] om. B.
27 Caerkent, Gale; Caerguent, D.
28 ab Anglix] om. B.; Anglicis, A.
and the cause is peramenter other thro the compendiousenesse MS. Harl. of sellers, other elles thro the dispencye of byers. Gaufride. Brute, the firste kyng of Britayne, made that cite of London as the firste and principalle cite of Britayne in to the memorye of Troye y-loste, calleinge hit Trinountum, that is to saye Newe Troye. After that kyng Lud called hit after his name, Caerlud, wherefore the Britones hade indignacion, as Gildas rehersethe, and at the laste Englische men called hit London. Kyng Ruthudibras, the son of kyng Leille, edifiede Cawnterbury, the principalle cite in Kente, whom he called Cawnterkente, whiche was called afterwarde of Englische men Dorobernia; for there is an other towne in that cuntre that is calledle Dovernia, f. 63. a. other elles Donoria, whiche is Dover, sette on the brynke of the see of Franece; whiche be a sundre by xij. myles of Englische accomptenge, and Dorobernia was called at the laste Cawnterbury. Kyngue Ruthudibras aforesayde made the cite of Wynecheste, whom he called Caerwente, whiche was called afterwarde Wenta by Englische men,

1 After England in Cx. thus: —

2 Brunt is, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

3 edefyed, Cx.

4 destroyed, Cx.

5 Troyeneweth, Cx.

6 Added from Cx.

7 outher, a.

8 and, a.

9 twelve, a. (in letters).

10 Sentence varied in Cx.

11 Added from a and Cx., who has Caerguet.
quodam Wyne Anglo ibidem pontificante,\(^1\) cui tota Westsaxonica plaga subjecta fuerat.\(^2\) Idem quoque \(^3\) rex fecit urbeμ Paladour, id est, Septoniam, ubi dicunt Britones aquilam quondam prophetasse.\(^4\)

Bathoniam urbeμ sive Badonem construxit rex Britonum nonus, Bladud, nigromanticus, filius Leill;\(^5\) quam ex nomine suo vocavit \(^6\) Caerbadun,\(^7\) que \(^8\) post\(^9\) ab Anglis vocata est Achamannia, id est, urbs Acha-

manna, et tandem dicta\(^10\) Bathonia. \(\textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus,}^{11}\) \(\textit{libro secundo.}\)

In haec urbe calidarum balnearum\(^12\) latex\(^13\) emergens auctorem Julium Cæsa-

rem habere\(^14\) creditur. \(\textit{Ranulphus.}^{15}\) Sed Gaufridus\(^16\) Monemutensis in suo Britannico libro perger regem Bladud\(^17\) hujus rei fuisse auctorem.\(^18\) Forsan Wille-

mus,\(^19\) qui Britannicum librum\(^20\) non viderat, ista ex aliorum relatu aut ex propria\(^21\) conjec-

tura, sicut et quedam alia, minus scripsit exquisita. Proinde vi-
detur magis verisimile quod licet rex Bladud hanc

urbem construxerit;\(^22\) non propter hoc\(^23\) ipse aut Ju-

lius\(^24\) haec calida balnea construxerit; immo quod aqua

originalis transiens per venas sulphureas, quibus natu-

\(^{1}\) pontifice, B.
\(^{2}\) Abbreviated in C.D.
\(^{3}\) quoque\] om. B.
\(^{4}\) The paragraph ends thus in C.D.: \(\text{—} \text{quæ nunc Septonia sive Schaftesbury nuncupatur, in prov-


cincea Dorsetensi in collis vertice

situta, ubi tradant Britones aqua-

lam quondam vaticinia edidisse.\)

\(^{5}\) \(\textit{Beil,}^{B.}\)
\(^{6}\) vocavit\] om. B.
\(^{7}\) \(\textit{Caerbadoun,}^{B.C.}\)
\(^{8}\) haec, C.D.
\(^{9}\) postmodum, A.D.
\(^{10}\) est, added in A.B.D., Gale.
\(^{11}\) \(\textit{de Pontificibus}^{om. C.D.}\)
\(^{12}\) \(\textit{calidorum balnearum}^{Gale.}\)
\(^{13}\) \(\textit{lacus},^{C.}\)
\(^{14}\) habuisse, C.D.
\(^{15}\) \(\textit{Ranulphus}^{om. C.D.}\)
\(^{16}\) \(\textit{Gaflridus,}^{B.}\)
\(^{17}\) \(\textit{nigromanticus, ins. C.D.}\)
\(^{18}\) artificiæ, C.
\(^{19}\) \(\textit{Malmesburiensis, ins. C.D.}\)
\(^{20}\) The remainder of this section is

 abbreviated in C.D., thus: \(\text{—} \text{nus-

quam inspexerat, sed ex aliorum

relatu seu ex propria conjectura

nulla crediderat; in haec re,}\)

\(\text{—} \text{sicut plerisque aliis, deceptus}

fuercat.\) (\(D.\) omits crediderat.)
\(^{21}\) \(\textit{propria}^{So A.B., Gale; priva-

uta, E.}\)
\(^{22}\) construxit, B.
\(^{23}\) \(\textit{hocr}^{om. A.}\)
\(^{24}\) \(\textit{Cæsar,}^{ins. B.}\)
oo Wyne\(^1\) an Englische man,\(^2\) pat was bishoppe pere. Al West Saxon was soget to hym: pe same kyng bulde Paladour, pat is, Septoun, pat now hatte Chestesbury.\(^3\) Britouns tellep pat an egle\(^4\) propheciede pere sombye. Bladud, Leil his sone, a nynetumans, was pe nynpe kyng of Bretouns; he bulde Bape, and cleped hit Caerbadoun. Englische men cleped hit afterward Achamannys\(^5\) citee, but at pe laste he is i-cleped Bathonia, pat is, Bape. \textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.} In pis citee wellep vp and springe\(^6\) hote bapes, and me wene\(^7\) pat Iulius Cesar made pere suche bates. \(\text{R.}\) But Gaufre Monemetenis, in his Brittische\(^6\) book, scip pat Bladud made pilke bates. Vpppon caess William, pat\(^8\) hadde nou\^3\) i-seie pat Brittisshe book, wroot so by tellynge of opere men, opere\(^9\) by his owne gessynge, as he wroot opere pinges somdel vnwiseliche.\(^10\) Perfore hit semep more sopeliche pat Bladud made\(^11\) nou\^3\) pe hote bates, nopter Iulius Cesar dede suche a dede, pey Bladud bulde and made pe citee; but hit accordep better to kyndeliche resoun, pat pe water rennep vnder\(^12\) erpe by or Wyne\(^1\) MS. Harl. 2261.
beenge bishopppe there, to whom alle the weste plage of Saxones was subiecete. Also the same kyng made that cite calede Paladur, and nowe Shaftesbury, where men of Britayne say an egle to have prophectedu somme byme. Bladud, a nigrumansier, and the ix\({}\)th kyng of Britayne, son of kyng Leille, made the cite of Bathe, whom he calede after his propre name Caerbadun, and afterwarde of Englische men Achamannia, and at laste Bathonia, other elles in Englische Bathe. \textit{Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.} In that cite bates, of whom Iulius Cesar was seide to be anctor. \(\text{R.}\) But Gaufriedus Monemetensis seithe in his boke of Britayne that kyngo Bladud was the firste anctor of theyme; and perauenent William, that see not the boke of Britayne, seide so by the rehersenge of other men, other elles of his propre conecture, lyke as he did wryto mony other thinges. Nevertheless, than\^3\)he kyngo Bladud made that cite of Bathe, the bates scholde seme to be cause\(^13\) that the water ren-

---

\(^{1}\) one Wyne, Cx.  
\(^{2}\) MS. adds: propheciede pere somtyne. See below.  
\(^{3}\) Shaftesbury, Cx.  
\(^{4}\) So a. and Cx.; Englische man, MS.  
\(^{5}\) Achamannes, Cx. (wrongly, but misled by the identity of c and t in MSS.)  
\(^{6}\) Britons, Cx.; and so below.  
\(^{7}\) by cause that, Cx.  
\(^{8}\) pat] om. Cx., who does not understand the sense of the sentence.  
\(^{9}\) or, a.  
\(^{10}\) not best adysedely, Cx.  
\(^{11}\) made hit, MS. (not a. or Cx.)  
\(^{12}\) in the, Cx.  
\(^{13}\) causede, Harl. MS.
Gloucestria, sive Gloverniam, seu Claudiocestriam \(^1\) construxit Claudius Caesar in nuptiis filiae suae, quam copulavit regi Britonum Arvirago. Hæc urbs dicta \(^5\) est primo a Britonibus Caereclau a Claudio, sed \(^6\) post \(^7\) dicta est Gloucestria, \(^8\) a Glora, duce regionis illius, et ponitur \(^9\) supra Sabrinum mare \(^10\) in conuenio Iœgtriae et Cambrie. \(^11\)

De Salopia. Salopia urbs est in conuenio \(^12\) Cambrie et Angliae, super Sabrinam in vertice collis posita, quæ Anglice vocatur Shrobesbury \(^13\) a dumiis et fruticibus in illo colle aliquando \(^14\) crescentibus sie dicta, Britannice vero vocabatur Penguern, quod sonat caput abietis; et fuit aliquando caput Powisie \(^15\) terræ, quæ se extendit per transversum medii Walliae usque ad mare Hibernicum. \(^16\)

De Notnygham. Nothyngham \(^17\) ponitur super flumen Trent, \(^18\) olim \(^19\)

---

1 So A.B.; coalescæm (for coalescæns ?), E.
2 effundat, or some such word, is required to complete the sense.
3 searedines, B.
4 seu Claudiocestriam] om. C.D.
5 vocata, C.D.
6 seilcet, C.
7 postea, A.; postmodum, D.
8 Glocestr, A.; Gloucster, D.
9 poniturque, C.D.
10 mare] om. B.

11 Slightly transposed in C.D.
12 inter conuenia, C.D.
13 Schrobsburi, A.; Schroesbury, C.; Shrevesbury, B.; Schrobbsburi, Gale; Schroesonbury, D.
14 aliquando before in, B.
15 Powis, A.
16 Abbreviated in C.D.
17 Nothyngham, A., Gale.
18 Trente, B.
19 olim] om. B.; sed olim, C.D.
veyor of brymstone,¹ and so is i-hateth² kyndeliche in pat Trevisa. cours, and springe³ vp in dyuers places of pe citee. And so pere beep hoote bathes, pat wasche⁴ of tetres,⁵ opere sores and seabbes. Trevisia. Pe me myʒt by craft make hoote bathes for to dure long i-now, pis accorde⁵ wel to resoun and to philosofie pat trete⁶ of hote welles and bapes, pat beep in dyuerse loundes, peiz⁷ pe water of pis bathe be more troubly and heuyere of smelle and of saunour pan opere hoote bathes pat I hane i-seie at Akene⁸ in Almayne, and at Egges in Sauoy. [Pe bapes in Egges]⁹ beep as feire and as chere as eyn cold well streem. I hane assaied, and i-bathed þeryyne.⁰ R. Claudius Cesar maried his dounzter to Aruiragus, kyng of Britouns. Pis Claudius Cesar bold Gloucestre in pe weddyngge of his dounzter; Britouns cleped pis citee first after Claudius his name, but afterward it was i-cleped Gloucwetre, after oon Glora, pat was duke of pat contray, and stonde⁵ vppon Seuarn in pe marche of Engelond and of Wales. Schroyesbury is a citee vppon Seuarn in pe marche of Engelond and of Wales, i-sette vppon pe coppe⁷ of an hille, and hatte Schroyesbury of schrobbes and fruyt pat grewe somtyme on pat hille. Britouns cleped hit somtyme Pengwern, pat is, pe heed of a faire tree. Schroyesbury was somtyme pe hede of Powys,⁸ pat streche⁵ forþ thwart ouer pe myddel of Wales anon to pe⁹ Irisiche see. Notyngham stonde⁵ vppon Trent, nenge there thro the veynes of sulphur is made hoote natu- rally by that whiche causalthe those bathes to be hoote, where seabbes and corrupcion be healode offtetimes. Claudius Cesar made that cite callede Gloucestre, other Claudiocestre, in the tyne of weddeunge of his dounzter, whom he mariede to Aruiragus kynge of Britones. That cite was callede firste of Britones Caerclau, by Claudius afterwarde callede Gloucestre, of Glora duke of that region, whiche is sette ouer the water of Seuern in costes of Engelonde and of Wales. Shrewsbury is a cite sette in the toppe of an hille on Seuern, in the costes of Engelonde and of Wales, callede somme tyme Schrobbesbury, of busches and trees with frute groenge in that hille somme tyme, whiche is f. 65. b. callede also Pengwern, whiche sowndeth as the hedde of a fire tre, whiche was also somme tyme the principalle place of Powisclounde, extendenge hit ouerthwarde the myddes of Wales vn to the see of Yrlonde. Notyngham

ản

¹ Cx. adds, and sulphur.
² made hoote, Cx.
³ tetres, a., Cx.
⁴ Akene, a.; Alkon, Cx.
⁵ Added from a.; whiche been, Cx.
⁶ Sentence varied in Cx.
⁷ toppe, Cx.
⁸ Powyn, a.
⁹ þe] om. a.
vocatur Snotingham, quod sonat mansio speluncarum; quas Dani, ut ferunt, ibidem perendinantes excavarunt desub saxo.\textsuperscript{1}

Lincolnia caput est provinciæ Lyndisie;\textsuperscript{2} primo vocatur Caerludcoit, deinde Lindecolinum.\textsuperscript{3} A quo primo constructa fuerit incertum habetur, nisi forsæ\textsuperscript{4} rex Lud eam fundaverit; quod etiam nominis interpretatio videtur sonare, nam Britannice Caer sonat civitatem, Coit\textsuperscript{5} silvam; inde\textsuperscript{6} videtur dici Caerludcoit quasi urbs nemorosa \textsuperscript{7} Lud.\textsuperscript{8}

Leicestriam construxit rex Britonum decimus, Leir, filius Bladud, quasi in meditullio Loegriæ, super annem Soram et super Fossam viam regalem.\textsuperscript{9}

**Cap. XLVIII.**

**Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.** Eboracum\textsuperscript{10} urbs est ampla ex utraque parte annis Ouse constructa, Romæ æ elegantiae preferens indicium,\textsuperscript{11} quousque rex Angliæ Conquestor Willelmus illum cum adjacentem

\textsuperscript{1} quas . . . saxo om. C.D.  
\textsuperscript{2} Lindisey, A.; Lindeseye, B.; Lindesseie, D.  
\textsuperscript{3} Lindcolun, B.; Lindecolinium, Gale.  
\textsuperscript{4} forsæ] forte, B.  
\textsuperscript{5} Coith, B.  
\textsuperscript{6} inde] om. A.  
\textsuperscript{7} Lud] om. A.  
\textsuperscript{8} vel urbs nemoris Lud, ins. C. Sentence otherwise slightly abbreviated in C.D.  
\textsuperscript{9} Slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.  
\textsuperscript{10} Eboracus, B.D., Gale.  
\textsuperscript{11} judicium, Gale.
and somtyme heet Snotyngham, pat is, pe woning of dennes, for pe Danes dwelled pere somtyme, and were i-logged,\(^1\) as me tellep, and i-digged\(^2\) dennes and caues vnder hard rokkes and stones.\(^3\) Trevisa. Lyncolne is chief of pe prouince\(^4\) of Lyndeseie, and heet somtyme Caerludcoit, and afterward Lyndeocolyn. Hit is vncerteyn who bulde first pe citee, but \(\text{ïf} \) it were kyng Lud. And so hit semep by menynge of pe name; for caer is Brittisshe, and is to menynge a citee; coit is a wode. And so hit semep pat Caerludoit is to menynge Lud his wode toun.\(^5\) Kyng Leyre was Bladud his sone, and bulde Leycestrc, as it were in myddel Engelond, vppon pe ryuer. The citee of York is a grete citee in eiper side of pe water of Owse, pat semed as faire as Rome, forto pat the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wip brenynge of fuyre defouled it and pe contrey is sette on the water of Trente, callede somme tyne Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes, whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is. seide. Lincoln is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey, callede firste Caerludoicote, after that Lincolne; the edificacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude withowte that kynge Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage of Britones, sowndethe a cite, and coyte, a woode, wherefore Caerludoicote is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd. Leir, the x\(\text{th} \)e kynge of Britones, son to kynge Bladud, made the cite of Leircestre as in the mydelle place of Englande on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and diche of the kynge.

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. York is a grete citee in eiper side of pe water of Owse, pat semed as faire as Rome, forto pat the kyng of Engelond William Conquerour hadde wip brenynge of fuyre defouled it and pe contrey

\(^{1}\) i-longed, a.; clause omitted in Cx.  
\(^{2}\) i-digged, a.  
\(^{3}\) Cx. adds, and dwellyd there.  
\(^{4}\) So a. and Cx.; prophecie, MS.  
\(^{5}\) So a. and Cx.; \(\text{Lud is wolde his town, MS.}\)  
\(^{6}\) Added from Cx., who however has Sos (typ. error?).  
\(^{7}\) hit is, a.  
\(^{8}\) into the tyme that, Cx.  
\(^{9}\) and, a., Cx.
regione incendio deformaret; ita ut, si modo eam vidерit peregrinus, ingemiscat; si vetus incola, non agnoseat. *Gaufridus.* Hanc urbem construxit Ebran-cus rex Britonum quintus, vocans eam ex nomine suo Caerbrank. 1 Fecit quoque idem rex alias duas urbes insignes, 2 unam in Albania, que dicitur Eden-burgh; 3 aliam versus Albaniam 4 in sinibus Loegrieæ, que dicitur Alcluid. 5 *Ranulphus.* Est autem Eden-burghum, 6 urbes 7 in Pictorum terra inter flumen Twydi et mare Scoticum posita, 8 que quondam vocabantur 9 castrum puellarum. Postea 10 tamen dicta est Eden-burgh 11 ab Eden, rege Pictorum, qui ibidem 12 regnavit tempore Egfridi regis Northimbrorum. 13

*Alcinut,* 14 urbs quondam insignis, nunc cunctis Angli-genis 15 pene est incognita; 16 nam 17 sub tempore Britonum, Pictorum, et Anglorum usque adventum Dacorum urbs erat celebris. 18 Tandem circa annum gratiae dcccclxx. vastantibus Danis 19 partes North-
brennenge; and if a man scholde see hit now, considrenge what that cite was afore tymne, hit scholde move hym to be soory. **Gaufridus.** Ebrancus, the vthe kynge of Britayne, made that cite of Yorke, whom he namede Caerbranc. Also that same kynge made iij. other nowble cites; one was in Scottelonde, whiche is called Edengboroughe, that other cite was in the costes of Englonde, toward Scottelonde, whiche was called Alcluid. B. Edengboroughe is a cite in the londe of Pictes, betweene the water of Twide and the Scottes see, which was called scome tymne the Castelle of Maidenes, after that it was called Edyngborough, of Edan kynge of Pictes, whiche reginede there in the tymne of Egfrides kynge of Northumbrelonde. Alcluid was scome tymne a nowble cite, now becenge vnknowen allemoste of alle Englische men, whiche was a nowble cite in the tymne of Britones, of Pictes, vn to the commenge of Danes in to this londe of Englonde; and at the laste, abowte the yere of grace ix., lxxvi. yere, the Danes, destroyenge the costes of Northumbrelonde, destroyed that cite of Alcluid. Of
imbranæ destructæ est et 1 illa. 2 Quo autem in loco Britannici illa fuerat constructa, 3 varii sunt auctores. Nam Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, dicit illamuisse constructam ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii, quod olim separatam Pictos a Britannis; ubi vallum Severi, sive murus ille famosus, ad occidentem terminatur. Et sic videtur, secundum ipsum, 4 quod non multum distet 5 a Lugubalio, 6 id est, Caerleil; 7 quia et ipsa ad finem illius muri ponitur. Volunt alii historici quod urbs Alcluit 8 sit illa, quod modo vocatur Aldeburgh, 9 quod sonat villam veterem, quæ ponitur juxta flumen Ouse, non longe a Burgebrigge, 10 quæ distat ab Eboraco xv. miliaribus ad occidentem; et hoc videtur probari 11 ex dictis Gaufridi de gestis Britonum, qui scribit 12 Elidurum regem Britonum, dum apud Alcluit 13 causa venatici solatii perendinaret, reperisse fratrem suum Archgallonem in vicino nemore Calaterio 14 aberrantem. Constat autem quod nemus Calaterium, 15 quod Anglice Caltrees 16 dicitur, attingit

1 urbs, ins. C.
2 C.D. add: ut murorum reliquia vix patecant. After this C.D. read as follows: — "Beda, libro primo, capitulo quattuordecimo primo. Sonat autem Alcluid Britonum, tarnine idem quam petra eluid; poniturque urbs illa juxta flumen nominis illius quod dicitur Clud ad occidentalem sinum illius mari- rini brachii quod olim separavit, sed Pictos a Britannis. Videtur, hoc die quod fluvius ille dicitur olim Cluid modo vocetur Seli- wach, qui fluit in illud marimum, brachium predictum, quod ab occidente distinguist hocdie Scotos ab Anglis. Habuitque urbs Alclud non longe a se nemus Calatherium [Caletherum, D.], sicut patet in vita Britannici regis Elidari. Quod quidem nemus vocatur hodie Ingelwode, quod sonat sita Anglorum; ne- mus quidem prolixium incipient quod ab occidentem ubi Lugubalia, quæ [quod, D.] est Caerleil, se extendit in immensum versus orientem, habens ab austro mun- tum illum famosum Romani operis quod Thurlewall dicitur, ab aquilone vero marimum bra- chii predictum; et sic videtur quod urbs illa Alclud postea fuerat in borealibus finibus Anglorum non longe ab urbe Lugubalia. Inde decepti sunt multi; putantes Alclud, cum non appa- ret, esse hodie urben Lugubalium.
3 lco in Britannia sita fuerit, B.
4 secundum ipsum (sic) videtur, B.
5 distat, A.
6 Lugubalit, B.
7 Caerleil, A.; Kaerleil, B.
8 Alcluit, B.
9 Aldburgh, B.
10 Burghbrig, B.; Burghbridge, A., Galle.
11 [pr'e, A.
12 scripsit, A.
13 urbe Alclud, Galle.
14 Calaterior, A. (which has obern- rantium), B.
15 quod . . Calaterium] Colla- terium nemus, B.
16 So A.B., Galle; Saltrees, E.
place of Britayne pat citee Alcluid was i-bulde, auctors Tervisa, tellep dyuersliche. Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, seip pat it was i-buld by west pat arme of pe see pat departed\(^1\) bytwene Pictes and Britounis somtyme. Pere Seuerus his famous [walle]\(^2\) ende pwestward: and so it semep by hym, pat [hit]\(^3\) is nouzt fer from Caeerlel, for pat cite is i-sette at pe ende of pe\(^4\) wal. Opere writers of stories writep pat pe citee Alcluid is pat citee pat now hatte A[ll]deburghe,\(^5\) pat is to menyne, an olde toun, and stondep vpon pe ryuer Ouse, nouzt fer from Borgh-brigge, pat is firste myle westwarde out of York. And hit semep pat he preuep pat by Gaufridus, in\(^6\) his book of dedes of Britounis. He writep pat Elidurus, kyng of Britounis, was i-logged at pe citee Alcluid, bycause of solas of\(^7\) huntynge, and fonde his broer Archgalon\(^8\) maskynge in a wode nyh pere beside, pat hatte Caletery, but pat wode Calaterye, pat hatte Caltres an\(^9\) Englische,\(^10\) rechehpe almost to York, and strechehpe toward

whiche cite be diuerse opiniones, after diuerse auctores, in MS. Harl. 2261.

what parte of Britayne that cite was edifiede. For Bede setithe, libro primo, capitulo xij\(^a\), that cite to be edifiede at the weste parte of an arme of the see, whiche departede somme tymhe the Pictes from Britones, where the famose walle was terminate at the weste; and so hit semethe after Bede that hit was not ferre from Caeerlel, for hit is putte also at the ende of that walle. Also other writers of stories reherse and wille that the cite of Alcluid be that towe whiche is callede now Aldelbrughhe, whiche sownedeth an olde towe, whiche is sette nye to the floode of Ouse, not ferre from Burbrugge, whiche is from Yorke by xv. myles at the weste of hit. And this position semeth to be probable of the dictes of Gaufride in his boke of the gestes of Britones, whiche afuermethet pat\(^11\) Elidurus, kyng of Britounis, taryenge at Alcluid for solace to hunte, founde his broer Archgallo errante in a woode callede Caleterium, whiche woode is callede in Englische Caltrees,

---

\(^1\) departedh, Cx.
\(^2\) Added from Cx., who has wel'e.
\(^3\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^4\) that, Cx.
\(^5\) Aldburgh, Cx.
\(^6\) So a. and Cx.; and, MS.
\(^7\) solace and, Cx.
\(^8\) Agalon, Cx.
\(^9\) in, Cx.
\(^10\) Engelshe, a.
\(^11\) This word is interlineded in red.
pene Eboracum, et inde versus zephyrum extenditur juxta Aldeburgh\(^1\) in longum spatio viginti miliarium. Cujus nemoris plurima pars hodie succisis arbusculis ad culturam redigitur.\(^2\) Hic dijudicet prudens lector quid de Alcuit\(^3\) sit tenendum.

Caerliell\(^4\) urbs est in finibus Anglorum borealium versus zephyrum septentrionalen, quae alio nomine Lugubalia\(^5\) dicitur, quam\(^6\) condidit septimus rex Britonum Leill. Ranulphus.\(^7\) Habetque hæc urbs\(^8\) in se aliquam partem illius muri famosi, qui trans-

\(^1\) So A., Gale; and probably also B.E., which may however intend a Latin form, using contractions.

\(^2\) After redigitur, Gale adds:

"Volunt aliuii ut Alcuid sit urbs ilia, quæ modo vocatur Burgan, in borealibus finibus Westmerland juxta Comberland, super flumen Edene sita, cujus adhuc miranda apparent vestigia." See he versions.

\(^3\) Acluid, B.

\(^4\) So E. apparently (CaerlieT) or perhaps Caerliellia; Caerliel, A; Caerleil, D.

\(^5\) Luguba, A.; Lugubralia, B.

\(^6\) hanc, C.D.

\(^7\) Ranulphus Added from A.B.C.D., Gale.

\(^8\) urbs hæc, A.B., Gale.
pe north by Aldeburgh, 1 in lengpe pe space of twenty myle.  

pe moste dele of pat wode is nowe i-prowe adoun, and pe lond i-teled. 2 Opere wol men pat Alcluid was pat cite pat now hatte Burgham, 3 in pe norp contray of Westemland, faste by Comberlond, and stondep vppon pe ryuer Edene. 

pe citee is pere 3iit wonderliche i-sene. Here a wys rede-re demep, as hym seme, where Alcluid was i-buld. 4 

Trevisa. 5 Pis semep nouzt wel hard to asoille, 3iif me takep hede pat many townes berep oon name, as Carthago 6 in Affrica and Carthago 6 in Spayne ; Newport in Wales and Newport in pe parsche 7 of Berkeley ; Wottoun vndir Hegge 8 and Wottoun-basset ; Wilke-warre and Wilke-spayne and Wilke 9 in pe parische of Berkeley. And tweie schie townes eiper hatte Hampoton ; Sothampton and Norphampoton. 

So it seme by pe stories, pat oon Alcluid was in Yorkscheire, anoiper in Westemlerd, and oon faste by in pe riñt side of pe west arme of pe see, pat departep Engelond and Scotland; but pat Alcluid was a wel 10 stronge citee, as Beda seip ; and pat citee stondep faste by a ryuer pat hatte Cluid ; 11 and pere is non suche ryuer in Æryorkshire, hoper in Westmorelond, as men of pe contray tellep me. Som men tellep pat pe ryuere Cluid hatte now Sulwache ; [Sulwach] 12 is but fyne myle fro Caerlile.  

R. Caerleel is a citee in pe centre of Norp Engelond toward pe norp west, and hop anoiper name and hatte Lugubal. Leyle, pe scenepe kyng of Britouns, bulde Caerleel. 

[In pis citee is somwhat of pat famous wal pat passep 

nye to Yorke, and is extendede also nye to Aldeburgh, in longitude by the space of xx4 myles, of whiche woode a grete parte is kytte downe to brenne, and for other thynges necessary. Other men wille that Alcluid be that citee which is callede now Burgham, in the northe partes of Westemerlond, nye to Cumbir-londe, sette on the floode of Eden, of whom mervellous stappes appere 3iite. Wherefore y cownsele that a prudente lector iage what weye is to be holden of that cite off Alcluid. Caerlie is a citee in the northe partes of Englonde, towarde the northeweste, whiche was callede otherwise Ligubalia, whom Leil the vijth kyng of Britones did make.  

R. That cite hathe parte of that famous walle

---

1 After Aldeburgh, MS. and a. (not Cx.) add, by a clerical error of repetition, pat is to menynge.
2 y-tylled, Cx.
3 Burcham, Cx.
4 Cx. thus re-writes the sentence: Dame ye now where it is tylled.
5 Reference added from Cx.
6 Cartago, MSS. and Cx. ; and so below.
7 parrische, Cx.
8 Egge, Cx.
9 Wilke-warre, Wykpayn, and Wikt, a. and Cx.
10 right, Cx. ; and so often.
11 Cluid, Cx.
12 Added from a. and Cx.
cindit Northimbriam. 1 Willemus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. In qua 2 urbe manet adhuc ex lapideis fornicibus triclinium concameratum, quod nulla unquam tempestatum contumelia aut ignium flamma valuit labefactare. In vicina quoque plaga 3 apud Cumbir-

lond 4 legitur adhuc in fronte triclinii sic inscriptum, 5 Marii victoriae. Quod quid sit hæsito, nisi for-
san pars Cumbrorum olim his locis insederit, 6 cum fuissent a Mario consule Italia pulsi. 7 Ranulphus. 8 Sed probabilius videtur, quod ibi fiat mentio de Mario rege Britonum filio Arviragi, qui illis in locis Rodericum 9 regem Pictorum devicerat, sicut testatur Gaufridus in suo Britannico libro, quem Willemus Mal-

mesburiensis nusquam viderat. 10

Hagustaldensis 11 ecclesia est locus 12 lxxx. miliaribus 13 ab Eboraco ad zephyrum borealem 14 disparatus, ut vult Willemus 15 libro tertio de Pontificibus. Locus ille ab olim ad episcopum Eboracensem pertinuit, ubi quondam fuerunt 16 artificiosa ædificia, Romano more coeleata, 17 qualia citra Alpes vix uspian visebantur. 18 Et vocatur hodie locus ille Hestoldesham. 19 Beda,
Northumberland. *Willelmus de Pontificibus.* In *his cite* is a pre chambred hous *made of font* stones, *at my* three *neuere* be destroyed with tempest of wind nor fire, *were* brent by fire. Also in *his contray* by in Westmerland, in *his front* of a pre chambred place, is *write in his* manere, *Marii victoriae*. What *his writinge* is to me, *som dele I doute*; but it *were* so *pat* som of *pe Combres* lete *pere somtyme, whan* pe consul Marius hadde *i-pyte hem out of Itali*. *R:6 But* it *semep more probable,* *pat* *is* *i-write in mynde* of Marius, *kyng of Britouns*, pat was Aruiragus his son. *His Marius overcame in *pat* place Rodryk, *kyng of Pictes*, *seip Gaufridus* in his Brittische booke. William Malmesbury *seih neuere* pat book. At Hagus-taldes chirche is a place foure score myle out of York nor-westward; *pe* place is, as it were, destroyed; *so seip Willelmus, libro tertio de Pontificibus*; *pat place longede somtyme to* pe biss Hopkins of York. *Pere were somtyme buldes* with *vice* arches and *fontes* in *pe manere of Rome*. Suche buldyng was nowhere *[1-seie]* on *his half Alpes*, but *pere vnnepe*. *Now pat* place hadde Hestoldesham and Heglisham

which *diviseth the Northumbrelonde. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*. In *which cite* a threefold chambr remaynethe itte, that can not be defiled with fire, other elles with othy other tempeste, in whom a wryteng is conteynede of the victory of Marius. *R*. Whiche semetho to be probably that theke mencion is made there of Marius kyng of Britones, son to Aruiragus, which overcome Roderyke the kyng of Pictes in those costes, as Gaufride reherseth in his boke of Briteyne, whom William Malmesbury hath not seen. The chirche of Haukustaldens is a place beeven from Yorke by lxxx. myles, at the northeste of hit, whiche place longede somme tymse to the bishope of Yorke, where ryalle edifienges were some tymse, after the edifieng of Rome, whiche edifiengs hau ye not be seen of eny man a this side Alpes, but in that place, whiche is callede nowe Estoldesham. *Beda, libro*
libro tertio, capitulo primo.\textsuperscript{1} Et est locus ille juxta murum longum\textsuperscript{2} Romani operis ad bocam.\textsuperscript{3} Ranulphus.\textsuperscript{4} Est autem\textsuperscript{5} differentia inter provinciam Lindisfarororum\textsuperscript{6} et ecclesiam Lyndyfarnesium.\textsuperscript{7} Nam provincia Lindisfarorum\textsuperscript{8} est idem quod Lindeseya,\textsuperscript{9} quae jacet\textsuperscript{10} ad orientem Lincolniae, cujus ipsa caput est;\textsuperscript{11} de qua dicit Beda, libro quarto, capitulo [undecemo, quod Sexvulphus erat ibidem primus episcopus; sed ecclesia Lindifarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio],\textsuperscript{12} idem est quod illa insula quae dicitur Halieleond,\textsuperscript{13} in fluvio Twydi,\textsuperscript{15} prope Berewycum.\textsuperscript{16} Et sic colligitur ex dictis Beclaa, quod in illo famoso marino brachio,\textsuperscript{17} in quod fluit amnis Twidi,\textsuperscript{13} quod hoclie ab oriente separat Anglos a Scotis, sunt tres insulae; scilicet, Mailros, quod modo\textsuperscript{19} dicitur Meuros;\textsuperscript{23} inde superius versus occidentem\textsuperscript{21} est Lindisfarnensis ecclesia, id est, Halieleond.\textsuperscript{22} Inde ascendo ponitur insula Farne, quae est Farnyelond.\textsuperscript{25} Inde ascendendo per duo\textsuperscript{27} miliaria ponitur\textsuperscript{27} urbs regia super ripam Twidi,\textsuperscript{28} quondam dicta\textsuperscript{29} Bebbanburgh,\textsuperscript{30} id est, urbs Bebbæ;\textsuperscript{31} hodie dicitur Bamburgh,\textsuperscript{32} castrum habens fortissimum.

\textsuperscript{1} C.D. omits reference to Bede.
\textsuperscript{2} longum] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{3} bocam, E.
\textsuperscript{4} Ranulphus] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{5} etiam, C.D.
\textsuperscript{6} Lindisfororum, A.\t\textsuperscript{7} Lindisfarnensem, A.B.; Lindisfarnensem, Gale, D.
\textsuperscript{8} Lindisfororum, A.; Lindisforum, E.
\textsuperscript{9} Lindisia, A., Gale.
\textsuperscript{10} est, C.D.
\textsuperscript{11} cujus . . . est] om. C.D.; est caput, B.
\textsuperscript{12} Added from A.B., but thus in C.D.;—undecemo ibidem fuerat "primus episcopus Sexwulphus. Eeclesia autem Lindisfarnensis "secundum Bedam, libro quarto, "capitulo vicesimo tertio." The references are to lib. iv. c. 12 and c. 27.
\textsuperscript{13} Halieleonde, D.
\textsuperscript{14} id . . . Berewycum] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} Twidi, A.
\textsuperscript{16} Berewycum, Gale.
\textsuperscript{17} brachio marino, A.B.
\textsuperscript{18} Twede, C.D.; Twidi, A.; Twydi; B.
\textsuperscript{19} hodie, C.
\textsuperscript{20} This passage is slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.; Meuwees, B.
\textsuperscript{21} superius . . . occidentem] ascendendo per miliarium, C.D.
\textsuperscript{22} qua Halieleond dicitur, C.D.
\textsuperscript{23} Inde . . . Farnyelond] om. B.C.
\textsuperscript{24} D. (inserted in margin of A.)
\textsuperscript{25} vero, B.
\textsuperscript{26} Farnyelond, A.
\textsuperscript{27} novem, C.D.
\textsuperscript{28} fluuinam qua, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{29} dicebatur, C.D.
\textsuperscript{30} id . . . Bamburgh] qua hodie vocantur Bamburgh, C.D.
\textsuperscript{31} qua, ins. B.
\textsuperscript{32} Bamburgh, B.
also. Beda, libro tertio, capitulo primo, seip pat pat place [is].

TREvisa. Tast by pe long wal of pe work of Rome in pe norp half. B.2

Pere is difference bytwene pe province of Lyndefar and [and
pe chirche of Lyndefarn; for pe prounyce of Lyndiffr and] 3
Lyncdefarn is al oon, and lyep by est Lynconle; and Lyn-
coln is pe heed perof. Of pe whiche seip Beda, libro quarto,
capitulo undecimo, pat Sexvulphus was first bishopp pere. Bote
Beda seip, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio, pat Lynde-
farn 4 chirche is an ilond, pat hatte Halyelond, in pe ryuer
Twede, 5 nyth Berwyk. And so hit is i-gadered of Beda his
sawes, [pat Twyde rennp into the famous arm of] 6 pe see pat 7
departep Englische men and Scottes in pe est half. And in pe 8
arme beep pre ilondes, pat beep Mailros, pat now hatte Mewros; 9
panne abouve toward pe west is Lyndefarnen chirche, pat hatte
Halielond; 10 pannen vpward abouve pat is pe ilond Farne, and
hatte also Farnyelond; pannen vpward twiee myle abouve pat
is a real citee vppon pe brynke of Twyde, pat soutayne
hiȝ Bebaunborgh, pat is, Bebbe is 11 cite, and now hadde

tertio, capitulo primo. And that place is nye to the fa-
mose walle at the nothte parte. Also there is difference
betwene the province of Lindesey and the chirche Lindis-
farnens. For the province of Lyndesey liethe at the este
of Lincolne, which is chief cite to that province, of
whom Beda speketh, libro iiiij, capitulo xi, where Sex-
wulphus was firste bishopp. But the chirche Lindis-
farnence, after Bede, libro iiiij capitulo [x]xiiij, is an yle
which is callede the Holyonde, in the water of Twide,
nye to Berewike: wherefore hit may be collecte of the
seyenge of Bede, that there be iij. yles in that famous
arme of the see in whom the water of Twide soethe,
which departethe now of the este parte Englische men
from Scottes. The firste yle, somme tyme called Mayiros,
is called now Meuros. Then from that towarde the weste
is the chirche of Lindisfarne in Halicolonde. Also there
is an yle which is callede Farnelonde. Also there a cite
longenge somme tyme to the kyngge, sette on the brynke
off Twide, within the space of ij. myles, called somme tyme
Bebanburgh, that is to say the cite of Bebbe, called
now Banburghe, hauenge a stronge castle in hit.

1 The verb is absent from MSS. and Cx.
2 Reference added from Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx
4 Lyndiffrn, a.
5 Twyde, a.; Twede, Cx. (who has necø).
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 that now, Cx.
8 pat, a., Cx.
9 Meuros, a., Cx.
10 Haly ilond, Cx.
11 Bobbes, Cx.
Giraldus in Itinerario. Urbs\(^1\) Legionum duplex est, quae Britannie vocatur Caerleon vel Caerlegion;\(^2\) una est in Demetia,\(^3\) id est, Southwallia, quae dicitur Caeruse,\(^4\) ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorganiam, a Belino rege Britonum quondam constructa; metropolis fuit Demetiae.\(^5\) Postmodum tempore Claudii Caesaris dicta est Urbs Legionum,\(^6\) quando ad instantiam Gennissae\(^7\) reginae, Vespasiano et Arvirago concordatis, missae sunt aliae legiones Romanae in Hiberniam. Urbs hæc\(^8\) autentica,\(^9\) ac per Romanos muris coctilibus circumdata, ubi multa adhuc pristina nobilitatis apparent vestigia; palatia scilicet immensa, turris gigantea, thermae insignes, templorum reliquiae, et\(^10\) loca theatralia egregiis muris partim extantibus pene clausa; et tam intra quam extra muro ambit ædificia subsistente, aquarum ductus,\(^11\) hypogæique\(^12\) meatus; stuphas quoque videas ibidem miro artificio consertas, lateralibus\(^13\) quibusdam angustiis spiraculi vice\(^14\) occulte\(^15\) calorem exhalantibus. In qua urbe tres olim egregiae fuerant

\(^1\) C.D. begins this section as follows:—"Caerleon, sea Caerlegion, " seu Caeruse, ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorganiam, constituta est a Belino rege Britonum, quam multo tempore Caeruse appellata, metropolis fuit Demetiae in South Wallia" (D., however, reading: "Caerleon, seu Caerthleon. seu \"Caerlegion, seu Caeruse, \" &c.)

\(^2\) Caerleon, B.

\(^3\) Domosia, B.

\(^4\) Caerush, B.; Caerult, Gale.

\(^5\) Domotie, B.

\(^6\) Transposed in C.D.

\(^7\) Genissae, Gale.

\(^8\) hæc] antiqua et, ins. C.D.

\(^9\) autentica or autentica, MSS.

\(^10\) a\} om. C.D.

\(^11\) aqueductus, B.

\(^12\) hypogeique, A.B.; hippocgeique, E.

\(^13\) lateribus, A.

\(^14\) So Gale; viis, MSS.

\(^15\) So A.B.C.D.; occulte, E.
Giraldus, in "Itinere." There be ij. cites of legiones, oon was callede Caerlegion or Caerlyon, oon is in Sowthe Wales, which is callede Caerhuth, which beene at the water callede Usen, is so namede, fallengeno into the water of Seuerne nye to Glomorgon, edifedc somme tyme of Belinus, kyng of Englonde, which was the chief cite off Sowthe Wales. After that hit was callede the Cite off Legiones, when legiones of the Romanes were sende to Yrlonde at the instance of a qwene, callede Genuissa, a concorde made betwene Vespasian and Aruragus. That was a nowble cite, and walledc welle, where nowble stappes appere sitte, grete palice, a giganates towre, and mony edificationes ynder the erthe as welle withowte the walles as within. In whiche cite were thre ryalle chircbes, oon was of Iulius the f. 67. a.

1 Bamborh, a.
2 The previous sentence has several slight variations in Cx.
3 Usk, a.
4 see on, Cx.
5 Genuissa, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
6 MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds: put hatte Caerush.
7 Vespasianus, MSS. and Cx. (who has Genuias.)
8 brand, a.
9 nobley, Cx.
10 palayges, Cx.
11 geant, a.
12 Genuissa, Harl. MS.
ecclesiae, una Julii Martyris, virginum choro venustata; alia beati Aaron, praeclaro canonicerum ordine nobilitata; tertia vero metropolitana sede totius Cambriæ fuit insignita, de qua postmodum usque Meneviam sedes illa est translatæ. Hoc in loco Amphibalus doctor Albani extitit oriundus. Hie magni Arthuri, si fas sit credere, magnam curiam legati adiere Romani. Ranulphus. Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et præsens chronica fuit elaborata, sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius patet. Urbs quidem in
ooth was of Seynt Iulius pe martir, i-hiȝt wip a grete companye of virgyns; pat oper was of Seynt Aaron, pat was of pe ordre of blak chanouns; pat chirche was wip hym nobelie i-hiȝt; 3 pe pridde chirche was pe chief moderchirche of al Wales, and pe chief sete; but afterward pe chief see was i-torned out of pat citee in to Meneuia, pat is, Seint Dauyes lound in West Wales. In pis Caerleon [was] 5 Amphibalus i-bore, pat tauȝt Seint Albon. Pere pe messangers of Rome come to pe grete Arthurus curt, 6 zif it is leeful for to trowe. Trevisa. 7if Gerald 7 was in doute where 8 it were leful for to trowe pis 9 oper noo, it was nouȝt ful greet reedynesse to write hit in his bookes; as som men wolde wene. For it is a wonder sweuene i-mette for to write a long storie, to haue euermore in mynde, and euere haue doute 7if it be amys hylyne. 7if alle his bookes were suche, what lore were peryynce, and nameliche while hit makep non euidens for neipere 10 side, noiper tellep what hym 11 menep so 12 for to seie 13 R. 14 Pere is anoper Citee of Legiouns; pere pis cronicle was by 15-traunalled, as it is clereliche i-knowe by pe firste lettres of pe chapitres of pis first book: 16 Trevisa. Pis 17 is to vnderstondyne in pe Latyn writynge and nouȝt in pis Englishe writynge; for it was nouȝt pe same pat made it in Latyn, and torned it into Englissh in pe same place pat it was i-made first in Latyn. Pe heed lettres of pe chapitres of pis firste book i-write arewe as the chapitres stondep he spelep pis Latyn resoun: Presentem 18cronicae compilauit frater Ranulpheus Cestrensis monachus. Pis Latyn resoun is to menyenge an Englishe: Broper Ranulf, 18 monk of Chestre, compiled and made pis present cronicle. 19 R. Pe

Martir, made feire with a company of virgynes. An other MS. HARL. 2261 was of blessed Aaron, made nowble with the clere ordre of canons. The thridde chirche was made nowble with the seete of the metropolitan of alle Wales, whiche was translite afterwarde to Meneuin, whiche is callede nowe Seynte Dauid. R. Also there is an other Cite of Legiones,

---

1 and ther in a grete, Cx. 12 so] sop, MS. (not Cx.)
2 hem, Cx. 13 The extract from Trevisa is a good deal varied in Cx., where it makes but little sense.
3 adourned, Cx. 14 Reference added from Cx.
4 see, Cx. 15 be, a.
5 Added from Cx. 16 Sentence varied in Cx.
6 court, a., Cx. 17 That, Cx.
7 Giraldus, Cx. 18 Ranulph, a.; Ranulfus, Cx.
8 whefei, a. 19 crowthe, a., Cx. The extract from Trevisa is much varied in Cx.
9 pis] hit, a., Cx. 20
confinio quinque Anglie ad prospectum Cambrize, inter duo marina brachia, Deo et Merceae, situata; quae tempore Britannum caput fuit et metropolis Venedotiae, id est, Norwalian; cujus fundator ignoratur. Nam intuenti fundamenta lapidum enormium videtur potius Romano sen gente laboro, quam Britannico sudore fundata extitisse. Haec aliquando vocata est Britannice Caerthleon, Latina Legecestria; nunc autem dicta est Cestria, sive Urbs Legionum; eo quod ibidem hiemarent legiones militares, quas Julius Caesar ad subjugandam Hiberniam, et postmodum Claudius Caesar ad subigendas Orcades insulas inde transmiserat. Urbs itaque ista, quicquid de ea Willelmus Malmesbury ad aliorum relatum somniaverit, omnium genere victualium abundat, farris, carnis, piscis, potissime salmonis optima copiosa; mercimonia varia recipit et refundit. Quippe quae in suis confiniiis salinas habet mineras et metalla. In haec urbe per Northimbros et Danos vicissim conquassata, sed tandem per Elfledam Merciorum dominam egregie reparatu et adaucta, sunt viae subteraneae, lapideo opere

1 confinibus, A.
2 in prospectu, C.
3 brachia] om. E.; brachia sive duae fluminia, C.; inter duae fluminia, D.
4 Merceae, B.D.
5 partim, B.
6 Northwallie, A.B.
7 sicut alia urbs legionum quondam fuit Demetie. Urbs alia jacet desolata, ipsis conditor fuit Belinus, ins. C.D.
8 istius, C.D.
9 in maris, ins. C.D.
10 est] om. B.D.
11 Caerleon, C.; Caerleon, B.; Caerleon, D.
12 vero, C.D.
13 dicta] om. C. (not D.); dicta est, om. B.
14 etiam, C.D.
15 miserat, ins. C.D.
16 etiam, C.D.
17 subjugandam, A.
18 de Mutia[esbury], B.
19 omnium generum, C (not D.)
20 copia, ins. C. (not D.)
21 carnium, C.D.
22 optima] om. B.
23 copia, B.
24 et, C. (not D.)
25 quaeque, ins. C.D.
26 Northimbros, A.; Northumbros, B.
27 quasisata, C.D.
28 Elfledam, C.; Elfledam, A.B.
29 D.; Elfledam, Gale.
30 nobiliter, C.D.
31 aucta, C. (not D.)
citate of legiouns, pat is, Chestre, stondep in pe marche of
Engelond toward Wales, bytwene twee arms of pe see pat
hatte Dee and Merse. Pis citee in tyme of Britouns was
heed and chief citee of al Venedocia, pat is, Norp¹ Wales.
Pe foundour of pis citee is vniknowe, for who pat seep pe
foundementis of pe grete stones wolde raper wene pat it were
Romayns work, ojer work of geauntes, pan work² i-made
by settyngye of Bretons. Pis citee somtyme in Brittissche
speche heet Caerleon,³ Legecestria in⁴ Latyn, and hatte now
Cestria in Latyn, and Chestren in Englisshe, and pe Citee of
Legiouns [also. For pere lay a wynter pe legiouns]⁵ of
knys²tes pat Iulius Cesar sente for to wynne Irland; and
afterward Clawdius Cesar sente legiouns out of pat citee for
to wynne pe ilondes pat hatte Orcades. What euere William
Malmesbury by tellyngye of opere men mette of pis citee,
pis citee haþ plente of lyflode, of corn, of flesche, and of
fische, and specialliche of pris saumoun.⁶ Pat⁷ citee fonge²
grete marchaundise, and sende² out also. Also nygh pis citee
beep salt welles, metal, and oor. Norphumbres destroyed pis
citee somtyme; but afterward Elfleda, lady of Mercia, bulde
it a²e and made it well³ more. In pis citee beep weics vnder
callede Chestre, where this cronicle presente was laborede, MS. HARR.
in the coste of Wales betwene ij. armes of the see
whiche be callede Dye and Meresie, which was the
chief e cite of Northe Wales in the tyme of Britones,
the firste founder of whom is not known. For hit scholde seme
to a man beholdenge the fundacion of hit that werke to
be rather of the labor of gigantes, other Romanes, then of
Britones. That cite was callede somme tyme in the
langage of Britones, Caerclyon, in Latyn Legecestria, and
hit is callede now Chestre, other the Cite of Legiones,
in that the legiones of knys²tes taricde in per in wynter,
whom Iulius Cesar sente to Yrloncl to subdue hit to
lym. This cite labundeth in every kynde of vitelles,
thauge William Malmesbury dreamede in other wise, as
in corne, flesche, fische, and specially in saumones, which
cite receeyvethe and sendethe from it diuerse marchandise,
which hathe nye to hit waters of salte and metalles.
That cite, somme tyme destroyede by men of Northumbr-
londe, but reedificate by Elfleda, lady of the marches;
hathe vnder the erthe voltes to be mercuailde thro the

¹ in north, Cx.
² were, Cx. (typ. error.)
³ Caerclyon, a.
⁴ a, Cx.
⁵ Added from a. and Cx.
⁶ pris samoun, a; pris of samon, Cx.
⁷ This, Cx.
⁸ moche, Cx.
mirabiliter testudinatae, triclinia concamerata, insculpti lapides pergrandes antiquorum nomina praeferentes. Numismata quoque,\(^1\) Julii Caesaris aliorumque illustrium inscriptione insignita, aliquando\(^2\) sunt effossa. Hæc\(^3\) est urbs quam rex\(^4\) Northimbrorum Ethelfridus\(^5\) contrivit, occidens juxta eam duo pene milia monachorum Bangorensis monasterii.\(^6\) Hæc est inquam urbs ad quam venit aliquando rex Edgarus cum septem subregulis;\(^7\) in cujus urbis laudem metricus quidam sic prorupit:—

Cestria de Castro nomen quasi Castria sumpsit,

Incertum cujus hanc manus ediderit.\(^8\)

Hæc Legeccestria tunc est dicta, vel\(^9\) Urbs Legionum, Anglis et Cambris nunc manet urbs celebris. In muris pendent lapides\(^10\) velut Herculis actus, Agger et angetur tutior\(^11\) ut maneat.

---

\(^1\) Numismata quoque [So A. Gale; Hic et numismata, C.D.; numisma, E. quandoque, C.D.]

\(^2\) quandoque, C.D.

\(^3\) Istia, C.D.

\(^4\) Northimbrorum Ethelfridus, B.

\(^5\) Transposed in C.D.

\(^6\) de monasterio Bangorensi, C.D.

\(^7\) Abbreviated in C.D.

\(^8\) ediderint, C.

\(^9\) vel] om. A.

\(^10\) lapide, B.

\(^11\) tutior] So A.B.C.D.; tutius, E.
erpe, wip vawtes of stoonwerk\(^1\) wonderliche i-wroug\(t\), \(\text{Trevisa.}\) pre chambres workes, greet stoones i-graned wip olde men\(^2\) names \(\text{pere yyne.} \) Pere is also Iulius Cesar his money wonderliche in stones\(^3\) i-graned,\(^4\) and opere noble mennes also wip \(\text{pe wryntyge aboute.} \) \(\text{pis is pe ciete pat} \) \(\text{5 Ethelfride, kyng of Northumber,} \) \(\text{6 destroyed; \ and slogh pere faste by nygh two} \) \(\text{pewsand monkes of pe mynstre of Bangor. \(\text{pis is pe ciete pat kyng Edgar com to som tyme wip seuene} \) \(\text{kynges pat were suget to hym.} \) A metriere brekep out in \(\text{pis manere in preis-ynge of \(\text{pis ciete: --} \) Chestre, Casteltoun as he\(^7\) were,} \)

\(\text{Name takep of a castel:} \)

\(\text{Hit is unkowne What man bulde} \)

\(\text{pis citee nowe; \ Tho Legecestrias} \)

\(\text{Heet} \)

\(\text{Now Walsche and Englishe} \)

\(\text{Holdep} \)

\(\text{Stones on pe walle} \)

\(\text{Semp work Hercules alle;} \)

\(\text{Pere long wip myght} \)

\(\text{To dure pat hep is i-hi\(s\).} \)

werke of ston, and other grete stones conteynenge the \(\text{MS.} \text{Harl.}\) names and prynetes of Iulius Cesar, and of other nowble men. That is the cite whom kyngue Elfride continuede, sleeenge in hit allemoste \(i\)\(^m\) monkes of the famose monastery of Bangor. That is the cite also to whom kyngue Edgare come somme tyme with other \(vij. \) litelle kynges; \(\text{in to the lawde of whom a metricion seythe in this wise.} \) That cite of Chestre toke the name of hit of a castelle callede Cestria, as Castria, the firste founder of whom \(\text{is not hade in certitude; callede somme tyme Legecestria,} \)

\(\text{other elles the cite of legiones; whiche is now a nowble cite, bothe to Englishe men and to Walsche men; in the walles of whiche cite stoones honge lyke to the actes f. 67. b.} \) of Hercules; where dowble voltes be vnder the erthe; and

---

1. with vowtes and stonewerke, Cx., who has chambred below.
2. So also a.; mennes, Cx.
3. in stones\(] \) These words ought to be cancelled, but Trevisa perhaps misunderstood the Latin. Cx. changes money into name.
4. MS. and a. (not Cx.) add by clerical error from above: \(\text{why olde men names.} \)
5. So a. and Cx.; of, MS.
6. Northumberland, Cx.
7. a, a.; it, Cx.
8. We should probably add: that is there; metri gratia.
9. bude, a.
10. Legecestria chers, Cx. (quid ?)
12. a greet, a.

VOL. II.
Saxula Saxonica superextant addita magnis,
Concava testudo bina latet sub humo.
Mineras¹ profert salinas proxima tellus,
Quas spargit multis gentibus occiduis.
Carnibus et farre, sic piscibus affluuit urbs hæc;
Merces et classes advexit unda mare.³
Henrici quarti, Godescalli⁴ Cæsaris olim,
Regis et Haraldi⁵ pulvis habetur ibi.
Mars et Mercurius, Bacchus,⁶ Venus, atque Laverna,
Proteus et Pluto regna tenent inibi.

¹ Minetas, D. ² affluat, E. ³ Perhaps for mare, which the MSS. and Gale have, we should read maris. This indeed seems to be the reading of D., which has been corrected from mar. to maris. ⁴ Godescalli, B. ⁵ Araldi, A. ⁶ et, B.
Saxon smāl stones
Set vppon greet beep attones.²
There vnder grounde
Lotynge double vaut³ is i-founde.
Dat helpeth wp sondes
Meny men of westene ⁴ londes.
Fisch, flesche, and corn low
Dis cite toun haþ i-now.
Schippines and chaufare
See water bringeþ i-now þate.
Godescallo þere is,
Dat was emperour or ⁵ pis,
And þe ferþe Henry kyng,
þere is here riþtene ⁶ dwellynge.
Of kynge Haralde
Poundre þere þit is halde,⁷
Bacchus ⁸ and Mercurius, Mars and Venus,
also Lauerna,⁹

Trevisa.  God woot what þis is to mene, but poetes ¹² in here ¹³ manere of speche feyneth as þey enerich kynde crafte and leuynge hadde a dynersite ¹⁴ god, enerich from ⁰ þer; and so they feynep ¹⁵ a god of batalle and of fiþtyng, and clepeþ hym Mars; also þey feynep a god of couetise of richesse and marchaundise, and clepeþ ¹⁶ hym Mercurius; and so Bacchus þei clepeþ god of wyn; Venus, god of fairnesse and of lones; Lauerna, god of þeþe and of robberie; Proteus, ¹⁰ god of falsheþe and of gyle; and Pluto, god of helle. And so hit semep þat þis vers wolde mene þat þese feyned ¹⁷ goddes regneþ and beep i-serued in Chestre; Mars wp fiþting and ekkyngye; Mercurius wp couetise of richesse and of marchaundyse; Bacchus wp grete drinkynge; Venus wp loute nonþt ful wys; ¹⁸ Lauerna wp þeþe and robberyþ; Proteus ¹⁰

also kynge Henry the iiiijth, Godescallus somme tyme MS. Harl.  2261.  Cesar, and kynge Haralde were beryede. There Mars, Mercurius, Venus, Proteus, ⁹ and Pluto have gouernaile.

¹ smale, Cx.
² at ones, a.
³ vaut, a.; vout, Cx.
⁴ westren, Cx.
⁵ ar, a.; er, Cx.
⁶ erthe is there righten, Cx.
⁷ i-halde, a., Cx.
⁸ Bacces, MS.; Bacchus, a., Cx.
⁹ Possibly we should read Lauerna; but even so, the metre limps.
¹⁰ Proteus, MSS. and Cx.
¹¹ Added from Cx.
¹² So a.; portes, MS.
¹³ So a.; his, MS.
¹⁴ diuerse, Cx.; probably rightly.
¹⁵ feyned, Cx.
¹⁶ called Cx.
¹⁷ forsayed, Cx.
¹⁸ nowhît ful wys] lewdly, Cx.
Ejus gens sequitur multum mores Babylonis,
Quae dum plus poterit, plus solet esse ferox.

CAP. XLIX.

De provincia et comitatibus.

Alfridus. Notandum quod Anglia continet triginta duas shiras, id est, provincias, quae hodie dicuntur comitatus, exceptis Cornubia et insulis. Nomina comitatuum sunt ista: Kent, Southsex, Southereie, Hampshir, Barrockshir, quae sic denominatur a quaedam nuda quercu in foresta de Wyndesora, ad quam solebant provinciales convenire in tractatibus habendis. Item Wyltshir, quae quondam dicebatur provincia Severiana, Somersete, Dorset, Doeveshire, sive Doonia. Hae novem provinciae australis praeeditae, quatenus flumen Thamisia eas secernit a reliqua Anglia, judicabantur olim illa lege quae vocatur Westsaxenelaga. Sed Estsex, Midelsex,
De schiris Angliae, sine provinciis. Capitulum quadragesimun nonum.

Take heede pat\(^2\) Engelond conteyne\(^2\) two and pritti schires and provinces, pat now beep i-cleped erldoms, outake Cornewayle and ilon\(^3\) Alfridus. These beep pe names of pe erldoms and schires: Kent, Soup\(^4\) sex, Soup\(^4\) ray, Hampeschire, Barkseliire, pat hap pat name of a baar ook pat is in pe forest of Wyndesore; for at pat bare ook men of pat schire were i-wont come to gidres and make here tretrys, and pere take hir counsell, and rede.\(^4\) Also Wiltschire, pat biste\(^5\) somtyme pe province of Semeran, Somersete, Dorsete, Denenschire, pat hatte Deuonia in Latyn. Pese nyne south schires, as\(^6\) Tense departe\(^7\) hem from pe ojer dele of Engelond, were\(^7\) somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe pat hatte Westsaxon\(^8\) lawe.\(^9\) Estsex, Myddelsex,

The peple of whom folowe moche men of Babilon in MS. Harl 2261.

Of the schires other provinces of Englonde. Capitulum quadragesimun nonum.

Hit is to be attended that Englonde conteyne\(^e\) xxxxiij\(^d\) schires other provinces, Cornewaile excepte and other yles. Alfridus. These be the names of the schires, Kente, Southesex, Sutherey, Hampschire, Barrokeschire, takenge that name of hit of a bare oke in the forest of Wyndeshore, where men of that province were wonte to mete for a tretrys to be made betwene partes; also Wildeschire, that was callede somme tyme the province of Seuerne, Soumersete, Dorsete, Denenschire. These ix. sowthe provinces aforeside, than\(^e\) Thayms departethe theyme, thei were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of the Weste Saxones, which is callede Westsaxenelaga. But Estsex,

---

1. under, Cx. The text seems corrupt; possibly crowde (i.e. crowd\(^c\)) may be the true reading.
2. So a.; pen, MS.
3. the ilon, Cx.
4. reed, a.; aduys, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
5. heet, Cx.
6. So a.; nyne schires be soub, as, MS.
7. which were, Cx., who omits as above.
8. Westsaxon, a.
9. by the West Saxon lawe, Cx.
Southfolk, Northfolk, Herfortshire,\(^1\) Hunteydounshire, Northamptounshire,\(^2\) Cantebruggeshire,\(^3\) Bedfoershire, Bukktinghamshire,\(^4\) Leicestreshire,\(^5\) Derbyshire, Noth-\(^6\) inghamshire, Lincolnshire, Yorkshire,\(^7\) Northumberlond, Caerlielshire cum Cumberlond,\(^8\) Appel-\(^9\) bshire cum Westmerlond, Lancastreshire, que constant quinque modicas shires; istae quindecim provinciae predictae orientales et boreales judicabantur olim lege illa, que vocabatur Denelaga. Sed Oxenfortshire,\(^9\) Ware\(^10\) wykshire, Gloucestreshire, Wyrcestreshire, Hereford-\(^11\) shire, Salopshire, Staffordshire, Chestershire,\(^11\) istae octo shires mediterraneae et occidentales judicabantur olim lege Marcia, que Anglice Merchelenlaga vocabatur. Est ergo scendium quod provincia Eboraci solummodo se extendit hodie ab arco Humber\(^14\) et fluminis usque ad flumen Teyse.\(^15\) Et tamen sunt in ea viginti duo hundredi, id est, wapentakes.\(^16\) Hundredus autem Latine, sive cantredus Wallisce et Hibernice, continet centum villas. Wapentak Anglice idem est quod arma capere, eo quod in primo adventu novi domini sole-
Southfolk, Norfpolk, Hertfordschire, Huntyngdounschire, Norhamptounschire, Cantebryggeshire, Bokynghamshire, Leycestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamshire, Lynecolneschire, Zorkschire, Duramschire, Nor-humberlond, Carlelschire wip Comberlond, Appelbyschire wip Westmerlond, Lancastreschire, pat conteynep fyue litel schires; pese sittene norp and est schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe, pat hatte Denelawe. But Oxenfordeschire, Warwykschire, Glowcetreschirc, Worcestreschire, Herdefordschire, Schrop schire, Staffordschire, Chestreschire, pese eitte myddel and west schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe pat hatte Mercia in Latyn, and Mercheyne lawe in Englisshe. It is to wetynge pat Yorkschire now strecheş onlich from pe bowe of the ryuer of Humber anon to pe ryuer of Teyse; and 3it in Yorkschire bee two and twenty hundredes. Hundred and candred is al oon; candred is oo word i-made of Walsche and of Irische, and is to menynge, a contray pat conteynep an hondred townes, and is also in Englische i-cleped wepentake; for somtyme in pe comynge of a newe lorde tennauntes were i-wont to jilde Middelsex, Sowthefolke, Northefolke, Hertefordeschire, Hunt-yngdonschire, Northehamptonschire, Cambriggeshire, Bed-fordeschire, Bukkynghamshire, Leiecestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamshires, Lincolnneschire, Yorkeschire, Diremeschire, Northumbrelande, Caerlelschire, Cumbirlande, Appelbisschre, with Westmerlande, Lancastreschire, whiche conteyne the in hit v. other schires. These xv. schires afore seide of the este and of the northe were iuggede somme tyne by a lawe which was calleden Danelaga. But Oxforde-schire, Warwiekeschire, Gloucestreschire, Wireestreschire, Herdefordeschire, Shropschire, Stafordeschire, and Chestreschire,—these viij. mydelleschires and weste were iuggede somme tyne by the lawe of marches, which was calleden in Englische Merchelagela. Also hit is to be attendede that the province of Yorke extendeth hit oonly now from the arche of the floode of Humbre vn to the floode of Teyse; neuerthelesse there be in hit xxijii hundredes, whiche be callede wapentakes, for a hundrede in Latyn, f. 68. a. other elles a tancred in Waleseche other Yrische, conteynethe a c. townes. A wapentake in Englische is seide to take wepons; for tennauntes were wonte to yelde

1 Cambriggeshre, Cx.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 Herefordschire, a; Hereford-shire, Cx.
4 wete, Cx., and so often.
5 of om. a.; clause varied in Cx.
bant tenentes reddere arma sua pro homagio. Durem-
shire\(^1\) se extendit a fluvio\(^2\) These\(^3\) usque ad flumen
Tyne. Northumberlond proprie sumendo, se extendit
a flumine Tyne\(^4\) usque ad flumen Twyde,\(^5\) quod est
principium Scotiæ. Si igitur plaga Northimbrana, que
fuit olim ab Humbra usque ad Twedam, hodie pro\(^6\)
unica provincia seu comitatu,\(^7\) sicut antiquitus com-
putetur, tune sunt in Anglia solummodo viginti duo
shire. Si autem plaga Northimbrana dividatur in sex
provincias praedictas, que sunt Everkshire,\(^8\) Durem-
shire,\(^9\) Northumberlond, Caerlielshire, Appelbyshire,\(^10\)
Lancastreshire,\(^11\) tune sunt in Anglia præter Cor-
nubiam et insulas triginta sex shire,\(^12\) provinciae, sive
comitatus. Quas omnes fecit Willehnus\(^13\) Conquæstor.

\(^1\) Duresmeschire, B.
\(^2\) fluminic, A.
\(^3\) These, B.; Thes, A.
\(^4\) Tyri, B.
\(^5\) Twede, B.; Twide, A.
\(^6\) pro] om. B.
\(^7\) comitatus, B.
\(^8\) Everwikshire altered to Werc.

\(^9\) Duresmeschire, B.
\(^10\) Appelbischire, A.B.
\(^11\) Lancastreschire, B.
\(^12\) shires, E., and so above (once)
\(^13\) rca, B.
vp hire wepene instede of homage. Duramschire strecceh from pe ryuere Teys 1 anon to pe ryuere Tyne. And for to speke propurliche of Norphumberlond, Norphumberlond strecceh from pe ryuere of Tyne anon to pe ryuere of Twede, pat is pe 2 bygynyng of Scotlond. Pan 3if the contey of Norphumberlond, pat was somtyme from Humber anon to Twede, be now acounted for oon schire and oon erldom, as it was somtyme, pan beep in Engelond but two and pritty schires, but 3if pe contey of Norphumberlond be 5 departed in pe sixe forsaide 4 schires, pat beep Euerwykschire, Duramschire, Norphumberlond, Carlelschire, Appelbyschire, Lancastreschire, pane beep in Engelond sixe and pritty schires wipoute Cornewayel and also wipoute pe ilondes. Kyng William pe Conquerour made alle pis prownce and schires be descryved 5 and i-mete. Pan were i-founde sixe and pritty schires 6 and an half 7 and townes 8 two and fifty powsand and fourte score ; parisch churcheis fyue and fourty powsand and twoyne ; kny;tes fees sixty powsand and fiftene. Perof 9 men of religioun hap ei;te and twenty powsand and fiftene kny;tes fees.10 But now wodes [beip] 11 i-hewe adoun and newe telyng 12 lond i-made moche more pan was foo, and meny townes i-bulde, and so pere beep now in Engelond meny moo hides 13 and townes pan were in pat

there wepes for an hommage in the firste commenge of newe lordes. Duremschire extendethe hit from the floode of Teys to the floode of Tyne. Northumbrelond pro- perly extendethe hit from the floode of Tyne to the floode of Twide, which is the begynnenge of Scotlond. And if the plage of Northumbrelond, which was somme tyume from Humbre vn to Twide, be accomplide as for oon pro- wince other schire, as hit was wonet, then there be in En- glonde oonly xxxij 11 schires. And if that plage of North- umbrelond be diuidede into vp provinces, which be Euerwickschire, Duremschire, Northumbrelond, Carlels- schire, Appelbeschire, Lancastreschire, then there be in Englande xxxvj 11 schires, except yles perteynenge to that lond, and also Cornewaile. Whiche alle William Conque-

---

1 Teys, a.
2 in the, Cx.
3 is, a. (not Cx.)
4 forsaide om. Cx., probably rightly.
5 So a. and Cx. (who has these pronounces) ; destroyed, MS.
6 Text of the following clauses as in a ; more than thirty words are repeated without sense in MS. in various places.
7 and half a schire, a. and Cx.
8 and schire townes, MS.
9 Whereof, Cx.
10 Some words repeated in MS.
11 Added from a. and Cx.
12 tyleenge, a.
13 yllages, Cx., who varies the sentence considerably.

---
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

describi, et per hydas\textsuperscript{1} seu carucatas dimetiri, et in-
venti sunt comitatius triginta sex et dimidium; vil\lê
vero quinquaginta duo milia et octoginta,\textsuperscript{2} ecclesiae paro-
chiales quadraginta quinque milia duo, feoda militum
60,015, de quibus religiosi habent 28,015\textsuperscript{3} feoda;\textsuperscript{4} sed,
hodie, memoribus succisis novalibusque procisis,\textsuperscript{5} multo
plures sunt hidæ et villæ quam tunc erant.

CAP. L.

\textit{De legibus legumque vocabulis.}\textsuperscript{6}

SANCIIVIT\textsuperscript{7} primum\textsuperscript{8} leges in Britannia Dunwallo

Molmutius, cujus leges Molmutinæ\textsuperscript{9} dicebantur; usque

\textsuperscript{1} hidæ, A.
\textsuperscript{2} 62080, D.
\textsuperscript{3} So A.B., Gale, and the versions; 19,015, E.
\textsuperscript{4} de . . . feoda'] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{5} novalibusque procisis] pascuisque codicatis, C.; pascuisque procisis, B.D.
\textsuperscript{6} De legum conditoribus, C.; De legibus et carum interpretationibus, D.

This chapter, for which Higden gives no authorities, is almost en-
tirely taken from the 

Chronicen of John Brompton (pp. 956, 957, in Twysden's \textit{Hist. Angl. Script. x. Lond. 1652}), whose readings are
sometimes quoted. As usual the readings of C.D. agree better with
the original.

\textsuperscript{7} Sanciuit, A.; Edidit, C.D., after \textit{Britannia}.
\textsuperscript{8} primo, A.B.
\textsuperscript{9} Molmutinæ, C. (not D.); Mol-
mitæ, B.
tyne. *Trevisa.*

Hit is wondere why Alfrede summeth the schires of Engelond somde as a man pat mette; for Alfrede tellep pe som of schires in pis manere: *Pere beep in Engelond sixe and pritty schires wipoute Conewayle and wipoute pe yloundes. Why scip he nouȝt in pis manere: *Pere beep in Engelond sixe schires wip Conewayle, and pritty oper schires wipoute pe ilondes? Eyper manere summynge is as vreydly as oper.* For to make a redy somme it schulde be i-write in pis manere: In Engelond beep seuen and pritty schires, and so is Conewayle accounted wip pe opere schires; and pat is skilful. For Conewayle is a schere of Engelond; for, as he scip, Conwaile is in pis Bretayne hym self, as it is aleide 2 in pe fourpe chapitre of pis firste book. *Pan hit is in oon of pe chief parties of pis Bretayne, pat beep Engelond, Wales, and Scotlond.* But Conewayle is nouȝt in Wales, for pere is a grete see bytwene; nooper in Scotlond, for pere beep many hundred myle bytwene. *Pan Conewayle is in Engelond, and is departed in hundredes, and is i-ruled by pe lawe of Engelond, and holdeș schire and schire days, as opere schires doop.* 3 if Alfrede scip may in pat, he wot nouȝt what he mattep.

*De legibus legumque vocabulis. Capitulum quinquagesimum.*

Dunwallo, pat hete Moluntius 3 also, made pe 4 firste lawes in Bretayne, the whiche lawes were i-cleped Moluntius his lawes,

rour, kyng of Englonde, causde to be describde, and the hides and carucates of londes to be measurede; in which londe xxxvij schires were founde and dimid., liij m. and lxxx. townes, and xiij and v. m. peresche chiches and twye, lx. m. fees of knyghtes and xv., of whom religious men have xxvij schires, m. and xv. fees; but now, woodes kytte downe and made arable londe, thee be moun moo townes and hides of londe then were in that tyne.

*Of lawes and the wordes of lawes. Capitulum quinquagesimum.*

Dunwallo Molimicius ordeynede firste lawes in Britayyne, the lawes of whom were callede Molimitine, obscurede and

---

1 The remainder of the chapter appears thus in Cx., who omits Trevisa's name:—"And whereas a "fore is vernet that Conwaile is "not sette amongethe shires of "Englonde, it may stonde amonge "them welynowgh. For it is neyther "in Wales ne in Scotlond, but is

"in Englonl, and iometh to Devon-
"shire. And so may ther ben "accomputed in Englonl xxxvij,shires "and a half with the other shires."

2 aldey, a.

3 Molimicius, Cx., and so below.

4 be] om. a., Cx.
ad tempora Willemi Conquæstoris satîs celebres. Inter quæ\textsuperscript{1} statuit, ut civitates et templâ deorum, viaque ad illa ducentes, ac\textsuperscript{2} aratra colonum\textsuperscript{3} immunitate confugii gaudeant. Deinde Marcia regina Britonum, uxor Gwitelini\textsuperscript{4} regis, a qua provincia Merciorum putatur denominata, legem edidit discretionem et justitiam plenam, quæ lex Marcia vocatur.\textsuperscript{5} Has duas leges Gildas historicus transstulit de Britannico in Latinum, et rex Aluredus postmodum de Latino\textsuperscript{7} in Saxonicum, quæ Merchenelaga\textsuperscript{8} dicebatur.\textsuperscript{9} Ipsæ quoque Aluredus legem Anglice conscriptam superadjectit, quæ Westsexenelaga\textsuperscript{10} vocatur.\textsuperscript{11} Tandem Danis in hac\textsuperscript{12} terra dominantibus, tertia lex emanavit, quæ Danelaga\textsuperscript{13} dicebatur. Ex his tribus legibus Sanctus Edwardus tertius unam legem communem edidit, quæ leges Edwardi usque hodie vocantur.\textsuperscript{14} De quibus nonnulla vocabula adhuc frequentata cum corum a

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{1} quis, C. (not D.)
\item \textsuperscript{2} et, C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{3} colonum] So all the MSS. and Gale; also Brompton. So also above, p. 42, but the reading has probably sprung from a compendious mode of writing.
\item \textsuperscript{4} Gucntilini, C.; Gintelini, Gale.
\item \textsuperscript{5} legem, B.
\item \textsuperscript{6} vocatur, C.D.; dicebatur, B.
\item \textsuperscript{7} de Latino] om. C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{8} Merchenelaga, B.C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{9} vocatur, B.
\item \textsuperscript{10} Westsexenelaga, A.
\item \textsuperscript{11} Ipsæ . . . vocatur] om. B.; vocatur, C. (not D.)
\item \textsuperscript{12} hac] om. C.D.
\item \textsuperscript{13} Daneelaga, A.
\item \textsuperscript{14} usque hodie before leges in B.
\end{itemize}
and were solempne ¹ anon to William Conquerour his tyme. Moluntius ordeyned among his lawes, pat citizes, temples, and weies pat ledep perteo, and plowth men solowes schoulde bane prinelege and fredom forto same alle men pat wolde fle petro for socour and refute. ² Pan afterward Marcia, queene of Bretons, pat was Guytelyneus pe kynges wyf, of hire pe province hadde pe name Mercia, as som men trouwepe. Sehe ³ made a lawe ful of rîȝt and ⁴ of wit and resoun, and was i-cleped Merchene lawe. Gildas, pat wroot stories of Bretons, turnede þese tweeic lawes out of Breton speche in to Latyn, and afterward kyng Alredes ⁵ turned alle in fere ⁶ out of Latyn in to Saxon speche, and ⁷ was i-cleped alle in fere Merchene lawe. Also the same kyng Alredus wroot in Engli-sche, and putte to anojer lawe, pat heet West Sexene lawe. Panne afterward Danes were lorde in pis lond, and so com ⁹ forþ the prilde lawe pat heet Dane lawe. Of þese þe lawes Seynt Edward pe pridde ¹⁰ made oon comyn lawe, pat þiȝt hatte ¹¹ Seint Edwardes lawe. I ¹² holde hit be worthy ¹³
ekpede welle vn to the tyme of William Conquerour. MS. HARL. f. 68. b.
Amonge whom he made a statute that cities, temples of goddes, weies ledenge to theyme, and the ploes of tillers of londe, scholdel ioys imunite of confute. After that Marcia, qwene of Britones, wife to kyng Gvitelyne, of whom the province of the marches be travewed to have takenâ theire name, made a law full of ryȝtenousenes and of descrecion, which was callede the lawe of the Marches. Gildas, the writer of storyes, did translate those ij. lawes from the langage of Britones in to Latyn. And kyng Alrede did translate hit from Latyn in to the speche of Saxones, which lawe was callede Merchenealgæ. Also kyng Alrede caste to that lawe written in Engli-sche whiche was callede Weste Saxon lawe. Then after that, the Danes reignenenge in that londe, the thridde lawe began, whiche was callede Danelaga. Kyng Edwarde the thridde made oon commune lawe of those three lawes, whiche be callede vn to this tyme presente the lawes of Seynte Ed-

¹ were solompny (sic) observed vnto, Cx.
² refuge, Cx.
³ He, a.
⁴ and] om. a. and Cx.
⁵ Alurede, a. and Cx.
⁶ in fere] om. Cx., and also below.
⁷ and]. Here and above the sense requires þat.
⁸ Aluredeus, a. and Cx.
⁹ cam, Cx.
¹⁰ the confessour, Cx.
¹¹ So a. ; hadde, MS.
¹² Û tebe, a.
¹³ it wel dou, Cx.

---

MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. I. 93

---

2961.
explicationibus hic inserere dignum duxi: Mund-bridge 3 id est, lesio majestatis; Gallice, ble mur de honur. 4 Burgbridge, 5 id est, lesio libertatis aut sepi; Gallice, ble mur de court ou de clos. Grithbruche, 6 id est, fractio pacis. Miskennigh, 7 id est, variatio loquae in curia. Sheauwyngh, 8 propositio merci- monii; Gallice, despleure 9 de marchaudis. Ham- soken 10 vel Hamfare, 11 id est, insultus factus in domo. Forstalling, 12 id est, coactio vel ob sistentia facta in strata regia. Frithsokien, 14 id est, tutatio 15 in juris dicione; Gallice, seurte 16 en defence. Infangthef 17 pelfinde inward, 18 id est, infra suum 19 capere reum; Gallice, dedeinz 20 le seon 21 attachement de laroun. 22 Saka, 23 id est, jurisdictio; Gallice, courte justice, forfet ou achesoun. 24 Soka, id est, secta curiae. Ex inde 25 dicitur Sokne; 26 sed sokne aliquando dicitur interpellatio majoris audientiae. Wergelthef, id est, solte 27 de laroun eschape. 28 Theam, 29 id est, landare au torem; Gallice, reuoucher 30 garant. Et quandoque dicitur sequela nativorum. Flitwite, 31 id est, ferri 32 per melle. 33 Wardwyte, id est, surisse 34 de garde. Blodwyte, 35 id est, amerciamentum pro effusione san-

warde, mony wordes of whiche lawe nede an expocion, as Mundbreche, hure of maieste, in Frenche, Blesmur de honour; Burbriche, a hure of liberte, in Frenche, Blesmur de court, ou de clos; Grithbriche, a brekenge of peace; Muskenning, diuersite other chaungenge of speche in courte; Schauw Wynge, sette furthe of marchaundis, in Frenche, displevir de marchaundis; Hamsokne or Hamfare, þat is, a fray made in an howse; Forstallynge, constreyne made in the kynges strete. Fryth soknc, suerte in a iurisdiccion, in Frenche, surte en defence. Infanthef pelfynde inwarde, that is to say, to take a gilty man within his lordeschippe, in Frenche, dedeins le soen atachemente de laron. Sca, a iurisdiccion, in Frenche, court justice. Soka, a sute of the courte, where of Sokne is seyde. But Sokne is seide otherwhile an interpellacion of a moore grete audience. Werkelthef, that is to say, solte de laron eschamp. Them, that is, to lawde the auctor, in Frenche, reuouche graunte; whiche is callede otherwhile a sequelo of natife men. Blodewitte, a merciament for effusion of bloode. Hittewite, amends for

---

1 Myndebruche, Cx.
2 of worschippe and of honour, a.
3 in, Cx., everywhere.
4 blescher, Cx., and so below.
5 Burghbruche, Cx.
6 brekynde] Added from a. and Cx.
7 disploix, Cx.
8 surte, a.
9 Infangthef, a.; which is the more usual form. Cx. has some omissions here, and further on.
10 laroun eschape, MS. (not a.)
11 Added from a.
12 Sokne, a.
13 Wergeltthef, a.
14 laron, a.
15 Cultwyte, Cx.
guinis. Flitwite, id est, emenda proveniens pro conten
tione. Leyrwyte, id est emenda pro corruptione nativae. Giltwyte, id est, emenda pro transgressione Scot, id est, symbolum ad opus ballivorum domini. Hidge vel Taillage, id est, tallagium datum Danis, id est iij. denarios de qualibet terra. Wapentak et hundrede idem sunt, quia procinctus centum villarum solebat reddere arma in adventu domini. Lestage, id est, consuetudo exacta in nundinis et mercatis. Stalage, id est, exactio pro statione in plateis tempore nundinarum.

CAP. LI.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

Alfridus. Inconcussa stetit apud Britones insula monarchia, a primo scilicet Bruto usque ad Julium Cæsarem; a quo Julio usque ad Severum hæc insula Romanis fuit vectigalis et subacta. Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum; deficiente Britonum successione, Romani in ea regnaverunt. Romanis tandem propter itineris

1 Flitwite, Br., which is probably right; Fightwit, D., which has Fightwit however under the other head.
2 cæ, D.
3 Lethirwite, B.; Letherwithe, Br.
4 id est] Added from B., Gale.
5 proveniens, ins. A.
6 nativo, C.
7 Giltwite, D.; Giltwithe, Br.
8 regis, B.
9 vel Taillage] om. B.
10 talage, D.
11 taillageium, Gale, taillagium, D.; and so below.
12 Danegeld, A.
13 iij. denarios after terra in B.
14 hundred, A.; hundredus, C.D., Gale.
15 quasi, C.D.
16 The latter part of this chapter varies verbally, but is the same in substance in C.D.; a few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are not noticed.
17 B. omits reference.
18 Transposed and altered in C.D.
19 guidem, add. C.D.
20 fuit Romanis, B.
21 quoque] om. C.D.
22 Gale adds: viz., a tempore Julii Cæsaris per ecelex. annos ferme.
23 tames, C; (not D.)
trespas. Scot, a gaderynge in worke of baylifes. Flittwyte, amandes i-doo for chydynges. Leyrewite, amandes for liggynge by a bond womman. Hydage, taylage of hydes of lond. Danegeld, taylage i-carpe to pe Danes, pat was pre pans of eueriche bouata terre, pat is, of eueriche oxeland. A wepentake and an hondred is al oon, for pe contray of an hondred townes were i-woned to tilde vppe wepene in pe comyng of pe lord. Lastage, custom i-chalanged in chepynges and in feyres. Stalage, custom for stondynge in stretes in feyre tyme.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

The kyngdom of Bretayne stood wi
tu
e without departynge hool and alle oon kyngdom to pe Britouns fram pe firste Bruyt anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; and fro Iulius Cesar his tyme to Seuerus his tyme. Lond was under tribute to pe Romayns. Neuer-J?eles kynges hadde of pe same ilond. From Seuerus anon to pe laste prince Gratian, successoures of Bretouns faillede, and Romaynes reignede in Bretayne. [Afterward pe Romanys lefte of pe regnynge in Britayne],

commenge for sryvenge. Leirwite, that is to say, amendes for the corrupcion of a woman natife. Gulte-226 i-wite, an amendes for a transgression. Scot, that is the pay-
ment of a certeyne moncy to the vitilite of the lorde. Hidage other talage, that is to say, tallage of the hides of the londe. Danegelde, a tallage liffen to the Danes of iij. Wapentake and hundredre be the same as the precinete of an c. townes, which were wonte to yelde there weppens in the firste commenge of theirre lorde. Lestage, that is a thynge required in feyres. Stallage, an exaccion for stondenge in the hic weies in tyme of feyres.

Of realmes and of the merkes of theyme. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

The monarchy of the yle of Briteyne stode inconeuussede from the firste Brute to Iulius Cesar; whiche yle paiede a tribute to the Romanes from the tyme of Iulius vn to the tyme of Seuerus; the succession of Britones faylenge Romanes regnede in hit. At the laste, the Romanes

1 So a.; Leyrew, MS.  2 So a.; Danagild, MS.; Danegeld, Cx.  3 Lestage, a., Cx.  5 Added from Cx.

2 euericha, MS.  4 towneswepene, MS.  6 Added from a. and Cx.

---

MS. HARL. 2261.
longitudinem seu propter inevitabiles aliunde occupationes 1 regnare desistentibus, Scoti 2 et Picti Britanniam, omni armato milite per abductionem Maximi tyranni 3 vacatam, 4 diutius affixerunt; quousque Saxones a Britonibus invitati contra Pictos regem Hibernicum Gurmundum cum Pictis suis et 5 ipsos Britones cum Caretico rege suo de Loegria expulsos usque ad 6 Cambriam profugassent. 7 Sicque Saxones 6 victores effecti, prout queaque provincia potentior erat, reges proprios sibi 10 constituientes, terram Angliam 11 in septem regna 12 diviserunt; que tamen postmodum successive in unam monarchiam sub principe Adelstano 13 coierunt. 14 Dani tamen a diebus Adelwolfi, 15 patris Aluredi, usque ad tempora Sancti 16 Edwardi tertii per centum septuaginta circiter annos, terram hanc jugiter infestaverunt, sed 17 per triginta annos in ea continue regnaverunt. Post Danos 18 vero Sanctus Edwardus tertius viginti tribus 19 annis et paulo plus, 20 et post eum Haroldus 21 novem mensibus regnum tenuit. Post quos Normanni in ea usque hodie presederunt. Quod 22 quamdiu tenebunt in posterum, novit ille qui nihil ignorat. Ranulphus, 23 De septem vero regnis prædictis eorumque limitibus quando incepere-

---

1 tandem, add. C. (not D.)
2 Here and elsewhere the MSS. vary between Scoti and Scotti.
3 abductionem . . . tyrannum] Maximum tyrannum, C.D.
4 evacuatam, A.B.
5 regem . . . et] auxilio eorumdem Pictorum regisque Gurmundi Hibernici, C.D.
6 in, B., Gale.
7 Loegria . . . profugassent] Northumbria et in mediterranea Anglia expulsos usque in Walliam detrassissent, C.D.
8 Sique, B.; Sic, Gale.
9 Angli, C.D.
10 sibi] om. B.C.D.

11 Angliam, A.
12 successive, ins. C.D.
13 Athelstano, B.
14 postmodum . . . coierunt] paulatim defecerunt donec rex Saxorum Adelstanus, ceteris particularis in unum contractis, unica gaudent monarchia, C.D.
15 Athelwulfi, Gale; Ethelwulf, D.
16 regis, Gale.
17 et, add. C. (not D.)
18 Post Danos] postmodum, C.D.
19 30, C.D.
20 et paulo plus] om. C.D.
21 Haroldus, B.D.
22 Quam, C. (not D.)
23 C.D. omit reference.
for it was fer from [Rome], 1 oper for greet besynesse pat pey hadde in oper side. Danne Scottes and Pictes by mysledynge of Maximus pe tyrant pursued Bretayne, and werred perynne wip greet strenghe of men of armes longe tyme, for to pe Saxones come at pe prayenge of [pe] 1 Britounes azenst pe Pictes, and putte out Gurmund the Irische kyng wip his Pictes, and pe Britounes also wip here kyng, pat heet Careteius, 2 and drof hem out of Engeland in to Wales. And so pe Saxons were victors, and eueriche province, as he was strengere, made hem kynges; and so pey deled Engeland in seuen kyngdoms. 3 Neuerpeles afterward pesee seuenkyngdomseuericheafteropercome alle in to oon kyngdom al hool vnder pe prince Adelstone. Neuerpeles pe Danes pursewed pis lond from Athelwolf his tyme, pat was Alrudes 4 fader, to the pridded Seint Edwards 5 tyme, aboute an hundred twice pre score and ten; but he reigned perynne continualliche pritty twice. After pe Danes pe pridded Seyn Edward regned pere ynine pre and twenty twice and a litelwhat 6 more. And after hym Harald helde pe kyngdom nyne monpes. And after hem Normans hauerp i-regned perynne anon to pis tyme; but how longe they scholde holde he woot [pat] 7 no ping vnknowep. By of pe forsaiide kyngdoms seune, of here merkes, meres, and

levenge to regine in hit, what for the longitude of trasaille and what for other occupaciones ineuitable, Scottes and Pictes wastede that londe of Briteyne with a grete hoste, tylle that the Saxones beenge victores chasede the Pictes and Scottes in to Wales. And then euery province after theire powere made to theyme kynges, diindenge the grownde of Englonde in to vij. realmes, whiche come alle afterwares by succession in to oon monarchye in the tyme of kyng Athelstan. The Danes trobledhe that londe gretyly from the tyme of Athelwulphus, fader to kyngge Alurede, vn to the tymses of Seynete Edwarde the thrydde, by a c. lx. and x. yeres, regennedge by xxx 11 yeres continualle in hit. Seynte Edwarde the thrydde regneded after the Danes xxiiij 1 yere and more, and Haralde after hym by ix. monethes. After whom Normannes regneded in hit vn to oure tymes, God knoweth the how longe that schalle continue. R. Of whiche vij. realmes aforeseted, and of the merkes of theyme,
runt, quantumve duraverint, aliqua breviter hic perstringam. *Alfridus.* Primum regnum fuit Cantuariorum, ab australi oceano usque ad flumen Thamisii protensum. In quo primus Hengistus sub anno Domini secundum Dionysium ccccvi. regnare cœpit, et duravit regnum illud per annos eceIxviii. sub regulis quindecim; donec, Baldredo expulso, Egbertus rex Westsaxonum illud regnum suo anneceret imperio. Secundum regnum fuit Southsaxoniae, habens ab oriente Cantiam, ab austro mare et Vectam insulam, ab occidente Hampshtere, ab aquilone Southreyam; in quo primus Elle, cum tribus filiis suis, tricesimo ab adventu Anglorum anno cœpit regnare. Quod quidem regnum cito post in aliorum jura transivit. Tertium regnum fuit Estsaxonie, habens ab oriente mare, ab occidente pagum Londinie, ab austro Thamisiam, ab aquilone Southfolk; cuius loci reges a primo Sabberto usque ad temporarum Dacorum per decem reges fere sub aliis regibus parebant; frequentius tamen et diutius regibus Merciorum subjacebant; donec rex Westsaxonum Egbertus regnum illud suo anneceret imperio. Quartum
bondes, whan pey bygonne and how longe pey durede here horse
I schal somwhat schortliche telle. *Alfridus.* Pe firste kyng-
dom was pe kyngdom of Kent, pat strecche from pe est oceean anoon to pe ryuer of Temse. Þere reigned pe firste Hengistus, and bygan to regyne by Denys acontes pe 3ere of oure Lord foure hundred and five and fifty. Pat kyngdom durede pre hundred 3ere pre score and ei3te vnder fifteen kynges, for to þat Baldred was i-putte out. And 1 Eggebert, kyng of Westesaxons, ioyned pat kyngdom to his owne. Pe secounde kyngdom was of Southesex, pat hadde in pe est side Kent, in þe soup pe see and þe yle of Wiȝt, in þe west Hampshire, and in þe norp Souþeray. Þere Ella regnedde first wiþ his pre sones, and bygan to regyne pe 3ere after pe comynge of Angles euen pritty; but þat kyngdom wiþynne a short tyme passede into opere kyngdoms. Pe pridde kyngdom was of Estsaxon, and hadde in þe est side þe see, and in þe west þe contray of Londoun, in þe soup Temse, in þe north Sopfolk. Pe kynges of this contray Estsaxon from þe firste Sabertes tymne anoon to þe tymne of Danes, ten kynges, were somdel sugette to opere kynges; noþeles ofte and lengeste þey were vnder þe kynges of Mercia forto þat tymne whan Þegbert kyng, kyng of Wessaxon, ioyned

when thei began, and how longe thei haue indurede, y MS. Harl. 2261. 

*Alfridus.* The firste realme was of men of Cawnturbery, protendede from the sowthe oceean vn to the floode of Thomys, in whom Hengiste roynedde firste in the yere of oure Lorde God, after Dionysius, cccc. iv. yere, and that realme durede by ccc. lxvij. yere vnder xv. lytelle kynges, vntil Baldredus 2 expulde, Egbertus kyng of Westesaxones added that realme to his impre.
The secunde realme was of Sowthesex, hauenge on the este to hit Kente, of the sowthe the see and the yle of Wiȝhte, at the weste Hamphteschire, at the northe Southerey, in whom Elle with his thre childer began to regyne firste in the xxxd yere from the commenage of Engliche men, which realme wente soone after in to other realmes. The thrydde realme was of Estssex, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Fraudce, on the weste the cite of London, on the sowthe Thomys, on the northe to hit, Souþefolke. The f. 69 b. kynges of whiche place from the firste Seberte vn to the tymne of Danes, by x. kynges, were obediente to other kynges, moste specially to the kynges of þe Marches, vn til that Þegbeorte, kyng of Westesaxones, subduede hit to his impyre.

1 And] So a. and Cx. ; of, MS. 
2 Baldredus, Harl. MS.
regnum fuit Estanglorum, comprehensens 1 Northfolk et Southfolk, habens 2 ad orientem et aquilonem mare, 3 ad circum 4 Cantebruggeshire, 5 ad occidentem Fossam Sancti Edmundi et Hertfordshire, 6 ad austrum Essex. 7 Et duravit 8 hoc regnum sub duodecim regulis donec, occiso rege Edmundo, Dani utrumque regnum Estangiae 9 et Estsaxonum sibi usurparent. 10 Quibus postmodum 11 Danis 12 aut fugatis 13 aut subactis, rex Edwardus senior ambo illa regna suo annexuit 14 imperio. Quintum regnum fuit Westsaxonum, omnium regnorum durabilius, habens ab oriente Southsaxoniam, ab aquilone Thamisiam, 15 ab austro et occidente 16 oceanum. In quo cepit regnare Cerdicus 17 cum filio suo 18 Kynrico, 19 anno Domini secundum Dionysium dxix 0, ab adventu 20 Anglorum Ixxj 9; in quod 21 regnum cætera 22 regna transierunt. 23 Sextum regnum fuit Merciorum ceteris regnis 24 magis spatiosum, cujus limites fuerunt ad occasum flumen 25 Dee, juxta Cestriam, 26 et flumen Sabrine juxta Solopiam usque 27 Bristoliam; ad ortum vero 28 mare orientale; 20 ad

---

1 continebus, C.D.; apprehendens, B.
2 habensque, C.D.
3 mare] oceanum, C.D.
4 circum, Gale.
5 Cantbrigis, B.
6 Hertfordschire, B.
7 Essex, B.; Estsaxonium, C.D.
8 ceurritque, C.; curritque, D.
9 Est Anglorum, Gale, C.D.; Est Angl., A.B.
10 usurparunt, C.D.
11 tamen, C.D.
12 Danis postmodum, B.
13 aut fugatis] affugatis, B.
14 subjunxit, C.; adjunxit, D.; annexit, B.
15 flumen Thamisiae, C.D.
16 mare oceanum, C.D. After oceanum Gale adds, viz., usque ad ultimum finem Cornubiae.
17 Cardiens, Gale.
18 quo . . . suo] om. B.
19 Henrico, C. (not D.)
20 vero, add. C.D.
21 quod quidem, D.
22 certa, B.
23 paulative (sic) coierunt, C.D. (with other slight variations.)
24 regnis] om. C.D.
25 flumen] om. C.D.
26 Lecestriam, C.D.
27 usque ad, A.
28 vero] om. C.D.
29 occidentale, C. (not D.)
pat kyngdom to his owne. Pe fourpe kyngdom was of Trevisa.
Est Angles, and conteynede Norpfolk and Soupfolk, and
hap 1 in pe est side 2 and in pe norp pe see, in pe norp-
west Cantebriggeschire, 3 in pe west Seynt Edmond his dice,
and Hertfordschire, and in pe soup Essex. Pis kyngdom
durede vnder twelue kynges, 4 forto that tyme when kyng
Edmond was i-slawe, and pe Danes wrongfulliche took bope
the kyngdoms of Est Angles and of Est Saxon. After-
ward pe Danes were i-putte and i-dryue away, oper i-made
sogett. And pe elder kyng Edward ioynede bope pese kyng-
doms to his owne. Pe fifte kyngdom was of Westsaxon,
and durede lengeste of alle pese kyngdoms, and hadde in pe
est 5 side Soupsaxon, in pe norp Temse, in pe soup and west
pe see of oceean. In pat kyngdom reigned Cerdik wip his
sone Kenrik, and bygan to regne pe zere of oure Lord fife
hundred and nyntene, and after pe comyng of Angles pe
score zere and caleuene, 6 so seip Denys. Pe opepe kyngdoms
passede into pis kyngdom. Pe sixte kyngdom was of
Mericia, and was grettest of al. Pe merkes and pe meres
perof were in pe west side pe ryuer Dee faste by Chestre,
and Seuarne faste by Schreibusury 7 and anon to Bristowe; in

The iiiijth realme was of Este Englische men, comprehendid-
enge Northefolke and Southefolke, hanenge at the este to
hit and on the northe the see, at the weste the dyche of
Seynte Edmunde and Hertfordschire, at the sowthe
Estesex; and this realme durede vnder xij. kynges, vn tyl
Seynte Edmunde sleyne, the Danes vsurpe the realme of
Estenglonte, and also of Estesex; whom kyng Ed-
warde the senior put to his realme, the Danes other put
to flizhte other subacte. The vthe realme was of Weste-
saxones, moste durable of alle realmes, hanenge on the este
to hit Sowthesex, on the northe Thamys, on the sowthe
and weste the oceean. In whom Cerdicus began to reigne
with Kymricus his son, after Dionysius, the yere of oure
Lorde God v 7 xix. yere, from the commenge of Englische
men lxij. yere. In to whom oper realmes wente. The
sext realme was of the Marches, more large then other
realmes. The merkes of whom were, at the weste, the
floode of Dee nye to Chestre, and the floode of Seuerne
nye to Shrewesbury vn to Bristowe, at the este the

1 had, a.
2 So a.; in west side, MS. (w
being erased.)
3 Cambriggeshire, Cx.
4 So Cx.; kyngdoms, MS.
5 So Cx.; west, MS. (first hand).
6 cleaene, a.
7 Schronesbury, a.
austrum flumen Thamisie usque Londoniam; ab aquilone¹ flumen Humbræ, descendenendo occidentaliter² usque ad flumen Merse,³ quousque juxta⁴ cornu Wyraellie⁵ descendat in mare occidentale. In hoc pago regnavit⁶ primo Penda, filius Wybbæ,⁷ anno Domini secundum Dionysium dcxxvi⁸, ab adventu Anglorum clxxv⁹, stetitque hoc regnum sub regibus xvij. per annos circiter cclxx. usque ad ultimum Col-wulfum;⁰ cui Dani, expulso Burdredo rege, regnum illud¹⁰ tradiderant custodiendum. Verum¹¹ rex West-saxonum Edwardus senior, expulsis Danis, regnum Merciorum suo annexuit imperio. Erat tamen hoc regnum in sui primordio in tres partes divisum; scilicet in Occidentales Mercios, in¹² Mediterraneos, et in¹³ Orientales Mercios. Septimum regnum fuit North-imbrorum;¹⁴ cujus limites fuerunt ab ortu et occasu oceanus; ab austro flumen Humbræ,¹⁵ descenden-do versus occidentem,¹⁶ per fines comitatum Nothing-ham¹⁷ et Derbye¹⁸ usque ad flumen de¹⁰ Mersee; al.²⁰
pe est pe est see, in pe souh Tense anon to Londoun; in pe norp pe ryuer of 1 Humber. And so westward and downward anon to pe ryuer Mersee anon to pe 2 corner 3 of Wyreale; 4 pepe Humber fallep in to pe west see. Penda, Wibbes sone, regnedfirst in pis kyngdom pe 3ere of oure Lorde sexe hundred and sixe and twenty, so seip Denys, and from pe comynge of Angles an hundred 3ere pre score and fiftene. Pis kyngdom durede vnder ei^tene kynges aboute a two hundred 3ere, pre score and fiftene,5 anon to pe laste Colwulf; [to pe whiche Colwulf] 6 pe Danes bytook pat kyngdom to kepe, whan Burdred pe kyng was i-putte out. But7 pe elder Edward pe kyng putte out Danes and ioynede pe kyngdom 8 of Mercia to his owne kyngdom; nopeles at pe bygynnynge pis 9 kyngdom of Mercia was i-deled apre, in West Mercia, in Myddel Mercia, and Est Mercia. Pe seuenpe kyngdom was Norphambymborum, pat is, pe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Pe meres and pe 10 merkes pereof 11 were by west and by est pe see of oceean, by souh pe ryuer of Humber, and so downward toward pe west by pe endes of pe schires of Notyngham and of Derby

este 12 see, at the sowthe the floode of Thamys vn to London, on the nothe the water of Humber, goenge after the weste vn to the ende of Wirhalle, where hit descedethe in to the Weste see. Penda, the son of Wibbe, reginede firste in those costes, after Dionysius, in the yere off oure Lorde viij. xvij., and from the commenge of Englische men a c. yere lxxv., which realme contynuede vnder xviiij. kynges abowte ij8 yere lx. and iiij., vn to the laste Colwulphus; which expulse, the Danes made Burdredus kyng of hit. That realme was divide in to thre partes in the firste begynnenge, that is to say, in to the Weste Marches, in to the Myddelle Marches, and in to the Est Marches. The viij the realme was of Northumbrelonde, the merkes of whom were, on the este and on the weste, the oceean; on the sowthe, the water of Humber; descendenge toward the weste by the costes of the schires of Notyngham and of Derby vn to the water

---

1 of] om. a. and Cx.
2 pe] om. a.
3 So Cx.; ryuer, MS.
4 Wirhal, Cx.
5 about two elxij., Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 So a. and Cx.; by, MS.
8 MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds to kepe.
9 pis] MS. (not a. or Cx.)
10 pe] om. a.
11 So a. and Cx.; of pe, MS.
12 weste, Harl. MS.
aquilone autem mare Scoticum, quod Scotice dicitur Forth, Britannice Werid, Anglice Scottishsee. Hoc autem regnum Northimbrorum primitus divisum fuit in duas provincias; in Deiram ad austrum, et in Berniciam ad aquilonem; que duo regna flumen Tyne tunc temporis diviserat. Nam regnum Deiram a fluvo Humbris usque ad flumen Tyne extendebatur; regnum vero Berniciorum a flumine Tyne usque ad mare Scoticum predictum porrigebatur; etiam quando Picti ibidem morabantur, sicut patet per Bedam, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, ubi dicit quod Ninian vir sanctus convertit australis.

In Bernicia coepit primus regnare Ida, anno gratiae, secundum Dionysium, DXLVII. In Deira vero rex Elle, anno gratiae, dxlx. Quae duo regna sub duobus regibus, ut præmissitur, interdum divisa quandoque sub uno rege redintegrata cucurrerunt sub Anglis regibus quasi viginti per annos ccxxj. Deum, Osbricto et Elle nono anno regni sui per...

1 vero, C.D.; the latter has ad aquilonem.  
2 Werith, C.D.  
3 Scotischsee, A.B.; Scotisse, D.; scieud Scotice, C.  
4 Northambrorum, B.; om. D.  
5 Northimbrorum primitus primo, C. (not D., but omits North.)  
6 in Deiram] Deiram scilicet, C.D.  
7 in] om. C.D.  
8 flumen] om. C. (not D.)  
9 Tine, A.  
10 dividerat, C.D.  
11 flumine, B.  
12 Tine, A.  
13 predicium] ubi nunc est villa Sancti Johannis, C.D.  
14 etiam...patet] C.D. thus: Quod autem austrina pars Albaniae, quae est infra Twedam et mare Scoticum predictum, continens Galwediam et Lodoveiam, tune pertinuit ad regnum Berniciorum et Pictis ibidem commonorantibus patet, &c.  
15 primo, C.D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 4.  
16 ubi dicit quod] primo; sic scribentem, C.D.  
17 Ninianus, A.  
19 primo, A.; primum, Gale.  
20 gratiae] om. B.  
21 vero] om. C.D.  
22 gratia] om. B.  
23 Hec, C.D.  
24 concurrent, B.  
25 regibus Anglis, B.  
26 cirtiter, C.D.  
27 Dehine, C.D.  
28 Esbricto, B.  
29 So A.D., Gale; Ello, E.
an on to pe ryuere of Merse,

pat hatte Forpe in Scotisshe, Werid in Brittisshe, pe Scotisshe see in Engelshe. Dis kyngdom of Northumber-
lond was first i-deled in tweie prouinces; pat oon was pe soupside, and hete Deira; and pat ooper was pe norp side, and hete Bencie, as it were tweyne kyngdoms. And pe ryuere Tyne departed pesse tweyne kyngdoms pat tyme. For pe kyngdom of Deyra tillede and streıte from pe ryuere of Humber anon to pe ryuere of Tyne. Pe kyngdom of Bencie tillede from Tyne to pe Scotisshe see. And whan Pictes wonede peyynne, as Beda seıp, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, pat Ninian, pat holy man, convertezed men of pe soupside. Ida pe kyng reigned [pere first and began to reigne] pe [5]ere of ooure Lord fyne hondred and seven and forty, so seıp Dyones. In Deyra reignede kyng Elle, pe 3ere of ooure Lord fyne hondred and nyne and forty. Peseo tweie kyngdoms were oper while, as hit is i-seide, y-deled bytweene tweye kynges, and somtym a hol hooll vnder oo kyng, and dured as it were vnder twenty Engelshe kynges pre hondred 3e[re] and oon and twenty. At pe laste Osbrutus and Elle were i-slawe in pe nynpe 3ere of here

of Merse; of the northe, the Scottes see, callede by the langage of theyme Forth, in Briteyne langage Werid, in Engelshe Scotisshe. That realme of Northcumberlond was diuide in the firste tyme in to ij. prouinces, in to Deira at the sowthe, and in to Bencia at the northe; whiche ij. realeuds the water of Tyne diuide in that tyme. For that realtime callede Deira was extende from the floode of Humber vno to the water of Tyne. That other parte callede Bencia was extende from the water of Tyne to the Scottes see when the Pictes dwelede there, as hit is schewed by Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, where he seith that Ninian the holy man convertezed the sowthe-erne Pictes. Hida began to reigne firste in Bernicia, after Dionysius, the yere of grace vce. xlvij; and kyng Elle began to reigne in Deira, after Dionysius, in the yere of grace vce. xlix.: whiche realmes continuede otherwhile vnder oon kyng, otherwhile vnder tweyne, as vnder xxiv kynges as by cee. yere xxvi. At the laste, Osbrutus and Elle sleyne

---

1 Mersee, a., Cx.
2 Weryd, a.; Werid, Cx.
3 and tillede, MS. Sentence varied in Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.; Tyme, MS.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 3ere, a.
7 Dionys, a.
8 3e kyng, a., Cx.
9 3ere, a.
Danos occisis, Northumbria vacavit sine rege octo annis. Extune Dani regnaverunt in ea triginta sex annis, usque ad monarchiam regis Adelstani, qui sub anno Domini dcccxxvi, subactis Danis, Wallanis et Scotis regibus, solus et primus monarchiam Anglice tenuit. Quod autem fluvius de Mersee fuerat aliquotiens terminus et limes Merciorum et Northimbrorum patet dupliciter; primo per significationem vocabuli, nam Merese Anglice sonat terminans mare, quia disterminabat unum regnum ab alio. Item in chronicis Henrici et Alfridi habetur, quod rex Edwardus senior firmavit castrum apud Mamcestre in terra Northimbrorum; sed constat quod urbs Mamcestre vix distat tribus miliaribus a fluvio de Mersee.

1 terra, C.D
2 Et tunc, Gale.
3 septem, B.
4 Athelstani, B.; Ethelstani, D.
5 Wallis, Gale.
6 Danis . . . Scotis] Scotorum et Wallanorum, C.D.
7 omnium, add. C.D. (with slight variations.)
8 a fluvio, B.
9 fuit, Gale.
10 fuerat aliquotiens] fuit, C.D.
11 Northanhumbrorum, B.
12 dupliciter] om. D.
13 interpretationem, C.D.
14 nam] om. C.D.
15 Mersea, B.
16 quod, E.
17 quia . . . alio] Latine, C.D.
18 Henrici de Huntynghdon, C.D.; Henre et Alfre, A.
19 in terra] om. B.
20 Northanhumbrorum, B.
21 Mamcestriae, B., Gale; Mancestre, D.
22 flumine, A.B.
23 The latter part of the sentence slightly altered in C.D., which add ejus castri vestigia adhuc exstant.
kyngdom; pe Danes slowh hem; and Norphumberlond was voyde wi)ute kyng ei3te 3ere. }anne afterward pe Danes reigned in Norphumberlond sixe and pritty 3ere anoon to pe oonynge1 of pe kyngdome of Athelstone; he made sugett pe 2 kynes Danys and Scottische and Walsche, and regned first al on in Engeland, and helde pe kyngdom of Engeland hool and al oon kyngdom. }at was pe 3ere of oure Lorde eyzte hondred and seuene and twenty. }at ryuer of Mercie3 was somtyme pe marke and mere bytwene pe kyngdom of Mercia and pe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. }at may be i-schewed in tweie maneres; first by pe propurte of pis word Mersee, }at is as moche to mene, as a se4 }at is a bound and a mere; for he departep oon kyngdom from anoper. Also it is i-write in cronikes of Henry and of Alfrede, }at kyng Edward pe Eldere fastened a castel at Mamcestre5 in Norphumberlond; but }at citee Mamcestre is from pe ryuer of Mersee scarsliche pe myle.

by Danes in the ixthe year of theire reigne, Northumbrelonde was vacante of a kyng viijthe yeres. And from that tymle the Danes reignede in hit xxxvij6 yeres, vn to the monarchy off kyngge Athelstan, whiche obtaynede the monarhice of all Englonde in the yere of oure Lorde viijc xxvij., subduenge the kynes of Danes, of Wales, and of Scottes. That the water of Mersee was somme tymle the terme other the merke of the marches of Northumbrelonde, hit may be schewed by ij. maneres; firste by the significacion of the name, for Mersee in Englishe sowndethe as a see terminatiue, for hit disterminate oon realme from an other. Also hit is hade in the cronicles of Henricus and Alfride, that kyngge Edwarde the senior sette the castelle at Mamcestre in the londe of Northumbrelonde, whiche cite is from the water of Mersee but by iij. myles.

1 to oonynge, a. 4 as, a.; a see, Cx.; asse, MS.
2 So a. and Cx.; to pe, MS. 5 Mamcestre, Cx.
3 Merse, a.
Cap. LII.

De episcopatibus et sedibus.

Alfridus. Sedes archiepiscoporum in Britannia tres fuerunt tempore Lucii, regis Britonum Christiani primi; videlicet apud Londoniam; apud Eboracum; apud Caerusc, Urbem Legionum in Glamorgania; quibus tunc subjecti fuerant xxvij. episcopi, flamines tunc vocati; videlicet Londoniensis metropolitanus Cornubia et tota Loegria usque ad flumen Humbræ; Eboracensi vero tota terra Northimbrana ab arco Humbræ fluminis cum tota Albania; Urbi Legio- num subjacuit tota Cambria, septem tune episcopis, nunc vero quatuor suffraganeis insignita, quam flum- men Sabrinae tunc secernebat a Loegria. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. Sed temporibus Saxonum, quamvis beatus Gregorius privilegium archiepiscopale Londoniæ concesserit, Augustinus tamen ab eo missus, sedulitate hospitis sui regis

---

1 Alfridus] om. B.
2 in Britannica after fuerunt in B.
3 apud] om. B.
4 Sentence altered and transposed in C.D.
5 erant, C.D.
6 reliqua parte Albaniae, C.D.
(with other slighter variations.)
7 autem, C.; an erasure in D.
8 tunc] om. C.D.
9 de Pontificibus] om. C.D.
10 tempore, C.D.
11 temporibus Saxonum] om. B.
12 licet, C.D.
13 Londonio, Gale.
14 concesserat, C.D.
15 ab eo missus] om. C.D.
De episcopatibus et sedibus. Capitolium quinquagesimum secundum.

Alfridus. Lucius was the first Cristene kyng of Britons. In his tyme were the archebissoppes sees in Bretayne; one was at Londoun; ano per at York; and the priddhe at Caerrusk, the Cite of Legionis in Glamorgan. Pat citee hadde now Caerleon. To these pre archebissoppes sees were suget eynte and twenty bissoppis, and were i-cleped flamynes. To the archebissoppes see of Londoun was sugett Cornwaile and al myddel Englonde anon to Humber; to York al Norfolkmundlond from the bowe of Humber wip all Scotlond; to Caerleon all Wales. Pere were in Wales seuen bissoppes, and now bee but foure. To the metropolitan of London alle the cuntre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was sujecte vn to the floode of Humber. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humber, with alle Scottelande, was subiecte to thearchebishop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byschoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bissoppes, and now Wales is made nowble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Scuerne dividede that tyme from Englonde. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. But in Saxones tyme, pey Seint Gregorie hadde i-graunted Londoun the priuilege of the archebissoppe see, neuertheles Seynt Austyn pat was i-sent in to Englonde by Seint Gregorie turned the archebissoppe see out of Londoun vnto Caunterbury, after Seint Gregories day.

Of the byschoperyches and seetes. Capitolium quinquagesimum secundum.

Alfridus. There were three seetes of archebissoppes in Englonde in the tyme of Lucius, kyng of Britayne, firste kyng y-baptizede, that is to say, at London, at Yorke, and at Caerhurrt, the Cite of Legionis in Glamorgan; to whom xxviij bissoppes were subiecte, callede flamynes. And to the metropolitan of London alle the cuntre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was subiecte vn to the floode of Humber. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humber, with alle Scotlond, was subiecte to thearchebishop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byschoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bissoppes, and now Wales is made nowble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Scuerne dividede that tyme from Englonde. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo. But thawthe blessed Gregory grawnntede thro his priuilege the seete of tharchebissoppe to be at London; neuertheles Seynte Austyn, sende from hym in to Englonde, after the dethe of Blessed Gregory caused tharchebissoppe seete to be removede from London to Canterbery, thro helpe of

1 the first kyng cristen of the Brytons, Cx.; who has a few other trivial alterations below.
2 Caerrusk, a.
3 Glamorgan, a., Cx.
4 departed, Cx.
5 Added from a.
6 into, a.
7 Doubtless an error for Caerhuse.
Ethelberti, cивiumque Cantuariensium caritate captus, 
metropolitanam\(^1\) sedem\(^2\) post mortem Gregorii ad 
Cantuariam transtulit, ubi usque hodie permansit; 
nisi quod medio tempore Offa rex Merciorum, Can-
tuaritis\(^3\) infensus,\(^4\) honorem primatus ab eis tuli, et 
Lichfeldensem episcopum Aldulphum, annuente Adria-
no papa numeribus fortassis inclinato, archiepisco-
pali pallio pro tempore suo insignivit.\(^5\) Quod tamen \(^6\) 
sub Kenulpho rege restitutum est.\(^7\) Eboracensis 
honor\(^8\) ab initio usque hodie ibidem duravit, quamvis 
Albania processu temporis ab ejus subjectione se su-
traxerit.\(^9\) Giraldus, \textit{in} \(10\) \textit{Itinerario, libro secundo}.\(^11\) 
Ab Urbe autem Legionum usque ad Meneviam, que 
est ad occidentem Demetiae supra Hibernicum\(^12\) mare 
sita, translata est sedes metropolitanam, tempore\(^13\) 
Saneti David sub\(^14\) Arthuro rege; a cujus tempore 
usque ad Sampsonem archiepiscopum, sederunt xxiiij. 
archiepiscopi. Tandem ingruente per Cambriam flava 
peste, quam ictericiam vocant, Sampson episcopus\(^15\)
at pe prayer of kyng Athelberd and pe¹ citezeins and burgeys² of Cauterbury. Peere pe erchebisschoppes see hap endured³ forto⁴ now. Sanc' pat in pe mene tyme Offa, kyng of Mercia, was wroop wip men of Cauterbury, and byname hem pat worschippie, and worschipped Aldulf, bishopp of Lichefeld, wip pe archebisschoppes pal by assaynt of Adrian pe pope vpon caas by ʒiftes i-sent. Neerpeles vnder Kenulph pe kyng it was restored to Cauterbury aʒen. Pe worschippe of pe see of ʒork hap i-dured pere alwey and dureth zit; pey Scotland be wipdrawe from his subieccion⁵ by passyng of tyme. Giraldus in Itin., libro primo. Pe archebisschoppis see was i-torn out of Caer-leoun in to Meneniu, pat is in pe west side of Demecia, vpon pe Irische see, in Seint Dauyes⁶ tyme vnder kyng Arthur,⁷ From⁸ Seint Dauyes⁶ tyme to Sampson pe archebisschoppes tyme were in Meneniu archebissoppis pre and twenty. Afterward fel a pestilence in to al Wales of pe ʒelow yeuel⁹ pat is i-cleped pe inmundys, and ṣan Sampson pe archebissop took wip hym pe palle, and wente

kynge Ethelberete and of the citeisyunes of Cauterbury, where hit remaneceth to this tyme presente. But that a certeyn seasion folowenge, kyngge Offa, contrarists to men of Cauterbury, removede the honor of the primate from them, thro the privilege graunted by Adrian the pope, vn to the chirche of Lichefelde, as for his tyme; whiche honor was restorede ageyne in the tyme of kyng Kenulphus. The honor of the chirche of Yorke hathe contynede there from the begynnenge of hit vn to this tyme presente; than the Scotleond withdrewde hit from the subieccion of hit in processe of tyme. Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo. The secte of the metropolitian was translate from the Cite of Legiones vn to Meneniu, at the weste of Sowthe Wales, sette on the see of Yrloede, in the tyme of Seyncet Dauyd, vnder kyngge Arthure; from the tyme of whom vn to the tyme of Sampson the bishopp xiiij⁴ archebischoppes were per. At the laste an infirmitie reignege in Wales, whiche was callede the iawndres, Sampson the bishopp, takenge with hym the palle, wente

---

1 pe] om. a., Cx.  
2 burgeyes, Cx.  
3 i-dured, a.; dured, Cx.  
4 vnto, Cx.  
5 So Cx.; suggestion, MS.  
⁶ Dauyds, Cx. (twice).  
7 MS. (not Cx.) adds by a clerical error (see below), Meneuia now hatte, and no more.  
⁸ So a. and Cx.; form, MS.  
⁹ yeel, a.
sumpto secum¹ pallio Armorican Britanniam adiit, ac sedi² Dolensi præsedid; a quo tempore³ usque ad dies⁴ Henrici primi Anglie⁵ regis sederunt apud Meneviam, quæ Sancti David dicitur, xxi. episcopi vel propter ignaviam vel propter⁶ paupertatem pallio carentes; semper tamen usque tunc episcopi Walliae a Menevensi fuerunt consecrati, et ipse similiter ab aliis Walliae episcopis tanquam a suffraganeis fuerat consecratus, nulla penitus⁷ alteri ecclesiae facta professione vel subjectione. Cæteri vero succedentes episcopi, regio ur- gente mandato, Cantuariae consecrationem accipiant;⁸ in cujus investiture et subjectionis signum Bonefaciæ archiepiscopus⁹ Cantuariensis, tempore Henrici secundi¹⁰ crucis legatione fungens, in singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus Cambrieæ primus omnium Cantuariensium archiepio- scoporum¹¹ missam solemniter celebravit. Ranulphus.¹² Sed¹³ hodie in tota Anglia solummodo duo sunt primates Cantuariensis et Eboracensis; Cantuariensi¹⁴ tredecim in Anglia et quatuor in Wallia episcopi sunt subjecti; Eboracensis vero duos duntaxat habet¹⁵ suffraganeos,
in to Bretayne Armorica,1 pe oper Bretayne, and was bisshop of Dolensis. From pat tyme to pe firste kyng
Henries tyme kyng of Engelond were at Menenia, pat
hatte Seint Dauiyes, oon and twenty bishoppes alle wip
oute palle, wheder it were for vnkunynge oper for pouert.
Neuertheles2 alwey forto pat tyme pe bishoppes of Wales
were i-sacred of pe bishopp of Mencia of Seint Dauiyes;
and pe bishopp of Mencia was i-sacred of pe bishoppes
of Wales3 as of his owne suffragans,4 and made non pro-
fession nouer subiection5 to non ooper chirche. Oper bis-
shoppes pat come afterward were i-sacred at Caunterbury
by compellynge of pe kynges heste. In tokenynge6 of pat
sacrynge and subiection Bonefas, archebissopp of Caunter-
bury, pat was legat of pe croys, song in euery cathedral
cherche of Wales, solempnliche a masse. He was pe
firste archebissopp of Caunterbury pat so done in Wales,
and pat was i-do in pe secounde kyng Henries tyme. R.
But now beep but tweie primates in al Engelond, of
Caunterbury, and of York. To pat7 primat of Caunterbury
beep sugette prittene bishoppes in Engelond, and foure in
Wales. Pe primat of York hap but tweie suffragans in
to Bretayne Armorike, from whiche tyme vn to the daies
of kyng Henry the first, kyng of Englonde of that name,
xxij6 bishoppes kepede residence at Mencia, wontenge a
palle, other for slawethe, other for pouerte. Neuertheles
vn to that tyme the bishoppes of Wales were wonte to be
consecrate of the bishopp of Mencia, whiche is called
Seynte David, and that bishopp of other suffraganes of
Wales, noo profession other subieccion made to any other
chirche. But other bishoppes succeedege receyvede con-
secreacion of the bishopp of Canterbury, thro the com-
maundemente of the kyng. In the inuestiture of whom,
in a signe of subieccion, Bonefacius, archebissopp of Can-
terbury, in the tyme of kyng Heureye secund, firste of
alle bishoppes of Caunterbury songe masse solenly in
euery cathedrale chirche of Wales. R. But now in this
tyme there be only iij. primates in Englonde, whiche be of
Caunterbery and of Yorke. Caunterbery hathe xijij. bis-
chopes in Englonde subiecte to hit, and iijij. bishoppes in
Wales. And Yorke hathe but iij. suffraganes subiecte to

1 Armonica, MS.; Armonyca, Cx. 2 Neotheres, a.; Neotheres, Cx.
Wales were, MS. (not Cx.) suffragans, Cx.; suffragas, MS.

So Cx.; suggestion, MS., and so below (not Cx.)
stoken, a., Cx.
pe, a., Cx.
scilicet Caerduliensem et Dunelmensem. De quorum omnium successivis sedium institutionibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda; ubi est advertendum quod in primitiva Anglorum ecclesia presules in locis humilibus, tanquam contemplationi et devotioni aptis, sedes suas statuerunt. Sed tempore Willelmii Conquestoris ex canonum decreto edictum est, ut episcopi de villulis ad urbes transirent. Unde factum est ut Dorcestrensis sedes ad Lincolniam migraret, Lichefeldensis ad Cestriam, Thedsfordensis ad Northwycum, Shireburnensis ad Sarum, Wellensis ad Bathoniam, Cornubiensis ad Excestriam, Selesiensis ad Cicestriam.

De episcopis australibus.

1 Cardiliensem, Gale.
2 Slightly altered in C.D.
3 ubi . . . advertendum] Advertisendum est tamen ad notitiam dicendorum, C.D.
4 utpote, C.D.
5 et devotioni] om. C.D.; transposed in B.
6 aptis] congruis, C.D.
7 Willelnii Conquestoris] regis Willellni primi, C.D.
8 episcopi] sedes episcoporum, C.D.
9 migrarent, C.D.
11 Lichefeld, D.
12 Thetford, A.; Thelesford, D.
13 Norwicium, B., Gale.; Norwicum, Remesburiensis et, C.D.
14 Shirburne, A.; Remesburiensis et Schireburn, C.D.
15 Salesburiam, C.D.
16 Crildiensis et, add. C.D.
17 So A.B.D., Gale; Excestram, E.
18 Celeiensis, B.; Siliesiensis, D.
19 Aug. Cant., B.
20 et] om. B.
Engeloud, pat bec pe bisshoppis of Caerlile and of Duram. Of alle pe[se] 1 seeth and of chaungynge of here places now arewe schal somewhat 2 be schewed: here take hede, pat in pe bygynnynge of holy chirche in Engeloud bisshoppes ordyned hire sees in lowe places and symple, pat were couenable for contemplacioun, for bedes, 3 and deuocioun, but in William Conquercours tyne by dome of lawe canoun it was i-ordeyned pat bisshoppes schulde come out of smal townes in to grete eite. Perfore it was pat pe see of Dorchester was i-chaunged to Lyneolne, Lichefeld to Chchestre, Thedford to Norpwhiche, Schirborne to Salisbury, Welles to Bathe, Cornwayle to Excetre, and Selelsey to Chychestre. De episcopis australibus. Pe bisshopp [of Roncheste] 4 hap non persche 5 chirche, but he is pe archebisshoppes chapeleyne of Canterbury. Seppe pat 6 pe? see was first i-ordeyned by Seint Austyn, archebisshop of Canterbury, 3it hiderto hit chaunged neuer his place. 8 Chichestre hap vnder hym ouliche Soupsex and the Ile of Wight, and

it oonly, whiche be suffraganes of Carduliense and of Duren, of the successiue institucions of whom somme thynges ar to be seide here by ordre. Where fore hit is to be aduer-tede that bisshoppes, in the primitique chirche of Englonde, were wonte to haue theire seetes in meke places, apte to contemplacion and deuocioun, but hit was commaundede by a decreete of canoun, in the tyne of William Conquercour, that the seetes of bisshoppes scholde be translate from townes to cites. Where hit was hade that the sete of Dorchester was chaunged to Lyneoln, and of Lichefelde to Chchestre, of Tedford to Norwiche, of Shirburne to Excetre, of Selense to Chichestre. Of the bishoppes of the Sowthe. 3 The bisshopp of Rochestre, whiche hatho noo peresche, but [is] chapeleyne of tharchebisshop of Caunterbury, from the begynenge of the institucion made by Seynte Austyn bishop of Canterbury, chaunged not the seete of hit vn to oure daies. The bishop of Chichestre, whiche hatho gne- 71. b. naile oonly of the Sowthe Saxones and the yle of Wichte.

---

1 These, a.; these, Cx.
2 sumwhat schal, a.
3 prayers, Cx., who varies the sentence.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 paryshe, a. and Cx., who omits chirche.
7 pe] om. a.
8 Sentence varied in Cx.
9 This is wrongly numbered Cap. 52 in Harl. MS.; the division of the chapter having been already made conformably to the Latin text.
insulae præsidet, primo apud Selysei, quod sonat insula vituli marini, tempore Theodori archiepiscopi sedem habuit, et a primo Wylfride usque ad ultimum Stigandum trecentis triginta tribus annis sub viginti episcopis ibidem duravit. Tandem Stigandus, emto regis Willelmi Conquestoris, sedem Seleise transtulit ad Cicestriam.

CAP. LIII.

De episcopis occidentalisbus.

Willelmus. Memorandum est quod tota Westsaxonica provincia unicum ab initio usque adventum Theodori habuit episcopum. Primus autem Birinus, largiente rege Westsaxonum Kyngislo sedem statuit apud Dorcestriam, villam humilem, ad austrum Oxonia inter collapsus duorum fluminum Thamisie et Thame sitam. Byrino autem defuncto, Kenwalcus rex statuit sedem apud Wyntoniam; sicut et pater suus aliquando proposuerat, ubi Agilbertus natione Gallus præsedid primus toti provinciae Westsaxonice. Ex quo tempore urbs et sedes Dor-

---

1 Silesey, B.; Seise, A.; Celeseie, D.
2 interpretatur, C.D.
3 Wilfrido, B., Gale.
4 Willelmi regis, B.
5 Added from A.C.D., Gale.
6 Selesey, B.
7 So D., Gale; Cicestram, A.E.
8 Willelmus om. C.D.
9 Memorandum . . . . tota] Tota autem, C.D.
10 ad adventum, B., Gale.
11 antistitem, C.D.
12 Kyngislo, A.B.; Kingisto, Gale; Kingulfus, D.
13 So Gale; Dorcestram, A.E.; Dorcestre, D.
14 villam quidem, D.
15 juxta Walingford] om. C.D.; Walingforth, A.
16 statuit . . . . collapsus] lapsus, B.
17 Yser, Gale.
18 Kenwalkus, B.; Kenewalcus, D.
19 rex] om. B.; Westsaxonum, ins. D.
20 sedem statuit, B.
21 pater suus Kingulfus, D.
22 aliquando ficisse, B., Gale.
23 Gilberthus, Gale.
24 Gallicus, B.
25 Sentence altered and slightly abbreviated in C.D.
haddhe his see first in Selescie in Theodor pe archebissshoppes tyme. And pe see durede pere pree honderd zere and pre and pritty vnder tweenty bissshoppes from pe firste Wilfrede to pe laste Stigande; [but at pe laste Styggand] at pe heste of kyng William Conquerour chaunged pe se from Seleseye to Chichestre.

De episcopis occidentalibus. Capitolum quinquagesimum tertium.

Wilhelmus. Haue mynde pat alle pe prouince of Westsaxon hadde alwey oon bishop from pe bygynnynge anoon to Theodores comynge. By graunt of Kingislus, kyng of West Saxone, pe firste Birinus ordeyned a cee at Dorchestre, pat is a symple toun by soup Oxenforde by sides Walyngforde, bytwene pe fallynge to gidres of Temse and of Tame. Whan Birinus was deed, Konwalkus pe kyng ordeyned a see at Wynchestre, as his fader hadde i-poet. Pere Gilbert, a Frensch man, was first bishop of al pe prouince of Westsaxon. From pat tyme pe citee and pe see of Dorchestre kepede somme tyme residence at Selesey, in the tyme of Theodorus tharchebishop, where hit contynuede vnder xxix bisschoppes from the firste, Wilfridus, vn to the laste, Stigandus, by cee.xxxijij yere. At the laste Stigandus, thro the commandement of William Conqueroure, did translatel that seete of Selesey to Chichestre.

Of the bisschoppes of the weste. Capitolum quinquagesimum tertium.

Hit is to be hade in memory that alle the prouince of Weste Saxones had oon bishop from pe begynnnenge vn to the tyme of Theodorus. Birinus, the firste bishop in that prouince, sette the seete at Dorchestre, a meko place, thro the graunte of Kyngelfus, kyng of Weste Saxones; whiche seete was at the sowthe of Oxforde, nye to Walynggeforde, betwene the metenge of ij. floodes, Tham and Yce. That bishchop Byryne dedde, Kewacus kyngye ordeynede that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede to have doen somme tyme, where Agilbertus, borne in Fraunce, hadde govenraile firste on alle the prouince of Weste Saxones. From whiche tyme the cite and seete of Dor-

---

1 cee, a.
2 Added from a (not in Cx.); but pat has been changed to at.
3 time, Cx.
4 kyng Islo, MS., Cx.
5 purposed, Cx.
6 Agilbert, Cx.
7 pat pe, MS.; not a. or Cx.
cestriensis pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, eo quod urbs illa\(^1\) sita sit infra Thamisiam, qui fluvis disterminat Mercios a Westsaxonibus.\(^2\) Post Agilbertum de Wyntonia expulsum præsedit Wyne, natione Anglus; a quo putant quidam urbem Wyntoniae denominatam fore Wynecestria,\(^3\) quasi \(^4\) Cestria, id est, urbs\(^5\) Wyne.\(^6\) Ipso tandem expulso, successit Leutherius\(^7\) nepos Agilberti predicti; post quem Hedda\(^8\) aliquandiu sedem\(^9\) tenuit. Quo defuncto, Theodorus archiepiscopus duos præsules ad provinciam Westsaxonum ordinavit;\(^10\) Danielem\(^11\) apud Wentam,\(^12\) cui\(^13\) subjecti fuerant duo pagi Southrey\(^14\) et Southamphire;\(^15\) Aldelmum quoque ad sedem Shireburne ordinavit, cui tunc subjaucerunt sex pagi,\(^17\) Barrocensis, Wyltonensis, Somer-setensis, Dorsetensis, Dononiensis et Cornubiensis. Deinde, tempore Edwardi senioris ad has duas\(^18\) additae

\(^1\) \textit{haec}, C.D. \\
\(^2\) \textit{quae ex parte austrina Mercium disterminat a West Saxonibus}, C.D. \\
\(^3\) \textit{Wincheschestre}, D. \\
\(^4\) \textit{quia}, E. \\
\(^5\) So MSS. distinctly, and Gale. The construction requires accusatives. \\
\(^6\) Abbreviated in C.D. \\
\(^7\) \textit{Eleutherius}, C. (not D.) \\
\(^9\) \textit{locum}, C.D. \\
\(^10\) \textit{ordinavit} co quod \textit{ampla esset deputavit}, C.D. \\
\(^11\) \textit{videlicet}, add. C.D. \\
\(^12\) \textit{Wytoniam}, C.D. \\
\(^13\) \textit{cui tunc}, C.D. \\
\(^14\) \textit{Soothereie et Southaungeschire}, A. \\
\(^15\) \textit{Hampton}, C.; \textit{Hamptonia}, D. \\
\(^16\) \textit{Chern}, B. \\
\(^17\) \textit{scilicet}, ins. C.D. \\
perteyned and longede to pe province of Mercia; for pat citee stondep wip ynne Temse; and Temse departep bytwene Mercia and Westsaxon. After pat Agelberd 1 was i-putte out of Wynchestre, pat jo hecct Wyntoun. Wyn 2 of Englische nacioun was bishopp pere;3 som 4 men wene j pat pat 5 citee hap pe name of pis Wyn, and hatte Wynchestre, as it were Wyne is citee. At pe laste he was putte 6 out and after hym come Leutherius, pe forseide Agilbertus nueue. After Leutherius Hedda a while was bishopp pe. Whan he was dede, Theodoras pe archebischop ordeyned tweye bishoppes to pe province of Westsaxon; Danyel at Wynchestre, to hym were sugettes 7 tweic contrees Souperay and Souphampschire; Aldelyn 8 at Schirborne, to hym were sugettes sixe contrayes, Barrokschire,9 Wilschire, Somersete, Dorchestreschire, Deuenschire, and Cornewyale. Trevisa. 10 Afterward me 11 semep by pis lawe 12 pat Westsaxon conteyned Souperay, Souphampschire, Barrokschire, Wilschire, Somersede, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewyale. 13 Willemus. Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to pe[se] 14 tweye chestre pertenede to the province of the Marches, in so moche that citee was sette within Thamys, whiche floode de- partede the Marches from the Weste Saxones. And after Agilberte expulsede from Wynchestre, Wyne, a Englysche man, was bischop þer, of whom somme men frawe that cite to have taken name, for Wyncheste sownedethe as the cite of Wyne. Whiche expulsed at the laste, Leutherius, nevewe to the forseide Agilberte, succedeþ þer, after whom Heda succedeþ. Whiche dede, Theodorus arche- bishop ordeynede to that province of Weste Saxones ij. bishoppes, ordeynenge Daniel, bischop at Wynchestre, to whom ij. contrees were subiecte, Sowtherey and Sowthe- hampteschire. And Aldelme at the seete of Schirbourn, to whom vj. contrees were subiecte, Barokscire, Wilton- schire, Somerse, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewyale. Vn to whiche ij. seetes other iij. seetes were addede in f. 72. a. the tyme [of] Edward the senior, kyngue of Englonde,

---

1 Agilbert, Cx.
2 Wyne, a.
3 Sentence varied in Cx.
4 when som, MS. (first hand.)
5 þe, a., Cx.
6 i-put, a.
7 sugett, a.
8 Adelin, Cx.
9 Barkshire, Cx.
10 Reference added from Cx.
11 it, a.
12 sawe, a.; it seemeth by this that, &c., Cx.
13 Names slightly varied in Cx.
14 þese, a., Cx.
sunt aliae tres edicto Formosi papae; videlicet Wel-
lensis, cui subjacuit Someresete; Cridiensis, cui subja-
cuit Dovonia;¹ et Cornubiensis, apud Sanctum Petre-
clum² seu Sanctum Germanum, cui subjacuit Cornubia. 
Nee multo post sexta sedes posita³ apud Ramysbury,⁴
cui subjacuit pagus Wiltonensis. Postremo edicto 
Willelmi regis Conquestoris,⁵ omnes haec sedes, excepta 
Wyntonia,⁶ de viculis⁷ ad urbes sunt translatae; 
nam Shireburne et Ramesbury⁸ transierunt ad Sares-
bury,⁹ cui usque hodie subjacent pagus¹⁰ Barrocensis,¹¹ 
Wiltonensis et Dorsetensis¹² provinciae;¹³ Wellensis 
quoque sedes transiit ad Bathoniam, cui usque 
hodie¹⁴ pagus subjacet¹⁵ de¹⁶ Somerse,¹⁷ Cridiensis, 
et¹⁸ Cornubiensis migraverunt¹⁹ ad Excestriam;²⁰ cui²¹ 
subjacent²² Dovonia et Cornubia.

CAP. LIV.

De orientalibus episcopis.³

Willelmus.²⁴ Observatum est quod²⁵ Estsaxones²⁶ ab 
initio usque modo semper²⁷ paruerunt²⁸ Londoniensis 
praeuli;²⁹ sed provinciae Estanglorum, quae continet

¹ So A.E.; Deconia, D. Gale; 
and so below.
² So A.B.E.; Gale; Petroclum, D., 
which is probably right.
³ et] So A.B.C.D., Gale; om. E. 
⁴ Rammisbary, A. 
⁵ Conquestorius] om. C.D. 
⁶ Wintonia, D. 
⁷ villidis, C. (not D.); villis, Gale. 
⁸ Rammisburi, A. 
⁹ Salg., B.; Salesburi, D.; Sarum, 
Gale. 
¹⁰ pagi, B., Gale. 
¹¹ et, add. A.B. 
¹² subjacent...Dorsetensis] subjac-
cet Barocensis et Wiltonensis pro-
vincia, C.D. 
¹³ et Dorsetensis provincia] om. 
A.B. (E. has Dosetensis, but Dor-
setensis above. 
¹⁴ hodie] added from C.D., Gale. 
¹⁵ subjacent, A.B. 
¹⁶ de] om. A.B. 
¹⁷ pagus...Somerset] hodie sub-
jaent duo pagi Somersete et Dorsete, 
A.C.D. 
¹⁸ et] om. B. 
¹⁹ transierunt, C.D. 
²⁰ So D. Gale; Excestram, A.E. 
²¹ usque hodie, add. C.D. 
²² subjacent, B.D. 
²³ episcopis orientalibus, B. 
²⁴ Willemus] om. C.D. 
²⁵ Observatum...quod] om. C.D. 
²⁶ West Saxones, B. 
²⁷ semper] om. A. 
²⁸ perceruerunt, B. 
²⁹ episcope, C.D.
De orientalibus episcopis. Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

Willelmus. Hit is i-knowe pat pe Estsaxons alwey from pe bygynnynge for to now were segettis to pe bisshop of Londoun. But pe prouince of Est Angles, pat conteyne throu the precepte of Formosus the pope, that is to say, at Welles, to whom Somerset was subiecte; of Crídense, to whom Deuenschire was subiecte; and of Cornubience, to Seynte Patroclus other Germanus, to whom alle Cornewaile was subiecte. And within a shorte space followenge the vii the secte was at Ramysbury, to whom Wiltshire was subiecte. At the laste alle these sectes were remouede from townes to cites, thro commandeemente of William Conqueroure, the secte of Wynchestre excepte. For the sectes of Shirborne and of Ramisbery were chaungede to Salisbery, to whom Barokshire, Wiltshire, and the prouinces of Dorsette be subiecte. And the secte of Welles was chaungede vn to Bathe, to whom Somerset is subiecte. The sectes of Crídence and of Cornubiense were remouene to Excetre, to whom Deuenschire and Cornwaile be subiecte.

Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

Hit is to be attended that the Este Saxones were obe-diente from the begynmenge vn to this tyme presente to the bishop of London. But a byschop, Felix by name,
Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden

Northfolk et Southfolc, præfuit primo apud urbem Donik unicus episcopus Felix quidam Burgundus septendecim annis. Post quem Thomas quinque annis. Post quem Bonefacius septendecim annis. Deinde Bisi per Theodorum institutus, quousque prospera valetudo permitteret, provinciam solus rexit. Post quem duo episcopi, per centum quadraginta tres annos, usque ad tempora Egberti, regis Westsaxonum, provinciam illam rererunt; unus apud Domuc, alter apud Elham. Post dies tamen Ludeani regis Merciorum mansit tantum una sedes apud Elham, usque ad quintum annum Wilhelmi Conquestoris; quando Herfastus vicesimus tertius orientalium episcopus sedem suam Helhamensem transtulit ad Thedfordiam. At successor ejus Herebertus Losinga, licentia regis Wilhelmi Rufi, sedem Thedfordensem transtulit ad Norwicum; sedem autem Heliensem, quae huic de prope est, rex Henricus primus nono regni sui anno instituit, subjecta ad hoc provincia Cantebrugge, quae prius fuerat pars episcopatus Lincolniensis; in cujus rei compensationem dedit Henricus rex episcopo Lincolniensi regiam urbem suam de Spaldyng.
Norfolk and Suffolk, hadde oon bisshopp at Denwiche.\(^1\) Pe bisshopp heet Felix, and was of Burgoyne; and was bisshopp seuentene \(\text{\$ere}.\) After hym Thomas was bisshopp fyue \(\text{\$ere}.\) After hym Bonafas\(^2\) seuentene \(\text{\$ere}.\) \(\text{\$ane Besy after ward was i-ordeyned by Theodorus, and rulede pe prouince, while he my\(\acute{\text{z}}\)te endure by hym selue allone. After hym anon to Egbertus tyne, kyng of Westsaxons, an hondred and \(\text{\$re} \) and fourty [\(\text{\$ere}\)],\(^4\) tweie bisshoppes rulede \(\text{\$at} \) prouince, oon at Donwyk and anope at Elyngham.\(^5\) Nopelates after Ludeceans tyne, kyng of Mercia, lefte and was onliche\(^6\) oon see at Elyngham anon to \(\text{\$e} \) fi\(\acute{\text{s}}\)e \(\text{\$ere} \) of William Conquerour, whan Herfastus pe pridde and twenty bisshopp of Estere\(^7\) chaungede \(\text{\$e} \) see from [Elyngham to]\(^9\) Thetford, [and his successor Herebetus Losinga chaungede \(\text{\$e} \) see from Thetford]\(^10\) into Norphwich, by leue of kyng William pe Rede. [\(\text{\$e}\)]\(^10\) see of Ely, pat is nygh perpto, \(\text{\$e} \) firste kyng Henry ordeyned \(\text{\$e} \) nynpe \(\text{\$ere} \) of his requynge, and made suget perpto Cantebreggeschire, pat was raper\(^11\) a party of pe bisshoppiche of Lynclorne. And for quytynge perof he \(\text{\$af} \) to \(\text{\$e} \) bisshopp of Lynclorne a real etce pat hatte\(^12\) Spaldyng."
De episcopis Merciorum.¹

Willelmus.² Notandum est hic³ solerter, quod⁴ sicut Merciorum imperium pro tempore fuerat semper amplissimum, ita et in plures episcopos divisum; præsertim animositate regis Offie, qui quadraginta annis imperans Merciis, transtulit ad Lichefeldiam honorem Cantuariae⁵ metropolitanum, annuente ad hoc⁶ papa Adriano.⁷ Igitur provinciæ Merciorum et Lin-disfarorum primis annis Christianitatis, tempore regis Wolfarii,⁸ unicus fuit episcopus apud Lichefeldiam; Duyna⁹ primus, Celath secundus, ambo Scoti.¹⁰ Post quos tertius Trunhere,¹¹ quartus Jarumannus,¹² quintus Ceddæ. Sed tempore¹³ Etheldredi¹⁴ fratris Wolferi,¹⁵ Ceddæ mortuo, substituit Theodorus archiepiscopus¹⁶ Wynfridum diaconum¹⁷ Ceddæ; quem tamen post-modum ratione cujusdam inobedientiae deposuit, substituens¹⁸ Sexwulfum¹⁹ abbatem de Medehamstede,²⁰ quod nunc de Burgo dicitur.²¹ Sed post quartum²² Sex-wolfi annum ordinavit Theodorus provinciæ Merciorum

De episcopis Merciorum. Capitolium quinquagesimum quintum.

Willelmus. Here take hede pat as pe kyngdom of Mercia was alwey gretttest for pe tyme, so it was i-deled in mo bissipheriches, \(^1\) speciallye by grete herte of kyng Offa, pat \(^2\) was fourey þere kyng of Mercia. He chaunnged pe archebissoppe see from Caunterbury to Lychfelde \(^3\) by assent of Adrian pe pope. Þan pe province of Mercia and of Liudiffare \(^4\) in pe firste bygynnynge of here Cristendom in kyng Wulfrans tyme hadde oon bishopp atte Lichefelde. Pe firste bissoppe pat was þere heet Dwyna ; pe seconde heet Celath ; and were bope Scottes. After hem pe pridde Trumphere ; pe ferpe heet Iarmannuus ; \(^5\) pe fiftþ Chedd. But in Ethelfredes \(^6\) tyme, pat was Wulfer his broþer, whanne Chedde was dode, Theodorus pe archebissop ordeyned [Wynfrede, Cheddies dekene. Neuerpeles he put hym doun \(^7\) after þat, for he was vnbugyn in som poynyt, and \(^8\) ordeynede þere Sexwulf abbot of Medehamste, þat hatte Burgh. But after Sexwulf his ferpe þere Theodorus pe archebissop ordeyned] \(^9\) fyue bissoppes in pe province of

Of the bissoppe of the Marches. Willelmus.

Hit is to be attenedede, that like as the impire of the Marches was moste large, so hit was diuided in to moste bissoppes. And specially in the tyme of kyng Offa, \(^11\) whiche reigneunge in the Marches by xl. yere, transferrede the honor from Caunterbury to the chirche of Lyncole, Adrian the pope grawntenge that priuilege. Where there was oon bishopp oonly, at Lichefelde, to the province of Marches and of Lyndesfarne, \(^10\) in the firste yeres of Cristianite, in the tyme of kyng Wulfarius; Duina was firste, Celat the secunde, boþe Scottes, Trunhere the thrydde, Iarmanuus the iij\(^{11}\), Cedda the vi\(^{11}\). But Theodorus archebissop, after the death of Seynte Chadde, ordeynede Wynfrede, dekyyn of Scynte Chadde, in the tyme of Ethelrede, brother of Wulferns, whichis was deposeþ for cause of a certeyne inobediency, makenge Sexwulphus byschop þer, abbot of Medehamste, which is calleþ neþ Petrusborough. But after the iij\(^{11}\) yere of Sexwulphus, Theodorus, tharcheþ bissop, ordeynede v. byschoppes to

\(^1\) and of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\(^2\) whiche, Cx.
\(^3\) Lichefeld, a.
\(^4\) Lydefar, Cx.
\(^5\) So MS, corruptly; Germuannus, Cx.
\(^6\) Ethelfredes, Cx.
\(^7\) apud Hymdoun, a.; apud Hymdun, Cx.
\(^8\) So a.; he, Cx.
\(^9\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^10\) Lindeseye, MS. (first hand.)
\(^11\) of Offa, Harl. MS., by a clerical error, it is to be hoped.
quique episcopos; scilicet 1 Bosel ad Wygorniam, 2 Cudwynum ad Lichefeldiam, Sexwulfum 3 predictum ad Legecestriam, 4 quæ nunc Cestria 5 dicitur; Ethelwynum ad Lindeseyam apud urbem Sedeneiam; 6 Eatam 7 quoque monachum de monasterio Hilde apud Whiteby 8 sumptum, 9 ordinavit ad Dorcestriam 10 juxta Oxonium, quæ et Dorkinga tunc dicebatur. 12

Et sic sedes 13 Dorcestrensis, quæ tempore Sancti Birini 14 spectabat ad Westsaxonico, a tempore Theodori archiepiscopi spectabat adMercios. 15 Ipse quoque Sexwulfus episcopus, 16 Cantia per regem Merciorum Ethelredum 17 vastata, Puctam Roffensem episcopum de Cantia venientem ordinavit primum Herfordiæ episcopum. 18 Sexwolfo tandem defuncto, successit Hedda apud Lichefeld, 19 et Wyfriðus de Northumbria diu profugatus successit apud Legecestriam, 21 que modo Cestria dicitur. Post duos tamen annos, defuncto rege Northumborum 22 Alfrido, Wyfriðus 23 ad proprium sedem Hagustaldensem reedit; et sic Hedda ambas parochias, scilicet Legecestriam et Lichefeld, tenuit. 24 Post quen 25 Albinus 26 et Wor. 27 Post quen tres successerunt; scilicet, 28 Totta apud Legecestriam; Wytta 29

---

1 scilicet' om. C.D.
2 Wigornium, B.
3 Sexwulfum, B.D.
4 So E., at length; Legecestre, A.;
Legecestre, B.
5 So D., at length; Cestre, A.;
Ceste, E.; but Cestria at length just below.
6 Sidenum, B.; Sidencia, A.D.,
Gale.
7 Ethlham, A.B.C.D.
8 Witbei, A.
9 pud. . . simptum' om. C.D.
10 So A., Gale; Dorcestrem, E.
11 tunc Dorkingu, B.; etiam et, A.
tunc dicebatur] dicitur, C.D.
12 sedes] om. B.
13 Sancti Birini] om. C.D.
15 spectabat ad Mercios] pertinuit
ad proviniam Meretorum, C.D.
16 episcopum] om. C.D.
17 Ethelredum, D.
18 ordinavit . . . episcopum] Her-
fordiensem episcopum fecit, B.
19 So E. and A. (Lichefelda), though

---

they have the Latin form elsewhere; this inconstaney often renders the contractions ambiguous; Lichè, D.
20 "et apud Legecestriam Wil-
fridos, de Northumbria recent
 expulsion; sed vi hostilitatis in-
gruent oactus, Wilfridos ad
priorum sedem suam Hagustal-
densem, Alfrido rege jain de-
"facto, reversus est." C. (and D. nearly.)
21 Legecestriam, B.
22 So A., at length; Northimbr,
E. (which is ambiguous); Nor-
thumbriorum, B.; Northumbria,
Gale.
23 Wilfridos, B.
24 rexit, C.D.
25 Et post annum, C.D.
26 Albinus, C.D.
27 et Wor'] qui et Wor, Gale;
qui et Wor vocabatur, C.D.
28 Post . . . scilicet] Eoque defuncto,
tres facti sunt episcopi, C.D.
29 Witta, C.D.
Mercia. And so he ordained Bosel at Wircestre, Cudwyn at Lichefelde, þe forseide Sexwulf at Chestre, Ethelwyn at Lyndesey at þe citee Sideneia. And he took Eata, monk of þe abbay of Hilde at Whitby, and made hym bishopp of Dorcheestre þat longed to Mercia and sides Oxenforde. Þo pis Dorchestre heet Dorkynge, and so þe see of Dorchestre þat [longed to West Saxon in Seynt Byrynes tíme], longed to Mercia from Þeodorus þe archebiscopalles tyme. Also when Ethelberd, kyng of Mercia, hadde destroyed Kent, þe bishopp Sexwulf took Pictas, bishopp of Rouchestre, þat come out of Kent, and made hym first bishopp of Herforde. At þe laste, when Sexwulf was dede, Hedda was bishopp of Lichefelde after hym; and Wilfrede flenede oute of Northumberlonde was bishopp at Chestre. Nópeles after two þere Alfred kyng of Norþumberland deide, and Wilfrede tornede after to his owne see of Haungstalden. And so Hedda hylde bope bishoppriches of Lichefelde and of Ches-

the proince of the Marches, that is to say, Bosel at Wir-Mercia, Cudwyn at Lichefelde, Sexwulfus at Chestre, Ethelwyne at Lindesey, a cite callede Sedeneia. Takenge also Eata, monke of the monasterie of Seynte Hilda at Whitby, made hym bysechop at Dorcheestre, nye to Oxforde, which was callede that tyme Dorkynga. And so the see of Dorchestre, whiche pertenede to the Weste Saxones in the tyme of Seynte Biryne, longede to the Marches from the tyne of Þeodorus tharchebishop. Sexwulfus dedde, Hedda succeeded at Lychefelde; and Wilfride, chassed from Northumberlonde, succeeded at Legecestre, now namede Chestre; neverthelesses Alfride, the kynge of Northumberlonde, dedde within the space of ij. yere foloeng, Wilfride returnede to his propre see æt Haungstaldenæ; and so Hedda was bishopp bothe of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After whom Albinus other Wor. After whom thre succeeded, that

to suspect, as do many other things, that the standard MS. may have been copied from a, or that both are copies of the same MS. The text of b, and Cx. is correct. of b, and Cx. a oe. a. hulde, a. hem, MS. (not a, b, or Cx.)
De episcopis Northimbranis.8

Willelmus, libro quarto de Pontificibus, capitulo undecimo.9 Apud Eboracum unica sedes primo fuit pro tota10 provincia Northimbrana,11 quam Paulinus primus a Dorobernensi12 Justo ordinatus septemannis tenuit. Deinde, occiso rege Northimbranorum13 Edwyno, turbatisque rebus,14 recessit Paulinus navigio ad partes Cantuæ unde primo venerat,15 sumpto secum pallio. Willelmus, libro tertio.16 Sicque cessavit prae-

after hym come the\(^1\) bisshoppis Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichesfelde, and Eata was \(\text{\`}it\) at Dorccheckre. After his deth bisshoppes of Lyndeseeye helde his\(^2\) see pre hundred \(\text{\`ere\) and four and fifty, for to Remigius chaungede \(\text{\`e\) see to Lynecolne by leue of pe firste kyng William: but in kyng Edgar his tyme bisshopp\(^3\) Leofwynus ioyneped bo\(\text{\`o\) bisshopriches [to gideres] \(\text{\`e\) Chestre and of \(\text{\`o\) Lyndeseeye\(\text{\`e\) while his lif durede.

**De episcopis Norphumbranis. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.**

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo. At York was oon see for alle pe province of Norphumberlond, Paulinus hulde first \(\text{\`at\) see, and was i-ordeyned of pe bisshopp\(^7\) of Caunterbury, and hylde \(\text{\`at\) see of \(\text{\`ork\) seeene \(\text{\`ere.\) Afterward whan kyng Edwyn was i-slave, and pinges were destourbed, Paulynus wente \(\text{\`ennes\) by water wey in to Kent, whennes he com first, and toke wip hym pe\(^8\) palle. Willelmus, libro tertio. And so pe bisshopriches of \(\text{\`ork\) cesede

is to say, Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichesfelde, Eata re-
maynenge at Dorccheckre; the seete of whom bischoppes of
Lindeseye occupiede by ccc.liiiij yere, vn tyle that Remi-
gius transferrede that seete to Lincolne, in the tyme of
kyngge William the firste. But Leofwinus byschop, con-
joineped bothe the chirches of Chestre and Lindesey to gedre
in the tyme of kyngge Edgare, while he lyvede.

**Of the Bishops of Northumberlond. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.**

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo. Qon seete was firste at Yorke, for alle the province of
Northumberlond, whom Paulinus occupiede firste by the
space of vij. yere. After that Edwinus, kyngge of Northum-
berlond, sleynge, Paulinus toke schippe and sayled to
Kente, from whens he come, takenge the palle with hym.
Willelmus, libro tertio. And so the bischopperiche of

---

\(^1\) \(\text{\`e\) a.
\(^2\) the, Cx.
\(^3\) bishop of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\(^4\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^5\) of] om. a.
\(^6\) Lyndesare, a.
\(^7\) So MSS. and Cx.
\(^8\) So a. and Cx.; bat, MS.
\(^9\) So a. and Cx.; York the bis-
shoprice, MS.
sulatus Eboracensis xxx. annis, usus vero pallii cessavit\(^1\) ibidem cxv. annis, donec Egbertus episcopus et frater regis terrae\(^2\) auctoritate papali pallium recuperaret.\(^3\) Ranulphus.\(^4\) Regnante interim Sancto Oswaldo pre-fuit Aidanus Scoticus\(^5\) apud Bernicios;\(^6\) post quem Finanus; post quem Colmannus. Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.\(^7\) Quo tandem ad Scotiam indig-nanter\(^8\) recedente, eo quod\(^9\) illigetima Pasche observatione per Wylfridum fuerat redargutus,\(^4\) tricesimo\(^10\) post recessum Paulini anno Wilfridus ad sedem Eboracense institutus est.\(^11\) Beda, libro quarto.\(^12\) Sed\(^13\) ipso circa suam consecrationem\(^14\) apud Gallias diutius demorante,\(^15\) ad instigationem quartadecimanorum\(^16\) Cedda de monasterio suo Lestingensi sumptus, annuente rege Oswy, subintrusus est. Quo tandem post triennium per Theodorum archipresulem amoto, et\(^17\) ad provinciam Merciorum assignato, Wilfridus per Theodorum restitutus est; sed et ipse\(^18\) tandem propter quasdam simultates inter ipsum et regem Oswy\(^19\) ex-ortas, post decimum officii sui annum, cooperante et corrupto Theodoro, a sede sua expulsus est; ordina-

---

\(^1\) vacavit, C.D., slightly transposed.
\(^2\) terra\] om. C.D.
\(^3\) recuperavit, C.D.
\(^4\) Ranulphus . . . redargutus\] om. C.D.
\(^5\) Scottis, B.; Scotus, Gale.
\(^6\) Bericios, B.
\(^7\) B. omits reference.
\(^8\) indignante, A.
\(^9\) quod de, Gale.
\(^10\) ipsius, add. C.D.
\(^11\) Slightly transposed in C.D.
\(^12\) C.D. omit reference.
\(^13\) This passage, as far as Tunberium apud Hagustaldensem, is contracted in C.D. to "Sed ipso post decimum officii sui annum ex-pulso, Theodorus Dorobernensis episcopus ex regis Oswy con-niventia ordinavit Bosam apud Eboracum."
\(^14\) consecrationem suam, B.
\(^15\) immorante, B.
\(^16\) quandam dessimantorum, B.
\(^17\) et\} om. B.
\(^18\) ipso, B.
\(^19\) discordias, ins. B.
Trevisa.

Yorke seasede xxxii yere, and the vse of the pallo seased there by a c. xxyi yere vn tyl hat bischopp Egberte, brother to the kyngge of that londe, reureede the pallo thor aucortere of the pope. R. After that, Seynte Oswolde reigennge, Aidanus, a Scotte, hade gouerned in Bernicia, after whom Finanus, and after hym Colmannus. Willelmus ubi supra. Whiche gouenge in to Scotlonde, as for indicagnacn, in that he was repropvede by Wilfride of vnlawfulle kepengn of Estur, Wilfride was restorid to the seete of Yorke after the departenge of Paulinus, in the xxxii yere. Beda, libro quarto. But Wilfride taryenge in Frauncce abowte his conseccerion, Seynte Chaddde was taken and made bischopp per, tho helpe of kyngge Osyv ; whiche, remouede with in the space of thre yere by Theodorus tharchebischof, was made bishopp of the Marches, and Wilfride was restoride to hit ageuye. Whiche Wilfride was expulsede with in the space of x. yere folengo, Theodorus tharchebischope cooperante and corrupte, for cause of conten-

1 cesede, a.
2 cxxv, yere, Cx.
3 So among om. Cx.
4 So Cx.; Adrianus, MS.; Aidanus, a.
5 Finianus, Cx.
6 goon, Cx.; ago, B. The text is a little corrupt, probably Yorke should be added after from, or from cancelled.
7 Added from a.
8 So Cx.; fourie, MS. and a.
9 in to, Cx.
10 arrested om. Cx.
11 So a. and Cx.; Odorus, MS.
12 Sinanus, Harl. MS.
vitque tune Theodorus ad regis instantiam Bosam apud Eboracum, Tumbertum apud Hagustaldensem eclelsiam, Eatam ad Lindisfarnensem eclelsiam, quæ est Halyelond, in flumine Twydi; quam sedem Aidanus post fundaverat, Eadhedum vero de Lindesey reversum praefecit Ripensi ecclesie, ubi Wyldfridus quondam abbas fuerat. Trunwynum autem destinavit ad terram Pictorum in finibus Anglorum juxta Scotiam, in loco qui Candida Casa, seu Whiterne, dicitur; ubi Sanctus Ninianus Brito primus fundator et doctor extiterat. Sed hæ omnes sedes, excepta Eboracensi, paulatim defecerunt. Nam sedes Candidæ Case, que tune ad Anglos spectabat, aliquot annis sub decem episcopis durabat; donec depopulatione Pictorum a ditione Anglorum omnino deficeret. Hagustaldensis vero et Lyndisfarnensis sedes, que vicissim unica erat sub novem episcopis, nonaginta ferme annis usque adventum Dacorum duravit. Quo in tempore sub Hyngwar et Hubba Ardulphus episcopus diu cum corpore Cuthberti vagabatur, usque ad dies Aluredi regis Westsaxonum,
pat was i-doo after pat Wilfrede hadde i-be bishopp of York
ten 3ere; pan at thie instaunce of thie kynge Theodorus made
Bosam bishopp of York and Cuthbert,1 at Hagustalde chirche,
and Eata at Lyndefarne chirche pat hadde Holy Eland 2 in thie
ryuer of Twede. Aydanus foundede first pat see, and Theo-
dorus made Eadheudus 3 bishopp of Rypoun pat was i-come
as en out of Lyndeseie; Wilfrede 4 hadde be abbot of Ripoun.
Theodorus sede Trumwynus to thie lond of Pictes in thie
endes of Engelond faste by Scotland in a place pat hadde
Candida Casa and Whyterne 5 also. Peere Seint Ninian, a
Bretoun, was first foundour and doctour; but alle pese sees
outake York faillede litell and litel; for thie see of Candida
Casa, and pat is Galeway, pat longede poo to Engelond,
durede meny 3eres vnder ten bishoppes for to that he was
out of power [by destroyenge of thie Pictes. Tho see of Ha-
gustalde and of Lyndefare was bytymes al oon under nyne
bishopis] 6 aboute a foure score 3ere and ten, and durede
anon to thie comynge of thie Danes. In pat tym vnder Hungar
and Hubba, Ardulf 7 pe bishopp 3ede longe aboute wip Seynt
Cuthberts his body anon to kynge Alured his tyme, kynge of
West Saxon, whan 7 pe see of Lyndefare was i-sette at Kun-

1 Cumbert, Cx. 5 So a., Cx.; Whitne, MS.
2 Holy Ylond, Cx. 6 Added from a. and Cx.
3 So a. and Cx.; Etheldredus, 7 and, Cx.
4 MS. Probably we should read where

Wilfrede.

CAP. LVII.

De numero sedum episcopaliūm.

Cantuariensis metropolis habet sub se tredecim episcopos in Anglia, et quatuor in Wallia, videlicet, Roffensem soli Cantiae præsidentem; item Londoniensem, qui preæst Estsaxonibus, Midelsex, et medietati Hertfortshire; item Cieestrensem soli Southsaxiæ et Vectæ insulse præsidentem; Wytoniensem, qui preæst Hampshtere et Southreye; Salesburiensem, qui preæst Dorsetensibus, Barroeshire, et Wylteshriæ.

1 Lindefarnensis, B.
2 Koningsestriam, B.; Kunegestre, D.
3 Cuningesburgh, A.; Copges-burgh, B.; Canugisburgh, Gale.
4 Kumberh (Cumbreburgh, D.)
5 locabatur, C.D.
6 qui locus] locus ille, C.D.
7 Ubbefor\; B.; Ucleford, A.: Hubbeford, D.
8 Edevedi, B.
9 Dunhelmam, B.; Dunelium, Gale.
10 translatam, B.
11 et] om. B.
12 Cathberti, B., Gale.
13 Gale adds est.
14 Slightly transposed in C.D.
15 defecit omnino, B., Gale.
16 Lindefarsensis, B.
17 Post hoc autem Henricus primus, C.D., with other slight variations below.
18 apud] om. C.D.; Karlodam, B.
19 C.D. add: — "quod quondam "Lugubalia dicebatur."
20 episcopatiūm] om. C.D.
21 Sic igitur in præsenti, ins. C.D.
22 et . . . videlicet] om. C.D.
23 Estsaxonie, Gale; Estsexia, D.
24 mediatēm habet Hertford-shiria, A.
26 Susser, B.; Southsaxonibus, D.
27 Salesburiensem, B.; Salesburi-riansem, Gale.
28 et, ins. A.
29 Wyntonschire, B.; Dorcestre, Barrocrenshires, et Wyltoniæsibus, D.
negester;\(^1\) pat hatte Kuneyugesburgh also; \(\text{pat place hatte now Vbbestos upp on Twede. At pe laste pe seuen pe zere of kyng Egbert, kyng Edgarus sone, pat [see] \(^2\) was i-changed to Durem, and Seint Cuthbertus body was i-doo pe doyng of Edmond the bishop; and from \(\text{pat tymen forward pe see pat hatte Haungstald and Lyndesayl alle oute,}\(^3\) pe firste kyng Henry pe nyupe pe zere of his regnyuge \(^4\) made pe newe see at Carlilee.\(^5\)

**Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.**

The archbishop of Canterbury \(\text{hap vnder hym prittene bischoppes in Engeland, and four in Wales. Pat bie} \text{bep Roucestre, he hap vnder hym Kent allone; }\(^7\) Londoun, he hap vnder hym Essex and Middelsex and half Hertfordeschire; Chichestre, he hap vnder hym Soupeye, and pe Ie of Wyett; Wyncestre, he hap under hym Hampteschire and Sowpereye; Salystersby hap vnder hym Barrokschire,\(^8\) Wilteschire, and Dorsete; Excetre hap vnder hym Lindesayn was sette at Cungestre or Kunegcsburgh, whiche place is callede now Hubeorde on Twede. And at the laste that sete was removede to Durem, in the xvij. yere of Egelrede kyng, son of kynghe Edgare; and the body of Seynte Cuthberte the bishop was buriede there by Edmunde the bishop. From whiche tymne the seetes of the churches of Haungstaldense failede utterly; and kynghe Henry the firste, in the ixth yere of his regynge, ordynede a newe seete, Caerlielle.

**Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.**

The metropolitan of Caunterbury hathe vnder hym xiiij. bischoppes in Engeland, and iiij. in Wales, that is to say: — the bishop of Rocheestre, whiche hathe gouernayle onlyn in Kente. Also of London whiche hathe rewle in Estesex, Middelsex, and of the halfe of Hertfordeschire. Also the bishop of Chichestre whiche is presidente onlyn of Southesex and of the yle of Wyette. The bishop of Wyncestre, which is presidente in Hampteschire and Surry. And of Salisbury pat is presidente of Doreste, Barrokschire,

---

\(^1\) Kunegucstre, a. and Cx.
\(^2\) Added from Cx.
\(^3\) brought thyder, Cx.
\(^4\) alle oute] vterly, Cx.
\(^5\) regne, Cx.
\(^6\) So a.; Caerley, Cx.; Comwaiyle, MS.
\(^7\) aboxon, a. Sentence varied in Cx.
\(^8\) Barkshire, Cx.; who has other slight variations of orthography and expression.
Excestrensem, qui præest Devonie 1 et Cornubie; Bathoniensem, qui præest Someretensibus; Wygorniensem, qui præest Glovernensisibus, Wygornensisibus, et dimidiis Warwycensibus; Herfordensem, qui præest Herefordensibus et parti 3 Salopshire; Cestrensem, sive Conventrensen et Lichfeldensem, qui præest Cestrice, Staffordie, Derbuy, dimidie Warewie, parti Salopias, parti 9 Lancastreshire, videlicet a flumine de Mersee usque flumen de Rippel, Lincolniensem, qui præest provinciis, que sunt inter Thamisiam et Humbram, videlicet, Lincolnie, Leycestrie, Northamtonie, Huntyntonie, Bedfordie, Bokyngham, Oxonie, et dimidie Hertfortshire; Heliensem, qui præest Cantebruggeshire, préter Merlond; Norwicensem, qui præest Merlond, Norforchie, et Southforchie. Item Cantuarensis habet in Wallia quatuor suffraganeos, scilicet Landavensem, Menevensem, Bangoriensem, et Sancti Asaph. Eboracum autem metropolis hodie tantum duos habet sub se episcopos, Dunelmensem scilicet et Carduliensem. Ranulphus. Cum igitur duo in Anglia solummodo.
Deuenschire and Cornwayle; Bâpe hâp vnder hym Somerse-te-
[schire] 1 alone; Wircestre hathe vnder hym Glowectre-
[schire] 2 Wircestreschire, and halfe Warwykeshire; Herforde
hâp vnder hym Herfordschire and som of Schropschire.
Chestre is bishope of Counentre [and] 3 of Lichefeld, and hâp
vnder hym Chestreschire, Staffordschire, Darowychschire, halfe
Warwikeshire, som of Schropschire, and som of Lancastreschire
from pे ryuer of Merce 4 anon to pे ryuer of Rypel. 5
Lyncolne hâp vnder hym pे prouince pât beþ bytwene Temse and
Humber, pât beþ pe schieres of Lyncolne, 6 of Lycetre,
of Northamptoun, of Huntyngdoun, of Bedeford, of Bokyng-
ham, 7 of Oxenforde, and halfe Hertfordschire. Hely hâp
vnder hym Cantebriggeschire outake Merslond. 8 Norp-
whiche hâp vnder hym Merslond, Norþfolk, and Souþfolk. 9
Also pe archebishops of Cauterbury hâp foure suffragans
in Wales, pât beþ Landaf, Seint Daþys, Bangor, and Seint
Assaph. Pe archebishop of York hâp now but tweie bis-
shoppes vnder hym, pât beþ Durem and Carlille. R. 10 And

and Wilteschire. Of Excestre, that is presidente of Deuon-
schire and of Cornewailde. And of Bathe, pât is presidente
in Somersesteschire. Of Wirchestre, which is presidente in
Gloucestreschire and Wirchestre, and in the halfe of
Warwikeshire. And of Herdeforde, which is presidente in
that schire, and in parte of Schropschire. The bishop of
Chestre of Counentre and of Lichefeld, which is presidente in
Staffordschire, in Derby, and in the halfe of Warwikeshire,
and in parte of Schroppeschire, and in parte of f. 74 a.
Lancastreschire that is from the water of Mersee vn to the
floode of Rippelle. And of Lyncolne, which is presidente of
the prouinces which be betwene Thamys and Humbre, as
Lincolne, Leireestre, Northampton, Huntyngdoun, Bedeforde,
Bukyngham, Oxon, and halfe of Hertfordschire. And of
Hely, that is presidente in Cantebriggeschire, Merlondse
cexepte. Of Norwiche, that is presidente in Merlondse,
Northefolke, and Sowthefolke. Also the metropolitan of
Cauterbery hathe iiiij. suffragans in Wales; that is to say,
of Landauense, of Bangor, of Meneuiia, and Assaph. The
archebishop of Yorke hathe ij. bishoppes vnder hym
only, of Durem and Caerliel. Then sithe pêr be ij.

1 Added from Cx. (not in a.)
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 Mersee, Cx.
5 Rypel, a.
6 of Engelonde, Lyncolne, MS.
7 Bokyngham, a.; Bokyngham, Cx.
8 Merlond, a. and Cx.; and so below.
9 Norfolk and Suffolk, Cx.
10 Reference added from Cx.; who
omits the latter part of the sentence.
De duobus Anglæ primatibus.

sunt primates, Cantuariensis, qui dicitur primas totius Anglæ, et Eboracensis, qui primas Anglæ dicitur; quid unus alteri debeat, et in quibus eis subjacere teneatur, in subsequentibus circa annum Domini millesimum septuagesimum secundum plenius continentur, ubi coram rege Willelmo primo et Anglæ præsulibus, ex mandato Papæ inter prefatos primates causa ventilata, decretum est ut Eboracensis in his quæ ad cultum catholicum pertinent Cantuariensi subjaceat; ita, videlicet, ut ubicunque in Anglia Cantuariensis concilium cogere voluerit, Eboracensis cum suis suffraganeis adesse teneatur, et ejus canonicis decretis obedire. Obeunte autem Cantuariensi, Eboracensis Doroberniam veniet, electum cum cæteris episcopis in primatem proprium consecrabit. Quod si Eboracensis obierit, successor ejus ad Cantuariensem accedet, et ordinationem ab eo accipiet, faciendo juramentum cum professione de

1 qui dicitur quidem, C. (not D.)
2 et] om. C. (not D.)
3 dicitur primas Anglæ, B. D.
4 et] om. B.
5 ei, B.; om. Gale.
6 eiusmod teneatur] ve subjacent, C. D.
7 gratie, C. D.
8 Anglæ, ins. B.
9 Anglæ] om. C. D.
10 sic, ins. B.
11 Slightly transposed in C. D.
12 locorum, ins. C. D.
13 vocare, B.
14 ejus] om. A. B., Gale.
15 suffraganeis ... obedient] sibi subjectis episcopis adcrīt, canonicis ejus præcepsis obedientis erit, C. D.
16 recipiet, Gale.
so beep but tweeie primates in Engelond, Canturbury, pat is Trevisa.

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 ever hit, a. and Cx.; it evere, MS.
3 Engelond, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
4 constrayne to gadre, Cx.
5 bishop, Cx.
obedientia canonica. Inferius autem, circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum nonagesimum quintum, sub tempore regis Ricardì, ponuntur rationes pro parte et 1 jure utriusque primatis facientes. Neenon et 2 a tempore Conquestus usque ad tempora ultimi Henrici regis, 3 sub diebus Thurstini, 4 Thomæ, et 5 aliorum 6 Eboracensium pontificum, 7 quid alter primas alteri fecerit, quomodo quoque 8 alter alterius manum subterfugerit, 9 plenius edocetur; præsenter vero 10 locum, cum prologi magis quam pleni tractatus 11 vicem gerat, præfatis rationibus 12 onerare nimis foret tædiosum.

CAP. LVIII.

A quot 13 et quibus haec terra sit inhabitata gentibus. 14

Hæc insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui 15 anno Hely sacerdotis xviiij, tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliij, 16 ante urbem Roman conditam quadringentesimo xxxij, (Beda, libro primo, 17) de tractu Armorico advecti 18 australes insulae partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum

1 parte et] om. B.
2 Neenon et] Sparsim quoque per cronicam istam, C.D.
3 tempora . . . . regis] novissimum

Hæc insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui anno Hely sacerdotis xviiij, tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliij, ante urbem Roman conditam quadringentesimo xxxij, (Beda, libro primo, 17) de tractu Armorico advecti australes insulae partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum

13 magis . . . . tractatus] om. C.D.
14 amplius, ins. C.D., Gale.
15 quo, quando, Gale.
16 Quando et quibus haec terra sit inhabitata gentibus, A.; Quibus haec terra inhabitata sit gentibus, B.; De incolis Anglor. C.; De incolis prioribus, D.
17 quo, B.
18 anno xliij, ecclesi., Gale.
19 C.D. omit reference.
20 advenientes, B.
ful obedient. Wip ymne, aboute þe 3ere of oure Lord elleune hundred fourere score and fiftene, vnder þe tyne of kyng Richard, beep resouns i-sette þat makep for þe party and for þe riȝt of eyper primat. Also what oone primat dede to þat oper in tyne of Thurstynus, of Thomas, and of oþere bishoppes of æorke from þe Conquest anon to þe laste kyng Henry his 2 tyne. Also þere it is i-tauȝt how eyper of hem asterte 3 from oper. Þis place is but a forspekynge, and nouȝt a ful tretis perof. Þerfore hit were noyefulle 4 to charge þis place wip alle pilke resouns þat þere beep i-made.

A quot, quando, et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

Bretons wonede first in þis ilonde þe 3ere of Hely þe preost eiȝtete; of Siluius Posthumus, kyng of Latyns, eleuene; after þe takynge of Troye, þro and fourty 3ere; to þore þe byldynge of Rome, fourre hundred and two and pritty, 5 Beda, libro primo. Þei come hinder and took hitours from Armorik, þat now is þe oper Bretayne; þey helde long tymc with profession off obedience canonicalle. But in þis pro-
cesse foloenge, abowte the yere of God m 1 c. xcve. 6 vnder the tyne of kyng Richard the firste, reasons were allegeate for either parte of bothe primates: and also from the tyne of the Conqueste vn to the tymes of þe laste Henry kyng, in the daies of Thurstyn, Thomas, and of oþer bishoppes of Yorke, what that oon primate did to that other, and how oon of theym fledde the powere of that other, for to rehearse the reasons of theyme and allegacion, hit were onerable to vs in this tymc.

Of what Peple, how mony, and when, this Yle of Britayne was inhabit. —Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

Thus yle callede Englonde now hade Britones the firste inhabitatores of hit, in þe xviiij the yere of Hely preste, in the tyne of Siluius Posthumus kyng of Latines, þe xliij þere after the destruccion of Troye, by eccc. yere and xxxiiij afore the cite of Rome was edifiede. Beda, libro primo. Whiche commenge from Armorike occupiede a longe season the sowthe partes of the yle of Briteyne. Hyt

1 Sentence varied in Cx. 2 Henrie, a. 3 starte, Cx. 4 noyefull, a., Cx. 5 Sentence varied in Cx. 6 m1, c. 95, Harl, MS. The Roman and Arabic numerals are used pro-
miscuously elsewhere.
tempore Vespasiani ducis Romani, gentem Pictorum de Scythia longis navibus oceanum ingressam, circum-agente flatu ventorum, oras boreales Hiberniae intrasse, atque inventa ibi Scotorum gente sedes sibi petivisse, nec impetrare potuisse. Nam cum Hibernia, ut Scoti asserebant, ambas gentas capere non possent, Scoti remiserunt Pictos ad septentrionales partes Britanniae, opem contra Britones adversantes, si insurgent, promittentes. Uxoresque illis de filiabus suis ea conditione tradiderunt, ut ubi res veniret in dubium, magis de feminea prospapia quam de masculina regem sibi eligerent. Gaufridus. Tempore autem Vespasiani Caesaris, regnante apud Britannos Mario filio Arviragi, Rodricus quidam rex Pictorum de Scythia veniens ceperit Albaniam devastare; quem Marius interficiens dedit devicto populo, qui cum Rodrico venerat, borealem partem Albaniae, quae Cathenesia dicitur, ad inhabitandum. Illi vero uxoribus carentes, cum de natione Britonum uxores habere non possent,
scip contrayes of pe ilond. Hit byfelle afterwarde in Vespasianus tyme, duke of Rome, patt pe Pictes out of Scythia\(^1\) schipped into ocean, and were i-dryue aboute wip pe wynde, and entredye in to pe nor\(^{p}\) costes of Irland, and founde jere Scottes, and prayed for to haue a place to wonye inne, and my\(\text{st}\)e none gete. For Irland, as Scottes seide, my\(\text{st}\)e nou\(\text{st}\) susteyne bope peple. Scottes sente pe Pictes to the nor\(^{p}\) side of Bretayne, and behi\(t\)te\(^2\) hem\(^3\) help a\(\text{en}\)st pe Bretouns \(\text{pat}\) were enemyes, yf pe\(y\) wolde arise, and took hem to wyfes of here dou\(\text{tz}\)tres vppon suche a condicio\(n\); \(\text{if}\) doute fel who schulde haue ry\(\text{st}\) for to be kyng, he\(^4\) schulde ra\(\text{per}\) chase hem a kyng of pe moder side pan of pe fader side, of pe wommen kyng ra\(\text{per}\) [\(\text{pan}\)]\(^5\) of pe men kyng. Gaufridus. In Vaspacian pe emporour his tyme, whan Marius Aruiragus his son was kyng of Bretounes, on\(^6\) Rodrik kyng of Pictes come out of Scythia\(^1\) and gan to destroye Scotia. \(\text{Pan}\) Marius pe kyng slowe pis Rodorik kyng of Pictes, and \(\text{af}\) pe nor\(^{p}\) party of\(^7\) Scotia, \(\text{pat}\) hadde Cathenesia, to pe men \(\text{pat}\) were i-come wip Roderik and were overcome wip\(^8\) hem, for to wonye ymeye. But pese men hadde non wifes, ne none my\(\text{st}\)e hane of pe nacio\(n\)s of Bretounes; \(\text{per}\)ofe pey

happede afterwarde in the tyme of Vespasian duke of Rome, the peple of Pictes to haue commen from Scythia,\(^1\) and to haue intredye the ocean, the wynde helpenge thyme, and so to haue intredye the northe costes of Yrlonde;\(^2\) whiche fyndenge pe Scottes desirade a place in that londe whom thei my\(\text{st}\)hte inhabite, but thei kouthe not obtayne that desire. For the Scottes seide Yrlonde wolde not suffice bothe peple. Wherefore thei sende the Pictes to the northe partes of(false line)

\(1\) Scicia or Scitia, MSS., as usual; and so below.
\(2\) So Cx.; and hi\(st\), a; and he hi\(st\), MS.
\(3\) So Cx.; hymself, MS.
\(4\) they, Cx.
\(5\) Added from a, and Cx.
\(6\) one, Cx.
\(7\) So Cx.; to, MS.
\(8\) by, Cx.
transfretantes Hiberniam Hiberniensium filias sibi copularunt; 1 co tamen pacto, ut sanguis maternus in successionibus præferretur. 2 Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septimo decimo. 3 Servius tamen 4 super Virgilium dicit Pictos esse Agathyrsos, sedesque quondam circa paludes Scythicas habuisse. Et dicitur Picti quasi stigmatizati seu 5 cauteriati, propter abundantiam fleumatis, 6 quia 7 ubi ex crebris stigmatibus cicatrices obducuntur, corpora quasi pica redduntur. Suntque isti populi idem quod Gothi; nam cum Maximus tyrannus de Britannia in Galliam 8 cum omni armato terræ 9 milite ad occupandum imperium transvectus fuisset, Gratianus et Valentinianus, fratres imperii consortes, gentem hanc Gothicam, in rebus bellicis fortem et strenuam, beneficiis et blanditiis allectam, a Seythiæ finibus in boreales Britanniae partes ad infestandum 10 Britones, omni armato milite tunc nudatos, navigio transmiserunt. Sicque de praedonibus accole effecti, 11 usurpatas 12 sedes aquilonales 13 tenuerunt. 14 Gaufridus. Carausius

---

1 copulaverunt, B.  
2 præferatur, C.D.  
3 C.D. omit the reference. The true reference is to Girald. De Instr. Princ. lib. 1. c. 6. (p. 188, Brewer). The Harl. MS. is wrong.  
4 tamen] om. C.D.  
5 vel, B.  
6 fleumatis, A.B.D., Gale.  
7 qui, E.  
8 Franciam, C.D.  
9 terra, B.  
10 infestandos, Gale.  
11 facti, D.  
12 voluptates, E.  
13 aquilonares, B.  
14 effecti . . . tenuerunt] facti usurpatas ad sedes aquilonares pervenerunt, C. (not D.)
seillede into Irlond, and toke hem to wythes Irischemen douȝters, at 1 pat coveniunt, pat the moder blood schulde be putt to fore in succession of heritement. *Giraldisus, capitulo septimodecimo. Nopheles Serunius 2 super Virgilium seip pat Pictes beep Agatirsis, 3 pat hadde som wonynge places aboute pe wateres of Scythia, and pe beep i-cleped Pictes by cause of peyntyngye [and snittyngye] 4 of woundes pat beep i-sene on hire bodies, for pey hadde moche fleem, 5 and were oft boistousliche i-lete blood, 6 and hadde many woundes i-sene on hire bodies, 7 so pat pey semede as it were men i-peynt wip woundes; perfere pey were i-cleped Pictus, as it were peynted men. Pece men and the Gotes ben al oon peple: for whan Maximus pe tyraunt was i-went 8 out of Britayne in to Fraunce for to occupie pe empere; panne Gratianus and Valentinianus, pat were brepre and felawes of pe empere, broȝte pece Gothes out of Scythia wip greet ȝiftes, wip flaterynge and false 9 byhestes, in to pe north contray of Britayne; for pey were stalworpe and strong men of armes. And so pece brouyres were i-made men of pe 10 loud and of pe 11 contray, and wonden in pe northe contraies, and hilde peere citees and townes. *Gaufridus. 12 Carausius 13 pe tyraunt slow 14 willenge to mary with theyme, sayled in to Yrlonde in MS. Harl. 2261. maryenge to theyme the douȝters of men of Yrlonde, in this condicion, that the bloode female scholde be preferrede in succession. *Giraldisus De Papa, capitulo septimo. Neuerthelesse Serunius on Virgille callethe the Pictes Agathyris, 15 and to haue hade theire habitaciones somme tyme abowte the marras of Scythia whiche were callede Pictes, f. 72. a. for the habundance of fleume in theyme. These peple be callede also Gothi, for when Maximus the tyrante wente from Englande in to Fraunce with a grete multitude of armede men to occupy the empyre, Gratian and Valentinian, breder and felowes of thempire, toke to theyme the peple callede Gothi, nowble and stronge in batelle, thuro wararde and feire speche, from the costes of Scythia in to the northe partes of Briteyne, with a grete multitude of peple, to vexe the Britones; and so that peple, of robbers made inhabitatores, occupiende the northe partes of Briteyne thuro presumpcion. *Gaufridus.

1 by, Cx.  
2 Sirinus, MS. and Cx.  
3 Agartirses, a.  
4 Added from a. and Cx.  
5 fleume, Cx.  
6 ofte boxed and lete blood, Cx.  
7 body, a. Cx.  
8 wente, Cx.  
9 sayre, Cx.  
10 le] om. a., Cx.  
11 le] om. a., Cx.  
12 Added from a. and Cx.  
13 So a.; Carausius, MS. (which has Carausius below), and Harl, MS.  
14 sion; a.  
15 Agatirsi, Harl, MS.  

K 2
tyrannus dolo Pictorum, qui in auxilium Bassiani venerant, ipsum Bassianum interfecit, deditque Pictis locum mansionis in Albania; ubi permixti cum Britonibus per subsequens ævum permanserunt. Ranulphus. At cum Picti boreales prius Albanie partes occupassent, videtur quod locus mansionis, quam Carausius iste dedit Pictis, sit pars australina Albaniae, a muro scilicet Romani operis transverso usque ad mare Scoticum protensa; in quo kontinetur Galwodia et Lodoneya, de quo Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, sic loquitur: "Ninianus, vir sanctus, convertit australes "Pictos," et caetera. Hunc tandem pagum Saxones supervenientes fecerunt pertinere ad provinciam Northimbrorum Berniciorum, donec Kynadius Alpini filius, rex Scotorum, deletis Pictis, illud territorium quod est inter Twedam et mare Scoticum, fecerat suo regno pertinere. Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Processu vero temporis Scoti, duce Reuda de Hibernia, quae proprie Scotorum patria est, egressi, vel amicitia vel ferro sibimet juxta Pictos sedes statue-
Bassianus by help and tresoun of ye Pictes pat come in help and secour of Bassianus, and þaf þe Pictes a wonyng place in Albanie, þat is Scotland. Þere þey woned long tyme afterwarde i-medled³ wiþ Britouns. R. Þanne sippe þe Pikkes² occupied raper³ þe norpside of Scotland,⁴ it semep þat þey wonyng place þat þis Carausius þaf hem is þe soupside of Scotlond þat strecheþ [from þe]⁵ þwart ouer wal of Romayn werk to þe Scottishe see, and conteynep Galewey and Lodouia [þat is]⁶ Lodway. Þerof Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, spekeþ in þis manere: Nynyan þe holy man converted þe souþ Pictes. Afterward þe Saxons come and made þat contray longe to Brecinie, þe norp partie of Norphumberlond, for to⁷ Kynadyus, Alpynus his sone, kyng of Scotlond, put out [þe Pictes]⁸ and made þat contray þat is bytwene Twede and þe Scottishe see longe to his kyngdom. Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Afterward longe tyme the Scottes were i-lad by duke Reuda, and com out of Irlond, þat is þe propper contray of Scottes, and wiþ loue oþer wiþ strengþe made hem a place faste by þe Pictes in þe norp

Carausius the tyrante did sle Bassian thru the decepcion of the Pictes, whiche come to hauve schewede helpe to þe seide Bassian, whiche þafe to þe Pictes a place to inhabite in Albanie, where þe þey abhyde afterwarde by continuacion permixte with Britones. R. And when the Pictes hade occupiède afore tyme the northe partes of Albanie, hit semethe that the place of inhabitacion whom Carausius graunteþe to þeym was the sowthe parte of Albanie, proþendede from the famose walle of Roman werke ouertwarde⁹ to the Scottissee, in whom Galoway is conteynede; of whom Beda spekethe, libro iij°, capitulo 2o°, seyenge, Seynte Ronyon conquerteþe þowþe Pictes. And at the laste the Saxones causeþe to perteyne to the prouince of Northumbrelonde, vn til Kinadius the son of Alpinus, kyng of Scottes, destroyenge the Pictes, made that territory whiche is betwene Twede and the Scottissee to longe to his realme. Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. And in processe of tyme the Scottes, takenge to þeym Reuda of Yrlonde to theire gouernoure, whiche londe is nye to the Scottes, wente furþe and toke to þeym sectes, what thro marte other fawor, nye to the Pictes, at the northe partie of an arme of the see,
runt, ad septentrionalem seilicit 1 partem sinus maris, qui ab occidente in terram longo spatio 2 irruptens 3 Britones antiquitus secernebat a Pictis.4 A quo duce Reuda Scoti vocabantur Dahreudini; 5 nam lingua eorum dal partem significat 6 Giraldus, distinctione prima. Picti, quia uxores quas de Britonibus habere non poterant de Scotis 7 Hiberniensibus obtinuerant, 8 eos 9 ad cohabitandum allexerunt; terramque maritimam, ubi mare angustum est, que nunc Galwodia dicitur, eis 10 conesserunt. Marianus.11 Apud Argayl 12 applicuerunt Scoti 13 qui et Hibernienses, quod sonat Latine margo Scotorum, 14 eo quot Scoti ibidem 15 applicarent 16 ad faciendum damna Britannis; vel quia locus ille proximior est 17 Hibernicas ad applicandum. 18 19 Beda, libro primo.20 Et sic Scoti tertiam in Britannia post Britones et Pictos gentem addiderunt. Ranulfus.22 Tandem Saxones contra 23 Scotos et Pictos a Britonibus invitati, expulsis Britonibus usque in Cambriam, 24 terram paulatim occupantes, et usque ad mare Scoticum fines suos dilatantes, 25 quartam in insula gentem feecerunt.

passage: "Ranulfus. Seu quia Scoti super Pictos locum illum occupavere sicut jam die tur. "Extenditur autem Galwedia ab illo famoso maris sinu ubi quon- dam urbs Alcluid faserat, ubi et Severus vallum fecerat, qui etiam solebat secerneere Britones a Pictis [usque ad mare Scoticum, quod Scotice Forth dicitur, currens- que juxta oppidum de Scrivelyn], "usque ad flumen Tae regna Sco- torum et Anglorum solebat divi- dere." The words in brackets added from D.

1 seilicit] om. Gale.
2 spatio] om. C. (not D.)
3 irruptens, C.; irruptentes, Gale; eruptens, D.
4 C.D. add: ubi erat et civitas Britonum Alcluid.
5 Daroudini, A.; Dareudini, B.
6 A... significat] om. C.D.; signet, B.
7 Scotici, A.
8 appellantur, C.D.
9 eos] om. E.
10 eisdem, C. (not D.)
11 Martinus, E.
12 Argyll, B., Gale.
13 Scotici, A.
14 Scoticorum, A.
15 ibi, C.D.
16 appellantur, C. (not D.)
17 est] om. A.B.
18 est... applicandum] et affinis est Hiberniae, C.D.
19 C.D. insert here the following
side of pat arme of pe see pat brekep in to the ilound in pe west side, pat departed in olde tym te bytwen Britouns and Pictes. Of pis duke Reuda pe Scottes hadde pe name, and were i-cleped Dalreundynes, as it were Reda\(^2\) his part, for in here speche a part is i-cleped \textit{dal}. \textit{Giraldus, distinctione prima.} \(\text{pe} Pictes my\text{\^{e}}\text{te} haue noon}^3\) wyfes of Bretonuts, but \(\text{pey toke} hem wifes of\) Irisch Scottes, and byhete hem faire forto wonye wip hem, and graunted hem a lond by pe see side; \(\text{prene} pe see is narwe;}^4\) \(\text{pat lond now hatte Galewey.}\) \textit{Marianus.} Irisch Scottes londede at Argoy\(\text{l},^5\) \(\text{pat is Scottene Clyif,}\) for Scottes londede pere forto harmye\(^6\) \(\text{pe Britouns, oper for pat place is next to Irlond forto come in}^7\) to Britayne. \textit{Beda.} Annde so the Scottes after Bretonuts and Pictes made \(\text{pe pride} manere of}^8\) peple wonynge in Bretyne. \(\text{R.}^9\) \(\text{Banne after pat come;}\) Saxouns at \(\text{pe praynege of} \text{ pe Britouns, to helpe}^{10}\) a\(\text{\^{e}}\text{genst pe Scottes and pe Pictes; and pe Britouns were i-putte ou anoon to Wales, and Saxouns occupied pe lond litel and litel and efte more and more, and}^{11}\) estr\(\text{\^{e}}\) anon to \(\text{pe Scottische see;}\) and so Saxouns made \(\text{pe}

whiche, brekenge vp in to the londe from the weste in a grete space, departede in olde tymes the Britones from the Pictes: of whiche duke, Reuda by name, the Scottes were callede Dalreundini; for \textit{dal} in the langage of theymne signifiethe parte. \textit{Gaufridus,^{12}\text{distinctione prima.}} The Pictes, hauenge not licence to marwe with the do\(\text{\^{e}}\)hters of Britones, mariede with the Scottes of Yrlonde, movenge theym to inhabite that londe with theyme, [and] grauntede to theyme the londe in the costes nye to the see, where the see is not brode and large, callede now Galaway. \textit{Marianus.} The Scottes londed, f. 76 b. otherwise callede men of Yrlonde, at a place callede Argail, whiche sowndethe in Englische, the brynke of Scottes, in that the Scottes did londe per to do harme to the Britones, other elles for cause that place was most nye to men of Yrlonde to londe at. \textit{Beda.} And so the Scottes brou\(\text{\^{e}}\)hte to Englude the thirde peple, after Britones and Pictes. \(\text{R. And at the laste the Saxones desirede to inhabite that londe of the Britones ageyne the Scottes and Pictes, the Britones expulsede in to Wales, occupiede that londe to the

---

\(^1\) webe, \text{MS. Harel.} 2261.

\(^2\) Renda, a.

\(^3\) no, a.

\(^4\) narowe, a., Cx.

\(^5\) Argoyl, a., Cx.

\(^6\) doo harme to, Cx.

\(^7\) alone in Britayne, a.

\(^8\) of] om., a.

\(^9\) comebe, a.; come the, Cx.

\(^10\) helpe hem, Cx.

\(^11\) and] om., a. and Cx. (the latter has other omissions.)

\(^12\) streit, a.

The true reference is to Girald.

\textit{De Inst. Princ.} lib. 1. c. 6.
Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.\textsuperscript{1} Quia Angli seu Saxones a Germania originem duxerunt, hactenus a vicina gente Britonum corrupte Germani\textsuperscript{2} nuncupatur. \textit{Ranulphus}.\textsuperscript{3} Veruntamen circa annum Domini octingentesimum Egbertus rex Westsaxonum jussit omnes indigenas vocari Anglos. \textit{Alfridus}. Dani denum ducentis ferme annis, a tempore scilicet\textsuperscript{4} Egberti usque ad tempora Sancti Edwardi, terram conterentes, quintam in insula gentem fecerunt; sed et\textsuperscript{5} illi postmodum defeecerunt.\textsuperscript{6} Postremo Normanni sub duce Willelmo, subjugatis Anglis, terram usque hodie possidentes, sex-.


\textsuperscript{1} Reference omitted in D.  
\textsuperscript{2} Germani, Gale; Germani, D.  
\textsuperscript{3} Reference added from B, Gale.  
\textsuperscript{4} scilicet, om. C.D.  
\textsuperscript{5} et] om, C.D.  
\textsuperscript{6} evanuerunt, C.D.  
\textsuperscript{7} Flandreses, A.  
\textsuperscript{8} Henrici regisprimi, A.B.D., Gale.  
\textsuperscript{9} juxta] om, E.  
\textsuperscript{10} Sed . . . fecerunt] om. C. (not D.)  
\textsuperscript{11} idem Flandreses, add. C.D.  
\textsuperscript{12} Haverforth, A.  
\textsuperscript{13} Ranulphus om. C.D.  
\textsuperscript{14} Haque, C.D.  
\textsuperscript{15} modo] om. C.D.  
\textsuperscript{16} Danis Pictis hisque, B.  
\textsuperscript{17} Added from A., Gale.
for Saxons and Anglis come out of Germany, 3et som Bretouns pat wonep nygh clepeth hem shortly 3 Germans. R. Notheles aboute pe 3ere of oure Lord eyzte hondred, Egbertus, kyng of West Saxon, commandede and het clepe 4 alle manere men of pe londe 5 Englishe men. Alfridus. Panne after pat pe Danes pursued pe londe, aboute a two hundred 3ere, pat is to menyng from pe forceside Egbertes tyme anon to Seint Edwardes tyme, and made pe fift manere peple in pe ilond, bot pey failede afterward. At pe laste come Normans vnder duke William his tyme, and suduwede Englische men, and 3it holdep 7 pe londe; and pey made pe sixte peple in pe ilonde. But in pe firste kyng Henries 8 tymes come many Flemmynges and fenge a wonyng place for a tyme bysides Mailros in pe west side of Engeland, and made pe seuenpe peple in pe ilond. Nopeles by heste of pe same kyng, pey were i-houe pennes and i-putte 9 to Hauernforde his side, [in pe west side] 10 of Wales. [R.] 11 And so now in Brytayne, Danes and Pictes failep al out, and fyue naciouns wonenp perynne; pat beep Scottes in Albanya, pat is Scotland, Britouns in Cambria, pat is Wales, but pat Flemmynges wonenp ymne is in 12 West Wales, and

Scottisse costes and see, so they brouȝhte in to that londe the iiijthe nacion. Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono. And for cause Englische men other Saxones toke theire originalle of Germanye, 3itte thei be callede shortlyer Germaniid of the nye peple of Britones. R. And abowte the viijte yere of grace Egbertus kyng of West Saxones commandede alle the inhabitatores of that londe to be callede Englishe men. Alfridus. After the tymes of Egberte by ijte yere foloeunge allemoste, the Danes entrange in to that yle brouȝhte the vijthe peple in to hit vn to the tymes of Seinty Edwarde, but thei failede afterwaerde. After that the Normannes with William Conqueroure subduenge Englische men to theymne, hauenge that londe in possession vn to this tyme, brouȝhte the vijthe peple to that yle. But after that men of Flaudres toke to theyme an inhabitation at Mailros, the este plage of Englonde, with a grete multitude, in the tyme of kyng Henry the firste, and brouȝhte the vijthe peple in to Englonde as for a season and tyme. But after that thei were removede

1 of men, a., Cx.
2 nono, Cx.
3 So a. and Cx.; clepeth shortly be, MS.
4 badde men to calle, Cx.
5 So a.; londe of, MS.
6 his tyme] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.
7 hepe they, Cx.
8 Henry his tyme, a.
9 put thens and dryven, Cx.
10 Added from a. and Cx.
11 Reference added from Cx.
12 is in] that is, Cx.
bria, Flandrensibus in Westwallia, Normannis et Anglis
permixtim in tota insula. Cum igitur de subtractione
Danorum quoad modum et eventum apud historicos
nulla sit hesitatio, qualiter Picti defecerint modo sit
agendum. Giralbus, distinctione prima, capitulo
septuagesimo quinto. Occupata aliquando a Saxo-
nibus Britannia, stabilisque cum Pictis pace firmata,
Scoti, qui Pictis adjuncti supervenerant, videntes
Pictos quamquam pauciores, tamen armis et animi
præstantiores, ad solitas tanquam sibi innatas prodi-
tiones, quibus caeteris præminent gentibus, recurrerunt.
Convocatos namque tanquam ad convivium Pictorum
magnates, captata erapulæ opportunitate, extractione
clavorum qui tabulata tenebant, (in bancorum conca-
vitate sedebant,) mira decipula poplite tenus commu-
niter et improvise lapsos statim trucidarunt. Sicque
ex duobus populis gens bellicosior totaliter evanuit.

1 Slightly altered and transposed in C.D.
2 quoad . . . eventum] om. C.D.
3 defecerunt, B.
4 modo sit agendum] videndum est, C.D.
5 C.D. omits reference; cap. 17°, A., B., Gale. The true reference is
to c. 6, as before; C. and D. agree best with Giraldus.
6 aliquando] om. C.D.
7 insula, C.D.
8 omnino, B.; animo, A., Gale.
9 innatus sibi, B.
10 Slightly altered in C.D.; re-
currerunt before quibus in B.
11 Convocatosque, E.
12 itaque, C.D.
13 sedebant] sederunt, B.; quibus insidebant, C. (not D.)
14 similiter, C. (not D.) The sen-
tence is slightly varied in these MSS.
15 de, C.D.
Normans and Englishmen [ben] i-medled\(^1\) in alle pe ilond. For it is no doute in stories how and in what manere pe Danes were i-putte away and destroyed out of Bretayne; now it is [to]\(^2\) declarynge how pe Pictes were destroyed and failled. Giralddus, distinctione prima, capitulo 17. Bretayne was som-tyme occupied wip Saxons, and pees was i-made and i-stabled\(^3\) wip the Pictes; \(\text{\textsc{panne Scottes}}^4\) pat come wip the Pictes syhe\(^5\) pat pe Pictes were lasse \(\text{\textsc{pan pe Scottes}}^6\) and now were notablyshyd, alyue, Cx. and now And were \(\text{\textsc{Pictes}}\) ofte,\(\text{\textsc{anne nobler men}}\) as \(\text{\textsc{other tyme}}\) were \(\text{\textsc{tresoun u toll}}\) and \(\text{\textsc{of treasoun pat vsepp ofte, for in tresoun vpe passep}}^9\) ojer men, and beep tretours as hit were by kynde. For \(\text{\textsc{pey preyed to a feste al pe grete of pe Pictes, and wayted her tyme when pe Pictes were at ese and mery, and hadde wel i-droneke, and drewe yp nayles pat helde yp pe holow benches vnder pe Pictes, and pe Pictes sodenliche an vnware fel oner pe hames into a wonder puttalle.}^10\) \(\text{\textsc{panne pe Scottes fille on pe Pictes and slowh hem, and lefte noon onlyue;}}^11\) and so of pe tweye
to Hauerforde, at the weste parte of Wales, thro commaundemente of pe the same kynde. R. And so by succession of tymes, the Danes failenge in Englonde, and Pictes, now Albania is inhabit by Scottes, Wales by Britones, and men of Flauandres in Weste Wales, Normannes and Englishmen mixte in alle the yle of Briteyne. As in the sub-traiension of Danes as vn to the maner and chaunce per of chroniclers make noo mencioun, but hit schal be determiente consequently how the Pictes failede. Giralddus, distinctione prima. Briteye ne occupiade some tyme with the Saxones, and a stable fidelite made with the Pictes, the Scottes whiche were ioynede to the Pictes seenge the Pictes thauzhe fewe in novembre, neuertheles thei were myȝhty men of armes and bolde of herte, deside the capiteynes of the Pictes and mony other to the feste, whiche vsenge a cauntele made the seeetes in theire feste to be movable with pynnes of woode; and when the Pictes zafe attendaunce to surfette and ryette, the Scottes toke aweye the nailes other pynnes, and so the Pictes felle bakwarde, the legges of theyme beenge vpurwarde, in to holoo places vnder the seeetes, and so thei were alle sleyne. And so of ij, bolde peple, the more bolde

---

1\(_i\)-medled, a.; \(\text{\textsc{ben men medled}}, Cx.\)
2\(\text{\textsc{Added from a. and Cx.}}\)
3\(\text{\textsc{stablysshed}, Cx.}}\)
4\(\text{\textsc{the (sic) Scottes}, a., Cx.}}\)
5\(\text{\textsc{saye, a.: sawe, Cx., who varies the sentence.}}\)
6\(\text{\textsc{and] om., a.}}\)
7\(\text{\textsc{Cx. adds, hauyng therof enuye.}}\)
8\(\text{\textsc{naturel}, Cx.}}\)
9\(\text{\textsc{tresoun ... apassep, a.}}\)
10\(\text{\textsc{Sentence varied in Cx.}}\)
11\(\text{\textsc{only, a.; alyne, Cx.}}\)

---

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 76. a.
Altera vero gens Scotorum longe impar, ex tali proditione emolumentum quodammodo consecuta, totam terram illam, quam a nomine suo Scotiam vocaverunt, usque hodie possident. Quibus eo tempore, diebus videlicet Edgari regis, Kynadius Alpini filius praesidens Pictavius invasit, Pictos delevit, sexies Saxoniam debellavit, et terram omnem a mari Scotico usque ad flumen Twedae usurpavit.

CAP. LIX.

De incolarum linguis.

Ranulphus. Ut patet ad sensum, quot in hac insula sunt gentes, tot gentium sunt linguae; Scoti tamen et Wallani, uptote cum aliis nationibus impermixti, ad purum paene pristinum retinent idioma; nisi forsan Scoti ex convictu Pictorum, cum quibus olim confederati cohabitant, quippiam contraxerint

1 modis omnibus, add. C.D. 11 flumen Twedae] Mairros, quae est in ripa Twedae fluminis, C.D.
2 tali] om. C.D. 12 So Gale; moribus, E.
4 a mari usque ad mare, add. C.D. 14 Ut . . . sensum] om. C.D.
5 dixerunt, C.D. 15 in . . . insula] incolarum, B.
6 in hodie rum diem obtinuere, C.D. 16 So E., Gale; Wallici, B.
7 diebus . . . regis] om. C.D. 17 forte, B.
8 Linaldus, B.; Kinaldus, A. 18 a, C.D.
9 possidens, Gale, absurdly. 19 habitabant, B.
10 omnem] dudum Saxonibus subactam, quae est, C.D.
peple pe better werryour was\(^1\) hollyche destroyed. Bote pe opere, pat beep pe Scottes, pat beep traytours, wel\(^2\) vnliche to pe Pictes, took profi\(^3\)t by pat false tresoun; for pei took al pat lond, and holde\(\text{p}\) it \(\text{h}\)ider to, and clepe\(\text{p}\) hit Scotlond after here\(^3\) owne name. Pat tyme, pat was in kyng Edgar his tyme, Kynadyus Alpy\(\text{n}\)us his son\(\text{e}\)s was ledere of Scottes, and werred in Pieten londe,\(^4\) and destroyed pe Pictes; he werred sixe sipes in Saxon, and took al pat\(^5\) lond pat is bitwene Twede and pe Scottische see, wip wrong and wip strenge.

De incolarum linguis. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

As it is i-knowe houe manere peple beep in \(\text{p}\)s ilond, \(\text{p}\)ere beep also so many dyuersit\(\text{es}\)\(^6\) longages and tonges; nopeles Walsche men and Scottes, pat beep nou\(\text{t}\) i-medled\(\text{d}\)\(^7\) wip oper nacion\(\text{us}\), holde\(\text{p}\) wel ny\(\text{h}\)\(^8\) hir firste longage and speche; but \(\text{z}\)if the\(^9\) Scottes pat were somtyme confederat and wonede wip peple was utterly destroyede. That other peple of Scottes haueenge a grete avayle by the deTHE. Theyme, haue that londe in possession whom thei calle Scotlande vn to this tyme. And also Kinadius, the son of Alpinus, entrede in to the centre of the Pictes in the tyme of kyng Edgar, and destroyede theyme, [and] fi\(\text{z}\)htenge soore \(\text{v}\)j. tymes ageyne the Saxones, presnmede alle the grownde from the Scottisse vn to the water of Twide departenge now Englonde from Scottelonde.

Of the langage of the inhabitatores of Englond. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

Hrr may be schewede clerely to the wytte that there were so mony diuersites of langages in that londe as were diuersites of naciones. But Scottes and men of Wales kepe theire propre langage, as men impermixte with other nacion\(\text{es}\); but peraunturte Scottes haue taken somme parte

---

1. *worryours were*, Cx.
2. *So Cx.; were wel, MS.*
3. *So a. B.; theyr, Cx.; his, MS.*
4. *Pictelond, a., Cx.*
5. *be, a., Cx.*
7. *melled beb, a.*
8. *kepe neygh yet, Cx.*
9. *yet tho, Cx.*

There is much confusion of numbers generally, and of the pronouns especially, in the MSS. of Trevisa's text.
in sermone.\textsuperscript{1} Flandrenses vero, qui occidua Walliae incolunt, dimissa jam barbarie,\textsuperscript{2} Saxonice satis proloquuntur. Angli quoque, quamquam ab initio tripartitam sortirentur linguam, austrinam scilicet, mediterraneam, et borealem, veluti ex tribus Germaniae populis procedentes, ex commixtione tamen primo cum Danis, deinde cum Normannis,\textsuperscript{3} corrupta in multis patria\textsuperscript{4} lingua peregrinos jam captant boatus\textsuperscript{5} et garritus. Hae quidem nativae linguae corruptio provenit hodie multum\textsuperscript{6} ex duobus; quod videlicet pueri in scholis contra morem cæterarum nationum a primo\textsuperscript{7} Normannorum adventu, derelicto proprio vulgari, construere Gallice compelluntur;\textsuperscript{8} item quod filii nobilium ab ipsis cunabularum crepundis ad Gallicum idioma\textsuperscript{9} informantur. Quibus\textsuperscript{10} profecto\textsuperscript{11}

\begin{flushleft}
\textsuperscript{1} \textit{in sermone} in verbo, B., apparently.
\textsuperscript{2} \textit{barbare, B.; barbaria, E.}, Gale.
\textsuperscript{3} \textit{quorum juga pertulerunt}, add. C.D.
\textsuperscript{4} \textit{proprincipia} Gale.
\textsuperscript{5} \textit{balatus, C.D.}
\textsuperscript{6} \textit{potissime, C.D.}
\textsuperscript{7} \textit{post, B.}
\textsuperscript{8} \textit{compellantur, B.}
\textsuperscript{9} \textit{idioma} om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{10} \textit{Quos, C.D.}
\textsuperscript{11} \textit{agrestes et}, add. C.D.
\end{flushleft}
pe Pictes drawe somewhat after hir speche; but pe Flemmynges
pat wonen in pe weste side of Wales haue i-left her straunge
speche and spekep Saxonliche i-now. Also Englishe men, pey
[pey] 2 hadde from the bygynnynge pe manere speche, nor-
perne, 3 sowperne, and middel speche in pe myddel of pe lond,
as pey come of pe manere peple of Germania, nopeles by
comyxtioun and mellynge firste wip Danes and afterward wip
Normans, in meny4 pe contray longage is apayred, and som vse-
straunge 5 wlafferynge, 6 chiterynyge, hurrynge, and garrynge
grisbayting.7 This aparrynge of pe burpe of pe8 tunge is
bycause of tweie pinges; con is for children in scole a\zest pe
vsage and manere of alle opere naciouns bep compelled for to
leuc hire owne langage, and for to construe hir lessouns and
derne pinges in Frenshe, and so pey hauep sevp9 pe Normans
come first in to Engeland.10 Also gentil men children bep
i-taujt to11 speke Frenshe from pe tyme pat pey beep i-rokked
in here cradel, and kunne speke and playe wip a childes
broche; and vplondisshe men wil likne hym self to gentil men,
and fondep wip greet besynesse for to speke Frense, for to be
i-tolde of.12

in theire communicacion of the langage of Pictes, with whom
thei dwelled somme tyme, and were confederate with theyme.
Men of Flandres that inhabithe the weste partes of Wales
levenge the speche of barbre speke after the Saxones.
And thau\the men of Englonde hade in the begynnenge a
langage tripartite, as of the sowthe parte of Englonde, of the
myddelle parte of Englonde, and of the northe parte of
Englonde, procedenge as of thre peple of Germanye, borowe
mocheî in their speche now, as of13 throu the commixtion
with the Danes and after that with the Normannes. The
corrupcion of that native langage is causede moche of ij.
thynge, that is to say, childer sette to schole after the
commenge of Normannes in to Englonde were compellede
to constru in Frenshe ageyne the consuetude of opere
naciones. In so moche that the childer of nowble men,
after that thei were taken from the cradelle, were sette
to lerne the speche of Frenche men. Wherefore churles
seence that, willenge to be like to theyme, laborede to speke
Frenche with alle theire my\hte. Where hit is to be hade

1 spoken lyke to Saxons, Cx.
2 [pey] added from a. and Cx.
3 sow\born, nor\born, a.
4 many thynge, Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; strong, MS.
6 wlaffynge, Cx.
7 grys\tynge, a., Cx.
8 of [pey] om. a.; aparrynge of
the langage, Cx.
9 sebbe be, a.
10 Sentence much varied in Cx
11 forte, a.
12 Sentence abbreviated and much
varied in Cx.
13 So Harl. MS., but perhaps as of
should be cancelled.
rurales homines assimilari volentes,\textsuperscript{1} ut per hoc spectabiliares videantur, francigenare\textsuperscript{2} satagunt\textsuperscript{3} omni nisu.\textsuperscript{4}

Ubi nempe\textsuperscript{5} mirandum videtur,\textsuperscript{6} quomodo\textsuperscript{7} nativa et\textsuperscript{8} propria Anglorum lingua,\textsuperscript{9} in unica insula coartata, pronunciacione ipsa\textsuperscript{10} sit tam diversa; cum tamen Normannica lingua,\textsuperscript{11} quae adventitia est, univoca maneat\textsuperscript{12} penes\textsuperscript{13} cunctos. De predicta quoque lingua Saxonica tripartita, quae in paucis adhuc agrestibus\textsuperscript{14} vix remansit, orientales cum occiduis\textsuperscript{15} tanquam sub eodem ceili climate lineati\textsuperscript{16} plus consonant in sermone quam boreales cum austrinis. Inde est quod Mercii sive Mediterranei Angli, tanquam participantes natu-
deth and is syppe sundel i-chauanged; for Iohn Cornwaile, a maister of grammer, chaunged pe lore in grammer scale and construccyn of Fresnche in to Englische; and Richard Pen-

cruche lerned pe manere techynge of hym and of opere men of Penrich; so pat now, pe zere of oure Lorde a powsand pre hundred and foure score and fyue, and of pe seconde kyng Richard after pe conquest nyne, in alle pe gramere scoles of Engelond, children lernep Fresnche and construep and lernep an Englische, and hauerp erby anauntaue in oon side and disanauntaue in anoer side; here anauntaue is, pat pey lernep her gramer in lasse tyme pan children were i-wo-

ted to doo; disanauntaue is pat now children of gramer scale connep na more Fresnche pan can hir lift heele, and pat is harme for hem and pey schulle passe pe see and tranaille in straungue landes and in many ope places. Also gentil men hauelp now moche i-left for to teche here children Fresnche. R. Hit semep a greet wonder how Englische, [pat is pe burpe touge of Englisshe] men and her owne langage and tonge, is so dyuere of sown in pis oon ilond, and pe langage of Normandie is comlynge of anoer londe, and hath oon manere sowne among alle men pat spekep hit ariz in Engelond.

Trevisa. Neuerpelles þere is as many dyuers manere Fresnche in þe reem of Francce as is dyuers manere Englisshe in þe reem of Engelond. R. Also of þe forsaiyte Saxon tonge þat is i-deled apre, and is abide searsliche wip fewe vplondishe

in meruayle that the propur langage of Englisshe men schold be made so diuerse in oon lytelle yle in pronuncia-
cion, sythe the langage of Normannes is oon and vniuocate allemoste amonge theyme alle. But as of the tripartite

langage of Saxones, whiche remaynethe now but amonge fewe men, the weste men of Englonde sownde and acorde more with the men of the este of that londe as vnder the same clyme of heuyn, then the men of the northe with men of the sowthe. Wherefore hit is that Englisshe men of þe Marches of the mydelle partes of Englonde, takenge as by
ram¹ extremorum, collaterales linguas² arcticam et antarcticam melius intelligent quam adinveceam se intelligunt³ jam⁴ extremini. ⁵Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Tota⁶ lingua Northimbrorum,⁷ maxime⁸ in Eboraco, ita stridet incondita,⁹ quod nos australes eam vix intelligere possumus; quod puto propter viciniam¹⁰ barbarorum contigisse, et etiam proper jugem remotionem regum¹¹ Anglorum¹² ab illis partibus, qui magis ad austrum diversati,¹³¹⁴ si quando boreales partes adeunt,¹⁵ non nisi magno auxiliatorum manu pergunt.¹⁶ Ranulphus.¹⁷ Frequentioris autem moræ in austrinis partibus¹⁸ quam in borealisibus causa potest esse gleba feracior,¹⁹ plebs numerosior, urbes²⁰ insigniores, portus accommodatores.

¹ naturam] om. E.
² [linguas] om. C. (not D.)
³ So D.; intelligent, A.E., which, as well as Gale, have intelligant above.
⁴ num, B.
⁵ Quod testatur, add. C.D.
⁶ inquit, add. C.D.
⁷ Northambrorum, B.; Northumbrie, D.
⁸ et maxime, C.D.
⁹ incognita, B.
¹⁰ vicintatem, C. (not D.); vicinam, A.
¹¹ quondam, add. C.D.
¹² modo Normannorum, add. C.D.
¹³ sunt versati, B.; conversati, C. (not D.)
¹⁴ domestico militum contenti numero, add. C.D.
¹⁵ adierunt, D.
¹⁶ manu pergunt[] comitatu va-
¹⁷ Ranulphus] om. A.B.C. The latter part is as follows in C.D.:
¹⁸ in austrinis partibus causa
¹⁹ solet esse quod ad austrum gleba
²⁰ sit feracior, plebs numerosior, aer
²¹ temperator, urbes insigniores, et
²² plures portus ad necessaria ali-
²³ unde conveniendo accommodatores,
²⁴ utensilia denique, suppellectilia,
²⁵ et quiquid humano usu congruit
²⁶ praestantius ministrantur.”
²⁷ partibus austrinis, B.
²⁸ ferocior, A.
²⁹ et urbes, A.
men is greet wonder; for men of þe est wip men of þe west,¹
as it were vnadir þe same partie of heuene, acordep more
in sownynge of speche þan men of þe norþ wip men of þe
soup; þerfore it is pat Merci, þat beþep men of myddel Engle-
lond, as it were partenars of þe endes, vnderstondeþ bettre þe
side langages, norþerne and souþerne, þan norþerne and souþ-
erne vnderstondeþ eiper oper.² Willelmus de Pontificibus,
libro tertio. Al þe longage of þe Norþumbres, and specialliche
at York, is so scharp, slitting, and frotynge and vnschape, þat
we souþerne men may þat longage vnnenþe vnderstonde. I
trowe þat þat is bycause þat þey beþep nyh to straunge men
and nacionns³ þat spekeþ strongliche,⁴ and also bycause þat
þe kynges of Engeland woneþ alwey þer from þat cuntrey; for
þey beþep more i-torned to þe soup contray, and þif þey⁵ goþ
to þe norþ contray þey goþ wip greet [help]⁶ and strengþe.
þe cause why þey beþep more in þe soup contray þan in þe
norþ, [is] for þit⁷ may be better corne londe, more peple,
more noble citees, and more profitable hauenes.

participacion the nature of bothe extremities, vnderstonde MS. HARL.
the langages collateralle arthike and anchartike better then
the extremites vnderstonde theyme selfte to geder. Willel-
mus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Alle þe langage of men
of Northumbrelonde, and specially in Yorke, sowndethe so
that men of the sowthe cuntre may vnethe vnderstonde
the langage of theyme, whiche thynge may be causede for
the nye langage of men of barbre to theyme, and also
for the grete distance of kynges of Englonde from hyt,
whiche vse moste the sowthe partes of that londe, returnenge
not in to the costes of the northe but with a grete multi-
tude. Also an other cause may be assignede, for the sowthe
partes be more habundante in fertilithe then the northe
partes, moo peple in nowmbre, hauenge also more plesaunte
portes.

¹ west is, MS. (not a.). ² Sentence slightly varied in Cx. ³ aliens, a. b. ⁴ straungeliche, b. and Cx.; which
seems right, but the extract from
William is so altered, that Caxton’s
critical authority is here very slight. ⁵ he, a. b. ⁶ Added from a.
⁷ for hit] om. a. b.; is by cause
that ther is, Cx.
Cap. LX.

De incolarum moribus.¹

Giraldus. Significatis superius² utunque Wallanorum et Scotorum moribus, jam de ritibus permixti Anglorum populi erit perorandum. Giraldus in Hibernario. Et quidem gens illa Flandrensis³ ad occidentem Walliae, quasi Anglica jam convicta⁴ est effecta; fortis⁵ est et robusta, bellico conflictu⁶ Cambrensis infestissima, lanificiis et⁷ mercionius usitatissima,⁸ ad subeundum terrae marisque pericula pro lucro captando promptissima, viciissim pro loco et tempore nunc ad arma nunc ad aratram accommoda. De qua⁹ gente mirandum¹⁰ videtur, quod in armis arietum dextris carne nudatis non assis sed elixis¹¹ futura prospiciunt,¹² præterita, et¹³ presentia; sed¹⁴ loco absentia, quasi quodam spiritu fatidico¹⁵ et arte miranda, pacis et guerræ signa, regni statum, cædes¹⁶ et adulteria, rimularum¹⁷ et notularum indiciis certissime¹⁸ declarat.¹⁹ Ranulphus. Reliqua vero gens Anglorum Loergiam

¹ De gentis hujus moribus, A. ; De gestis et moribus, C. ; De gentis hujus terræ moribus, D. ; B. omits title.
² Digestis in superioribus, C.D.
³ Flandrensis] added in margin in C. in another ink; omitted in D.
⁴ conventu, B.
⁵ quasi . . . fortis] apud Roos et Haverford dudum transmissa origine Flandrensis, convictu jam Anglica est effecta gens fortis, &c., C.D.
⁶ beli conflictu assiduo, C.D.
⁷ et] om. A.E.
⁸ lanificiis . . usitatissima] om. C.
⁹ De qua] Hac autem de, C.D.
¹⁰ mirandum] notabilemihi, C.D.
¹¹ elixis, A. ; elixis, B. ; tam, ins. C.D.
¹² quan, ins. C.D. ; præsentia et præterita, A.B.
¹³ etiam, ins. C.
¹⁴ sed] om. A.
¹⁵ prophetico, C. ; raticido, MSS.
¹⁶ and Gale.
¹⁷ sedes, A.B.
¹⁸ rimularum] rumularum (rimarum, D.) quarandam, C.D.
²⁰ declarat, C. (not D.)
De gentibus hujus moribus. Capitolum sexagesimum.

Giraldus in Itinerario. For pe maneres and pe doyngge of Walsche men and of Scottes beeph to fore honde somdel declared, now of pe maneres and of pe doynges of pe medled 1 peple of Engelond nedep fortò telle. But pe Flemynge pes beeph in pe westside of Wales beeph now by torned as pough pey were Englishe by cause of companye wip Englishe men, and pey beeph stalworpe 2 and stronge to fihte, and beeph pe moste enemys pes Walsche men hap, 3 and vsep marchaundysye and clopynge, and beeph ful redy to putte hem self to auentures and to peril in pe see and in pe 4 lond, by cause 5 of greet wynnynge, and beeph redy for to gos somtyme to pe plow; 2 and somtyme to dedes of armes whan tyme and place axepe. Hit semep of pis 6 men a grete wonder 7 pat in a boon of a wethres riȝt schulдрre, whan pe fleche is aweye i-sode 8 and nouȝt i-roste, pey knowepe what hap be do, is i-do, and schal be doo, and as hit were by a spirit of prophecie and a wonderful craft pey tellep what me dop in fer contrayes, tokens of pees and of werre, pe staat of pe reene, 9 slynyge of men, and sponsebreche; soche pey declarep certeynylich by schewynge of tokens and of synnes 10 pat beeph in suche a schulder boon. R. But pe Englishe men pat wonep in Engelond, pat beeph i-

Of the maneres of the peple of hit.

Capitolum sexagesimum.

A declaracion hadde in processe precedenge as of pe maneres of men of Wales and of Scottes, we schalle determinate of the rites of the permixte peple of Englonde. Giraldus in Itinerario. And that peple of Flaundres f. 77. a. whiche inhabyte the weste partes of Wales is made now in disposicion like to the peple of Englonde, beenge myȝhty and stronge in conflictes and in batelle, contrarious to Walsche men, vsenge moche wolle and marchaundise, prompte to take on theim perelle of the see either of the londe for lucre, nowc applienge theyme to labour, as for the place and tyme, and soone to batelle. R. That other peple of Englishe men inhabitenge Loegria, as of yles permixte,
inhabitans, utpote insulana, permixta, et a primitivis scatebris longius derivata, proprio motu etiam sine alieno hortatu facile flectitur ad opposita; adeo quoque quietis impatiens, curae aemula, otium nauseaet; (Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio;) ut cum hostes externos funditus depresserit, ipsa mutuo se conterat, et more vacui stomachi agat in seipsam. Ranulphus. Gens tamen australis quietior et mitior, borealis vero mobilior et ferocior, gens media participii vicem tenet. Item gens Anglica praeceteris gulae dedita, in victu et vestitu multum sumptuosa; quod quidem vitium a diebus Hardekanuti regis Danici, qui bina bis fercula etiam in coenis jussaret apponi, creditur contraxisse. Gens haeque et pede expedita; ad omne genus armorum accommoda; in bellicos congressibus ubi fraud abfuerit,
medled\textsuperscript{1} in \textit{pe ilond}, \textit{pat} \textsuperscript{[bep]}\textsuperscript{2} fer \textit{i-spronge from \textit{pe welles}}\textsuperscript{3} \textit{pat ey} spronge of first, \textit{wel} \textit{fi\textsuperscript{4}ztlie} \textit{wip} \textit{oute entisyngue of eny oper men}, \textit{by here owne assent tornen}\textsuperscript{4} to contrary dedes. And so\textsuperscript{5} \textit{vnesy}, also ful \textit{vpacient of pees}, \textit{enemy of besynesse}, and \textit{wlatful of}\textsuperscript{6} \textit{slepe}, \textit{(Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio,) pat whan ey} haue\textsuperscript{7} destroyed here \textit{enemyes at to pe grounde, }\textit{panne ey} \textit{fi\textsuperscript{4}tep wip} \textit{hem self, and sleep} \textit{euerciche oper, as a voyde stomak and a clene worche\textsuperscript{8} in hit self}. \textit{[R.]}\textsuperscript{9} \textit{Nopeles men of pe sou\textsuperscript{9} beep esier and more mylde ; and men of pe north be\textsuperscript{10} more vnstable, more cruel, and more \textit{vnesy} ; \textit{pe myddel men beep somdele partyners wip bope} : \textit{also ey} wone\textsuperscript{11} \textit{hem to glotonye more pan oper men, and beep} \textit{more costlewe in mete and in drynke}\textsuperscript{12} and in clojrynge. \textit{Me trowep\textsuperscript{12}} \textit{pat ey} took \textit{pat vyce}\textsuperscript{13} of kyng Hardeknute \textit{pat was a Dane, for he sette twyes double messe and also at soper.} \textit{These men been speedful bope on hors and on foote, able and redy to alle manere dedes of armes, and beep i-woned \textsuperscript{14} to haue the victorie and pe maistrie in euercih}

\textit{be li\textsuperscript{15}ghtely} declynedeth thro theire awne mocion \textit{vn to thynesges MS. HARL. 2261.}}

\textit{medled\textsuperscript{1} or medled is generally melted in} \textit{a.}

\textit{Added from} \textit{a.}

\textit{places, Cx., who has a few other slight variations.}

\textit{torne, a.}

\textit{So a. and Cx.; Also, MS.}

\textit{on, a. ; ful of, Cx.}

\textit{Reference added from Cx.}

\textit{bep, a.}

\textit{ese, Cx. ; who has also various slight deviations throughout the extract.}

\textit{and in drynk} om. \textit{a. and Cx.}

\textit{Me supposeth, Cx.}

\textit{vse, MS. (not a. or Cx.)}

\textit{souer, a. ; at dryner and at soper also, Cx.} \textit{(but the improvement seems to be his own. See the text.)}

\textit{wonte, Cx.}

\textit{So Harl. MS., but the sentence seems a little corrupt.}

\textit{So Harl. MS.}
solet lauream reportare. Gens ista curiosa satis, ut noscat et narret mirabilia quae viderit; regiones collustrat; in solo proprio vix locupletior, in longinquis magis Felix. Nova nanciscì melius novit, quam hæreditaria conservare. Hinc est quod late per orbem dispersit, putans sibi patriam omne solum. Gens denique ad omnem idonea industryam; sed ante factum importuna et preceps, post factum sagacior, facile deserit quod incepit. Pol., libro sexto. Proinde est quod Eugenius Papa dixit, gentem Anglicam ad quaecunque vellet fore idoneam, et creteris gentibus preferendam, nisi levitas animi impediret. Et sicut Hannibal negabat posse vinci Romanos nisi in patria propria, ita et gens Anglica dum peregrinatur invincibilis est, in sedibus propriis facilius expugnatur. Ranulphus. Gens ista que sua sunt fastidiens vituperat propria, commendat aliena; de status sui

quem vel no treson is walkynge; and [bep] curious, and kunneth wel i-now telle dedes and wondres pat pei haueth i-seic. Also pey goop in dyuers londes, vnepe beep eny men riche in her owne londe opere more gracies in fer and in straunge londe. Pey konne betre wynne and gete newe pean kep in her owne heritage; perfore it is pat pey beep i-spred so wyde and vnepe pat euerich opere londe is her owne heritage. Pe men beep able to al manere sleipe and withe, but to fore pe dede bloudrynge and hasty, and more wys after pe dede, and leueth othe litliche what pey haueth bygonne. Polycraticon, libro sexto. Perfore Eugenius pe pope seide pat Englishe men were able to do what euere pey wolde, and to be sette and putte to fore alle opere, nere pat lißt wip lettep. And as Hannibal saide pat pe Romayns myßte nonzët be overcome but in hir owne cuntray; so Englishe men mowe not be overcome in straunge londes, but in hir own cuntray pey beep lißtliche overcome. R. Peze men despisep hir owne, and preisep oþer menis, and vnepe beep upside wip hir owne estate; what byfallep and senepe oþer men, pey wollep glad-victory in batelles, if treason regine not amonghe thyme. That peple is curious ynowe that hit may knowe, and telle merueells thynge goenge to oþer regiones, vnethe ryche and fortunate in theire awne londe, but fortunate specially in ferre costes. For hit can purchase better then kepe the propur inheritance of thyme, wherefore the peple of that londe is dispersede a brede thro alle the worlde, trawenge alle the worlde to be a cuntre to thyme; a peple apte moche to wylyenes and decepcion, but importune a fore the dede, levenge litliche a thynge y-begunne. Polycronicon, libro viço. Wherefore hit is that Eugenius the pope seide the peple of Englonde apte to every thynge, and to be preferrde a fore peple of other naciones but for inconstance of thyme; and like as Hannibal denyede the Romanes to be overcome but in theire propre cuntre, sco in lyke wise the f. 77. b. peple of Englonde is invincible in other cuntres, and some denieth in theire awne cuntre. R. The peple of Englonde is fulle curious to knowe straung thynge by experience, depraunge theire awne thynge [thel] commendeth other straunge.
gradu¹ vix unquam contenta, quod alteri congruit libenter in se transfigurat; unde fit ut vernaculus quod armigeri est,² armiger quod militis, miles quod ducis, dux quod regis est in se repræsentat.³ Immo nonnulli⁴ omne genus circueunties in nullo⁵ genere sunt, omnem ordinem attemptantes⁶ nullius ordinis sunt.⁷ Nam in gestu⁸ sunt histriones, in affatu Cicerones,⁹ in convictu nebulones, in quæstu caupones, in apparatu sunt tirones, in lucris Argi, in laboribus Tantali, in curis

¹ de . . . gradu] om. B.
² est] om. A.
³ representent, B.
⁴ Unde nonnulli, A.; Gale, A., and E. omit omne.
⁵ novo, Gale, badly.
⁶ acceptantes, Gale, badly.
⁷ omnem . . . sunt] added in margin of C.—(D. has them in text).
⁸ gestis, B.
⁹ Cicerones or Citherones, MSS.: Citherones, Gale (for Citherones?) which however brings out little or no sense.
lyche take to hem self; perfōre hit is pat a ȝeman\(^1\) arnnaie hym as a squyer, a squyer as a knyȝt, a knyȝt as a duke [and]\(^2\) a duke as a kyng. \( \not{s}i\) som goop a boute to alle manere staate and beēp in noon astaat,\(^3\) for ṭey ṭat wole take euerieche degree beēp of non degre, for ṭey beēp menstralles and heraudes,\(^5\) in talkynge grete spekeres, in etynge and in drynkynge glotouns, in gaderynge of catel hoksters\(^6\) and tāuerners, in aray tormentoure, in wynnynges Argi, in traualie Tantaly, in takynge hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally, in chirches mameettes, in courtes ponder, onlie in privelenge of clergie and in prouendres\(^7\) ṭey knowleche p hem siſt clerkes. \textit{Trevisa.} In wynnynges ṭey beēp Argy, in traualie Tantaly, in takynge hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally; perfōre take ṭat ṭhe Argus in an herde, Argus a schippē, a schipman, and a chapman. But heri it is more to purpos ṭat poetes fenynp oon ṭat was somtyyme al ful of eyȝe\(^8\) en in euerieche side\(^9\) and heet Argus, so ṭat this Argus myȝte see\(^10\) to fore and byhynde, vpywarde and dounward, and al aboute in euerieche side, and by a manere likenesse of ṭis Argus, ṭat ṭhe ṭis is war and wys, and kan see and be war in euerieche side is i-cleped Argus, and ful of eyȝe as Argus was. \( \overline{\text{Pan forto speke to mcnuy such he monte be i-cleped Argi in pe plural nombre.}} \) \( \overline{\text{Pan in ṭat cronyke he seip ṭat ṭey beēp Argy in wynnynges, hit is to mene ṭat ṭey beēp ware and seep aboute in evry side where wynnynges may arise.}} \) \( \overline{\text{Ṭat oper word is Tantaly; perfōre take ṭhe ṭat ṭe poete fenynp ṭat Tantalus was a man and slowh\(^{11}\) his owne sunne, perfōre ṭe was i-dampned to perpetuall penance, as ṭe poete fenynp ṭat Tantalus stondep\(^{12}\) alway in a water wpanon to pe\(^{13}\) ouer}} \)

\( \text{\textit{vnnethe other neuer contente of the state of theire degr}e, MS. Harl. 2261.} \)

---

1. ȝymman, a.
2. Added from a.
3. no stat, a.
4. beryng outward, Cx.
5. herowides, Cx.
6. hacksters, Cx.
7. prebendis, Cx.
8. Added from a.
9. So a; a side, MS.
10. So Cx.; i-see, MS.
11. slow, a.
12. stondes, a.
P0LYCHR0N1C0N KANULPHI H1GDEN

Dædali, in cubilibus Sardanapali, in templis simulacra, in curiis tonitrua, solis\(^1\) privilegiis et prebendis clericos se fatentur. Sed et\(^2\) in cunctis passim Angligenis\(^3\) tanta vestium varietas et apparatus\(^4\) multiformitas inolevit, ut neutri jam generis quilibet præne censeatur.\(^5\)

De qua re prophetavit quidam sanctus anachorita temporibus\(^6\) regis Egelfredi\(^7\) in hunc modum. Henricus, libro sexto.\(^8\) Angli quia proditioni, ebrietati, et negligentiae domus Dei dediti sunt, primo per Danos, deinde\(^9\) per Normannos, tertio per Scotos, quos vilis-

---

\(^1\) solis] om. Gale.
\(^2\) etiam, C.D.
\(^3\) Angligenis] om. Gale.
\(^4\) multiplicitas ac, ins. B.
\(^5\) censeat, E.
\(^6\) tempore, C.
\(^7\) Egeldredi, B.; Egelredi, D., Gale.
\(^8\) Added in margin of C.
\(^9\) secundo, C.D.
brede of pe neper lippe, and hap all way cuene at his moup ripe apples and noble fruyt, ne water come vp ymne his moup, he is so i-holde vp; and so he stondep in pat array bytwene mete and drynke, and may nope ete ne drynke, and is an hongred and apirst pat woos hym on lyue. By a manere likeness of pis Tantalus pey pat doop riȝt nouȝt, pere moche ping is to duo in eueri side, beep i-cleped Tantaly. Hit semep pat pis sawe is to mene, in traaille pey beep Tantaly, for pey doop riȝt nouȝt ferveto. Pe pridd word is Dedaly; take hede pat Dedalus was a wel sligh man, and by liknes of hym men pat beep sliȝe beep i-cleped Dedaly in pe plurel noumbre, so it is to mene as hit semep in pis sawe, in takyne hede and in cry ye beep Dedaly, pat is fel and sly. The ferpe word is [Sardanapalli; perfore take hede pat]. Sardanapallus was a kyng, rex Assyriorum, and was ful vnchast, and by a manere liknes of hym pey pat beep sliȝe vnchast beep i-cleped Sardanapally. R. But among alle Englische i-medled to giders is so grete chaungynge and diuersite of array [and so many manere and dyuerse shappes, that wel nyghe is there ony man knowne by his clothynge and his arraye] of what degre he is. Derof prophecie an holy anker to kyng Egilred his tyne in pis manere. Henricus, libro sexto. Englisshe men for pey wonp hem to dronkelewnese, to tresoun, and to rechelesnesse of Goddes hous, first by Danes and panne by Normans, and at pe pridd tyne by Scottes, pat pey holdep most wrecches and lest word of alle, pey schullep be

laboure, and as Dedalus in cure, lyke to Sardanapallus in beddes, similacres in temples, thundres in courtes, knowleggenge theym to be clerekes thro oonlye privileges and benefices other prebenbes. But now in these daies suche diuersites of vesture and apparell be vsede alle moste amonge alle men of Englonde, that thei seme to be as of noo gendre or kynde; of whom an holy herenite did prophecie in the tyne of kuye Egilredus in thys maner. Henricus, libro sexto. For cause that Englisshe men be þiffen to treason, dronkenesse, and to the negligence of pe howse of God, thei schulle be punyshede sore, firste by Danes, in the secunde tyne by Normannes, in the thriddel tyne by the Scottes, whom thei acomepte as a peple moste
simos reputant, erunt conterendi; adeoque tunc varium erit sæculum, ut varietas mentium multimoda vestium variatione designetur. Explicit Liber Primus.

Liber Secundus.

Prologus Libri Secundi.

Cap. I.

Ordo narrationis historicae hoc expostulat, ut post descripta mundi loca etiam orbis gesta describantur. Sed si unumquodque propter quid et illud magis, cum propter minorem mundum factus sit major, juxta illud, "Major" inquit "serviet minori," non ab re erit, descripto in præcedentibus majori mundo, ipsum quoque minorem mundum in principio actuum suorum parumper describere; ut qualis quantusve sit agnos-

\[1 \text{ adeo, B.} \text{; adeo quia, Gale.} \]
\[2 \text{ varietate, C. (not D.)} \]
\[3 \text{ designabitur, D. (on an erasure).} \]
\[4 \text{ orbis, C.D.} \]
\[5 \text{ inquit Scriptura, B.} \]
\[6 \text{ mundo]} \text{ om. C.D.} \]
\[7 \text{ mundum]} \text{ om. C.D.} \]
ouercome; pan pe worlde schal be so vnstable and so dyuers Trevisa, and variable pat pe vnstablenesse of pouȝtes schal [be] by-
tokened by many manere dyuersite of clopinge. Explicit
Liber Primus.

Incipit Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.

After pat places and contrees beep [rekened and] 2 dis-
cryued of pe worlde wyde, pe ordre of pe tale of pe story
axep pat berynge and dedes of pe worlde be also discreued.
But 3if3 every ping is for somewhat and pat is more, (Trevisa, Here is 4 auctoric of philosophire, and 5 is to mene pat al ping
pat is resonabliche 6 and kyndeliche i-ordeyned for anoper ping
as a mene ferto come perto [and ferto] 7 save it, is i-or-
deyned for bettre ping and more noble pan is pat ping pat
is i-ordeyned 8 perfere; ensample, 9 erynge and sowyngge and
dongyngge of lond is ordeyned for to have good corne, [and
good corne] 10 is better pan al pe opere deel; also medecyne is
i-ordeyned for hele, and hele is better pan pe medecyne; also

vile, in so moche that the worlde schalle be then so vari-
able, that the diuersite of myndes schalle be designate
in the mony folde dyuersite of vesture and of apparelle. Ex-
plicit Liber Primus.

Incipit Liber Secundus.

Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.

The ordre of the narracion of stories requirethe that
the gestes of the worlde scholde be describide also after
the places of the worlde schewede and expressede; then,
sythe the gretter worlde was made for the lesse worlde, as
hit is seide, "The gretter worlde schall serve the lesse,"
then the descriptacion in the precedencon processe of the
grete worlde schalle not be with owte a cause and utile.
Wyllenge now to describe the lesse worlde in the begyn-
nenge of his actes, that the qualite or quantite of hit may

---

1 Added from a.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 [if] om. Cx.; badly, not per-
cieving the extract from Trevisa to
be parenthetical.
4 pis, a., Cx.
5 and] om. Cx.
6 resonable, Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 so ordeyned, a.; soordeynng, Cx.
9 ensample] om. Cx.
10 Added from a. and Cx.
catur qui tam pusillus in tam magno tam magnifica operatur. Et quidem cunctorum entium opifex, apud quem ideales rerum rationes sunt reconditae,¹ post peractam majoris mundi machinam minorem mundum condidit, quem licet majori mundo prætulerit,² in eo tamen majoris mundi similitudinem impressit.³ In tribus namque assimulantur mundus et homo,⁴ in dimensione diametrali, in dispositione naturali, in operatione virtuali. Et primo quidem quamvis⁵ humani corporis longitudo quae est a planta pedis usque ad verticem capitis⁶ sexies sit major ejus latitudine quae est a crate lateris ad cratem, et etiam⁷ decies major ejus altitudine quae est a dorso usque ad ventrem: veruntamen⁸ secundum Plinium, libro septimo, capitulo octavodecimo, quanta est distantia inter cenit¹¹ capitis

mete and drynke and opere pinges beep i-ordeyned for pe lyf, and pe lyf is better and more noble pan mete and drynke and alle opere pinges pat beep so i-ordeyned for pe lyf.)

=janne, sepphe pat pe more worlde is i-made for pe lasse, as holy writte seip, "pe more schal serue pe lasse," and now pe more world is discreued in oure fourre sawes in pe firste book, pan it is skilful somdel to descreuy pe lasse world also from pe bygynnynge of his forme dedes, pat hit myyte be knowe what manere ping hit is and how grete, pat is so litel and doop so grete dedes in pe more worlde, pat is so grete and so huge. And also pe worchere and pe makere of alle pinges pat hap wip him schapliche resouns of al manere resouns and pinges, whanne he hadde i-made pe more worlde, pan he made pe lasse; and pey he made him lord of pe grete worlde, hit he prynted on hym pe likenesse of pe greet world. For a man and pe world ben pe fiche in pre pinges: in lenghe, in brede, and in dipmesse; in kyndely disposicion; and vertues worchynge. And firste peij ping of a manis body, pat is from pe sole of pe foot to pe top of pe heed, be suche sixe as pe brede, pat is from pe oon side of pe ribbes to pat oper side, and ten so moche as pe depnesse pat is from pe rugge to pe wombe; nopeles Plinius, libro 7. \(2^a\), capitulo 18. seip pat as moche space as is bytwene cinit,

be knouwen, whiche beeng e so litelle worchethe, so grete thynges in so grete a thyngye. The maker of alle thynges, anedes whom the ydealle reasons of thynges be hidde, made the lesse worlde after the grete engyne of the worlde made, in whom he impressede the similitude of the grete worlde. For a man and the worlde be assimilate in iij. thynges, in dimension diametralle or dimetralle, in disposition naturalle, and in operation virtualle. And thang pe longitude of the body of man, whiche is from the sole of the foote vn to the toppe of the hedde, be vj. tymes more then the latitude of hym whiche is from side to side, and x. tymes more then the altitude of hyt, whiche is from the backe to the bely; for \(12\) after the grete clerk Plinius, libro quinto, capitulo decimo octavo, what distance is betwene

---

1 So Cx. (but with be for beeb) ; pat beeb so i-ordeyned, MS. and a.
2 pat opere, a.
3 Forne, Cx.
4 So Cx.; ban, MS.
5 pe\[\text{e}] om. a.
6 and\[\text{e}] om. a.; al maner thynges, Cx.
7 So a. and Cx.; lasse, MS.

\(\text{\footnotesize and in dipmesse}\) om. a.

\(\text{\footnotesize Here ys pe proporcyon of manys body.}\) Note in MS.

\(\text{\footnotesize forne, Cx.}\)

\(\text{\footnotesize rygge, a.; rygge, Cx.}\)

\(\text{\footnotesize The translator should have written yet.}\)
nostri ad oppositum punctum in coelo, tanta est ab oriente in occidentem, sic fit in corpore humano; quod quantum est homini\textsuperscript{1} spatio ad vestigio ad verticem, tantum est homini\textsuperscript{8} spatio extensis\textsuperscript{3} manibus inter extrema longissimorum digitorum. Tradit etiam\textsuperscript{4} Plinius ibidem capitulo septimodecimo, quod in trimatu ætatis cujuslibet mensura erit futurae statutæ dimidia, si vixerit. Ranulphus.\textsuperscript{5} Secundo, sicut videmus\textsuperscript{6} in mundo, ita in homine, quod partes et membra mutuo sibi correspondent, compatiuntur, et vicem suppleunt; nam superiora regunt et influunt, inferiorka supportant et serviunt, media recipiunt et refundunt. Et in utroque monde dum membrum fuerit extra locum suum et intraverit alienum, fit statim perturbatio; sicut quando aër inclusitur\textsuperscript{7} in terræ visceribus, fit terræ motus; quando vero\textsuperscript{8} in nubibus, fit tonitus; sic quoque\textsuperscript{9} in cor-

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{1} hominis, C. (not D.)
  \item \textsuperscript{2} hominis, C. (not D.); ei, B.
  \item \textsuperscript{3} expansis sive extensis, C. (not D.)
  \item \textsuperscript{4} enim, B.
  \item \textsuperscript{5} Ranulphus] om. C.D.
  \item \textsuperscript{6} vidimus, B.
  \item \textsuperscript{7} includerit, E.
  \item \textsuperscript{8} vero] om. C.D.
  \item \textsuperscript{9} quoque] om. C.D.
\end{itemize}
cenit of oure hedde and a poynete contradictories to hit in heuyyn, soe moche distaunce is from the este in to the weste; soe in lyke wyse hit is in the body of man, that as moche distaunce is betwene the soole of his foote to the toppe of the hedde, so moche distaunce is betwene the extremites of the longeste fyngers, his armes extente. Also Plinius dothe reherse in the same boke, capitulo 17°, pat in euery thrydde age the measure of the peple schalle be but halfe of the firste age precedente in stature, if hit lyve. For lyke as we see in the worlde so hit is in man, that the partes and membres be correpondente to gedre and suppelyenge the place of that other. For the bodies above gouerne and ziffe influence, the membres inferiaile supporte and do seruice, the meane other membres mediate, recyeve, and refunde. And if a member of either worlde be owte of his place naturalle, and a straunge thynge hauue introite f. 78. b. in to hit, the body is troublede anoon. As when the wynde is includede in the wombe of the erthe, a movenenge of the erthe is made, and when hit is in the clowdes a thundre is
pore humano quando 1 membræ dislocantur aut humores 
corrumpuntur, fit dolor et morbus. Insuper cum 2 
membra bene fuerint proportionata quoad figuram, 
colorem, qualitatem, 3 quantitatem, situm, et motum, 
denotatur 4 bona mentis habitudo. Econtra 5 fit cum 
membra male 6 fuerint proportionata; 7 inde 8 senten-
tiavit Plato quod qualis animalis effigiem gestat homo, 
talis animalis sequitur 9 mores et affectus. Præterea 
sicut in rerum ordine mundanarum supremum inferioris 
generis tangit infimum superioris; 10 utpote ostria, quæ 
 quasi infimum tenent locum in genere animalium, 
parum excedunt vitam plantarum, eo quod immobilia 
sint 11 terræ 12 hærentia et solum habeant 13 tactum; 
et ultimum terræ tangit infimum aquæ, et supremum

when pe lymes bee awreit 1 out of her 2 owne places, oper 3if pe humours bee apaired, panne is ache, sicknesse, and sorwe. Also whan pe lymes bee wel arayed, and as they schulde be in schappe, colour and heavwe, manere, quantite, and gretnesse and smalnesse, menynghe and place, pan hæf pe man good pees and quiete, and is in good heele and reste. Pe contrary falleth, 3 and pe leemes 4 be euell and nou34 ri3tly [and richeliche] 5 arrayed; perfore Plato 3af his doom, and seide suche ordenaunce, disposicioun, and schap as a man hap in his kyndeliche [membres and lymes, suche kyndeliche] 6 maneres pey folowep in 7 dedes. Also as it is in pe parties of pe grete world pat pey beep so i-ordeyned and i-sette pat pe ouermeste 8 of pe neper kynde touche pe nepermeste 9 of pe ouer 10 kynde, as oistres and schelle fische, pat beep as it were lowest in bestene 11 kynde, passep but litel pe perfeccion of lyf of treen and of herbes, for pey move not meue hem but as culpes of pe see waggep wip pe water, elles pey clenepe to pe end the and movpe noiper [see] 12 ne hire, ne taste, ne smelle, but onliche fele whan pey beep i-touched; and pe 13 taste [of] 14 pe erpe touchepe pe lowest of pe water, and pe ouermeste 15 of pe

causede and made by lyte, in lyke wise in the body of man; sorowe and sekenesse be causede when membres be owte of their places naturalle, anther humores be corrupte. And also lyke as a goode habitude of the mynde is signifiepe when the membres be welle proporcionate as vn to figure, colore, qualite, quantite, place, and movenge, and in sentence contrarious when the membres be inproporcionate to gedre; wherefore Plato 3afe sentence that man folowethe the maneres and affectes of that beste, of whom he hathe similitude. And lyke as the hieste thyngue of a thyngue inferierral towethethe the laweste place of his superior, in the ordre of worldely thynges; as oestres, whiche holde as the laweste place in the kynde of bestes, exceede but a litelle the 1:9: o" plants in that he be immoveable and drawenge to the erthe, hanenge onely the witte of towenge. And the hieste parte of the erthe towethethe the loweste parte of the water, and so ascendenenge by degrees

}\n
\begin{verbatim}
\text{\footnotesize
\begin{tabular}{l}
\text{\textbf{1} from Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{2} from a.} \\
\text{\textbf{3} So a. and Cx.; contray fallith}, MS. \\
\text{\textbf{4} lymes, a.} \\
\text{\textbf{5} Added from a. Not in Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{6} Added from a. and Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{7} and, a., Cx. The latter varies the sentence.} \\
\text{\textbf{8} highest, Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{9} lowest, Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{10} high, Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{11} beestes, Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{12} Added from a. and Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{13} at pe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)} \\
\text{\textbf{14} Added from a. and Cx.} \\
\text{\textbf{15} So Cx. (Words are repeated without sense in MS.)}
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}
}
aquae tangit primum aeris, et sic gradatim ascendendo usque ad ultimum orbem: sic quoque supremum in genere corporum quod potest dici, corpus humanum, æqualiter complexionatum attingit infimum proximi generis superioris, quod est anima humana, quæ quasi tenet ultimum gradum in genere intellectualium substantiarum. Atque ideo horizon dicitur et confinium corporeorum et incorporeorum, in qua gradatim ascendit urb ab infima potentia usque ad supremam intellectualivam, quæ quando a terrenis affectibus fuerit depurata, attingit quandoque substantias separatas. Insuper et homo habet aliquid commune cum partialibus mundi rebus, quia, secundum Gregorium in homilia de Ascensione, homo habet esse cum lapidibus, vivere cum arboribus, sentire cum animalibus, intelligere cum angelis. Quinetiam in humano corpore apparet terra in carne et ossibus, aqua in sanguine et humoribus, aer in pulmone, ignis in corde. Sed et homo Latine dicitur antropos Graece, quasi arbor

---

1 quid, A.
2 So A.D.E.; intelligentiam, B.
3 quandoque] added in margin of C.
4 cum] om. E.
5 Omelia, MSS., and so below.
6 in . . . homo] om. C.D.
7 sanguine et] om. C.D.
8 antropos dicitur, B.; Sed et homo Graece dicitur antropos, Latine, quasi arbor reversa, D. This seems to be right, but was manifestly not Trevisa’s text.
water toucheþ þe loweste of þe ayer; and so vpward by degrees anon to þe ouermeste hevene: also þe hiȝte in bodiliche kynde, þat may skillfulliche be i-cleped manis body, kyndeliche and perfitliche disposed arecheþ to þe lowest of þe nexte ouer-kynde; þat is manis soule, þat holdeþ þe lowest degré of spiritis and of gostes þat haueþ knowleche and vnderstondinge, and þerfore he is i-cleped orisoun, as it were þe next marche in kynde bytwene bodily and goostly pinges. By þe soule me goþ vp from2 þe lowest kynde by degrees of knowleche and of konnynge anon to þe ouermeste knowleche and vnderstondyng, and whan þe soule is al clene wip oute erpeliche likyng þe recheþ operwhile to holy [spirites]3 þat beþe no þyng bodilich. Also man4 haþ somwhat comyn wip þynges þat beþe parties of þe grete world. For Gregorie in an omelye seip þat man haþ beynge wip stones, lyuynge wip trees and herbes, felynge5 wip bestes, knowleche and vnderstondyng wip angels. Also in manis body semeþ etþe in flesche and bones, water in blood and in oþer humours, ayer in þe longen,6 fuyre in þe herte; and hadde homo in Latyn and antropos7 in Grewe, þat is as hit were a tree

vn to the laste worlde: so in lyke wise the hieste thynge in the kynde of bodies, that may be seide, þe body of man egally complexionate, atteynethe the laweste thynge of the kynde superialle other generalite, whiche is the sawle of man, whiche holdethe as the laweste place in the kynde or generalite of substanaunces intellectualle. Wherefore hit is callede orizon, and as the coste of thynges corporealle and incorporealle, in whom hit is ascended by degrees from the loweste powere to the hieste powere intellecte; whiche, separate somme tyme from substanaunces terrestrealle, as in affecte atteynethe otherwhile substanaunces separate. Also a man hathe somme thynges commune with parcialle thynges of þe worlde. For after Seynte Gregory, in an omely in the Ascencion of oure Lorde God, "A man haþe beenge with stones, "lyvenge with trees, felenge with bestes, vnderstondenenge with "angelles." Also erþe apperethe in the body of a man in the flesche and in the bones, water in the bloode and humores, aier in þe longes, and fire in the herte. But a man in Grewe is callede antropos, as a tre euertede; for a

---

1 So MS. a, B; but probably we should read so.  
2 and from, MS. (not a. or Cx.)  
3 Added from a, and Cx.  
4 So a. and Cx.; men, MS.  
5 So a. and Cx.; felynges, MS. (first hand.)  
6 langen, a.  
7 antropos, a.
eversa. Habet enim caput cum comis instar radicis, et quasi ramos habet brachia cum cruribus. Quoad tertium simile, quod est\(^1\) virtualis operatio,\(^2\) videmus, \(^3\) sicut dicit Gregorius in homilia de Adventu, quod mundus in annis prioribus velut in juventute viguit; ad propagandam prolem robustus fuit, utpote\(^4\) salute corporum\(^5\) viridis, opulentia rerum pinguis; at nunc ipsa\(^6\) senectute sua deprimitur, et quasi ad vicinam mortem crebris molestiis urgetur. Ita et\(^7\) homini in juventute viget corpus, roboratur pectus, torosa est cervix,\(^8\) plena sunt brachia; in annis autem senilibus statura curvatur, cervix debrimitur, crebris suspiris pectus urgetur, anhelitus succiditur;\(^9\) virtus per totum deficit; et etiam, si languor defuerit, plerumque ipsa salus in senibus est aegritudo. Praeterea\(^3\) sicut videmus quod\(^10\) in majori mundo duo sunt\(^11\) motus, unus naturalis, quo moventur orbes\(^12\) inferiores ab occidente in orientem, et alius violentus, quo rapiuntur econtra raptu primi mobilis\(^13\) ab oriente in occidentem;\(^14\)

---

\(^1\) est quod, E. (first hand.)
\(^2\) quod . . . operatio\] om. D.
\(^3\) sicut dicit . . . Præterea\] added in margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.
\(^4\) ut, B.
\(^5\) cœpsm, A.
\(^6\) ac ipsa nunc, B.
\(^7\) ut, E.; et homini, A.B.
\(^8\) thorax et cervix, B.
\(^9\) succeditur, A.
\(^10\) quod\] om. E.
\(^11\) sicut\] om. B.
\(^12\) urbes, B.
\(^13\) violentus . . . mobilis\] quo moventur orbes inferiores, B.
\(^14\) et . . . occidentem\] om. A.; ad modum primi orbis after occidentem, B.
i-torne vp so doun, and hap an heed 1 wip here as it were 2 a roote, and hap armes and pygles as it were bowes. Touchynge pe priddroome likenesse, pat is vertuous woundynge, we seep, as Gregory seip in an omelie of pe Aduent, pat pe world was at pe begynnyng pe pryngynge and strong for to bryng forp children as it were in dowpe, and was full of hele, and so freshe and grene, and by greet richesesse it was fatte. But now it 3 is abated, wipeled, and ait 4 were i-dryne toward pe deth wip ofte and meny diseases. So in a manys dowpe pe body is pryngynge, pe brest is strong, the nole is bolde, pe armes beep fulle. But in his elde pe stature bowep and crokep and stouep adoun, pe bolde nole abatep, pe brest is i-dryne ofte wip many sighes and soore, pe brep shorope, in to alle 5 pe body myzty and strengpe abatep, and zif pey 6 perpe were noon open siknesse in olde men, for pe more deel hele is sikennesse. Also as we seep pat in pe more worlde beep twayne contrary meyleneys; oon is kyndeliche, by pe whiche pe planetes and pe neyper wolkons moonep out of pe west in to pe est; pat oper is violent, by pe whiche pey beep i-rausisch azenward wip the meunygynge 7 of pe ouermoste wolken out of pe est in to pe west: so it fansp in a man pat the flesche man hathe an hedde with here, in the maner of a rote of a tre, and armes as bowes. As vnto the thridde similitude, whiche is vertuall operacion, we see, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an omelie of Aduent, that the worldhe hathe thryvede in yeres afores as in yowthe to the multiplicacion of peple, for hit was myzhty as for healethe of bodies, grene and fatte as in plente of thynges. But hit is now as depressede with age, and is constreyynede as with ryfe greuances to a nye deth. Also in lyke wise the body of man encreaseth in yowthe, the brestye is stronge, the armes be full; but the stature is boode downe in age, the coppe is depressede, the brestye is constreyynede with mony sighes, the brethe is succidee, and vertu failethe through alle the body. Also like as we see that per be ij. movenges in the greater worlde, oon naturalle, thro whom the worldes inferialle be moveide from the weste in to the este, that other is a movenge violenta, by whom the worldes be rapte thro the rape of the firste mover from the este in to pe weste: soe hit is in like wise in man, that the flesche

1 hedde, a.
2 Several words are erroneously repeated in MS., but omitted in a. and Cx.
3 he, a.
4 as hit, a., Cx.
5 in af, Cx.
6 and zif won, a.; and though, Cx.
7 meunygynge, a.

1 et] om. C.D. 4 quæque sunt, C.D.
2 nunc, B. 7 vel, A.D.
3 seu patitur] om. D. 8 et, C.D.
4 nam torpet quandoque] denique vicissim torpet, C.D. 9 probata, C.D.
5 miraculis] om. E. 10 earum... arbores] om. B.
coveytep azenst pe spirit, and pe spirit azenst pe flesche; for pe nepere knoweleches and wittes fi3tep azenst [pe] \(^1\) resoun. And 3it a man hap commoun worchynge and suffrynge leche\(^2\) to many opere parties of pe more \(^3\) world; for he is slow and heuy as pe erpe, and fletep away as pe water, and wiwpdrawep sodeynliche as pe ayer, and hetep as pe fuyre, chaungep as the mone, fi3tep and sleep \(^4\) as Mars, coueytep as Mercurius, goop oute of kynde as Jupiter,\(^5\) and is cruel as Saturnus. Also Plinius, libro 7\(^6\), capitulo 3\(^7\), seiep pat as pe vter parties of pe grete worlde wellep and springep ful of myraele, won-dres, and meruaillles, as in Ynde, in Ethioppe, Blomen \(^8\) londe, and in Affrika; so in mankynde, kynde hap sliyleche and craftiliche i-made wonderful werkes and merpe. For first in a mannys face peere\(^9\) beep ten lymes oper fewe moo, per\(^8\) is so grete diuersite, pat among meny powsand men ynepe is oon i-founde in face i-liche to anooper. In Affrika beep meyneys\(^9\) pat hanep wyccben\(^10\) tongues, so pat pinges pat pey preisep pey schendep and sleep wip hire preisyngye. So pat trees pat pey preisep waxen drie\(^11\) and children

covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the sawle ageyne the MS. HARL. flesche, and pe powers inferialle laboure and stryve ageyne reason. Also a man is comparate with mony thynge in the worlde, and suffrethe as thynges commune with theyme, for he is slawe otherwhile as the erte, floenge like to the water, 3ipenge place like to the aier, brenneenge as fire, chaunge-enge like to the moone, sleeenge as Mars, goenge abowte other couetenge like to Mercurius, goenge owte of kynde like Jupiter, beenge woode or cruellie like to Saturnus. Also, after Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, lyke as the extremalle places of the worlde be moste habundante in meracles, as in Ynde, Ethioppe, and Affrike, soe in like wise nature hathe made moste meruellous disportes in that kynde of men. For now there is suche diuersite in the face of man, where x. members were firste, or fewe moo, that vnuethe ij. men be lyke amonge mony mi. Also there be men in Affrike, thro the lawde of whom thynges commended dye, trees do wedre, and waxe drye: also in Tri-
Ita et in Triballis et in Illyricis sunt homines qui solo visu interimant diutius conspecta, præsertim si intuentes sunt irati; et hi quidem binas pupillas habent in singulis oculis. Sic enim testatur Varro, quod in quorumdam hominum oculis peperit natura venenum; ne quid uspiam mali sit, quod in homine non reperiatur. Sic etiam aliqua corporum partes nascentur ad aliqua mirabilia ostendenda, sicut Pyrrho regi Epìrotarum pollex in dextro pede, cujus tactus contra venenum valuit; quem cum reliquo corpore cremari non posse tradiderunt auctores. Ita Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo, testatur quod quidam gignuntur concreto genitali; aliqui vice dentium concreto osse generantur, sicut patuit in filio Prusise, regis Bithyniae; cujus superior pars dentium sic concreta fuit, ut reliquo corpore combusto illa pars cremari non potuit. Item ibidem, capitulo octavo decimo. Aliqui vivunt concretis toto corpore ossibus et sine medullis; et hi nec sitim sentient

\[1\] Ita om. B. 
\[2\] Trivallis, MSS. (Latin and English), b and v being often interchanged. 
\[3\] hominibus, B. 
\[4\] diutius] om. B. 
\[5\] fuerint, and slightly transposed in C.D. 
\[6\] After enim apud nos, C.D.; nos A. 
\[7\] quem] hunc (lune, D., by cler. error) etiam, C.D. 
\[8\] tradunt, B. 
\[9\] posse ... auctores] potuit, C.D. 
\[10\] At, C.D.; Item, B. 
\[11\] nascuntur, B. 
\[12\] dentium] om. C.D. 
\[13\] ibidem] codex libro, C.D.
So in Triballis and in Illyricis be men that sleep, with his sight what they beholde and lookep on longe, nameliche and pey be grened and wroep while they lokep so and by-holdep, and these hauen in erenicye ye twie blakkes. Also among vs, Varro seip, kynde hap i-gendred and i-brouzt forp venyn in som mennys eyzen, so that non euell is y-founde paere nys somewhat i-liche and i-founde in mankynde. So som partes of a manis body beop forseyng and bodynge of wondres. So Pyrrhus kyng of Epirotes, hadde a greet too in his riʒt foot, pe touchynge of paet too was a good medicyne against venym; and paet too myʒte noʒt be bren [wip pe oper body]? when pe oper bodyes was i-bren; so auctors tellep. Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 17°, seip that som men beep i-gete and i-bore wip gendryngyse stones cleuyngye to gidres as it were al oon; som beep i-bore wip oon boon al in stede of teep, and pat boon is hardere and scharpere paan any mannyse too. So Prusy, kyng of Bithynia, hade a sone pat hadde a bone in his mouʒh instede of his ouer teep, oon bone al hool, and pat boon was so harde, pat when pe oper deel of pe body was i-brend pat bone myʒte noʒt brene also. Ibidem, capitulo 18°. Som men lyuep pat euereiche of hem hap pe bones of his body cleuyngye to gidres as hit were al oon boon, al hool and wip oute marwe; these men been euere aferst, also pey sweepe euere more. Trevisa. Som men tellep pat som man

ballis and in Illyricis be men whiche cause thynge beholden longe to pereche, and specially if the men beholde be wrethe, whiche haue ij. apples in either eie. So in lyke wise the poete Varro reherceth that nature hath the infused in to the cien of somme men venom, so that pe is noone ylle thynge but hit is reperible in man. Also somme partes off men be cause for somme meruellen thynge, to be schewed, as a thowmbre in the ryʒhte foote of Pyrrhus kyng, the towchenge of whom ʒafe subsidy ageyne venom, whom auctores say not to haue be brente when the body of the kyng was brente. Also Plinius seithe, libro 7°, capitulo 17°, that somme men lyve alle the body concrete and compate with boonse, with owte eny maro, and these men do not thurst, neithe 15 swete. Also in the same boke,

1 dreʒep, a.
2 Triballis and in Illyricis, MS.
3 hauep, a.
4 ye, a.
5 forbuson, a.; forbyson, Cx.
6 Pirus or Pirrus, MS.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 When the other partes of his bodye was (sic) brente, Cx.
9 27, Cx.
10 al hool, Cx.
11 obere, a., Cx.
12 and, a., Cx.
13 marovʒ, a.; mary, Cx.
14 So also a.; a thirst, Cx.
15 So Harl. MS.
nee sudorem emittunt. *Item capitulo vicesimo primo.*

Et Seneca in primo prologo declamationum testatur de seipso, quod tanta memoria viguit, ut duo milia nominum eo quo erant ordine dicta recitasse ex corde, et etiam plusquam ducentos versus ab alīis

---

1 Alii, C.D.
2 interierunt, B.
3 milia passuum, B.; miliaria, A.
4 Sentence slightly varied in D.
5 The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 54.
6 Ranulphus...composuit. This is placed after the next sentence in C., and is there added in the margin; it is absent from D.
7 testatur after seipso, B.
8 hominum, C.
9 recitasset, C.; recitassent, B.
in Irland hap oon boon al hool in oon side instede of all his ribbes; and Thomas¹ Hayward of Berkeley hap in pe molde of his heed, pol and forheed, but oon boon al hool; perfere he may wel suffice grete strokes aboue on his heued,² and busche a²enst men and horsedes, and breke strong dores wip his heed, and hit³ greype hym nou²t. *Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 21°, seip pat som men hadde in to alle pe body senewes, even i-stræ⁴t,⁵ pwart ouer in ⁶ a crosse wise, and passynge wonderful in strengpe. Som move dure to renne wip out [werinesse; som be passyng clere of sighte, as a knyghte pat lughte Strabo stode in]⁶ a weytes place, and sigh pe navey of schippes⁷ of Puni pat were from hem ⁸ an hondred and fyue and pritty myle.⁹ *Also Plinius, libro xi., capitulo 4⁴°, seip pat Tiberius Cesar sighe more clereliche in derkenesse ðan in lî²t, so pat when he were awaked anyʒt he myʒt see ¹¹ al jîng clereliche aboute hym. *Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 27°. Som were wonder myʒty of mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers, that to al pe kynʒtes of his oost ʒaf certayne names. And Seneca, libro primo declamationum, seip of hym self, pat he was so myʒty of mynde pat he rehearsed two powsand names arewe by herte in pe same ordre as þey were i-seide. And pat he rehearsed mo þan two hondred vers þat ðer men hadde i-ʒeue,¹² and bygan

Capitulo 21°, somme men hauenge senowes as transuturede and ouercrossede thro alle the body, haue bene of grete myʒhte; somme preuayle in swifte course and rennenge; somme men be nowble in siʒhte, as a knyʒhte callede Strabo was, whiche see the schippes Punicalle and myrroures by c.xxxv¹¹ m¹ passes from hym. Also, after Plinius, libro xii., capitulo xliii°, Tiberius themperour see more clerely in derkenesse then in lyʒhte, in so moche that he awakede in the nyʒhte see alle thynges clerely. *Also Plinius, libro 7°, capitulo 27°. Mony men haue hade grete scharpenesse in mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers[i]ja, whiche ʒaf names to alle the knyʒhtes in his hoste. Also Seneca rehearsed dele of hym selfe in the firste prologue, that he was of suche memory that he wolde haue rehearsed ij, m¹ names by herte, after the ordre thei were seide, and also moo then ijc versus seide of an other man, begynnenge at the laste

---

¹ Thomme, a.; Tom, Cx.
² heed without hurt, Cx. (omitting the rest of the sentence.)
³ hit] om. a.
⁴ i-straut, a.; straught, Cx.
⁵ and, a., Cx.
⁶ Added from Cx.
⁷ naypes and shippes, Cx.
⁸ him, Cx.
⁹ myles, Cx.
¹⁰ waked in the nyght, Cx.
¹¹ So Cx.; i-seie, MS.
¹² yeuen, Cx.
datos ab ultimo incipiens usque ad primum repetisset. Item ibidem dicit quod Cineas legatus Pyrrhi regis Epirotarum postero die adventus sui apud Romam omnem senatum et circumfusam plebem propriis nominibus salutaverit. Et quidam alius recitatum a poeta carmen novum suum esse dixit, eo quod carmen illud semel auditum expeditius recitaret quam ille qui composuit. Item Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo. Quidam etiam ingenii vigore claruerunt, ut Julius Cæsar, qui legere, scribere, et audire simul solet; quaternas etiam simul epistolam dictare consuevit. Item libro septimo, capitulo octavo decimo. Quibusdam vires majores sunt in dextra, quibusdam in Jaeva, quibusdam æqualiter in utraque. Item ponderosiora sunt mares fœminis, defuncta viventibus, dormientia vigilantibus. Vîrorum quoque cadavera supina fluctuant, fœminarum vero prona et resupina, ac si pudore parcat natura. Item libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo. Legimus unum hominem risisse eo quo natus est die, ac manum
at pe laste and rehersed anon to pe firste wip oute eny faile. Also he seip pere þat Cineas, Pyrrhus messanger\(^1\) kyng of Epirotas, pis Cineas þe secounde [day]\(^2\) þat he come to Rome, he saluted\(^3\) and grette þe senatoures, and spak to euerich of þe peple þat come aboute hym by his owne name. Anõer seide þat Cineas hadde\(^4\) a grete makynge of poyesie, for he rehersed hit at þe firste bygynnynge\(^5\) more swiftly þan he þat hadde i-made it. Also Plinius, libro 7\(^6\), capitulo 21\(^7\), seip som were more noble and wys of witte, as Iulius Cesar, þat was i-woned to rede and write what me\(^8\) seide wip good avise-ment al at ones. Also he vsed to write quaryes, and endite letters and pisteles al at ones. Also Plinius, libro 7\(^6\), capitulo 18\(^8\), seip þat som men hauetp more strengte in þe riȝt side, and som hauetp more in þe līf \(^8\) side, and some beþ yp i-līche strong in eiper side.\(^9\) Also men beþ hauetyr þan wommen, and dede men\(^10\) bodyes hauetyr þan quykke, and sleping þan wakyng haueter also. Of dede men kareyns renneþ foul müstres and hōumours, and þey liggæ vpriȝt; and of dede wommen kareyns þat þey liggæ neelyngæ and donripp,\(^11\) as þey kynde spared schame. Also libro 7\(^6\), capitulo 17\(^7\), we redeþ þat oo man lōwþ \(^12\) þat day þat he was i-bore, and

\[\text{vn to the firste. Also he rehearsed the there, that Cineas, MS. Harl. 2261.} \]

\(^{1}\) messanger, a.  
\(^{2}\) Added from a. and Cx.  
\(^{3}\) salewed, Cx.  
\(^{4}\) hadde made, Cx.  
\(^{5}\) atte firste herynge, Cx.  
\(^{6}\) 27, a., Cx.  
\(^{7}\) men, Cx. (and so generally.)  
\(^{8}\) left, a.  
\(^{9}\) So a. and Cx. Some words are repeated in MS.  
\(^{10}\) mennes, Cx. (with other slight variations above and below.)  
\(^{11}\) þis ys a mereyle. Note in MS.  
\(^{12}\) louȝ, a.  
\(^{13}\) The true reference is to cappt. 17.  
\(^{14}\) loude, Harl. MS.
Herma-
phrodita.

Sexus
mutationes.

cujusdam palpantis\(^1\) repulisse. *Item*\(^2\) *capitulō vice-
simo*. Et feruntur alii\(^3\) nunquam risisse, alii\(^4\) nunquam flesse,\(^5\) alii nunquam expuisset, alii
nunquam eructasse. *Item*\(^6\) *capitulō quarto*. Et quemad-
modum in cæteris animalibus, sic in humano genere
gignuntur quandoque utriusque\(^7\) sexus personae,
quas Hermaphroditas\(^8\) vocamus, olim androgynos vo-
catos,\(^9\) et inter prodigia notatos,\(^10\) nunc vero inter
delicias computatos.\(^11\) Sed et sexum ipsum mutari
vidimus et audivimus. Nam in Africa vidimus
puellam ipsa\(^12\) nuptiarum die in marem mutari,\(^13\) bar-
bamque et cætera virilia produxisse, uxoremque cito post-
modum\(^14\) duxisse. Ranulphus. *Item* tangit Augusti-
tinus de Civitate, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo nono,
quod\(^15\) tradit A. Gellius,\(^16\) libro Atticarum noctium, ex
féeminis mutationes fieri in mares non esse fabulosum,
sed potius ad litteram verum, unde\(^17\) et ipse A.
putte away a manis hond pat groped and handeled hym. *Also, Capitulo 20*⁷. Men¹ speke⁸ of som men pat neuer lowh, of som pat wepe neuere, of som pat spat ² neuere, of somme pat bolked³ neuere. *Trevisa.* Rogge⁴ Bagge was a ful old man at Wotton vnder hegge, in Glowcetre schire, he spat neuere, he kowhed⁵ neuere. *Also Seneca, ubi prius, capitulo 4⁰.* And as hit is among opœ⁶ bestes, so hit is in mankynde pat somtyme oon of mankynde is hope man and woman, and such oon is i-cleped hernofrodita, and was somtyme i-cleped androgumnus,⁷ and aounted among merunyles and wondres; but now among us it is deynte, for it is seelde i-sye. Also we hauep i-seie and i-herde pat some hauep i-channged⁸ hir schap; for we sighe in Affrica a mayde pe same day pat sche scholde haue be i-wedded, i-channged and i-torned into a man, and was i-berded anon, and anoon hadde alle lymes as a man schulde haue, and wedded a wyf with inne a short tyme after. Also Seynte Austyn de cicivitate Dei, libro ³°, capitulo 29°, touche⁹ pat A. Gellius [libro] Atticarum¹⁰ noctium seip pat wommen beip somtyme i-torned into men: hit is no made¹¹ tale, but hit is soo̩p as pe lettre is i-write;

of his natuite, and to haue put a way the honde of the man towcheenge hym. *Also, capitulo 20.* Somme men be seide to haue neuer lazhede in theire lyfe, somme men neuer to haue wepede, somme men neuer to haue spytte. *Also, capitulo quarto,* lyke as hit is in other bestes, so hit is in the kynde of man, that somme persones be gendred of bothe kyndes, whom we calle hermofroditas, callede somme tyme androdinos, namede as amonge wondres, now acmpfede amonge delites. Also we haue seen and herde peple to haue chaungede theire kynde. For we see a maide in Affrike in the day of here mariaghe to haue ben chaungede in to a man, and to haue hade a berde and other membres of a man, and to haue mariede soone after with a woman. Also Seynte Austyn selithe, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo 29, that A. Gellius⁹ rehersethe, libro Atticarum noctium, women to haue ben chaungede in to men, and that hit is not a fable but a trawthe. Wherefore A. Gellius⁹ dothe

¹ Me, a., and also Cx. (contrary to his custom.)
² spotte, Cx., and so below.
³ balked, Cx.
⁴ Rogger, Cx. (not a.)
⁵ coughed, a., Cx.
⁶ opere, a.
⁷ androgynus, a. Both in Trevisa and in the Harl. translation we should read androgyous.
⁸ chanung wonderly, Cx.
⁹ Agellius, MS., a., and Harl. MS.
¹⁰ atticaruno. MS., a., and Cx. (not Harl. MS.) Several proper names have been tacitly corrected throughout the chapter.
¹¹ magel, Cx.
Gellius refert se vidisse apud Smyrnam puellam mutatam in marem eo die quo nubere debutit. Unde et aliquando tale monstrum allatum senatui sub Licinio Crasso et Cassio Longino\(^1\) consulis jussu aruspicium in desertam insulam deportatum est. Item de gallinis sexum mutantibus in gallos loquitar Titus Livius, et etiam Avicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, quod gallina quaedam vicerat gallum in pugna, quae post victoriam levavit caudam ut gallus; aculeus cornus sibi crevit in tibia, et crista in capite.\(^2\)

Item Trogus, libro septimo, capitulo quindicesimo.\(^3\) Caeterum in Ægypto Trogus refert septenos foetus uno partu edì; sed et tunc editis geminis, precipe si varii sexus fuerint, aut puerperæ aut puerperio raram vitam superesse. Item capitulo duodecimo.\(^4\) Sed et aliquoties modico interveniente tempore duo conceptus iunt, et itidem duo vicissim iunt partus et uterque perfectus, sicut patuit in Hercule et ejus fratre\(^5\) Iphicle.\(^6\)

---

\(^{1}\) et Longino, C.

\(^{2}\) All this passage from Ranulphus added in margin of C. A. and B. transpose it after the next two passages, after Hippicle. It is absent from D.

\(^{3}\) Item ... quindicesimo] Idem capitulo 40, C.; Idem c. 5, D.; Item libro 7, c. 40, A.B. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 3.

\(^{4}\) C. omits reference. D. has c. 2\(^{°}\). The true reference is to Plin. vii. 9.

\(^{5}\) fratre suo, B.

\(^{6}\) Hippicle, MSS.
™

M0NACH1 CESTRENSIS,
A. Gellius

]?erfore

sei]?, ]?at

in a citee

LIB.

]?at

het

197

II.

Smyrna lie

seih ! a
sche schulcle

2

Tkevisa.

]?e same day ]?at
Also suche oon was i-broujt to Rome
to ]?e senatoures in J?e tyme of Licinius 3 and Cassius Long-urns, consulus 4 of Rome, and by heste of dyuynours pat
toke hede of ]?e 5 weder and of cliitterynge of briddes it was
Also Titus Liuius speke]? of
i-bore into a wild ilond.
And Anicenna, libro
hennes ]?at were i-torned into cokkes
8° de animalibus, speke]> of an hen }?at hadde ouercome a
cok in fi J tinge, and after ]?e fi^tynge and ]?e victorie, he r
rered vp the tayle as a cok, and had anon i-growe 7 a spore
on J?e leg and a crest on J?e heed as it were a cok. Also
capitulo 50°.
Trogus sei]? in Egipt bee]? seven children
i-boren 8 at oon ber]?en but J if tweie twynnes bee]? i-bore, it
is wel seelde 9 ]?at ]?e moder and ]?e nrste childe lyve]? longe
after ]?e bur]?e, and nameliche % if ]?at oon is a knaue childe
and ]?e o]?er a mayde childe. Also capitulo 12°. Andsomtyine
a womman conceyue]? twey children and is but a litel tyme
bytwene; and so J?e children ben afterward i-bore oon after
o]?er, and bee}? perfit i-now, as hit wa« of Hercules and his

maide i-torned in
haue be wedded.

to a stoon

'

;

bro]?er Iphicles. 10

And

so

it

ferde

11

of

]?at

woman

]?at

bare

reherse hym selfe to haue seen at a cite callede Smyrna, MS. Harl.
2621.
a maide chaungede in to a man in the day of theire wed*~"
Wherefore suche a wondre broujhte oon tyme to
denge.
the senate, in the tyme of Licinius Crassus, *and Cassius
Longinus, 13 consulles, whiche was sende in to a deserte place
thro the cownsaille of wicches. Also Titus Liuius spekethe
of hennes chaungenge theire kynde in to kokkes, and also,
Auicenna, libro octauo de animalibus, that an henne hade
the victory of a cokke in iijhte, whiche lifte the tayle lyke
to a cokke after the victory, spurres groenge in the legge
of hit, liauenge a combe in the hedde.
Also the same
Also Trogus rehersethe a woman
Auicenne, capitulo 5°.
in Egipte to haue childede vij. childer at oon season, but
other the moder other the childer contynue not in lyfe
longe after. But mony women haue ij. childer at oon
tyme, and tweyne at an other tyme, as hit was schewede
in Hercules, and in Iphicles 10 his brother.
Also somme

1

si/ye,

a.

sawe,

;

2

a man,

Cx.

(and

so

8
;

i-bore,

a.

;

born,

Cx.

(The

latter varies the sentence.)

usually.)

Cx.

a.,

3

Lasciuius,

MSS

4

consuls,

Cx.
Cx.

5

\>e\

e

she,

7

i-crowe,

om.
Cx.

.,

a,,

v..

9

selde, a.

10

Hispicle, or Hispicles, MSS.
Hispycle, Cx.
11
ferde or happend, Cx.
12
Lascivins Crassus, Cassius, and
Longinus, Harl. MS.
;


Et etiam in illa muliere, quae gemino partu alteram marito\(^1\) alterum adultero similem genuit. Et in illa quae sub septimo mense edito puerperio in secundis post hoc\(^2\) mensibus geminas enixa est. Quasdam semem semper\(^3\) fœminas, quasdam semper mares parere, quasdam hoc\(^4\) alternare manifestum est. Aliqve etiam semper et ad omnes viros sunt steriles; alioque ad aliquos sunt steriles, ab aliis tamen concipiunt. 

Item\(^5\) capitulo tertio decimo. Quasdam etiam sibi similes semper parere, quasdam similes patri, quasdam similes nulli, quasdam fœminam patri, marem sibi; quasdam antiquioribus parentibus similes producere notum est.\(^6\) Exemplum est de Nicæo nobili pictore\(^7\) apud Byzantium, qui de pulchra matre natus degeneravit in avum \(^8\) Aëthiopem. Hugo, capitulo\(^9\) Molo. Talem ferunt fore fœminarum naturam, ut quales formas conspexerint,\(^10\) dum concipiunt, talem sobolem procreare; nam anima humana in usu venereo formas extra conspectas intus transmittit, et earum species in propriam qualitatem rapit. Sic solent in Hispania obicere\(^11\) generosos equos obtutibus equarum

---

1 alterum marito\(^1\) om. A.
2 hæc, D.
3 super, B.
4 hæc, D.
5 Item\(^1\) libro septimo, C.
6 Slightly varied in C.D.
7 Higden should have written pyete. See Plin., vii. 10.
women have in all tymes male childer, somme women at all tymes female childer, and somme women bothe at divers tymes. Also somme women be bareyn at all tymes and to all men, and somme women beenge bareyn to somme men conceyve of somme men. Also, capitulo 13°. Somme women haue childer like to theyme, somme like to the fader, and somme like to theire predecessores afore tyme. An exemple may be schewed of Nicenus, a nouble peyntour at Byzantium, which borne of his moder, a feire woman, wente owte of kynde in to a fowle man of Ethioppe. Hugo, capitulo Malo. Philosophers say the nature of women to be of suche disposition that thei brynghe furthe suche childer like to the forms whom thei beholde in the tyme of concepcon, for the sawle of man in the se verealle transmitteth interially formes other similitudes conceyvede exterially, and takethe, as by rape, the similitudes of theyme in to his propre qualite. Therefore men in

1 compynge, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)
2 maiden, a.
3 Added from a, and Cx.
4 Added from a, and Cx.
5 faderis, B.
6 So B; some a.
7 Added from a, which is partly corrected from B, and Cx.
8 some of] om. B.
9 of] om. a, and Cx.
10 pe] So a. B, and Cx.; for, MS.
11 Added from a and Cx.
12 So a.; womans kynde, Cx.; kynde, MS.
13 he, a.; she, Cx.
14 he, a.; she, Cx.
concipientium, et pulchras columbas depingere in locis ubi columbae conversantur. Et Quintilianus defendit matronam accusatam de adulterio, eo quod Æthiopem genuisset, allegans talem imaginem tempore conceptus in cubiculo depictamuisse. Et Hippocrates scribit quandamuisse condemnandam, eo quod pulcherrimum puerum utrique parenti dissimilem pepererat, nisi Hippocrates monuisset querere an similis pictura fuisse in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis. Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo. Idcirco autem in homine plures differentiae fiant, quia animi celebritas et ingenii varietas multiformes notas in ipso hominis conceptu imprimit. In ceteris animantibus animi sunt quasi immobiles, et ideo in illis quisque foetus est suo generi similis.

1 Ipocras or Ypocas, MSS. here and below.
2 autem] om. A.
3 quotiam, C.D.
4 ingenii humani, C.D.
5 ceteris vero, C.D.
6 quasi] om. C.D.
7 in illis] om. C.D.
8 quisquam, B.
faire hors and gentil, and holdep hem to fore pe mares and
in hir sijte whilpe pey conceyuep. And pey vse also to paynte
faire coloures\(^1\) in places pere\(^2\) coloures beemp i-woned to dwelle.
And Quintilianus excuspe and defende\(^{a}\) a woman pat was
accused of spousbreche for sche hadde i-bore a blow man,
and he leggep\(^3\) for hir pat suche an ymage was i-peynpt in
hir bed chambre when sche conceyued pat childe. And
Ypocras\(^4\) wropt of a woman pat schulde be dampeed to pe
dep, for sche\(^5\) hadde i-bore a faire childe pat was not liche
hir self noper to pe fader; but Ypocras made men asaie, and
it was i-founde pat suche an ymage was i-peynpt in pe fader
and pe\(^6\) moder bedchambre while pat childe was i-conceyued,
and so pe moder was i-samed. *Plinius, libro 7\(^{o}\), capitulo 13\(^{o}\).*
Perfore in a man beemp many dyuersites, for swifftnes of
pouytes and chaungeyne of witte in pe concepcioun preenti\(^{p}\)\(^7\)
in meny dyners likenesse and schappes. In ojer bestes wit
is as it were not changeable, perfore among hem al pe
brood is liche\(^8\) to pe same kynde.

Speyne vse to sette or putte feire horses to the sijhte of
the mares when thei vse to gendre, and to peynte in places
where dofes vse freschely with feire dofes in picture. And
Quintilianus\(^9\) defende a woman accusede of advontery, in
that sche was delynere of a man of Ethippq, makenge
allegacion an ymage to hau ne made in picture a
bowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. Also
that grete clerk Ypocras writethe a woman to haue been
desipede, in that sche was delynedc of a feire childe, like
neither to the fader neither to the moder, but that Ypocras
defendede that woman, in that there was suche an ymage
abowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. *Plinius,
libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Therefore mony
difference be in a man, swiftnesse of sawle, variablenesse
of witte, impressenge mony similitudes in the concepcion
of a man. But the sawles in other bestes be as immove-
able, and per fore eury concepcion of theyme is like to the
kynde of hit.

\(^{1}\) coloures, a., Cx., who adds or
dowues.
\(^{2}\) As in other places this word
appears in the MSS. for where.
\(^{3}\) lieyped, a.; leyed, Cx. (with other
slight variations.)
\(^{4}\) As this form occurs in Chaucer
it has been allowed to stand.

---

**MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. II.**

201

TREvisa.

MS. HARL. 2261.
Cap. II.

De monstruosis hominum partibus

Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo. De monstruosis hominum partibus qui eritut utrum ex primo homine an ex Noe credantur propagari, quales dicuntur Cyclopes unum oculum in fronte habentes. Quidam autem utrumque sexum dicuntur habere, dextram mammam virilem, sinistram muliebrem, vicissimque inter se coeundo et gignere et parere. Alibi etiam quinquennes feminas concipere; et octavum a nativitate annum non excedere. Alii crura sine poplite habere mira celeritate prestantes, quos Sciopodas vocant, eo quod aestivo tempore resupini jacentes umbra pedum se protegent. Ad quod dicimus, quod omnia hominum genera qui dicuntur esse credere non est necesse; veruntamen qualis ratio redditur apud nos de monstruosis partibus, talis de monstruosis gentibus reddi potest.

1 Title in D. only.
2 partus, E.
3 C.D. bring in here the reference to Augustine.
4 So C.D.; quod quidam, A.E. (without sense); dicuntur before utrum, B.
5 sexum, A.
6 et sinistrum, C.D.
7 quae] om. E.
8 quinquennas, A.; quinquies, B.
9 nativitatis, B.E.
10 habere] om. E.; dicuntur habere, B.
11 So E.; scioptas, B.; sciopeidas, A.
12 protegunt, B.
Capitulum secundum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 16°, capitulò 7°. Off broodes, pat beþ wonderliche i-schape, me axþ 3if þey come of Adam and Noe. Som of hem haste Cyclopes, and hauþ but oon eyþe in þe for heed. Some hap 1 eijer schap of man and of womman, and gendrep to gidres and geteþ, and conceyueþ and bereþ child, 2 as þe cours comþ aboute. For oneþ he schal gete a childe, and sche 3 schal eijtsones conceyue and goo with childe, euerich in his tyme as hit goþ aboute. Som wommen conceyueþ at fyue þere old, and lyþe þouþt over eijt þere. Somme hauþ pigheþ with oute Hammes, and beþ wonderliche swift, and 4 hatte Sciopeþes; 5 for þei ligþþ þe neelyngþ 6 and doun riþt in þe somer tyme, and defendþ hem self wiþ þe schadewe of here feet from þe hete of þe sonne. Herto 7 we answerþþ and se½þ þat it nedeþ þouþt to trowe þat þere beþ so many manere schape men 8 as me spekeþ of. Nøþes resoun as it is yþsouþe of wonder schappe þildren þat beþ among vs, suche resoun me may þeþe of dyuers manere peþle pat

Capitulum secundum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulò MS. Harl. septimo. A question may be move of suche mervayles in nature wheder thei come of Adam or of Noe, as men callede Cyclopes, hauenge oon eie in the forehede. And somme be f. 81. a. seide to hauþ eijer kyndes as the ryþte pappe of a man and the lifte of a woman, other while gendrenge to gidre and to conceyue. Also in other places hit is seide women of the age of v. yere to childe, and not to excede the viijþe yere from the natuiute of theyme, and somme men have thees with owte a hømme of grete swiftenes, whiche peþle be callede Sciopeþe, 9 in that thei lyenge in the somer tyme with their faces ypwarde, defende alle their body thro the schado of their foote. To the whiche question we say that hit is [not] necessary a man to beleve the kyndes of alle men whiche be seide to be; nevertheless the same reason may be assignede of the monstruous peþle whiche

1 hauþ, a.
2 childer, Cx. (with other slight variations.)
3 he, a., Cx.
4 and, a.
5 Cyclopes, MS., &c.
6 nyelynge, a.; nevelynge, b.
7 Wharto, Cx.
8 mishappen men, Cx.
9 stropode or scropode, Harl. MS.
Deus enim ubi et quando aliquid\(^1\) oporteat creari novit, sciens universitatis pulchritudinem, qualium partium similitudine aut dissimilitudine contextat. Certe sub nostra aetate in oriente natus est homo in superiori parte\(^2\) duplex usque ad medium ventris, inferius autem simplex. Nec propter hoc diffitebimur eum ab \(^3\) Adam processisse. Igitur hujusmodi\(^4\) monstruosa aut omnino non sunt, aut si sunt homines non sunt, aut si homines sunt\(^5\) ex Adam procul dubio processerunt. Quod vero \(^6\) Antipodas quidam fabulantur existere, id est, homines a contraria parte mundi adversa pedibus nostris calcare vestigia, nulla ratione credibile\(^7\) est. Nec\(^8\) enim hoc\(^9\) nulla historica cognitio prodit, sed tantum conjectura humana adiun- venit. Quamvis\(^{10}\) enim terra sit rotunda, et intra convexa coeli quodammodo suspensa, non tamen est nuda ex illa parte ubi constat eam aquarum congerie circumcinctam;\(^{11}\) sed et licet terra ibidem esset nuda, Antipodes.
beep wonderliche i-schape. For God knoweþ where and whanne it needeþ to make eny manere ping, he knoweþ pe fairenesse of al creatures, and wip what liknesse and vnliknesse of parties þey beep i-medled\(^1\) to gidres. Certeynliche in oure tyne was aman i-bore in pe est þat hadde twee bodies above anon to pe myddel of þe womb, and byynþe but oon; but þit for al pat we schal thorwe þat he com\(^2\) of Adam. Perfore, suche þat beep wonderliche i-schape oper þey beep nouȝt; oper þey beep no men; oper þif þey beep men, wip oute doute þey come of Adam his kynde.\(^3\) Touchinge Antipodes þat men spocke of and seþ \(^4\) þat þey beep men in þe oper side of þe erpe, and here feet toward oure,\(^5\) and hire heed þonward and tredþ towardward, þat may be trowed by no resoun, þere is no storie þat makeþ vs haue knowleche; but onliche by gessynghe of mankynde suche a tale is i-founde. Þey þe erpe be rounde al aboute and somdel honginge wip þyne þe holownesse of heuene, neuereþes þe erpe is nouȝt bare in þat side, for he is byclipped and i-closed wip þyne

we schewede afore of the monstruous partes. For God MS. HARL. knowethe how every thyngue awe to be create, and how he schelde dispose the pulcritude of the vniversite in hit, in similitude of partes either in dissimilitude. In oure tyne and age a childe was borne in the este, double in the superior parte vn to the myddes of the bely, and single from that place downnewarde, þitte for alle that we schalle not [haue] diffidence but that he come of Adam. Therefore won-drefulle or monstruous thynges, other thei be not in eny wyse, or if thei be thei ar noo men, or if thei be men with owte eny dowte thei toke their originalle of Adam. And that somme men say, as in fables, men callede Antipodas to be, that is to say, men to be in a contrarious parte of the worlde, and to trede with theirfeete ageyne oure stappes; hit is not credibile by eny reason, neither the cognicion of eny story dothe not expresse hit to be soo, but that the coniecture of man movethe that thyngue. For thanþe the erthe be rounde and connexede with þyne, nevertheless hit is not bare of þat parte, sithe that hit is circumvamique with waters, and thanþe the erthe were bare per, hit wolde not

\(^1\) meled, a.  
\(^2\) come, a., Cx.  
\(^3\) Text as in a. and Cx.; clauses transposed in MS.  
\(^4\) syngeþ, Cx.  
\(^5\) owres, Cx.
non ideo esset consequens quod homines ibi haberet. Ranulphus.\(^1\) Nisi forte velimus intelligere Antipodas eo modo quo tradit Marcianus in Astrologia sua,\(^2\) dicens quod antipodibus\(^3\) aestatem facit Capricornus et hyemem Cancer, quod utique ultra australen partem \(\dot{A}\)thiopiar conjicitur\(^4\) fore,\(^5\) ubi obliqua et pene contraria fiunt vestigia his qui circa insulam Tylæ\(^6\) sub ipso polo arctico morantur.\(^7\) Isidorus, libro undecimo.

\(^1\) Ranulphus] This sentence added in margin of C. Absent from D.


\(^3\) antipodis, A.E.

\(^4\) conjicitur A.E.

\(^5\) esse, C.

\(^6\) Tylæ, A.

\(^7\) commorantur, A.B.C.
be water. And pey he were bare and nout that so i-closed, \( \text{[image]} \) yt it folowe nout that men schulde wonye perce. \( \text{[image]} \). But we wolde mene, as Marcianus seip in his Astrologie, pat Capricornus pe goot makep somer to pe Antipodes, and pe Crabbe makep to hem wynter; and pat is accounted by\( \text{[image]} \)onde pe side of Ethiopia, blew men lone; perce men tornep wel nigh here feet towarde men feet pat wonep aboute pe ilond Tyle vnnder pe norp sterre. Trevisa. Here take hed pat pe cercle pat pe sonne holdep his cours ynte by the \( \text{[image]} \)ere is i-deled in twelwe parties, and eueriche partie perof is i-cleped a signe, and euerich signe hav his owne name. \( \text{[image]} \) Pese beep pe names of pe signes: pe Wether, pe Boole, pe Twynnes, pe Crabbe, pe Leon, pe Mayde, pe Balanue, pe Scorpion, pe Archer, pe Goot, pe Seeen, pe Fissh ye. Also twelue monpes ben in pe \( \text{[image]} \)ere, and eueriche monpe pe sonne entrep in to a signe, as it fallep for pe monpe. And so in Marche pey entrep into pe Weper; in Averel \( \text{[image]} \) in to the Boole; in May in to pe Twynnes; in Iuyn into pe Crabbe; and so forp arewe by monpes and signes, so pat in Decembre pe sonne is in pe Goot. \( \text{[image]} \) Anne Marcianus wil mene when he seip pat pe Goot makep somer [to Antipodes, pat whanne pe sonne is in pe Goot pan hit is somer] wip hem. But in Decembre it is mydwynter monpe; and whanne he seip pat pe Crabbe makep hem wynter, he menepe pat whanne pe sonne is in pe Crabbe pan it is wynter wip ham, pat is in Iuyn, pat is mydsomer monpe: and so hit is i-clared what it is to mene, pe Goot makep hem somer, and pe Crabbe wynter. Isidorus, Etymolog., libro \( \text{[image]} \). Som tyme burpes beep i-bore wonderliche and wonderliche i-schape for to be bodynge folowe by a directe consequente that the erthe scholde con-

\( \text{[image]} \)eyn men in that parte. \( \text{[image]} \). Perauenture but if we under-

\[ \text{[image]} \]

\[ \text{[image]} \]

(\( \text{[image]} \)) of, MS. Haur. 2261. f. 81. b.
tionem futurorum, et tunc non dies vivunt; ut quod in tempore Xerxis, regis Persarum, vulpes ex equa nata solvi regnum portendebat. Et tempore Alexandri Magni cujusdam monstri superiores partes hominis erant sed mortuae, inferiores vero variarum bestiarum sed viventes, significabant repentinam regis interfe-
tionem; nam supervixerant deteriorea melioribus.

Isidorus, libro undecimo, capitulo ultimo. Fiant quandoque monstruosae transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus seu herbarum veneficiis. Quaedam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam, quaedam per corruptionem transseunt.
and forto \(^1\) comynge \(^2\) of wondres pat schal bifalle, but panne pey lyvep non\(\frac{\varepsilon}{2}\) [o]nange.\(^3\) As in Xerxes \(^4\) kyng of Pers his tyme a mare foled [a fox],\(^5\) and boded pat pe kyngdom schulde be vndoo.\(^6\) And in pe grete kyng Alisaundres\(^7\) tyme was i-brou\(\text{-}t\) forp a beest wonderliche i-schape, [for pe ouer parties of hym we i-schape]\(^8\) as pe parties of a man, but pey were dede, and [pe]\(^9\) neper parties were i-schape as pe parties of dyuers manere bestes, and were onlyne,\(^10\) and bode\(^11\) sodeyn sleyng of pe kyng,\(^12\) for pe worse parties lyuede lengere pan pe bettre. \(\text{Trevisa.}\)\(^13\) William Wayte of Berkeley sigh a childe wip twye hedes and twye nekkes i-bore and i-full\(\text{-}d\)\(^14\) at Mese in Loreyn, pe \(\text{zere}\) of oure Lord a powsand pre\(^15\) hundred and sixe and fiftie, pat \(\text{zere}\) pe kyng of Fraunce we\(\text{a}\) i-take at pe batayle of Peyters. \(\text{His}\) child hadde tweie armes\(^16\) and tweie legses, as o\(\text{p}\)r children hanep, and he hadde pe priddle legge growynge oute aboue pe buttokkes bylynde, and pe priddle arme bytwene pe tweie schuldrues. \(\text{Item Isidorus, libro \(\text{i}\)}\text{, capitulo \(\text{iii}^\text{e}\).}\) Somtyme is grisliche and wonderliche chaungynges and schapynge\(^17\) of men in to bestes, and is i\(-\)doo by wordes o\(\text{p}\)er by wichecraft. Som h\(\text{a}\)p and som\(^18\) fongep suche chaungyng by pe same kynde, somme by corrupcioun passe\(\text{p}\) and chaung\(\text{p}\) in to o\(\text{p}\)er kynde, and so of calues 

significacion of thynges to comme, and then thei lyve not longe; as a fox was foolede of a mare in the tyme off Xerxes kyngye of Persa. And also per was suche a wondre in the tyme of Alexander the Conquerour, the superior partes of whom were of a man, but dedde, and the partes inferiour were of diverse bestes, and in lyfe, which signifieth or signifiiede the soden dethe of kyngge Alexander, for the more vile partes lyuede more longe then the partes more nooble. \(\text{Isidorus, libro \(\text{i}^\text{ij}\), capitulo ultimo}.\) And monstrous transformaciones of men in to bestes be made other\-\(\text{wise}\) thro charms of wicches and wikkede operaciones of yerbes. Somme thynges receyve mutacion by their nature, somme thynges goe in to other kyndes by corrupciune, as bees of roten calles, and vermyn callede scarabei of cor-

\(1\) to \(\text{om. }\) a.
\(2\) and to knewing, Cx., who has also various slight alterations.
\(3\) longe, a.
\(4\) Excerves, MS., &c.
\(5\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(6\) vndoo, a., Cx.
\(7\) Alisaundres his, a.
\(8\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(9\) Added from Cx. (the).
\(10\) Added from Cx. (the).
\(11\) bodede, a.; betokened, Cx.
\(12\) So a. and Cx.; kyngdom, MS.
\(13\) Reference added from a.
\(14\) erisened, Cx.
\(15\) So a. and Cx.; sire, MS.
\(16\) So Cx.; names, MS., and a.
\(17\) wonderfully chaungyng of schappes, Cx.
\(18\) Som \(\text{om. }\) a.
\(19\) alyne, Cx.
in alias species, ut de putridis vitulis apes, de putridis equis scarabaei; unde Ovidius:

"Concava littorei si demas brachia cancri, "Scorpius exibit, caudaque minabitur una."

Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. Quoad monstruosas hominum transformationes tenendum est, quod daemones et mali homines nec possunt naturam aliquam creare, neque quod creatum est mutare; possunt tamen, Deo permittente, species transfigurare. Ita videlicet ut illud fantasticum hominis, quod cogitando sive somniando varias corporum formas haurit, sopitis corporeis sensibus, etiam cum corpus non sit, veluti tamen corporatum in alijus animalis effigie appareat sensibus alienis; talisque sibi homo esse videatur, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et etiam portare onera, quae si vera sunt onera, portantur a daemonibus; ut sic, Deo juste judicante, illusio fiat hominibus. Ranulphus.

De ista materia vide plenius infra post bellum Trojanum.

1 et, E. 6 capit, Aug.
2 Met. x. 369. 7 et, B.C.
3 Copparus, A. 8 esse] om. B.
4 10°, C. The true reference is to lib. xviii., c. 18. D. omits all the remainder of this chapter.
5 nec, B.
6 capitis, Aug.
7 et, B.C.
8 esse] om. B.
10 sint, A. (not Aug.)
11 ab hominibus, B. (not Aug.)
12 infra] om. B.C.
rupte horses, canares and scorpiones of mules. 

Augustinus, MS. Harl. 2261.

**Augustinus, libro 18o, capitulo 6o.** In ãe manere of wonder-
ful tornynge, chaungynge, and schappinge of men and wommen
hit is to holdynge ãat ãendes and euell men move make no
kynde, noþer chaungge ãat is i-made. Neuerþelles Almyþti
God soffrep likenesse of pinges dyuersliche forto sene,4 so þat
pe fantasie of a man þat gudrep likenesse of dyuerse pinges in
þouþt, and in sweuenynge5 whanne þe wittes beþe i-lette and
takeþ noon hede, makeþ to seme likenesse of bodies ãat is
nouþt present, also of ymages and of dyuers likeness and
schappes of pinges þat neuere were i-made; and so men
takyng semeþ þat þey sceþ likenesse and schappe of dyuers
pinges and of bestes, as men semeþ slepyng and metyng
wonderful sweuenes, and semeþ somtyme þat þey bereþ many
ful heuy burpennes; [bote and þei þen berpennes]6 fendes bereþ
hem, and so God þat demeþ riþtfulliche suffreþ mankynde
be ofte so bigiled. R. Of þis matyre loke7 wiþ ynn e more
pleynliche after þe batayle of Troye.

---

1 chauffers, a.; chauers, Cx.
2 holw, a.
3 springaþ, y. (not a or B.)
4 sene, MS. (not a or Cx.)
5 dreamynge or sweuenynge, Cx.

(work has various slight alterations.)

Trevisa's translation is not very in-
telligible, and may be a little cor-
rupt.

5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 lokÐ, MS. (not a.)
7 that he] These words should be
cancelled apparently.
CAP. III.

De dissimilitudine inter hominem atque mundum.¹

Licet igitur homo³ juxta prædicta conveniat cum mundo et ejus contentis, in nonnullis tamen conditionis⁴ prærogativis a mundo discrepat. Nam licet corpus humanum ab initio fuerit⁵ de limo formatum, suæ tamen animæ ita fuit proportionatum ut in eo esset complexionis æqualitas, organizationis conformitas, staturœ rectitudo, et figure pulchritudo. Et sic foret deinceps corpus animæ obtemperans⁶ sine pugna rebellionis, propagans sine pronitate libidinis, vegetabile sine defectione vigoris, immutabile⁷ sine corruptione mortalitatis. Quinetiam conceptus hominis⁸ fieret sine pudore, partus sine dolore, victus sine sudore,⁹ motus membrorum sine errore.¹⁰ Ad haec datus¹¹ sibi fuit paradisus ad habitaculum, mulier ad consortium,

¹ Title wanting in MSS.
² C.D. needlessly prefix Ranulphus.
³ homo after prædicta, B.
⁴ suæ added in A.B.C.D.
⁵ fuerat, C. (not D.)
⁶ contemporans, D.
⁷ immortalitatis, A.; immortale, B.
⁸ humanus, B.
⁹ labore, C.D.
¹⁰ horrore, C.D.
¹¹ So C.D., correctly; data A.E.; the longer form of the chronicle changing for the worse.
Capitulum tertium.

They man, as it is i-seide, be liche [and] 1 acord to pe world, and to 2 pinges pat ben conteynd pearynne; neuerpeles in many poyntes of manis condicioun, of his prerogatife 3 and his worpynesse, he is dyuerse and vuliche to the world. For pey mannis body 4 we[re] 5 firste i-made of erthe, neuerpeles hit was [so] 6 couenabliche and so acordynge to pe soule, pat in mannis body was euuenes of complexioun, acordynge of 7 lemes, riȝtfullnesse of stature, faurnes of schappe. And so schulde pe body afterward be buxom to pe soule wip oute eny rebelnesse, 8 and brynge forp children wip oute eny synne, and lyue wip oute eny defaute of strenge, and be translated and chaunged in 9 pe blisse of heuene wip oute deienge and deep. Also he schulde gete and conceyue children wip oute schame, and a womman schulde bere children wip oute sorwe and woo, and haue mete and drynke wip oute sweet 10 and travaunce, sterynge and meuyng in lymes wip oute eny myshare. And to al this paradys was i-ȝene to 11 mankynde fortwo wonye yyne,

Capitulum tertium.

Therefore thanȝhe man haue convenience with the worlde, after thynges aforeside, and with the contentes off hit, neuertheless he differrethe from the worlde in mony prerogatifs of his kondicion. But thanȝhe the body of man was made in the begynnenge of the erthe, hit was so proporionate to the sawle that equalite of complexion was in hit, conformite of organizacion, rectitude of stature, and pulcritude of figure, and so the body scholde be afterward obtemperate to the sawle with owte fiȝhte of rebellion, vegetable with owte defawte of strenghte, immutable with owte corrupcion of mortalite. And also the concepcion of men scholde be withowte schame, the byrthe with owte sorowe, lyevenge with owte laboure, the movenge of membres with owte errourence. Paradise was iȝen

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 in two, Cx.
3 prerogatife, a.
4 body] om. a.
5 were, a., Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 of] to, Cx.
8 withouten eny rebellion, Cx.
9 in to, Cx.
10 sweet, a.; sweete, Cx.
11 for] om. a., Cx.
lignum vitae ad edulium, universa creatura ad solatium, et tandem ipse Deus in premium. Sed heu cito eecidit tantus signifer, qui mane oriebatur. In honore quippe constitutas non intellexit; comparatus est jumentis inhaerendo vetitis, adeo ut ab illo die corpus corruptum per peccatum aggravet animam, caro concupiscat adversus spiritum, et proni sint sensus hominis in malum, inimicique hominis domestici sensus ejus; quinetiam tentatio sit tota vita hominis super terram, sed et ipsa animae accidentia ipsum corpus afficiant et transmutent, sicut e converso corporis passiones redundant in animae perturbationem. Insuper et inest homini assiduitas deficiendi, impossibilitas permanendi, facilitas cadendi, difficultas resurgendi, vilitas nascendi, anxietas vivendi, necessitas mortendi. *Plinius, libro xvij* capitulo primo. Et
and woman forto be manis [falawe],\(^1\) paradys to wonyng place, pe tree of lyf for mete, and al creatures for solace, al pe laste God hem 3 self to be manis mede. But alas pat so noble a banyour fil so sone, pat was erliche i-brou\(^2\)t and i-putte into 4 worschippe: pey\(^5\) knewe nou\(^3\)t pat pey\(^6\) schulde be liche to bestes, when he dede pe pat was forbode. From pat day forpward pe body pat is corupt by synne greuep pe soule. Pe flesche coueytepe a\(^7\)censt pe soule, and manis wittes tornep and assen-te pe li\(^8\)tliche to eucl. A mannes owne meynal wittes beep his owne enemies. So pat al a manis lyf is in temptacion while he lyuep here in erpe, and pe disposicioun of pe soule rulep, meyn-teneth, helpep, and confortep pe body; but a\(^9\)cenward pe wrecched dispocisioun 6 of pe body distourbep pe soule. Also man 7 is euere faillye pe [and] aweyward,\(^8\) he may nou\(^3\)t stedfastliche abide; he salep li\(^9\)tliche, but he may nou\(^3\)t li\(^9\)tliche arise; profit of berpe is sorwe 9 and care 10 to lyuynge; and man most nedes die. P\(^{10}\)linius, libro 17\(^\circ\), capitulo 13\(^\circ\). And pey alle opere pat beep i-made haue schilles,\(^12\) to man as a inhabitacion, where he scholde reioyce thynges afore seide, and a woman was zi\^fen to be his felowe, the tre of lyfe to refreschenge, euery creature to a solace, and at the laste God was zi\^fen to hym in to reward. But alas so nowble a sterre hade soone a falle that spronge fulle tymely, whiche sette in honor hade not knowlege of hym selfe, whiche is comparable to brute bestes in drawenge\(^10\) to thynges prohibite, in so moche that the corruppe body from that day laborethe to greve the sawle. For scripture dothe expresse that the flesche couyepe ageyne the sawle, and the wittes of a man be prompte to synne, and the propre wittes of a man be enmyes to hym, so that temptacion is alle the lyfe of man on the erthe. And also the accidentalle thynges of the sawle punnysche and transmute the body, soe in lyke wise the passiones of the body redunde in to the per- turbacion of the sawle, wherefore assiduitie of feyntenesse longethe to a man, impossibile of permanence, ly\^htenes to falle, difficulte to aryse,\(^13\) disease to lyve, and necessite to dye. P\(^{10}\)linius, libro 17\(^\circ\), capitulo 13\(^\circ\). And sythe other

---

\(^1\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^2\) and atte, Cx.
\(^3\) him, a.
\(^4\) in, a.
\(^5\) he, Cx. (twice.)
\(^6\) So a. and Cx.; dispensacion, MS.
\(^7\) So a. and Cx.; men, MS.
\(^8\) and awayward, a.; and wayward, Cx.
\(^9\) So Cx.; profit is (is of, a.) berbe sorwe, MS. and a.
\(^10\) in hym, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\(^11\) Reference transposed in MS.
\(^12\) shelles, Cx.
\(^13\) a rysce, MS., and similarly elsewhere.
cum cætera producta aut habeant testas, cortices, coria, villos, setas, pilos, plumas, pennas, aut squamas, homo ipse, tegumento carens, nudus effusus plorat in principio membris devinctus, quadrupedi similis, animante quovis debilius, nihil sciens, nihil aliud de se valens nisi sponte flere. Nulli uspium vita fragilior, nulli morbus gravior, nulli libido major, nulli rabies acerior. Denique cætera animantia ad sese afficiuntur, in suo genere prope degunt, non seviunt nisi ad sui dissimilia et ad sibi contraria solummodo et adversa. Homo tamen in seipso sibi contrarius in sibi proximum grassatur, et cum pro-pinqua defecerint in seipsm saevit. \( \text{Ranulphus.} \) Ad hoc duplex homini inflicted est infortunium, et hoc quidem juste, unum ab intra, ut qui in vita sua projecit intima sua jam illa non habeat tranquilla, sed bella sibi pariant intestina. Aliud quoque incommodum imminet ab extra, ut qui suo superiori Deo obtemperare noluit, jam suum inferiorum sibi sentiat

---

1 et cortices, A.
2 velles, A.
3 devinctus] originally destitutus, but devinctus written above line in another ink in C.; destitutus, D.
4 animante, B.
5 Nula, A.E.
6 vitum, A.
7 Pliny has probe, which is much better.
8 suæ] so A.B.; om. C.D.; sibi, E.
9 et] om. E.
10 solummodo] om. C.D.
11 sibi] so A.B.C.D.; sibiipsi, E.
12 defecerit, C.D.
13 saevit] om. B.
14 vita sua] viila, B.
15 parent, B.
16 scilicet Deo, B.
ryndes, skynnes, wolle, leer, bristles, feperes, wynges, oper
scales, man is i-bore wip oute eny helynge, naked and
bare, and anoone at his berpe he gynneth forto wepe; at pe
bygynnynge liche to a beste, but his lymes faillep hym, and
may nouȝt helpe hym self. But he is febliere than any oþer beest; he can non helpe, he may nouȝt doo of hym
self, bot wepe wip alle his myȝt. No beest hap lyf more
brutel and vnsiker. Noon hap siknesse more grevous, noon
more likyng to doo oþer wise þan he schulde. Noon is
more cruel. Also oþer bestes loueþ everiche oþer of þe
same kynde, and wonþe to gidres, and beþe not cruel but
to bestes of oþer kynde þat þeþe contrarye to hem. But
man tournþ þat manere doyng wip so done, and is contrarye
to hym self and cruel to oþer men; and he may not reche for
to grene oþere, þan he bycomeþ angry and cruel to hym self.
[ð.] 4 And þat to al þis man hap þweic 5 myshappes, and þat
ryȝþfulliche: oon is of hym selue wip ynone hym; 6 so þat he
þat þreþe awny þees and reste þat wip þynne hym in
his þynynge, he hap neþeþ 7 þees ne reste, but wære and
stryþ wip ynone. Anþer myþshap man hap wip oute forþ,
so þat he þat wolle not be sogette to God þat is aboue hym,
now he feþeþ his vnderlynges rebel to him. So þat pe
thynges brouȝhte furthe other haue schelles, barke, skynnes, MS. HARL.
lure, plumes other pennes, or scales; a man entretie in to
this worlde bare and nakede, wontenge eny courenge,
wepenge in his begynmenge, more feble then eny other
beste. For he can not do eny other thyng of him selve but
wepe. The lyfe of noon other thyngse is more frayle, replete
with moste infirmite, noon beste more lecherous. For alle
other bestes lufeþ to gedre in theire kynde, and lyve to gedre,
not cruelle but to bestes of other kyndes and contrarious
to theim; but a man is contrarious ofteymes to his kynde
and to hym selve. R. Where fore ij, infortunys he þiſfen
to man by ryȝþteuoneness, oon is interialle in that he caste
furthe his partes interialle in his lyve, he scholde not hauæ
theim now in tranquilite, but that the partes interialle
scholde be to hym a conflite. That other infortuny is
exterialle, that man scholde hauæ his inferior rebellante to
hym, in that he was inobediente to God his maker, so that

1 feþer, a. 5 So a. and Cx.; mystweic happes,
2 helynge or keueryny, Cx. MS.
3 and yf, Cx. 6 hym] om. a., Cx.
4 Added from Cx. 7 þat] om. Cx.
8 noþer, a.
rebellantem. Ita plane ut reliquae creaturae, quae sibi concesse fuerant ad solatium fragilitatis, ad sustentaculum recreationis, ad vehiculum imbecillitatis, ad obsequium subjectionis, ad spectaculum admirationis, jam magna ex parte hominis aspectum refugiant, tactum abhorreant, dominium non sufferant, convictum reformident.

CAP. IV.

De creatione Adam.

Formatus itaque Adam homo primus de limo terrae extra paradisum in agro Damasceno sexto die seculi, et in paradisum translatus, peccatoque eodem die commisso dejectus est post meridiem. Sicque cecidit de statu innocentiae ad statum misericie, vir quidem in primordiiis suis dulces in domo Dei capere potens cibos, sed vetita volens et prohibita probans cecidit ab alto ad immum, de luce ad limum, de incolat uad exilium, de domo ad devium, de fructu ad fletum, de laude ad luctum, de joco ad jurgium, ab amore ad odium, de prosperitate ad poenalitatem, de sospitate ad infirmitatem, de pene ad penuriam, de gratia ad culpam, de pace [ad rixas, de gaudio] ad poenam, de familia-

1 reliqua creatura, D.E. 8 tenebras, D.
2 fuerat concessa, D.E. (but the verbs below in the plural).
3 convictum reformident] om. D. 10 de, C.D.
4 Title in E. only. 11 dulcore ad absinthium, added in C.D. The latter MS. has several clerical errors and omissions.
5 igitur, C.D. 12 Added from B.
6 qui, B., om. D.
creatures that were iuxtceue man to solas of brutenesse, to susteynynge of confort, to bere vp feblinesse, to seruisse and subiectioni, to merour and schewyge of wondres, now for pe moste deel he flee manys siȝt, and his felawschippe, and his companye, and hate his handelynge, and wil nouȝt of his lordschippe, and drede sore to lyue and dwolle with hym.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM was i-made of erpe in the filde of Damask pe sixte day of pe world, and i-brouȝt in Paradys, and synned pe same day, and was i-putte out after mydday. And he fel out of pe state of innocence and of welp in to pe state of wrecchednesse and of woe. Man in his bygymnyge myȝte take wel swete mete in Goddis owne hous, but he desired pat he schulde nouȝt, and he assaied pat was forbode, and fel out of hiȝe in to lowh, out of liȝt in to derkness and slym, out of his owne londe and contray in to outlawynge, out of hous in to maskynge and wayles contray and lond, out of fruit into wepyngge and wo, out of preisyngge in to deel and sorrow, out of merpe in to stryl, oute of loue in to hate, out of ioye and welp in to peyne and tene, out of helpe and grace in to gile and synne, out of pees in to peyne, bestes and other creatures, which were create to the solace of man, to the sustentacle of recreacion, to the obsequy of subieccion, to the spectacle of admiracion, floc in grote parte the siȝhte of man, abhorrenge his towchenge, takenge not hym as their lorde.

Of the creation of Adam, the firste man.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM the firste man, yformerde of the slyche of the erthe, in the filde Damascene with owte Paradise, in the vighe day of the wyreld, and translate in to Paradise, was deicete for synne, doen that same day, from Paradise after none. And so Adam felle from the state of innocency to the state of miserye, from the lic place to a lawe place, from liȝhte to darkenese, from inhabitacion to exile, from frute to weipenge, from ioy to peyne, from luife to hate, from swetenesse vn to bytternesse, from prosperite to penance, from healethe to infirmitie, from grace to blame, from familiarte to offense.
Cain et Abel.

ritate ad offensam.\(^1\) Methodius. Hic\(^2\) Adam quintodecimo vitæ sue anno genuit Cayn\(^3\) et Calmanam sororem ejus.\(^4\) Iterum\(^5\) post hoc\(^6\) quintodecimo anno,\(^7\) quod\(^8\) est trecesimo vitæ sue anno, genuit Adam\(^9\) Abel et Delboram sororem ejus, sed interfecto Abel\(^10\) luxerunt eum parentes ejus centum annis. Ranulphus. Adam secundum Hebræos centesimo trecesimo ætatis sue anno genuit Seth, et postmodum\(^11\) vixit octingentis annis;\(^12\) sed Septuaginta interpretet et Isidorus, Etymologiarum\(^13\) libro quinto, dicit Adam fuisse ducentorum triginta annorum ante nativitatem Seth, et postmodum\(^14\) vixisse septingentis annis; et sic Adam in toto vixit nongentis triginta annis; et mortuus sepultus est in Hebron,\(^15\) quod est Carithabaræ, quod sonat,\(^16\) Urbis quatuor; id est quatuor patriarcharum qui ibi sepulti sunt, seilicet Adam, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob.\(^17\)

Seth centum quinque annorum\(^18\) genuit Enos, et post vixit octingentis\(^19\) annis, sed Septuaginta interpretet\(^20\) dixerunt\(^21\) Seth\(^22\) ducentorum quinque annorum\(^23\) genuisse Enos, et post\(^24\) vixisse dec. vij. annis.\(^25\)

Enos nonaginta annorum genuit Caynan, et post vixit octingentis\(^26\) quindecim annis; sed Septuaginta interpretet dicerunt Enos centum nonaginta annorum genuisse Caynan, et post vixisse septingentis\(^27\) quin-

---

1 C.D. add de prospero ad per- nuile, de vivido ad mortuile. B. adds, after offensam, de dictione ad im- bedientiam.
2 Hic itaque, C.D.
3 Cayn, B.
4 saum, D., and so below.
5 Icen, A.B.
6 hcec, D.
7 xe, annis, B.
8 id, C. (not D.)
9 Adam] om. C.
10 sed ... Abel] eo (Abel, D.)
11 vero interfecit, C.D.
12 posten, D.
13 Petrus is here inserted in C.D.
14 post, D.
15 Ebrom, A.D.
16 quod sonat ... Jacob] om. D.
17 et Jacob, B.
18 secundum Hebræos, added in C. D., and so below.
19 septingentis, B.
20 et Isidorus, added in C.D.
21 dixerit, B.
22 Seth] om. A.
23 ducentorum annorum et quinque, B.
24 postmodum, B.
25 D. adds: itaque in toto vixit
26 septingentis, B.
27 ducentis, A.
out of homynesse into offence and wreepe. _Methodius._ "Dis Adam pe fiftene þere of his lyf gat ¹ Cayn, pat is comounliche i-cleped Caym, and his suster Calman. Danne fiftene þere afterward, whom Adam was pritty þere olde, he gat Abel and his suster Delbora. But Abel was i-slawe, and his fader and moder made [deel and] ² sorwe i-now ³ an hundred wynter. R. As Hebrewes ceepe, Adam gat Seth pe þere of his age an hundred and pritty, and lyued after eiȝte honderd þere, and so Adam lyued in al nyne honderd þere and pritty. _Trevisa._ þere were þre score and ten þat torned Holy Writte out of Hebrew in to Grewe, and þey beþ i-cleped þe þre score and ten. R. Adam deide and was i-buried in Ebron, pat is i-cleped also Cariatharbe, pat is to menynge ⁴ pe cite of foure, þat beþ patriarches þat beþ i-buried þere, þat beþ Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth gat Enes whan he was an honderd þere olde and fyne, and lyuede afterward eiȝte honderd þere; but þe þre ⁵ score and ten seith þat Sceþ was two honderd þere and fyne whan he gat Enos, and lyued afterward seuen honderd þere and seuene. Enos, foure score þere olde and ten, gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward eiȝte honderd

_Methodius._ Adam gat Cayn and Calmana his suster in the xvthe þere of his age; also in the xvthe þere after that, which is the xxxvi þere of his age, he gat Abel and Delbora his sustyr, but Abel sleyne, Adam and Eve wailede his dethe by an c. þere folowenge. R. And, after men of Hebrewe, Adam gat Seth in the c. and xxxvi þere of his age, and lyflede after vijæ þere. But, after the lxxv interpretatores and after Isidorus, _Ethi. libro quinto._ Adam was of ijæ and xxxvi þere in age afore the natynite of Seth, seyenge Adam to havye lyvede after vijæ þere. And soe hude Adam in age ixæ þere and xxxvi, which dyenge was g. 83 æ. buriede in Ebron, that is callede Cariatharbe, whiche sowndythe a iij. cite, that is to say, of iiij. patriarches whiche were bericde theare, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth, beenge of a c. and v. þere in age, gat Enos, and lyvede after vijæ þere; but after the lxxv interpretatores. Seth, beenge of cc. and v. þere, gat Enos, lyvenge after vijæ and also vij. þere. Enos of xæ. þere gat Caynan, lyvenge after decc. and xv. þere. But after the lxxvi inter-

1 _bigate_, Cx.; and so below sometimes.
2 Added from a. and Cx., who has _dole_.
3 _i-now_ om. a. and Cx.; which have for him, probably rightly.
4 _meane_, Cx.
5 _the þre_, a. and Cx.; the latter has some omissions below.
decim annis. 1 Ranulphus. 2 Iste Enos dicitur specialiter 3 invocasse nomen Domini primo; 4 quia forte primus invenit verba deprecatoria, vel secundum Hebreos 5 quia 6 fecit imagines ad honorem Dei, vel 7 ad excitandum pigritiam humanae memoriae in Deum. 8

Cainan. Caynan septuaginta annorum genuit Malaleel, et post vixit octingentis quadraginta annis; sed 9 Septuaginta interpretes 10 preponunt centum annos ad septuaginta, et postmodum subtrahunt centum. 11

Mahalaleel. Malalael 12 sexaginta quinque 13 annorum genuit Jared, 14 et postmodum 15 vixit octingentis triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes 16 preponunt centum annos ante 17 sexaginta quinque, et 18 post subtrahunt centum. 19

Jared. Jared 20 centum sexaginta duorum 21 annorum genuit Enoch, et vixit postmodum 22 octingentis annis. In hoc concordant Septuaginta interpretes cum aliis. 23

Enoch. Enoch sexaginta quinque 24 annorum genuit Mathusale, 25 et postmodum vixit trecentis sexaginta annis, ambulavitque cum Deo, et translatus est; sed Septuaginta interpretes preponunt centum ad sexaginta quinque. Iste 26 Enoch adinvenit 27 aliquas literas, et aliquos libros scripsit, sicut innuit Judas Apostolus in canonica sua; sub cujus tempore 28 Adam creditur

1 dicitur... annis] om. B.; sed lxx. et Isidorus ante Caynan ponunt 90 annos et [diciunt] post 715 vixisses; ita quod dies ejus sunt 908 anni, C.D.
2 Ranulphus] om. A.B.C.
3 specialiter fertur, B.
4 primo] om. B.
5 secundum Hebreos] prout dicit Hebrei, A.B.C.
6 primus, A.B.
7 et, A.B.
8 Sentence added in margin of C., slightly abbreviated; absent from D.
9 sed... centum] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus nongenti decem anni, B.
10 interpretes] et Isidorus, C.D.
11 et decem annos] ins. C.D.
12 Malaleel, E.
13 45, B.
14 Jared, B.
15 post, C.D., and so frequently.
16 interpretes] et Isidorus, C.D., which add the reference to Isidore throughout. After this it is not noted.
17 ad, C.D.
18 et... centum] ita quod vixit in toto 895 annis, C.D.
19 sed... centum] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus 895 anni, B.
20 secundum Hebreos, added in C. D.
21 cxlij, B.
22 post, C.D.
23 interpretes... aliis] et Ysidorus, C.D.
24 cxl, B.
25 Matussale, A.
26 Iste... fuit] om. C.D.
27 invenit, A.
28 diebus, A.B.
pretatores, Enoch of c. and xc. yere to have gotten Cainan, and to have lyvede afterwarde viijc. and xv. This Enos is seyde to have callede to helpe specially and firste, the name of Godde; for, as men of Ebrewes saye, he made firste ymage to pe honor of God, to excite the slawthe of the memory of man in to the lawde of God. Cainan beenge of lxxd. yere gate Malaleel, and lyvede after viijc. and xlvi. yere; but the lxxd. interpretares addde. an e. yere afofe lxxd, and after thei withdrawe an c. yere. Malaleel of lx. and v. yere gate Iareth, and lyvede after viijc. and xxxvi. yere; but the lxxd. interpretares putte an c. yere afofe lx. and v. yere, and take after that an e. yere away. Iareth of an clxij. yere gate Enoch, and lyvede after viijc. yere; and the lxxd. interpretares acorde with other in that. Enoch of lx. and v. yere gate Matussale, and lyvede after iiijc. yere, and walkede with God, and was translate; but the lxxd. interpretares putte an c. yere to lxv. This Enoch founde somme letters firste and did write bookes, as Iudas thapostle reheersethe in Canonica sua; in the daies of whom mony men suppose Adam to have diede. And lyke as the vijthe in

---

1 So c. and Cx.: and, MS.
2 Enoch, MS., but Enoch below. The bar seems here and elsewhere to be only redundant.
3 fourse score and ten] om. Cx.
4 Added from c. and Cx.
5 apostle, a.
6 pistol, a.; epistle, Cx.
7 trouneth, Cx.
mortuus fuisse. Et sicut in generatione Cayn septimius ab Adam, scilicet Lamech, pessimus fuit, sic in generatione Seth septimius ab Adam, scilicet Enoch, optimus fuit.

Mathussale centum octoginta annorum genuit Lamech, et post vixit septingentis duobus annis, hoc est usque ad diluvium secundum veriorem traditionem, et non ultra per quatuordecim annos sicut quidam posuerunt. Sed anno vitæ sue nongentesimo sexagesimo nono, quo cœpit diluvium, mortuus est.

Lamech centum octoginta duorum annorum genuit Noe, et postmodum vixit quingentis nonaginta annis.

CAP. V.

De posteritate Lamech.

Cayn primogenitus Adae genuit Enoch, qui genuit Irad, qui genuit Maauiel, qui Mathussael, qui Lamech.  

---

1 obsisse, A.B.  
2 Ut, A.  
3 Iste... fuit] om. C.D.  
4 secundum annos, ins. C.D.  
5 septem, ins. A.  
6 postmodum, B.  
7 782, C.D.  
8 sed non ultra, ins. B.  
9 variorem, B.  
10 sed, B.  
11 dixit, B.  
12 secundum annos, ins. C.D.  
13 annorum] om. E.  
14 post, A.  
15 quinque, ins. B.C.D.  
16 Title wanting in MS.  
17 Cain, A. The following passage occurs before this in C. (It commences with a large capital N, but the words Cap. 5. are placed opposite Cayn primogenitus, &c., in the margin of C.) — "Noe vero quingenti annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japheth; et spatio centum annorum conficiens arcam, sexeente primo die secundi mensis, introdeces ad se per octo dies quæ præcepta fuerant introduci, ante-"
pis Enoch this tymce; and as [in] ¹ Cayn his children Lamech pe Trevisa. sevenpe from Adam was worst; so in Sep his children Enoch sevenpe from Adam was best. Metusale, an honbred þere olde foure skore and seuene, gat Lamech, and lyued afterward seven honbred þere and tweyne, þat was anoone to Noes flood. Lamech, an honbred þere olde foure skore and tweyne, gat Noe, and lyued aftirward fyue honbred þere foure score and ten.

**Capitulum quintum.**

Caym, Adams firste sone, gat Enoch, he gat Irad, he gat Mauaiel,² he gat Matusale, he gat Lamech. pis Lamech

the generacion of Cayn, whiche was Lamech, was moste wyckede in his generacion, soe in lyke wise Enoch, the vijth from Adam, was moste goode. Matusale of c.lxxx. and vij. yere gat Lamech, lyvenge after vijc. and ij. yere, that is to the grete floode of Noe, and noo longer, after the trewe tradicion; by xiiiij. yeres, as somme men putte: but he dyede in the ixc. yere lx. and ix., in whiche yere the grete floode began. Lamech of a c.lxxxij. yere gat Noe, and lyvede afterwarde d.xc. and v. yere.

**Capitulum quintum.**

Cayn the firste son of Adam gate Enoch, whiche gate Iradus, whiche gate Mauaiel; and he gate Matussale, whiche

1 Added from β. γ. | ² So a.; Manuel, MS.

Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo secundo. Homines primum tanquam nudi et inermes, nec contra bestias aut homines tuti, nec receptacula frigoris aut aestus habentes, naturali solertia oppida cecigenverunt; unde et tuguria et casas ex virgultis et arundinibus contexerunt, ut vita eorum foret tutior.

Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo. Lamech septimus ab Adam et pessimus primo induxit bigamiam, et sic adulterium contra legem Dei et contra Dei decretum.

Josephus. Jabel primus greges ordinavit a characteribus, distinctit sedes ab agnis, seniores a junioribus divisit. Petrus, capitulo xxvij°. Tubalcayn invenit Iubal, inventor consonantiarum, om. B. Post inveni fierunt; sed inventor fuit musicus, id est, consonantiam; ut labor pastoralis vertatur in delicias. Et quia audierat Adam prophetasse de duobus indicis,ipse scripsit hanc artem in duabus columnis, in utraque totam; in marmore contra diluvium, in lateritia contra incendium, ne periet ars inventa. See p. 232. The true reference is, to c. 28, both here and just above and also below, p. 228.
took tweie wifes, Ada and Sella, and gat tweie sones, on Ada Iabel, pat was fader of hem pat wonede in tente and in pauylouns. And Tubal pat was fader of organistes and of harpores. And Lamech gat on Sella Tubalcæan, pat was a smyth worshipye wip hammer; and his suster Noema, sche was first fyndere of one wyngye craft. *Iosephus.* Caym gadered richesse violentliche by strengpe, and made men be leechhoures and pene, and torne dymples lywyngge [of] 2 men to fyndye of mesures and of wyßtes; he ordeyned merkes [and] 2 bounds of fildes and of fondes, and bulde a citee and walled hit, for he dودde 3 ful sore hem pat he hadde i-greued. *Isidorus, libro 15°, capitulo 2°.* Men were first naked and vn-armed, nonüt siker azěnst bestes, nooper azěnst men, and hadde no place to fonge hem, and to kephe hem fro 4 colde and for hete; pan by besynesse of kynde witte þey beponüt hem of buldyngye, perfore þey bulde hem smale cootes and cabans, and waf ham and heled hem wip smale 5 twigges and wip reed, pat hire lyf myȝte be þe more saaf. *Petrus, capitulo 27°.* Lamech, þe seacspe from Adam and most schrewе, was þe firste pat borȝte yt bygamy, and so spousebreche azěnst þe lawe of God and of kynde, and azěnst Goddis owne dome. 5 *Iosephus.* Iabel ordeynede firste flokkes of bestes, and merkis to knowe oon from anoþer, and departide kyddes from gate Lamech. This Lamech, takenge to hym ij. wifes, Ada and Sella, gate of Ada Iabel and Tubal, and of his oþer wife, Sella, Tubalcaym, whiche was a smythe, and Noema, his suster, whiche founde firste the arte of wyewithye. *Iosephus.* Caym gedrenge violentelie richesse, desirede men to thyte and robberie, chauenge the simple lyfe of men, founde measures firste, and made a cite, dreedenge men, whom he hurte. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* The firste men, as bare and with owte armorre, not sure ageyne men either bestes, hauenge as noo places for coldenesse other hete, made places to theyme by naturaille reason of roddes and reedes, that their life myȝhte be in more suerte. *Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Lamech, the vijthe from Adam, and the moste wickede man, inducide firste bigamy, and so adulterye, ageyne the lawe of God and of nature, and ageyne the ordinancye of God, *Iosephus.* Iabel ordeynede firste flockes, diuidenge kyddes from lambes with

---

1 *was firste fyndere of* fonde firste, Cx.
2 Added from a.
3 *drag, Cx.*
artem ferrarium et sculpturam; quo fabricante Tubal
sono malleorum delectatus proportiones et consonantias
ex eorum ponderibus inventit, id est, exercitator fuit
consonantiarum, non autem inventor instrumentorum
musicalium, quia illa longe postmodum sunt inventa.
Ranulphus. Hie dicunt docti, quod licet Tubal ad
alleviandum tedium pastorale musicam primus exercuerit,
non ideo rationem consonantiarum per pondera
primus inventit; sed magis Pythagoras. De quo vide
infra, libro tertio, de Pythagora, capitulo undecimo.

Petrus, capitulo xxvii. Lamech sagittarius, sed
excuiterit adolescetem ductorem, cum exerceret
venationem pro delectatione et usu pellium; quia non
erat usus carnium ante diluvium. Casu interfecit
Cayn latentem inter frutecta, aestimans ipsum esse feram.
Et quia ductor suus cum non premunierat, eum similiter
interfecit. Et ideo cum peccatum Cayn sit punitum

\[1 \text{ adinvenit, C.D.} \]
\[2 \text{ id . . . xxvii}^{\mathrm{a}} \text{ abbreviated in C.D. to—"Quod tamen Gracci Pythagora}
\text{(Pittagorae, MSS.) fabulose as-
\text{cribant; sic etiam excogitavit}
\text{operari in metallis ex figuris, quas}
\text{metalla liquefacta referebant."} \]
\[3 \text{ illa after postmodum, B.} \]
\[4 \text{ videatur, B. ; om. A.} \]
\[5 \text{ de . . . undecimo} \text{ capítulo de Pitt-
\text{agora, B.} \]
\[6 \text{ capitulo undecimo} \text{ om. A.} \]
\[7 \text{ quia . . . diluvium} \text{ om. C.D.} \]
\[8 \text{ tamen, B.} \]
Lambren, and ʒonge from olde. Petrus. Tubalcaun firste 
smythes craft and graynynge, and whan Tubalcaun wrouȝte in 
his smyþes craft, Tubal hadde grete likynge to hire þe 
hameres sowne, and he fonde proportionus and acorde of 
melodye by wyȝte in þe hameres, and so þey vset hym moche 
in þe acorde of melodye, but he was nouȝt fyndere of þe 
instrumentis of musyk, þor þey were i-founde longe afterward. R. Here wise men telleþ þat þey Tubal vsete firste 
musyk for to releue hym self7 while he was an herde, and 
kepte bestes, þor all þat he was nouȝt þe firste þat fonde 
þe resoun of acorde in musyk by wyȝtes, but Pittagorws fonde 
Petrus, 27°. Lamech, an archer but somdel blynde, hadde 
a ʒongelynge þat hadde hym while he honted for playe and 
likynge, òper for-loye of bestes skynnys, þor men ete no 
flesche to fore Noes flood. And hit happe þat he slow Caym, 
þat lipted among þe busshe, and wende þat it were a wylyde 
beste; and for his leder warne hym noȝt, he slow hym also. 
And þerfore sippe þat Caym his synne was i-punshed seuen-
carectes, and the elder from the yonger. Petrus, capitulo 27°. MS. Harl. 
Tubalcaun founde firste the arte of smythes and graveynge, 
whiche laborenge at the foerger, Tubal hauenge delectacion 
in the sownde of the maltes founde proporciounes and conso-
sou[n]ce of the weigþtes of theyme; that is to say, Tubal was 
an exciter of consou[n]ces but not the fynder of instrumentes 
usicalle, for thei were founde by a longe season after that 
tyme. R. But discrete men say, thanþe Tubal exercysede 
firste musike to auleiniate the tediosenes pastoralle, neverethe-
lesse he was not the firste fynder of the reason of consou[n]ce 
by weigþtes, but rather Pittagorws, of whom hit schalle be schewede in the thrydde booke. Petrus, 27° capitulo. 
Lameche the schoter hade a yonge man to his gouernour and 
lecher, whiche vsenge to hunte for delectacion and vse 
of skynnys, for men vsete not flesche afore the grete floode, 
did slec Cayn lyenge prinely in cornere, trewenge hit to 
hau bene a dere, whiche did slec also his leder, in that he 
ʒafe not to hym a monicion per of. Therefore, sythe the 
synne of Cayn was punyschede vij. folde, that is to say, in

1 lambren, a.; lambes, Cx.
2 smythercrafte, a.
3 So a. B. γ.; Tubal gan worke, MS.; Cx. has omissions here.
4 smythe, a.
5 sow, a.
6 in] of, Cx.
7 for his plesir, Cx.
8 one, Cx.
9 happede, a.
10 lofterd, Cx.
septuplum, id est in\(^1\) septima generatione,\(^2\) peccatum Lamech est punitum septuagesies\(^3\) septies, quia\(^4\) septuaginta et septem animae egressae sunt\(^5\) de Lamech, quae\(^6\) in diluvio perierunt; vel quia tot erant generationes inter Lamech et\(^7\) Christum, qui peanam pro omnibus solvit.

*Josephus.* Nullus putet falsum quod de tanta antiquorum longevitate legitur, cum ipsi essent religiosi, et pabula haberent opportuniora, et etiam propter gloriosas virtutes quas\(^8\) jugiter scrutabantur, scilicet astrologiam et geometriam, quae nunquam addiscere\(^9\) possent,\(^10\) nisi ad minus sexcentis viverent annis; quo in spatio magnus annus astrorum impletur.\(^11\) *Josephus.*\(^12\) Usque ad septimam generationem filii Seth fuerunt boni; sed postmodum\(^13\) viri\(^14\) abusi sunt viris, et mulieres mulieribus. *Genesis.* Ingressique filii Dei ad filias hominum, id est, filii Seth ad filias Cayn, genuerunt gigantes. *Petrus, vicesimo nono.*\(^15\) Et potuit esse, ut\(^16\) incubi daemones generarent gigantes, in quibus magnitudine corporum correspondebat immansitas.

---

1. *in* [So B.; om. E.]
2. *in septimam generationem,* [C. (not D.)]
3. *septuagesies,* [E.]
4. *id est,* [B.]
5. *sunt* [om. C.D.]
6. *qua* [om. C.D.]
7. *inter . . . et* [usque ad, C.D.]
8. *quas ipsi,* [B.]
9. *addicere,* [E.]
10. *possunt,* [A.]
11. Slightly varied in C.D.
12. Reference added from A.B.C.
13. *postmodum* [post 700 anno, C.D.]
14. *viri after sunt,* [B.]
15. *xxix* [om. C.D.]
fold, pat is in pe seuenpe generacion; for Lamech 1
was pe seuenpe from Adam in pat lyne; Lamech his synne
was i-punysched seuen and seunty folde; for seuen and
seunty children pat come of hym were dede in Noes floode.
Opere for so many generacionous were bytwene Lamech
and Crist, pat payed a payne for vs alle.² Josephus. No
man schal trowe pat it is false, pat is i-rud of so longe lyuynge
of men pat were somtyme, for pey luysede faeire lyf, and
hadde conenable and elene mete and drynke, and also for
blisful vertues pat pey vsede, and made hem besy aboute
astrologie and gemetric, pat pey myhte neuere lerne but 3[if] pey
lyuysde sixe hundred zere at pe leste; for in so longe tyme
is pe grete zere of [pe]³ sterres fulfilled. Petrus. Seth
his children were good men anon to pe seuenpe generacion;
but afterward men mys vseede men, and women [mysusede
women].⁴ Genesis. Godes sones took men douȝtres, pat is to
menynte, Seth his sones took Caym his douȝtres, and gete
gentis. Petrus 29. And hit myȝhte be pat Incubus,⁵ suche
feudes as liep⁶ by wommen in likenes of men, made gentes
be i-gete, in pe whiche geantes gretenes of herte answerep
and acordep to pe hugeneses of body. But after Noes flood

the viʒ genevation; the synne of Lamech was punyschede
lxx⁷ tymes viʒ tymes, for lxviʒ. sawles commenge furthe
from Lamech were perschede in the grete floode. Other
elles so many generaciones were betwene Lamech and Criste,
which redemede mankynde. Josephus. I move that a man
thenke not this to be fals that is redde of the longe lyfes
of men in that tyme, sythe thei were religious men, and
oprotune exhibitien was ziffen to theyme, hauengne glorious
vertues, as astrology and geometry, whom thei serchode
besily, whiche thynge they myȝhte not haue lernede with-
owte thei hade lyuysde viʒ- yere, for the grete nowmobre of
sterres is fulfillede in that space. Petrus. The childer
of Seth were goode vs to the viʒ genevation; but after
that men abusede men, and women abusede women. Genesis.
The childer of God goenge to the doȝters of men, that is
to say the sonses of Seth to the doȝters of Caym, gate
gigantes. Petrus. And hit myȝhte be that spirittes gate
gigantes, in whom hugenesse of sawle was correspodente
to the hugenesse of theire body. But other gigantes were

1 Adam Lameeth, a.
2 payed rawnsome, Cx., who omits
for vs alle.
3 Added from a.
4 So Cx. and a.
5 Incuboy, a. γ; Incubi, β, Cx.,
a preferable reading; but possibly
Incubus may be meant for an
(English) plural.
6 lyqep, a.
De duabus columnis contra diluvium et ignem.

De diluvio Noe, et de arce constructione.

animorum. Sed et post diluvium nati sunt alii gigantes in Hebron, et postmodum\(^1\) fuerunt alii in Than civitate Ægypti, qui dicti sunt Tithanes\(^2\) de quorum stirpe fuit Enachim,\(^3\) cujus filii habitaverunt in Hebron,\(^4\) de quibus ortus est Golias.\(^5\)

*Josephus.* Illis temporibus scientes homines, sicut per Adam predictum fuerat, quod aut aquis aut igne fuerant perituri,\(^6\) studia sua et artes quas excogitaverant\(^7\) scripserunt in duabus columnis, lapidea et lateritia,\(^8\) ne tolleretur\(^9\) a memoria quod\(^10\) sapienter excogitaverant;\(^11\) in marmore\(^12\) quidem contra diluvium aquae, in lateritia contra\(^13\) incendium: E quibus ferunt columnam\(^14\) lapideam diluvium easisse, et adluc in Syria permansisse.\(^14\) *Genesis.* Igitur Noe cum quingentorum esset annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japhet, hoc est dicere, cum tantae esset aetatis\(^15\) habuit hos tres filios generatos, et post hoc spatio centum annorum confecit\(^16\) arcam de lignis levigatis, id est, politis, scilicet\(^17\) intus et extra bituminatam, trecentorum cubitorum in longitudine, quinquaginta cubitorum in latitudine, triginta cubitorum in altitudine, id est, a fundo\(^18\) ad tabulatum sub tignis, in qua fecit fenestram, et ostium

\(^{1}\) postea, B.C.D.  
\(^{2}\) Titanes, A.D.; Titantes, B.  
\(^{3}\) Eneachym, B.  
\(^{4}\) Ebron, A.  
\(^{5}\) Goliath, B.  
\(^{6}\) fuerunt perituri] fuerant perituri, B.; debuerunt perire, C.D.  
\(^{7}\) excogitaverunt, B.  
\(^{8}\) lateritia et marmorea, B.  
\(^{9}\) tolleretur, B.  
\(^{10}\) que, B.  
\(^{11}\) excogitaverunt, B.  
\(^{12}\) marmorea, A.B.  
\(^{13}\) contra ignis, B.  
\(^{14}\) Extract slightly abbreviated in C.D.  
\(^{15}\) esset aetatis tanta, B.  
\(^{16}\) Igitur...consecut] Fecit quoque Noe, C.D.  
\(^{17}\) scilicet] om. B.  
\(^{18}\) fundo usque, A.D.
were opere geantes i-bore in Ebron, and afterward were opere
in Than, a citee of Egipte, and pilke geantes were i-cleped
Tithanes ; of hem com Enachym, his children woned in Ebron;
of hem come Golias.  

*Josephus.* Pat tyrne men wiste, as
Adam hadde i-seide, pat pey schulde be destroyed by fuyr,
oper 1 by water, perfore bookes pat pey hadde i-made by grete
tramaille and studie pey closede hem in twicie grete pileres
i-made of marbly and of brend typle. In a pilere of marbly
for water, and in a pyler of tyle for fuyre ; for hit schulde
be i-saued in 2 pat manere to helpe [of] 3 mankynde. Me seip
pat pe pilere of stoon seaped pe flood and is zit in Siria.

*Genesis.* Panne whan Noe was fyue hondred 4 zere 4 olde
he gat Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; pat is to menynge, 5 when he
was so olde, he hadde þese þre sones i-gete, and he made, pe
schippe an hondred þere afterward of tymber, i-planed wel
smethe, 6 and was i-glewed with yyne. 7 Pe schippe was pre
hondred cubite long, and fifty cubite brood, and pritty cubite
high from pe cule 8 to pe hache vnder pe cabans and
houynge. Noe made a wyndow in his schippe, and a dore on

borne in Ebron after the grete floode, and other in Tan, 9 MS. Harl.
a citee of Egipte, which were called Egipte, of the stokke
of whom Enachim was, whose childer dwelled in Ebron, of
whom Golias come.  

*Josephus.* Men in that tyrne know-
enge by Adam that thei scholde pereche with water other
fyre, did write artes whom thei hade geten by labore in ij.
pillers of diverse ston, that hit scholde not pereche from
memory. Oon ston was of marbly, ageyne the floeuge of
water ; that other was of tyleston, ageyne the brenenge of
fyre ; whiche pillers be seyde to be zitte in Siria.  

*Genesis.* Perfore Noe beenge of v 6 yere in age, gate Sem, Cham,
and Iapheth, that is to say, when Noe was of that age, he
hade geten those childer, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; and
after that, by the space of a c. yere, Noe made the schippe of
pleyne burdes, dressede with picche with yyne and with owte,
conteynenge iijc cubites in longitute and li cubites in brode-
ness, xxxv cubites in hizhte, that was from the bothom of
hit vn to the haeche, where he made a wyndowe, and a

1 or elys, Cx.  
2 in by, Cx.  
3 Added from a. and Cx.  
4 zere he, MS. (not a.)  
5 to seyge, Cx.  
6 smoth, Cx.  
7 within and without, Cx.  
8 kele, a. and Cx.  
9 Can, Harl. MS.
in latere deorsum. Fecit etiam mansiunculas, coenacula, et tristega, consummans cani in cubito.

Petrus, capitulo tricesimo; Et facta est huc area instar corporis humani, in quo longitudo, scilicet a planta usque ad verticem, sexies major est latitudine, que extenditur a crate lateris ad cratem; et iterum longitudo decies major est altitudine, que extenditur a dorso usque ad ventrem. Hugutio de area. Area ista non valebat tot et tanta capere, nisi cubiti illi fuissent geometrici; cubitus enim communis et usualis continet pedem et dimidium, sive sex palmos. Palmus autem extenditur a pollice usque ad extremum digitum. Cubitus vero geometricus continet sex cubitos communes, quod est novem pedes.

Igitur arca perfecta, Noe sexcentesimo anno vitae sua ingressus est in cam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quae precepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium per annum paene terram occupans.

1 in] om. B.  
2 Paragraph abbreviated in C.D.  
3 capitulo xxx.] om. C.D.  
4 scilicet] om. B.  
5 est] om. B.  
6 Rabanus et, ins. C.D.  
7 valuit, C.D.  
8 tot et tanta] tanta et tot, B.; tam multa, C.D.  
9 usualis et communis, B.  
10 eam, B.; quoque, C.D.  
11 quod est] scilicet, B.; qui sunt, D.  
12 The rest of this chapter is wanting in C.; part is transposed to the beginning of the chapter. See previous note.  
13 terram fere, B.
pe side dounward, and housyngne and cabans wip dyuers flo-
rynge: pe wyndow was a cubyt highe. *Trevisa.* Here me¹
may wondre how pe wyndowes was i-made bynepe in pe side
of the schippe for comyngge [yn]² of water. Doctor de Lyra
menep pis doute, and [sayth]³ pat pere we haunce fenestre, pat
is a fenestre and a wyndow, pe lettre of hebrew hatte⁴ lucerna,
pat is a lanterne; and som men seip pat pat lanterne was a car-
buncle oper som oper precios soon, pat schoon and ʒaf liʒt
clere i-now pere it was i-sette. Bot som oper seip pat pat
wyndowes was an hool⁵ cristal soon, and feng yn liʒt⁶ and hilde
out water. Meny oper wyndowes were in pe schippe, and so it
nedede, for [pe]⁷ schippe was ful grete and huge, and had yn
ful many bestes. *Petrus,* 80. Pis schip was i-made somdel to
pe liknesse of manis body, in pe whiche pe lenghe from pe sole
of pe foot in to pe top of pe heued⁸ is suche sixe as pe brede,
pat is from pe myddel of pe side ribbes in pe oper side. Also ⁹
pe lenghe is suche ten as pe depnesse pat streccchep from pe
ribbe ¹⁰ to pe wombe. *Trevisa.* Yf pe man is ¹¹ ful schape as
he schulde be, nojer to greet nojer ¹² to smal. *Hugo de Arca,* ¹³
Pis schippe myʒte nouʒt fonge so meny bestes and oper pinges
and so grete, but pe cubites were cubites of gemetrie. ¹⁵ For
pe comoun cubite pat me vsep conteynep but a foot and an
half, pat is sixe spannes. A spanne streccchep from pe ende of
pe pombe to pe ende of pe myddel fynger, whan pe honde is
i-strauʒt. But a cubite of gemetrie conteynep sixe comoun
cubites, pat wil be nyne foot long. *Genesis.* Panne whan the
durre in the side downewarde. And also mansiones and MS. HARL.
That schippe was made after similitude of the man, in whom
the longitude, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to
the toppe of the hed, is in vj. tymes more then the brode-
nesse of hym, which is extended from side to side; and
also the longitude of hym is x. tymes more then the hīʒhte
whiche is extended from the bak to the bely. *Hugutio de
Arca.* That schippe; myʒte not conteyne so mony thynge
with owte the cubites were geometricalle, for the commune
cubite and vsualle conteyneythe a foote and a dimidia,¹⁴ a geo-
metricalle cubite conteyneythe vj. commune cubites, whiche
make ix. footes. *Genesis.* Noe endenge that schippe in the

---

¹ men, Cx.
² Added from a, and Cx.
³ Added from Cx.
⁴ hāb, a, b, γ, and Cx., which seems right.
⁵ at hool of, a, and Cx.
⁶ by whiche light entred, Cx.
⁷ Added from a, and Cx.
⁸ heud, Cx.
⁹ Also in, MS. (not a, or Cx.)
¹⁰ righe, Cx.
¹¹ be of, Cx.
¹² ne, a.
¹³ Arm, MS.
¹⁴ geometry, Cx.
Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem putantur opera hominum fœdasse aera, scilicet per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit. In hoc anno terminatur prima ætas sæculi, ab Adam usque ad diluvium sub generationibus decem, que supra tanguntur, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et etiam secundum Hebreos, duo milia sexcentos quinquaginta sex. Sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum, libro quinto, duo milia ducentos, quadraginta duos. Sed secundum Hieronymum non plene duo milia; secundum Methodium duo milia. Ipse nempe Methodius omittit annos, si qui superfuerint supra millenaries, quia ipse calculat ætates per chiliiiades.

1 Aqua...extulit] om. A.B.
2 quo, A.B.
3 Methodius] om. A.B.
schippe was i-made, Noe, in pe 3ere of his lyf sixe hondred, entredre and 3ede in to [pat] schippe pe firste day of pe seconde monær, pat is May. 2 And in cǐnte dayes he brouȝte in to pe schippe al pat he was i-hote yn for to bryngynge 3 or 4 oure Lorde sent reyne vppon 5 erpe. And so pe flood was i-made, and occupied erpe erpe wel nyh al a 3ere. Pe water of pe flood passede fiftene cubites aboue pe hiȝest hilles. For the workes of mankynde defouled pe ayer so hiȝe, as me trowep, by worschipynge of fuyre pat smokede and spranclede 6 vp so hiȝe. Pis 3ere endeþ 7 the firste age of pe world from Adam to Noe his flood vnder ten generaciouns pat we speke of raper. And Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quartu. And also the Hebrewes scip pat pis firste age of pe world conteynep two powsand 3ere seuen hondred 8 and sexe and fifty; but pe seunete törneres and Isidre also, libro quinto, scip two powsand 3ere seuen hondred and two and fourty. But Ierom scip not fulliche two powsand. And Methodius scip two powsand, for here he leeneþ pe odde 3eres pat beep ouer pe powsandes. 9 For þey 10 caleþ and acounteþ pe ages of pe world by powsendes, and lect þat oper deel abyde.

(Diagrams of the ark as in Higden’s text.)

vjȝ yere of his life, entrede in to hit þe firste day of the MS. HAR. secunde monethe, bryngynge to hit by viijȝe dayes thynges commendede to be brouȝte to hit, or the reyne begun: after that a floode was made, occupieng the erthe allemoste by a yere. The water of þat floode was above the hiȝe hilles by xv. cubites, by whiche altitude hit is seide the werkes of men to haue corrupte the aier. In whiche yere the firste age of the worlde is terminete, from Adam to the grete floode, vnder x. generaciones, haunenge, after Iosephus, libro 1°, capitulo 4°, and after men of Ebrewe, ijȝȝ vjȝ iyȝ yere. But after the lxxi interpretatores, and after Isidorus, libro 5°, ijȝȝ iȝȝ xlijȝ yere; after Seynte Ierom not fullie ijȝȝ; after Methodius ijȝȝ, but he levethe yeres, if þer be eny ouer niȝt, for he dothe calce the ages by ciliaides.

(Here follow diagrams of the ark, entitled, Descriptio arch Nœe, secundum doctos.)

1 Added from a. and Cx.
2 of Maii, Cx.
3 al that he was warned to brynge in, Cx.
4 ar, a. ; er, Cx.
5 here vppon, a., Cx.
6 sprynkeld, Cx.
7 ended, Cx.
8 hundred ȝere, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
9 So a. and Cx. ; powsand, MS.
10 he, ß. y. and Cx., which is right, but the strange use of the pronouns has been noticed before both in MS. and a.
De arcu celesti.

Genesis. Exsiccatis aquis diluvii, et Noe egresso vicesimo septimo die mensis secundi, id est, Maii, promisit Dominus Noe quod ultra non fieret diluvium. In cujus foederis signum posuit arcum suum in nubibus celi. Petrus. Arcus est signum duorum judiciorum, judicii scilicet præteriti per aquam ne timeatur, et futuri per ignem ut expectetur. Inde est quod arcus habet duos colores, exteriorem caeruleum, id est, aereum, quia præterit; et ignem interiorem, quia futurus est. Et tradunt sancti quod per quadraginta annos ante judicium non videbitur arcus. Ranulphus. Secundum sanctos ab Adam usque ad Noe non pluerat, nec Iris apparuerat; nec fuit usus.

---

1 The division of the chapters is not marked by the original scribe in A., but a later hand has noted Cap. vi. in the margin.
2 Title wanting in MSS.
3 [diluvii] om. C.D.
4 vicesimo ... Maii] eadem scilicet die qua ingressus est anno revoluto, C.D.
5 A.B. add 32. The true reference is to c. 35.
6 ut, B.
7 arcus] om. C.D.
8 duos] om. B.
9 qui, B.
10 qui, A.B.
11 per . . . annos] 40 annis, C.D.
12 videtur, B.
Capitulum sextum.

At pe laste whanne pe water of pe flood was wiipdrawe and Noe went out of pe schippe pe seuen and twenty day of pe secunde monpe, pat is, May; pan oure Lorde byhete Noe pat no suche flood schulde be after pat; and in tokenyng of pe covenent he sette his bowe in pe clowdes, pat is, pe reynbowe. *Petrus*, 32°. Pe reynbowe is tokenyng of tweye domes, of pe dome pat was i-doo by water; for me schulde nouzt drede hit; and of pe doome pat shal be by fuyre, for me schulde drede hit. Perfore pe bowe hau tweie coloures, pe vtter is watery, for pe dome of water is apassed; pe ymere is fury, for pe dome of fuyre schal be. And holy seyntes tellep pat pe reynbowe schal nouzt be seie fourty zer to fore pe day of dome. Also pei telle pat it roon neure from Adam to Noes flood. Also noon reynbowe was i-seie at pat tyme, nopter flesche ne fishe i-ete, noper wyn i-dronke. For pat tyme was as hit were springing tyme, and poo was i-now and plente of al helful pinges, pat was afterward i-chanunged porw synne.

Capitulum sextum.

The waters of that grete floode dryede, and Noe goen MS. HARL. furthe from his schippe the xxvijid day of the secunde monethe, whiche was Maii, God promisede to Noe that the waters scholde sease, in a signe where of he put his bawe in the clowdes of heuyn. *Petrus*, 22° capitulo. That bawe is a signe of ij. iuggementes, oon past by water, whiche scholde not be drede, and an other iuggemente to comme by fuyre whiche scholde be taryede. Therefore hit is that a bawe hathe ij. coloures, the coloure exteriorie as of water, whiche is paste, and a coloure of fyrre with yyne, whiche is to comme. Also holy men expresse that the bawe schalle not be seen by xlid yere afore the iuggemente. Also they say that there was noo reyne from Adam vn to the grete floode, neipher that bawe did appere, neither the exercise of flesche, fishe, either of vynes, was vsede; for that tyme was as the temperate tyme of ver, and habundaunce of hollesomme thynges whiche were chaungedede afterwareds by synne. Wherefore the eitenge of flesche

---

1. *Floode withdrawe*, a. and Cx.
2. *and* om. Cx.
5. *tokyn*, a.

Text as in a. and Cx.; some words repeated without sense in MS.

Incipiant generationes a Noe usque Abraham. Shem, Arphaxad.

Cainan. Salah.

carnis aut piseis aut vineæ, sed herbarum et radicium.\(^1\) Vixit Noe post diluvium trecentis\(^2\) quinquaginta annis, et sic in toto vixit nongentis quinquaginta annis; et sic\(^3\) mortuus est, relietis post se fillis\(^4\) Sem, Chaam, et Jafeth,\(^5\) de quibus disseminatum est omne genus hominum.\(^6\) Genesis.\(^7\) Igitur biennio post diluvium Sem centum annorum existens\(^8\) genuit Arfaxath,\(^9\) et vixit postmodum\(^10\) quingenti annis.\(^11\) Arfaxat, pater Chaldeorum secundum Hieronymum, centum triginta quinque annorum existens secundum Isidorum, libro sexto, sed\(^12\) secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens secundum Septuaginta interpretes, et\(^13\) secundum Lucam Evangelistam qui secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, Arfaxat centum triginta quinque annorum existens genuit Caynan,\(^14\) et postmodum vixit trecentis triginta annis.\(^15\)

Caynan\(^17\) centum triginta\(^18\) annorum existens genuit Sale,\(^19\) a quo sunt antiqui Samaritæ vel Judæi,\(^20\) et postmodum, secundum Septuaginta interpretes,\(^21\) vixit quadringenti triginta octo annis.

---

\(^1\) R. \ldots radicium\] This passage (added in margin of C.) is as follows in A.B.C. — "Item dicunt quod ab Adam usque ad diluvium non pluerat nec arcus apparerat, nec usus carnis, piscis, aut vinea fuerat, quia tunc fuit quasi vernalis temperies et copia rerum salubrium, quæ postmodum per peccatum fuerunt immutata, unde et post diluvium esus carnium concessus est homini, qui prius "herbis et radicibus vesechatur."

\(^2\) cc., B.

\(^3\) sic\] om. C.D.

\(^4\) post se fillis\] tribus post se fillis, A.; tribus fillis, B.; tribus fillis suis, C.D.

\(^5\) Japhet, A.B.D.

\(^6\) humanum, A.

\(^7\) Genesis\] om. C.D.

\(^8\) secundo anno post diluvium, ins. C.

\(^9\) Arfaxath, A.D.

\(^10\) postmodum\] almost always post in this cap. in C.; postea, D.

\(^11\) annos, D.; correctly; but the MSS. have annis almost always.

\(^12\) et, A.

\(^13\) 233, B.

\(^14\) et \ldots interpretes\] om. B.

\(^15\) Chaynnan, A.

\(^16\) Sentence slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

\(^17\) Luca teste, ins. C.D., badly.

\(^18\) 230, D.

\(^19\) By a blunder of the scribe the sentence has been transposed in A., marginal notes being placed to indicate the errors.

\(^20\) vel Judæi\] Iudæ, E.; om. A.
Bot after pe flood mankynde hadde leue forto ete fische and rootes. Noe lyvede after pe flood þre hundred þere and fifty, and he leuede in alle nyne hundred wynter and fifty, and so deyde, and lefte þre sones [on lyue] Sem, Cam, and Iapheth, of þe whiche þre com al manere of mankynde. *Genesis.* Panne two þere after þe flood Sem was an hundred þere olde, and gat Arphaxath, and lyvede afterward fyue hundred þere. Arphaxath was fader of Caldeys, and gate Sale whan he was an hundred þere olde and fyue and pritty, as Ierom seip; but Isidre, libro sexto and þe þe Hebrewes seip fyue and pritty þere. He gat Caynan, and lyued afterward þre hundred þere and þre; [but þe seventy, and Luc also pat folwep hem: Arphaxat whanne he was an hundred þere and fyue and pritty, he gat Caynan, and lyued afterward þre hundred þere and þrittys.] Caynan, an hundred þere olde and þrittys, gat Sale; of hym come þe olde Samaritans and the Iudees, and lyuede afterward foure hundred and eisete and pritty þere, so þe seuenty tellep.

was graunte to man after that grete floode, vsenge a fore that tym to ete yerbes and rootes. Noe lyvede after that floode by ecc. and lit yere, and so he lyvede in alle ixc- and lit yere, whiche dyenge lefte his iiij. childer after hym, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, of whom alle the kynd of man was disseminate. *Genesis.* Sem beenge of a c. yere in age, in the secunde yere after the grete floode, gate Arphaxat, and lyvede after vii yere. Arphaxat, the fader of men of Caldea, after Seynte Ierom, beenge of a c. and xxxvi yere after Ysoder and men of Hebrewes, when he was of the age of xxxvi yere, he gate Sale, and lyvede after ecc.iiij. yere. But after the lxx interpretares, and after Seynte Luke Euangeliste, whiche foleode theyne, Arphaxat of a c. and xxxvi yere in age, gate Cainen, and lyvede after ecc. and xxxvi yere. Cainen, hauenge a c. and xxxvi yere in

---

1 flesch and fische, a.  
2 yere, Cx.  
3 Added from a. and Cx.  
4 he] om. a.  
5 He gat Caynan] om. a. and Cx.  
6 So a. and Cx.; pritty, MS.  
7 Added from a. and Cx. (the latter has also foloweth.)  
8 xere] transposed in a.  
9 so pat, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

---

MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. II.
Sale. Secundum Hebraeos triginta annorum existens genuit Heber, a quo dicti sunt Hebraei; et postmodum vixit quadringentiannos; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus anteponunt centum ante triginta et post trecentos triginta.

Heber. Heber, a quo dicti sunt secundum Hebraeos triginta quatuor annorum existens genuit Phaleg; et postmodum vixit quadringentiannos; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum ante triginta quatuor.

Phaleg. Phaleg secundum Hebraeos triginta annorum existens genuit Reu vel Ragau, et postmodum vixit ducentis novem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus addunt centum triginta, et postmodum ponunt ducentos octo. Et vocatus est iste Phaleg, quod interpretatum est divisio, eo quod in diebus ejus, cum terra esset labii unius, linguae confusae sunt turris constructione, et sic gentes per terras sunt divisa.

Ragau vel Reu. Ragau secundum Hebraeos triginta duorum annorum existens genuit Sarug, et vixit postmodum ducentis septem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta duos, et postmodum ponunt ducentos septem.

---

² 100, D.
² 430, C.; 463, D.
³ ante om. B.
⁴ 303, D.; sentence slightly varied in C.D.
⁵ dicti sunt om. C.D.
⁶ a...Hebrai om. B.
⁷ quatuor om. B.C.
⁸ So C.D.; Phalech, A.B.E.
⁹ trigonenta...sed] 40, B.
¹⁰ ponunt...quatuor] anteponunt cxxxiiij. annos, B.; ante ponunt 100 et post 330, C.D.
¹¹ So C.D.; Phalech, A.B.E.
¹² existens] om. C.D.
¹³ Reu vel] om. D.
¹⁴ vixit] added from A.C.D.
¹⁵ interpretes] om. A.
¹⁶ anteponunt centum, B.
¹⁷ ponunt] om. B.
¹⁸ sed...octo] om. C.D.
¹⁹ Phalech, A.B.E.
²⁰ interpretatur, C.D.
²¹ eo quod] quia, C.D.
²² tempore, B.
²³ in turris, B.
²⁴ Transposed in C.D.
²⁵ existens] om. C.D.
²⁶ trecentis, C.D.
²⁷ sed secundum, B.
²⁸ anteponuntur 132, B.
²⁹ post, B.
³₀ ponunt] om. B.
³¹ 107, B.; sed lex. et Isidorus ponunt 300 ante 32, C.D.
Hebrewes seip pat Sale, whan he was pritty 3ere olde, gat Heber. Of pis Heber pey were i-cleped Hebrewes. And Sale lyuede after he hadde i-gete Heber foure honderd 3ere, but pe seuenty and Isidre acompted 1 pe honderd 3ere afore 2 pe pritty, and pe honderd 3ere after pe pritty. Of [Heber] 3 Hebrewes had 4 pe name. Pe Hebrewes seip pat Heber foure and pritty 3ere olde gat Phalech, and lyuede afterward foure honderd 3ere and pritty; but pe seuenty putte pe honderd tofore pe foure and pritty. Hebrewes seip pat Phalech pritty 3ere olde gat Reu, pat hatte Ragau also, and lyuede afterward two honderd 3ere and nyne; but pe seuenty and Isidre putte pe honderd tofore pe pritty, and afterwarde two hundred and nyne. Pis hatte 5 Phalech ritulliche, for Phalech is to menynge 6 departynge; for longage was departed in his tyme, pat raper was al oon in pe buldyng of pe tour Babel. And so men were departed in to dyuers londes. Ragau, two and pritty 3ere olde, gat Sarug, and lyuede afterward two honderd yere and seuene; so seip Hebrewes. But pe seuenty and Isidre seip an honderd tofore two and pritty, and afterwarde two honderd and seuene. Hebrewes seip pat Sarug pritty 3ere olde gat

age, gate Sale, of whom the olde Samarites come. Sale, after MS. HARL. 2261.

men of Hebrewe, beenge of xxxi yere in age, gate Heber of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, and lyuede after cccc. yere; but after the lxx interpretares a. c. yere be put afore xxxi yere, and after that ccc. and xxxi. Heber, of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, hauenge xxxiiij yere in age, gate Phaleg, and lyuede after ccc. and xxxi yere; but the lxx interpretares put a c. yere afore xxxiiij yere. Phaleg, after men of Hebrewe, of xxxi yere in age, gate Reu or Ragau, and lyuede after ij and ix. yere; but the lxx interpretares and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxxi and cc. and vij. yere after, and he was callede Phaleg, as diuision by interpretation, in that the langauge were confusede in his daies in the construcceon of the towre of Babel, and so the peple were diuided. Ragau, after men of Hebrewe, hauenge xxxij yere in age, gate Sarug, lyuyen after cc. and vij. yere; but the lxx interpretares and Ysoder putte an c. yere afore xxxij and after ij-vij. yere. Sarug, after men of Hebrewe, of xxxi

---

1 accompted, Cx. 4 have, Cx.
2 tofore, a.; bifor, Cx. 5 hect, Cx.
3 Added from Cx. 6 to say, Cx.
Sarug. 
Sarug secundum Hebraeos triginta annorum existens\(^1\) genuit Nachor, et postmodum vixit ducentis duobus\(^2\) annis, sed Septuaginta interpretet et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta et postmodum ducentos.

Nachor. 
Nachor secundum Hebraeos viginti annorum\(^3\) existens\(^4\) genuit Thare, et postmodum\(^5\) vixit annis centum novem; sed Septuaginta interpretet\(^6\) ponunt\(^7\) centum ante viginti novem. Isidorus\(^8\) dicit Nachor fuisse septuaginta novem annorum, quando genuit Thare.

Thare. 
Thare secundum Hebraeos et secundum Isidorum cum esset\(^9\) annorum septuaginta genuit Abram,\(^10\) Nachor, et\(^11\) Aram; et postmodum vixit centum triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretet ponunt centum ante septuaginta annos. Petrus, tricesimo octavo.\(^12\)

Et sic\(^13\) terminatur secunda seculi etas a diluvio usque ad nativitatem Abraham, per decem generationes pro-tensa; habens secundum Hebraeos, Josephum, et Hiero-nymum annos ducentos\(^14\) nonaginta duos, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretet et Augustinum sunt\(^15\) anni mille septuaginta duo sub generationibus\(^16\) undecim; sed\(^17\) secundum Isidorum sunt anni nongenti\(^18\) quadr-raginta duo, secundum Methodium habet chiliadem.

\(^{\text{1}}\) existens\] om. C.D.
\(^{\text{2}}\) ducentos, C.D.
\(^{\text{3}}\) annorum\] om. E.
\(^{\text{4}}\) viginti existens\] annorum 39, C.D.
\(^{\text{5}}\) et postmodum\] om. B.
\(^{\text{6}}\) interpretet\] om. B.
\(^{\text{7}}\) praponeunt, A.
\(^{\text{8}}\) autem, ins. C.D.
\(^{\text{9}}\) cum esset\] om. C.D.
\(^{\text{10}}\) Abraham, C.D.
\(^{\text{11}}\) Nachor et\] om. B.
\(^{\text{12}}\) tricesimo octavo\] om. C.D.
\(^{\text{13}}\) sic\] om. B.
\(^{\text{14}}\) mille ducentos, C.D.
\(^{\text{15}}\) sunt\] om. B.
\(^{\text{16}}\) et generationes, C.D.
\(^{\text{17}}\) sed\] om. C.D.
\(^{\text{18}}\) nongenti, E.
Nachor, and lyued afterward two hundred sere and twye; but the senity and Ysidre putte an hondred sere to fore pritty,\(^1\) and two hondred after.\(^2\) Hebrewes seip pat Nachor nyne and twenty sere olde gat Thare, and lyued afterward an hondrede sere and nyne; but pe senity putte an hondred sere to fore nyne and twyne; and Isidre seip pat Nachor was senity sere and nyne, when he gat Thare. [Pe Hebrewes and Isidre seip pat] \(^3\) Thaare senity sere olde gat Abraham, Nachor, and Aram,\(^4\) and lyued afterward an hondred sere and pritty, but the senity putte the hondred to fore pe senity seres.\(^5\) Trevisa. \(^6\)\(\) Pe senity: I haue i-seide to fore pat pey were pre score and ten, pat tornede Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe: hem I clepe pe Sunity, and so pey bepe i-cleped in pis book and of meny holy doctories; and pey beep specialliche i-cleped pe Sunity tourneris;\(^6\) for pey torned Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe.\(^7\) Petrus, tricesimo octavo. And so the secunde age of pe world is i-ended, from Noes flood to Habraams bupe; and conteynepe ten generaciouns, and two hondred sere fooure\(^8\) score and twelve, so seip the Hebrewes, Ioseph, and Ierom. But pe senity, as\(^9\) Seynt Austyn, acontep a pow-sand sere and two and senity, and eleuene\(^10\) generaciouns. But Isidre acontep nyne hondred sere, and two and fourty; yere in age, gate Nachor, and lyvede after ij\(^c\) and ij. yere; MS. Harl. 2261.

---

\(^1\) the thrifty, Cx.
\(^2\) afterward, Cx.
\(^3\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^4\) Aaron, MS.; Aran, Cx.
\(^5\) yere, Cx.
\(^6\) turneres, a.
\(^7\) Cx. omits the extract from Trevisa.
\(^8\) So a. and Cx.; and pritty fooure, MS.
\(^9\) and, a. and Cx.
\(^10\) enleuene, a. and Cx.
Causa hujus diversitatis est quod Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinus addunt centum annos ad ætatem cujuslibet generationis\(^1\) ab Arphaxat\(^2\) usque ad Nachor. 

_Beda_. Sicut Noe fuit decimus ab Adam, sic Abram\(^3\) fuit decimus a Noe. Veruntamen Lucas in serie\(^4\) genealogiae suæ\(^5\) quando dixit "qui fuit Sale, qui fuit "Caynan, qui fuit Arphaxat," secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, qui unam generationem plusquam Hebrœi posuerunt. _Augustinus De Civitate, libro quindicesimo, capitulo tertiodécimo_. Cum aliquid diversum in pluribus translationibus reperitur quod juxta fidel rerum gestarum stare non potest, potius credatur illi linguae unde in aliam fit translatio. _Beda_. Translatio\(^6\) Septuaginta interpretum vel minus solicite primo edita est, vel postmodum a gentilibus\(^7\) corrupta. _Eusebius_. Ab Adam usque ad Abraham nulla penitus\(^8\) Graeca nec barbara invenitur historia. _Methodius_. Centesimo anno tertiae\(^9\) chiliadis\(^10\) natus est\(^11\) Noe filius nomine Ionicus,\(^12\) cui dedit Noe dominationes usque ad mare Eliocora, cui

---

1. _generantis_, A.C.; _Ætatem_ after _generationis_, B.  
2. So A.D.; _Arfaxat_, E.  
3. _Abraham_, A.B.C.D.  
4. _suae_, added from A.B.C.D.  
5. _genealogie_, E. (not A.)  
6. _vero_, ins. B.  
7. _gentibus_, B.  
8. _est nec_, ins. C.D.; _nec_ (only), ins. A.B.  
9. _ tertiae_ om. B.  
10. _cicliadis_, C.  
11. _est_ om. E.  
12. _Ionichus_, E.
MONACHI CESTRENSIS,

LIB.

II.

247

andMet[h]odius apowsand. pe caasof pis dyuersite 1 is, for pe Trevisa.
seuenty, and Seynt Austyn 2 also, puttep to eueriche fader his
age from Arphaxath to Nachor an hondred £ere. Beda. As
Noe was pe tenpe from Adam, so Abraham was pe tenpe from
Noe. Nopeles Luke followep pe seuenty in his genelogie,
whan he seip, " Qui fuit Sale," pat is to menynge, " pat was
" Sale his sone " and so for]?, " pat was Caynan his sone, pat
" was Arphaxath his sone." pere Luke folowep pe seuenty, pat
puttep on generacioun moo pan pe Hebrewes puttep. Augustinus de Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.
Whanne in meny translaciouns is dyuersite i-founde, pat may
noupt stonde ; panne pe firste longage, pat pe tornynge and
translacioun is i-made of, schal be most i-trowed. 3 Beda.
pe
tornynge and translacioun of pe seuenty was first nou^t ful
rediliche i-torned, oper it was afterward apayred by mysbeleued men. Eusebius. From Adam to Abraham is no storie
i-founde in Grewe, noper in straunge langage.
Methodius.
Noe hadde a sone i-bore two powsand ^ere and an hondred
after pe begynnynge of pe worlde ; pat sone heet Ionicus ;
Noe ^af hym lordschip anoon to pe see Eliochora. To hym
God Almy^ty taf witte and wisdom pat he schulde fynde

diuersite may be assignede pat the lxx
interpretatores, MS. Haul.
2261
and Seynte Austyn putte a c. yere to the age of euery
man from Arphaxat to Nachor. Beda. And lyke as Noe
was the x the from Adam, soe Abraham was the xthe from
Noe but truly Seynte Luke folowede the lxx tl interpretatores in the ordre of his genealogy when he seyde " whiche
" was Sale, whiche was Cainan," whiche putte oon generacion more then men of Hebrewe putte.
Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro quinto decimo, capitulo 13°.
When a thynge
is founde variable and diuerse in mony translaciones, that
t}

-

;

may stonde accordenge to the trawethe of the gestes,
then hit is to tiffe moste specialle credence to that langage from whom the translacion is made. Beda. The
translacion of the lxx a interpretatores was made insufiicientely,
either hyt was corrupte of peple afterwarde.
Eusebius.
There is noo storye founde from Adam vn to
Abraham in Grewe other in the langage of Barbre.
Methodius.
Ionicus, the son of Noe, was borne in the c. yere
of the thridde ciliade to whom Noe safe mony dominations ;
and God ^afe to hym a Jifte of sapience that he myZhte
hit

;

1

dyuercete,

2

Augustyn, Cx.

a.

:i

bileued,

Cx.


etiam dedit Deus donum sapientiae, ut inveniret astronomiam, et quod
sciret prædicere quosdam eventus, potissime de ortu et occasu quatuor regnorum principalium; scilicet quod primi de Cham regnarent Assyrii, de quo fuit Belus; postmodum de Sem, Medi, Perse, et Graeci; denuo de Japhet, Romani. Hæc ostendit Ionicus Nemphroti discipulo suo, qui exhine accessus libidine dominandi regnavit inter filios Cham in Babylone, qui interim obtinuerunt Assyrios et Agyptios, quousque regnaret Ninus Assyrios. Josephus, libro primo, capitule quinto. Post obitum Noe in diebus Phaleg, cum terra esset labii unius, filii filiorum Noe, ducente et docente eos Nemphrot, filio Chus filii Cham filii Noe, putantes felicitatem non a Deo sed propria virtute sibi provenire, insuper et arbitrantes quod Deus per invidiam eos separat vellet, ut sic divisos eos facilius subjugare posset, timentesque aliud diluvium adventurum, turrim altam ex cocto latere et bitumine colligato edificabant in campo Sennaar, ubi postmodum constructa est Babylonia. Sed verius eos dispersit Deus, ne dis-

\[1\] quod] ut, B.; om. C.D.
\[2\] præcipue, C.D.
\[3\] primo, B.
\[4\] Seem, B.
\[5\] post, C.D.
\[6\] Ionicus, some MSS.
\[7\] Nembroti, D., and similarly below.
\[8\] amore, C.D.
\[9\] qui primo subjugavit, C.D.
\[10\] capitule quinto] om. B.
\[11\] Phalec, E.
\[12\] et] om. B.
\[13\] So C.D.; arbitrabantur, A.E.
\[14\] hac de causa, ins. C.D.
\[15\] aliud] om. C.D.
\[16\] adventurum] om. C.D.; venturum, B.
\[17\] Sennar, B.
\[18\] Verius autem, D.
science of astronomye, and he coupe telle to forehonde what schulde byfalle and come afterward; and specialliche of pe bygynnynge and endynge of pe fourche cheef kyngdoms. And so pey knewe firste of Cham pe Assires schulde regne; of Cham com Belus. Afterward of Sem pe Medes, pe Perses, and Grees. Jan of Iapheth pe Romayns. Ioonichus schewed al pis to his discipyle Nemproth pe Assures. Josephyus, libro primo, capitulo quinto. After pat Noe was deed in Phalech his tyme, whan al pe men of pe worlde hadde oon longage and tonge, Noe his children by ledynge and by techynge of Nemproth trowed pat good happes and good speede is nouzt of God Almy^ty, but by manis owne vertues and dedes. Also pey wenede pat God Almy^ty wolde departhe hem by enuye, pat he myzte pe more li^tliche make hem suget. Also pey drodde pat anoper flood schulde come, and bulde a wel hi^e place of brest tyle and glewe instede of morter in pe feeld pat hatte Sennaar; pere Babiloyne was afterward i-bulke, but God Almy^ty departed

fynde astronomy, and to knowe thynge to comme, and specially of the spryngenge and fallenge of iiiij. realmes, that is to say, men of Assiria scholde come of Cham, of whom Belus come. Afterwarde men of Media, of Persa, and men of Grewes scholde come of Sem, and the Romanes of Iapheth. Ioonichus schewedde this to Nemproth his discipyle, whiche accende in luste of dominacion reigne in Babilon among the childer of Cham, whiche obtayned men of Assiria and of Egipte vn tille that Nunis reigne there. Josephyus, libro primo, capitulo quinto. After the dethe of Noe in the daies of Phaleg, when the erthe was of oon langage, Nemproth techenge thyme, son of Chus, the son of Cham other Chuder, the son of Noe, trawenge felicite not to be of God but of theire propre vertu, supposede that God wolde separate thyme that he myzte subiecte theym diuidede the rather to hym, drenedge an other floode to comme, made to thyme an he towre of sodde, tyle, ston, made sure with pyche, in the felde of Sennar, where Babilon was edifie afterwarde. R. But truly God dispersede thyme

1 kouMy, a.
2 bifoRe, Cx.
3 So a, and Cx.; byfalleb, MS.
4 Added from a, and Cx.; knew-eth, MS.
5 the Grees, Cx., which is better.
6 Added from a, and Cx.
7 than, Cx.
8 tour, a.
9 The MS. has been corrected, and the reading is somewhat uncertain.
sentiones inter se\textsuperscript{1} facerent. Vocatus est autem\textsuperscript{2} locus ille Babel, quod sonat \textit{confusio}, eo quod linguae adiunctae ibidem divino nutu\textsuperscript{3} confusae. \textit{Ranulphus.}\textsuperscript{4} Heber putatur immunis a conspiratione in turris constructione, et ideo\textsuperscript{5} immunis\textsuperscript{6} a linguae confusione. \textit{Petrus, capitolo tricesimo quinto.}\textsuperscript{7} Igitur Nemphrot robustus venator hominum,\textsuperscript{8} id est, oppressor, expulso Assur de terra illa, ceipsit regnare inter filios Cham in Babylone civitate, quam fundavit. Hanc tamen postmodum Semiramis regina ampliavit. Deinde Nemphrot transivit ad Persas, et\textsuperscript{9} docuit adorare ignem et colere,\textsuperscript{10} ubi fundavit civitatem Niniven; quam postmodum Ninus et Semiramis\textsuperscript{11} ampliarunt.\textsuperscript{12}

\textit{Cap. VII.}\textsuperscript{13}

\textit{De filiis Noe et de regnis ab eorum posteris fundatis.}\textsuperscript{14}

\textit{Augustinus De Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.}\textsuperscript{15} Gentibus itaque per terras divisias, quibusque suas cupiditates sectantibus, dum id\textsuperscript{16} quod appetebatur nemeni sufficere videbatur, adversus seipsas\textsuperscript{17} dividubatur;\textsuperscript{18} et pars praevalens reliquam opprimebat,

\begin{enumerate}
\item[\textsuperscript{1} cos, B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{2} autem] so A.B.C.D.; om. E.
\item[\textsuperscript{3} sunt, B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{4} \textit{Ranulphus}] \textit{Freculphus}, B.; om. A.C. The passage is added in the margin of C.; D. omits it.
\item[\textsuperscript{5} iecircio, A.B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{6} fuit, B.C.]
\item[\textsuperscript{7} capitulo xxxv.] om. C.D. The true reference is to Hist. Gen. c. 37.
\item[\textsuperscript{8} hominum] om. B.
\item[\textsuperscript{9} et] quos, C.D.
\item[\textsuperscript{10} et colere\textsuperscript{10} om. B.]
\item[\textsuperscript{11} So B.; Semira, E.; Samiramis, A.; Semiramis uxor sua pluri- mum, C.D.
\item[\textsuperscript{12} ampliaverunt, A.]
\item[\textsuperscript{13} Cap. VII.] om. B.
\item[\textsuperscript{14} No title in MSS.]
\item[\textsuperscript{15} The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 2.
\item[\textsuperscript{16} illud, A.B.
\item[\textsuperscript{17} So B.; se ipsam, A.D.E.
\item[\textsuperscript{18} So B.; dividebatur, A.D.E.
\end{enumerate}
hem for þe schulde not make discension and stryf among hem self. Þis Nemprot was Chus his sone; Chus was Cham his sone; and Cham was Noe his [sone].

2 Pat place is i-cleped Babel, þat is to menynge schedyngye; for þere at God Almightye his heste þe longages and tonges of þe bulders were i-schad and to schift. Heber was i-holde giitelles of conspiracioun in þe buldinge of þe toure, and þerfore he was i-spared as giitelles in þe schedyng of tonges. Petrus, tricesimo quinto.

3 Heber was i-holde giitelles of conspiracioun in þe buldinge of þe toure, and þerfore he was i-spared as giitelles in þe schedyng of tonges. Petrus, tricesimo quinto.

4 of ð em. a.”

Capitulum septimum. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo. Whanne men were departed and to schift in to dyuers londes, and euerich folowed his owne likynge and wille, while rather leste thei scholde make dissencion amonge theyme selve, which place was callede Babel, sowndenge a confusion, in that the langages of men edifienge hit were confusede by the wylle of God. But Heber was trawede to be with owte blame from conspiracion in the makenge of that towre, wherefore he was partelesse in the confusion of the langage of theyme. Petrus, 15°. There Nemproth the bostuous oppressor of men, expellenge Assur, began to reigne in the cite of Babiloyne þat he bulde. Nopheles Semiramis þe queene afterward made þis citee wel more. Afterward Nemprot wente to þe men of Pers and tauhte hem to worschippe þe fuyre, and foundede þere þe citee of Ñyneue. Afterward Ninus and Semiramis made þat citee more.

Capitulum septimum. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo primo. This peple diuided in to the worlde, and folowenge the lustes of ambicion, seeenge that thynge not to be sufficiante that was desirede, was diuidede amonge theyme selve;

1 Added from a. and Cx. | 5 Semyramys, MS. (Semyramis, above.)
2 skaterd, Cx. | 6 to schuife or skatred, Cx.
3 childer, Cx. |
saluti libertatem præferens, ita ut magnæ fierent admirationi, qui perire maluerunt quam servire; cum vox naturæ sit malle subici quam deleri. Hinc non sine Dei providentia factum est, ut quidam essent regnis præditi, quidam subditi. Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo. Gentes igitur de Sem, primogenito Noe, descendentes possederunt terram meridianam ab ortu solis usque ad Phœnices, sub linguis viginti septem, patrias quinquecentas sex occupantes. Qui vero de Cham descenderunt a Sidone per oceanum austrinum usque ad Gaditanum fretum tenuerunt patrias trecentas nonaginta quatuor sub linguis triginta. Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo. Qui autem de stirpe Japhet a Tauro monte Cilicia descenderunt versus aquilonem per oceanum septentrionale mediam partem Asiae et omnem Europam usque ad oceanum Britannicum, tenuerunt patrias ducentas sub linguis et gentibus quindecim, nomina locis et po-

253

[pat] 1 it semede pat what pat 2 was desired was i-now to no man. Mankynde was departed azenst hym self, and de stronger party bare don pat [oper], 3 and tolde more prys of fredom pan of saucium and of hele; so pat it was gret wonder of hem, pat hadde leuere be lost and i-splide pan be vnderlynges and servy. 4 And 2it be 5 lore of kynde, better is to 6 be vnderlynge and servaunt pan be put out of lyf. Perfore by Goddes ordenaunce hit is doo pat som men beep kynges and lordes and some beep sugettis and seruauntes.

Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio. 'Pan men pat come of Sem, Noe his [firste] 7 sone, hadde pe souplond from pe rysynge of pe sonne anon to pe Fenices, men pat so hatte. [Pese men, pat so hatted,] 8 pat come of Sem, occupied foure honderd contrees and sixe vnder seuene and twenty longages. Pey pat come of Cham heide pe londe by pe souvb oceaan anon to pe see Gaditan, pe hundred contrayes 9 foure score and fourtene vnder pritty longages and tongues. Augustinus, libro sexto. Pey that come of Iapheth heide pe lond from pe hil pat hatte mons Taurus in Cilicia norward toward pe norp oceaan, pe haluendel 10 of Asia, and al Europa anon to pe Brittische see, 11 pat is pe Englishe see, pe hundred contrayes vnder fiftene longages and tongues, and lefte ech eond and

and the stronger parte oppresseede the parte more feble, MS. HARL.
preferrenge liberte to theire sawle healthe, to be hade in grete mernayle, wyllyenge raper to die then to be subiecte; sythe nature willthe rather to be subiecte then to be destroyede: whiche thynge was not doen with owte the prouidence of God, that somme scholde be gouernours in realmes and somme subiectes. Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio. Therefore peple descendenge from Scm, the firste son of Noe, hade in possession the londe meridien, whiche was from the ryseynge of the son to the Feniceannes vnder xxvij 12 langages, occupieng eecce and vj. contres. And men that come of Cham occupieng eecce xc. contres and iii., vnder xxxvij 13 langages, from Sydon by the sowthe oceaan vn to the see Gaditan. Augustinus, libro sexto. And men that come of Iapheth occupiende from the mounte callede Taurus towarde the northe, and halfe parte of Asia, and alle Europa vn to the see of Briteyne, coneyenge eec. contres, vnder xv. langages, leverage to the places and to

1 Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.
2 Possibly but should be cancelled; it is found however in a. β. γ., as well as in MS.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 servauntes, Cx.
5 by, a. and Cx.
6 to] om. a. and Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 Added from a. and (partly) Cx.
9 contrayes and sice] MS. (first hand.)
10 to halde dele, Cx.
11 oceaan, a.
Nomina locorum unde derivantur. pulis\(^1\) reliquentes; de quibus plurima sunt immutata aut a regibus locorum, aut ab ipsis locis, aut\(^2\) ab incolarum moribus. Cetera autem permanent, ut\(^3\) fuerunt. Ita etiam\(^4\) ut\(^5\) hodie rationabiliter apparent unde fuerunt\(^6\) derivata, sicut ex Assur Assyrii, ex Heber Hebræi. De quibusdam vero ratio non apparat, sicut illud quod dicunt Agyptios\(^7\) pertinere ad Mesraim,\(^8\) Ēthiopes ad Chus. Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.\(^9\) A Chus usque\(^10\) nunc Ēthiopes dicti sunt Chusei, a Mesraim\(^11\) Agyptiī dicti sunt Mesrei. Sicque\(^12\) gente per terras divisa aliqui nomina locis imposuerunt; aliqui, ut Graeci, ad libitum nomina mutaverunt, aut propter scripturae decorem, aut propter\(^13\) legentium delectationem, aut ut\(^14\) antiquorum gloriam suam propria facerent. Hugutio, capitulo\(^15\) Phrygia.\(^16\) Sæpe etiam pro qualitate negotii varia imponuntur nomina; ut cum Trojanos volumus designare timidos, vocamus\(^17\) eos Phrygios; si generosos, vocamus\(^18\) eos Dardanos; si fortes, dicimus eos Trojanos; si audaces, vocamus\(^19\) eos Hectores.\(^20\) Isidorus, libro nono,\(^21\) capitulo secundo. Gentes orientales in gutture verba collidunt,
pupile his name; of the whiche meny beep now i-changed oper
of kynges of londes, oper of the same londes, oper of maneres1
of men of londes. Oper thinges stondep, as it were; 2 so pat
3it it is sene of whom pey come; as pe Assures come of
Assur, and the Hebrewes come of Heber. Of som is no resoun
i-knowe, as pat pat me seiej pat Pe Egipcians perteinep
to Mesraim and Ethiopiens to Chus. Iosephus, libro primo,
capitulo quinto. Of Chus forto now pe Ethiopiens beep i-cleped
Cusey3 and pe Egipcians Mesrei. And so, when men were
to schift into dyuers londes, som chaungede names as hem
likede, as the Gree, oper for fairenesse of wrytinge, oper for
likyne of rederes, oper forto make her owne [selfe the]4
noblete of hir forfadres. Hugo, capitulo Frigia.5 Ofte names
beep i-sette for a manere of doynge.6 As whan we wolde men
pat pe 7 Troians beep feerful, we cleped hem Frigios; and
8if we wolde men pat pey bep gentil and noble, we clepep
hem Dardans; 9if we wil men pat pey bep stronge, we clepep
hem Troians; 9if hardy, we clepep hem Hectores.8 Isidorus,
libro 14o, capitulo secundo. Men of the est sownde her
the peple names. Of whom mony thynges be chaunged MS. Harl.
now, other of kynges of those places, other of the places,
other elles thro the maneres of the inhabitatores of theym.
Other thynges be permanente as thei were, as men of As-
siria toke their name of Assur, men of Hebrewes of Heber.
Ozee,9 libro primo, capitulo quinto. Men of Etiophie be
callede vn to this tyme Chusei, of Chus, and men of Egipte
Mesrei, of Mesra. Soe this peple, diuided by regiones and
cuntrees, some men haue 2iffen names to places, somme men
haue 2iffen names to them after theire pleasure, like to
men off Grewe. Somme men haue chaungede the names
for feirenesse of scripture, other for the delectacion of men
redenge, other elles that thei myȝte ascribe to theyme
the lawde of olde men as their propre lawde. Hugiutio,
capitulo Frigia. Diverse names be assignede ofte for
the qualite of labores, as callenge men of Troy Frigios,
when we wille calle thyme afrayede, calenge thyme
Dardanos when thei be gentille, and Troianes when we
wille calle thyme myȝty, and Hectores when we calle
thyme bolde. Isidorus, libro decimo quarto, capitulo se-
cundo. Peple of the este sownde the wordes in the throte,
Regna quatuor primseva, Assyriorum, Egyptiorum, Scytharum, Sicyonio-rum.

Regna quatuor principalia demum effecta, Assyriorum, Persarum, Graecorum, Romanorum.

ut Hebrai et Syri; gentes mediterraneae in palato feriunt,\(^1\) ut Greci et Asiani; \(^2\) occidentales inter dentes verba frangunt, ut Romani et Hispani. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*\(^3\) Sed a principio dispersionis\(^4\) gentium quamquam\(^5\) regna Assyriorum in oriente, Egyptiorum in meridie, Scytharum in aquilone, Sicyonio-rum in occidente, id est,\(^6\) in Graecia, fuerunt quasi coeva quoad initium, *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo,* regna tamen Assyriorum, Medorum, seu\(^7\) Persarum, Graecorum, et Romanorum consequenter sibi\(^8\) succedentia fuerunt principalia inter cetera quoad progressum; quorum tamen primum et ultimum clariora fuere\(^9\) et durabiliora. Cetera quoque regna sive reges velut appendices istorum dixerim;\(^10\) Atheniensium quoque gesta majora fuere fama quam ipsa, teste Salustio et Varrone,\(^11\) et hoc propter scriptorum et philosophorum ibidem florentium præclara ingenia, qui gesta ipsa laudibus nimium extulerunt. *Ranulphus.* At\(^12\) quia tractatus generalis quatuor regnorum principalium praedictorum,\(^13\) a principio videlicet\(^14\) regni\(^15\) Assyriorum usque ad finem regni Romanorum vastum\(^16\)\(^17\) vendicat procursum, idcirco de

\(^1\) *fereunt,* A.; *ferunt,* B.
\(^2\) *Aciant,* B.
\(^3\) *Dis. omissa* c. 18. *The true reference is to c. 17.* apparently; just below lib. xviii. c. 2. is certainly intended.
\(^4\) *dispersionis,* B.
\(^5\) *quamvis,* B.; *licet,* C.D., which abbreviate the sentence.
\(^6\) *scilicet,* B.
\(^7\) *et,* C.D.
\(^8\) *sibi* om. D.
\(^9\) *latiora fuerunt,* B.
\(^10\) *dixerunt,* D.
\(^11\) *Veneron,* A.
\(^12\) *Et,* C.D.
\(^13\) *praedictorum* om. C.D.
\(^14\) *scilicet,* C.D.
\(^15\) *regni* om. A.
\(^16\) *vastat,* A.
\(^17\) *sibi,* ins. C.D.
words in þe þrote as Hebrewes and Siries; 1 men of mydddel londes in þe roof of þe mouþ, as Grees and Assyans; men of þe west brekeþ here words bytwene þe teep, as Spaynardes 2 and Romayns. Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo. 3 But siþe þat men were first to schift 4 into dyuere londes, þey þe kyngdoms of Assiries 5 in þe est, of Egipecians in þe souþ, and of Sîthes 6 in þe norþ, þat is in þe 7 Grees, begunne as it were at ones: Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo:—noþeles the kyngdoms [of] 8 Assiries, of Medes, þat is of Perses, of Grees, of Romayns, folowede eche after oper, and were principal among oper. Noþeles þe firste and þe laste were more noble, and durede lengere. 9 Oper kyngdoms [and kynes longede to þese kyng- doms]. 10 Also berynge and dedes of men of Athenys beþ gretter in loo and in fame þan þey beþ in dede; so seþ Salustius and Varro 11 also. And þat is for 12 writers and philo- sofres of Athenes were solempne of witt, and preysede þe dedes hugeliche and ouermesure. 13 B. And for þe tretyse 13 ful and general of þe forsaide foure cheef kyngdoms, from þe begynnynge of þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe ende of þe kyngdom of Romanys, axþe longe wrytynge and proces; ðerfore

as men of Hebrewe and of Siria, peple of the myddel cuntre breke theirþe wyrdes in the hier part of the mouþwe, as men of Greece and of Asia, men and peple of the weste breke theirþe wyrdes amonge the teith, as men of Rome and of Speyne. Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo de- cimo, capitulo primo. Neuerthelesse the realmes of Assiria, Media, or of Persia, of Grekes and of Romanes, by succes- sion were realmes moste principalle amonge other realmes, as þu to progresse, the firste of whom and the laste were moste elere and dureable. And other realmes and kynges were as depændenge to theyme; for the gestes of kynges of Athenes were made more glorious in fame than thei were in trawthe, and that was causede by the actes of philosopers and of other discrete men inhabitenge that study, exaltenge the gestes with grete lawde. 14 And for cause that a generalle tracte of the iiiij. principalle realmes afore seide, from the begynnynge of that realme of Assiria þu to the ende of the reigne of the Romanes, dothe require a large f. 78. b.

---

1 Syres, a. 2 Spaynolds, Cx. 3 Cx. prints octodecimo (at length, and so below.) 4 firste skatred, Cx. 5 Assyricus, Cx. 6 Sîties, a.; Shîtes, Cx. 7 þe] om. a. 8 Added from a. 9 lengere þan, MS. (not a, or Cx.) 10 Added from a. and Cx. 11 Varro, MS. and a. 12 for that, Cx. 13 tretyse is, MSS. and Cx.
tribus regnis primævis, regno Assyriorum quasi coævis, primitus est agendum.  

**Cap. VIII.**

*De regnis Scytharum, Ægyptiorum, Assyriorum, Persarum, Graecorum, et Romanorum.*

§ 1. *Regnum Scytharum incipit.*

Regnum Scytharum in aquilone, quod ratione temporis et ætatis secundum post Assyrios vindicat ordinem, incepit tempore Sarug proavi Abrahæ sub Thanao primo ipsorum rege, a quo fluvius Thanay videtur denominari, qui ad orbis boream dividit Asiam ab Europa. Hoc quidem regnum nulli hominum unquam cessit, quin etiam Asiam ter conquissit, Darium regem Persarum fugavit, Cyrum regem occidit, Zephirone magni ducem delevit. 

*Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Aliud quoque regnum in occidente fuit Sicyoniorum, id est, Areadiæ, quae pars est Graecia in Europa, currens sub Agila primo per annos nongentos septuaginta unum sub regibus

---

1 *tractandum, C.D.*  
2 *Title wanting in MSS.*  
3 A.B.C.D. omit title of the section; and so below; *incipit, R., here and below.*  
4 *Willelmus,* ins. C.D.  
5 *itaque,* ins. C.D.  
6 *Scitatarum, A.*  
7 *Saray,* E.  
8 *illorum, A.B. ; sorum, C.D.*  
9 *flumen, C.D.*  
10 *denominatur, C.D.*  
11 *quidem,* om. B.  
12 *quin,* om. B.  
14 *fuit,* om. B.  
15 *Cicianorum, A. ; Sciciornorum,* B.; *Sicioniorum,* D.; *Scicionorum,* E.; and similarly below.  
16 *sub Agila,* a Gila, B. Æginae is the true form of the name of the first mythic king of Sicyon.
of þe þe firste kyngdoms, as it were of þe same age wip þe kyngdom of Assiries, firste we schal write.

*Capitulum octavum.*

*The kyngdom of Sithes* in þe north by cause of age and of tyme axen þe seconde place in ordre, and is sette after þe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus þe firste kyng þat was þere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semþ þat þe ryver Thanays haþ þe name of þis kyng Thanaus; þe whiche ryuer in þe norþside of þe world deparþ betwene Asya and Europa. Þis kyngdom was neuere overcone, but þe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus, þe firste kyng þat was þere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semþ þat þe ryver Thanays haþ þe name of þis kyng Thanaus; þe whiche ryuer in þe norþside of þe world deparþ betwene Asya and Europa.

Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo. Also aþer kyngdom was in þe west, and was þe kyngdom of Seicions, which is of Arcadia, a parte of Grees in Europa, and durede vnder Agilaus, the kyng, by þe name of Zephiro, þat was þe grete Alisaundre his ledere. Agilaus was a lorde, as it were a kyng oper an emperoure. Afterwarde processe, þerfore we wylle procede and determinate of the MS. Harl. 2261.

Of the inception of realms. *Capitulum octavum.*

The realme of Scitia, other the reigne of kynges in hit, whiche chalangethe the secunde place and ordre after men of Assiria, began in the tyme of Sarug, grawntefader to Thare the fader of Abraham, requirenþe that place boþe by the reason of tyme and of age, vnder Thanaus, firste kyngþe of þeyme, of whom þat floode calleþe Thanay semethe to haue taken name, whiche diuidethe Asia from Europa in the norþte partes of the worlde. That realme was not getten by conqueste of eny man, but men in hit conquerede iij. tymes Asia, causenþe Darius kyngþe of Persia to flee; sleenþe also Cirus the kyng, and destroyenþe Zephiro, duke of grete Alexander. Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo. There was an other realme in the weste of men of Scitia, that is to say of Archadia, whiche is a parte of Grees in Europa, rennenge other contynuenge vnder the firste Agilaus by ix. yere lxxj., vnder xxxj. kyngþe, from

---

1 þe þe | So MS., a. β. γ.
2 Schytes, a.
3 þer, a.
4 Either for Sicou or Sicouians.
5 este, MS. originally; but the correction may be by the first hand.
triginta uno, ab anno vicesimo quarto Nacher avi Abrahæ usque ad Zeuxippum, qui regnavit septimo-decimo anno Hely sacerdotis. Inde quædam regio in Arcadia quondam vocabatur Aegalea, quæ tamen postmodum dicta est Peloponnesus, ubi fuit unum de Græcia regnus. Ranulphus. Vult tamen Dionysius quod regnum Sicyoniorum inceperit quinquagesimo anno Thare, vicesimo videlicet anno ante nativitatem Abrahæ, in quo regnavit primus Cecrops per annos quadraginta quinque.

§ 2. Regnum Aegyptiorum incipit.

Aliud regnum quasi coaevum predictis fuit regnum Aegyptiorum in meridie, quod tempore Nachor avi Abrahæ incepit, habens quindecim dynastias, quæ dicuntur summæ potestates, a primo Mineo vel Zones usque ad tempora Abrahæ. Deinde Thebei tuerunt sexdecim dynastias. Tandem Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, tenuerunt octodecim dynastias. Sicque duravit hoc regnum Aegyptiorum usque ad tempus

---

1 sub, D., and similarly in some other places.
2 Zeuxippum, MSS.
3 dicebatur, C.
4 Agealia, A.D. The true form is Aegaleia.
5 Peloponensis, MSS.
6 So, A.B.; Græcis, E.
7 Græcia regnus, C.D.
8 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
9 quia, B.
10 primus, ins. C.D.
11 sic ilicet, C.D.
12 primus] om. D.
13 Cecrops, MSS.
14 quadraginta quinque] om. B.
15 etiam, ins. C.D.
16 vicinum istis, B.
17 tempore] xlv. anno, B.
18 Zenes, A.
19 Pharaones, E.
20 Deinde ... dynastias] Deinde 16 dynastias tuerunt Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, C.D. Higden should have written Diospolitani.
pis kyngdom durede, under oon and pritty kings,\(^1\) from pe foure and twenty yere of Nachor Abraham his grauntsire anon to Zeuxippus,\(^2\) pat reignede pe yere of Hely pe preost souentene. Perfore oon kyngdom in Areadia somtyme heet Agealea. Noeles afterward hit heet Peloponensis; yere was oon of pe kyngdom of Grees. [R.]\(^3\) Noeles Denys scip pat pe kyndom of Scicions bygan pe yere of Thare fifty; pat was twenty yere or Abraham was i-bore; Thare was Abraham his fader. In pis kyngdom pe firste kyng was Cicrops,\(^4\) and reignede fyue and fifty yere. Anoper kyngdom as hit were in pe same age with pe five forside kyngdoms was pe kyngdom of Egipt in pe soup, and bygan in Nachor his tyme, Abraham\(^7\) his grauntsire. Pis kyngdom hadde fiftene grete lordeschippe, and ekleped hem Dynastias, from pe firste Mineus, oper Zones,\(^8\) to Abrahams tyme. Afterward Thebei, men of Thebes, hyldde sixtene grete lordeschippe, and ekleped hem Dynastias.\(^9\) Pan Diapolitani, pat were i-ekleped Pharaones, pat were kynges of Egipt, hyldde cii tetene grete lordeschippe and ekleped hem Dynastias. Dynastin is grete lordschippe, and power duryng in a prouince to chese\(^10\) kyng oper emperoure. And so pis kyngdom of Egipt durede anon to pe tyme of Cambys[es]\(^11\) pat was the xxiiij\(^{th}\) yere of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham,\(^12\) MS. Harl. 2261. to Zeuxippus\(^2\) which reignede in the xvij\(^{th}\) yere of Hely the preste. Where of a region in Archadia was callede somme tyme Agalia, which was callede afterwarde Peloponensis, where oon realme of Grees was. R. Neuerthelesse Dionisius wille that pe reigne of men of Scitia began in the i\(^{st}\) yere of Thare, that was afore the natinite of Abraham by xx\(^{ii}\) yere, in whom Ciercors reignede firste by xlv. yeres. Also the realme of men of Egipthe in the [sowthe] was coegalle vn to theyme which began in the tyme of Nachor, grauntefader to Abraham, hauenge xv. lye potestates from the firste Mineus other Zones vn to the tymes of Abraham. After that men callede Thebei ocuppiede and did holde xvj. lye potestates. At the laste Diapolitanes, which were callede Pharaones, holded xvij. lye potestates, and so the realme of men of Egiphe durede vn to the times of Cambises, son of Cirus kyng of Persia, to

---

1 So a. and Cx.; kyngdows, MS.
2 Zeuxippus, MSS. and Cx.
3 Reference added from a. and Cx.
4 Ciercops, MS.; Ciercops, a.
5 Pece, a. Cx.
6 pat was, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
7 Abrahams, a.
8 sons, Cx.
9 sexten, Cx.
10 Damastias, MS., and similarly below.
11 that chose, Cx.
12 Cambis, MS. and a.
Decem reges indigene.

Persarum iterum occupant Aegyptum.

Succedunt Lagides vel Ptolemaei.

Romanis edit Aegyptus.

Cambysis, filii Cyri regis Persarum, cui pater adhuc vivens regnum Assyriorem jam tunc ad Medos translatum concesserat, et eum Nabugodonozer cognominavert; cujus quoque princeps Holofernes Aegyptum subjugavit. Et extunc sub septem regibus Persarum Aegyptus mansit.

Post quos recessit Aegyptus a Persis, habens decem proprios reges; quousque Oechus, qui et Artaxerxes rex Persarum duodecimus, expulso usque ad Aethiopiam Nectanebo, rege Aegypti ultimo, regnum Aegypti recuperaret. Quod quidem regnum extunc sub tribus regibus Persarum mansit usque ad septimun annum Alexandri Magni. Ex quo tempore regnum Aegypti et Persarum cessit ditionis Graecorum per annos trecentos sub regibus tredecim, qui dicebantur Lagidae sive Ptolemaei usque ad tempora Julii Caesaris, sive, ut quibusdam placet, usque ad quinquantimdecimum annum Augusti Caesaris, qui superavit Cleopatram filiam Dionysi Ptolemaei ultimi Lagidae. Ex quo tempore Aegyptus cessit Romanis. Sique a principio omnes reges Aegypti usque ad Alexandrum fuerunt.

1 Cambysis, A.E. (not D.)
2 eum] om. C.D.
3 So C.D.; cognominavit, B.; cognoverat, A.E.
4 etiam, C.
5 Olofernes, B.D.
6 dios, E.
7 cf] om. E.
8 Artaxerxes, A.; Artaxerxes, B., Artaxerxes, E.
9 usque ad] usque in, B.; in, C.D.
10 Nectanebo, MSS.

11 extunc] om. D.
12 sive] om. B.
13 Ptolemai, MSS., here and below.
14 usque... Lagidae] om. A.B. (not C.D.)
15 Dionisii, MSS.
16 Sentence slightly varied in C. D.
17 Ex quo tempore] Et extunc, C.D.
Cyrus his sone. Cyrus was kyng of Pers, and 3af while he lyuede pe kyngdom of Assyria pat was po o i-torned to pe Medes to his sone Cambys[es], and cleped him Nabugodonosor also, and his prince Olofernæs,1 and sodued Egipt. And Egipt was vnder seuen kynges of Perse, and after wente from the Perses, and hadde ten kynges of her owne forto Ochus, pat heet Artaxerxes2 also, pe twelfte kyng of Perses, put out Nactanabo,3 the reste kyng of Egipt, anon to Ethiope, and wan pe kyngdom of Egipt. Afterward pe kyngdom durede vnder pre kynges 4 anon to the seuenpe zere of pe grete Alisandre, 5 after [pat] 6 pe kyngdoms of Egipt and of Perse was 7 vnder pe Greeks pre hundre zere vnder prittene kynges, pat were i-cleped Lagides and Ptholomeus 8 anoon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; oper, as som mem mene, anon to pe fifteenpe zere of Augustus Cesar that overcomne Cleopatra,9 Denys his doȝhter. Denys was Ptholomeus and last Lagid. Egipt from that10 tyme fel to 11 Romanes,12 and so al pe kynges of Egipt from the firste begynnyngge anon to Alisandre were four e score and eleuene. Pe kynges of Egipt were first i-cleped

whom his fader 3af, beenge in lyfe, the realme of Assiria, MS. HARL. 2261. which he did translate to men of Medea, and namede hym Nabugodonosor, whose prince, Olofernæs by name, subdue to him Egipte, and after that Egipte remaynyde under vij. kynges of Persia. After whom Egipte was occupiade by x. kynges of that cuntre, vn til that Ochus, otherwise callede Artaxerxes, pe xijthe kyng of Persia, expellenge Nectanabus, kyng of Egipte, vn to Ethiope, recurede that realme ageyne. Whiche realme remaynyde afterwarde vnder thre kynges of Persia vn to the vijthe yere of Alexander the Conqueroure, from whiche tyme the realmes of Persia and also of Egipte began to be subiecte to the domination of Grekes by eec. yere, vnnder xiiij. kynges, whiche were callede Lagide other Ptolomei, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar; other elles, after somme men, vn to the xvthe yere of Augustus Cesar, whiche hade victory of Cleopatra, the doȝhter of Dionysius Ptolomeus, laste of that name callede Lagide. From whiche tyme Egipte was subiecte to the Romanes. Soc alle pe kynges in Egipto from the begynynge to kyng Alexander were xc., of whom the firste were callede Dinas-

1 So a.; Olofernæs, MS. 2 Artaxerxes, MS.; Artaxerxes, a. 3 So a. and Cx., Nactabono, MS. 4 So Cx.; bye kyndoms, a.; pe kyng Donis, MS. 5 Alexander, a. 6 Added from a. and Cx. 7 So MS., a. β. γ.; were, Cx. Perhaps his own correction. 8 Tholomeus, Cx. (i.e. Ptolomæus.) 9 Cleopatram, a. 10 So Cx.; the, MS. 11 So a. and Cx.; in to, MS. 12 be Romayns, a.
Regnum Beli antiquissimum.  

Durat usque ad Sardanapalum.  

Arbaces regnum ad Medos transfert.  

§ 3. Incipit regnum Assyriorum.  

Augustinus De Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.  

Quartum regnum sed tempore primum fuit Assyriorum in oriente sub Belo Nemptide, incipiens vigesimo anno Sarug proavi Abraham, quod toti Asia excepta India dominabatur. Petro, capitulo sexagesimo.  

Et duravit per annos mille trecentos duo sub regibus triginta septem usque ad ultimum Sardanapalum, qui obiit septimo anno Ozias regis Juda. Deinde Arbaces sive Arbaccus propositus et interfector regis transtulit monarchiam Assyriorum ad Medos, quod intelligendum est spe sed nondum re.  

Ranulphus. Nam apud Assyrios post Sardana-
Dyastenes, and Pan Pharaones, and at pe last Lagides and Ptolomeus. ¹ *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Pe kynges of Egypt hadde in her childhode oþer names, but whanne they were i-made kynges pey were i-cleped Pharaones. For a kyng is i-cleped Pharao in pe longage of Egypt. Pe kynges of Alexandria were i-cleped Ptholomeies, when pey were i-maked² kynges; and pe kynges of Romaynes were i-cleped Cesars. Salomon wedded a kynges donþter of Egypt; [I rede of no kyng after hym of Egypt]³ pat was i-maked Pharao. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo-decimo.* Pe fourpe kyngdom, but pe eldest of tyme, is pe kyngdom of Assiries; and bygan in pe est vnder Belus Nemproth pe fyue and twenty ⁴ Þere of Sarug pat was Abrahams fader ⁵ grauntefader. Dis kyngdom had lordschippe of al Asia outake Inde. *Petrus sexagesimo.* And it durede a powsand Þere pre hundred and tweyne, vnder seenc and þratty kynges anon to pe [last]⁶ Sardanapallus pe kyng, pat dyede in ⁷ pe seencpe Þere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. Pan Arbaes, pat heet Abacaus ⁸ also, pe kynges styward and his traytour, for he slowh hym and tornede pe kyngdom of Assiries to pe Medes, pat is to vndirstondynge in hope and nouþt in dede. [R.]⁹ For after Sardanapallus from þe

tines, after that Pharaones, at the laste Lagide or Ptolomei. *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.* Kynges of Egipte, as I suppose, hauenge other names in theire yowthe, ascendenge to the empyre were callede Pharaones, which is callede a kyng after the langage of men of Egipte. Soe in lyke wise kynges of Alexandrye ascendenge to thempyre were callede Ptolomeii, and kynges of the Romans were callede Cesares. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* The iiij⁰ the realme, but firste in tyme, was of men of Assiria in the este, vnder Belus Nemprotides in the begynmenge, in the xxxvi⁰ yere of Sarug grauntesfader to Thare, whiche hade dominacion in alle Asia, Ynde excepte. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* And that realme indurede by a m⁰ ecc. ij. yere, vnder xxviiij⁰ kynges, vn to the laste Sardanapallus, which diede the viij the yere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. After that Arbaes, other wise callede Arbaccus, the governour and sleer of the kyng, did translate the monarchye of men of Assiria vn to men of Media; whiche is to be vnderstonde in kynde other in similitude, but not in trawethe. R. For vij. myȝhty

¹ Ptolomees, a.
² made, a.
³ Added from a. and Cx.
⁴ So a. and Cx.: þratty, MS.
⁵ fader, a.
⁶ Added from a. and Cx.
⁷ in] om. a. and Cx.
⁸ Abacous, a.
⁹ Added from a. and Cx.
Reges Assyrorum post Sardanapulum non monarchae; eorum nominas.

Regnum Babylonis tempore Ezechiel exortum. Regum nonimnas.

Regis Judae usque ad Manassen regem Judae, per annos circiter centum et duodecim, septem fuerunt reges potentes, quamvis non monarchae, quorum nominas sunt Arbaces, Phull, Teglashalasar, Salmanazar, Senacherib, Assaradon, Sargon. Volunt tamen quidam ut post mortem Sardanapali, a septimo anno Oziae usque ad vicesimum primum annum transmigrationis Judaeice, monarchia orientis steterit apud Medos per annos ducentos sexaginta sub regibus octo, a primo scilicet Arbace usque ad ultimum Astyagen; qui fuit avunculus Darii et avus Cyri; quem Astyagen Cyrus subvertens transstulit regnum Medorum ad monarchiam Persarum, relictum ibi Astyagi regno Hyrcanorum. Veruntamen tempore Senecherib regis Assyriorum et Ezechiel regis Juda surrexit magnum regnum Babyloniorem et Chaldasorum, currens sub regibus septem, qui sunt Merodak seu Baladak, Nabugodonosor, Nabogodonosor secundus, E[vil]merodac, Regusar, Labofardac, Balthazar, qui et Nabar; quem occidens Cyrus junctus Dario avunculo suo transstulit.
seuenpe ȝere of Ozias kyng of Iuda to Manasses kyng of Iuda, aboute an honred ȝere and twelue, the Assiries hadde seuen myȝt kynges, pē [he] 1 hadde nouȝt pē kyngdom al hool, of pē whiche þese beep pē names: Arbaces, Phull, Teglafalasar, Salamanasar, Senacheryb, Assaradon, Sargon. Nòpeles som wil mene þat after Sardanapallus his deþ, from þe seuenpe ȝere of Ozias pē kyng to þe ȝere of 2 transmygracioun of Iewes oon and pritty, þe hool kyngdom of þe est stood with þe Medes two honred ȝere and pritty vnder eyȝte kynges, from þe firste Arbaces anon to Astyages þat was Darius em 3 and Cyrus þyr graunťsire. Cyrus ouerturnede 2 þis Astyages, and turnede þe kyngdom of Medes to þe hool kyngdom of Perses, and lefte þe kyngdom of Hircans to Astyages. Nòpeles in Senacheryb kyng of Assiries þis tyme, and in Ezechias þis tyme kyng of Iuda, com vpp þe 4 grete kyngdom of þe Babylôyngs and Caldeys, and durede vnder seuen kynges, 5 þat beep Meredak, 6 þat hatte Baladak also; Nabugodonosor, Euilmederok, 7 Rugusar, 8 Labofardok, 9 Balthasar, þat heet Nabar also. Hym slowh Cyrus i-socted to his emo 3 Darius, kynges reignede in Assiria after Sardanapallus, thanȝe MS. Harl. thei occupiède not the holle monachye, from the vijth ȝere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, by a c. yere and xij., the names of whom were Arbaces, Phullus, Teglatphalazar, Salamanzar, Sennacherib, Assaradon, and Sargon. Neuerthelessse somme men wille that the monachye of the este stode at men of Media after the deth of Sardanapallus, from the vijth ȝere of Ozias kyng of Iuda vn to the xxyth 1 yere of the transmigracion of the Iewes, by cc. yere and lx. yere, vnder vijth kynges, from the firste Arbaces vn to the laste Astiages, which was vncl to Darius and graunte-fader to Cirus. Whiche Cirus, ouercommenge Astiages, did translate the realme of Media to the monachye of men of Persia, levenge to that Astiages the realme of Hircannes. And in the regne of Sennacherib kyng of Assiria, and of Ezechias kinge of Iuda, a grete realme of men of Caldea and of Babilon did aryse, 10 contynuède vnder vijth kynges, which were Merodac other Beladas, Nabugodonosor, Euilmerodac, Egesar, Regusar, Labefardac, Balthazar, other elles Nabar, whom Cirus sleeenge, pro help of Darius his

---

1 Added from a.
2 of þe, a.
3 em, a.; vncl, Cx., and so below.
4 to þe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
5 So Cx.; kyngdoms, MS. and a.
6 Here and below the orthography of the proper names has been left unaltered.
7 Euilmerodac, a.
8 Regusar, a.
9 Labofardak, a.
10 a vye, Harl. MS.; similarly a passecl below.
regnum ad Persas et Medos sub anno transmigrationis Judaicce tricesimo primo; et sic fluxerunt anni ducenti sexaginta a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda, quo cepit deficere monarchia Assyriorum usque ad tricesimum primum annum transmigrationis quando incepit monarchia Persarum.

§ 4. Regnum Persarum.

5 Deinde monarchia Persarum ab anno tricesimo primo transmigrationis usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni, hoc est, a primo Cyro usque ultimum Darium filium Arsamis, duravit per annos ducentos triginta quinque sub regibus tredecim, qui sunt, secundum Giraldum, Cyrus primus; Cambyses secundus, quem pater suus Cyrus cognominaverat Nabugodonozor, et se vivente Nineven cum regno Assyriorum tradiderat annis duodecim, sub quo etiam historia Judith contigit; tertius Ermeides magus; quartus Darius, filius Hystaspis; quintus Xerxes; sextus Artaxerxes; septimus Xerxes; octavus Sogdianus; nonus Darius.

---

1 *et Medos* om. E.
2 *Judaicce* om. C.D., which have slight transpositions.
3 R., ins. C.D.
4 *trescenti*, B.
5 Willelmus, ins. C.D.
6 *quando . . . transmigrationis* om. B.
7 Magni] om. B.
8 ad, ins. B.
9 Arsanni, or Arsani, MSS., and so below. Possibly Higden himself wrote the erroneous form.
10 239 annis, C. (not D.)
11 licet etiam posuerat Darium annum cum Cyri esse primum, ins. C.D.

12 *se vivente et*, C.D. (the latter omits et altogether.)
13 *Ermeides* Emeroides, B.; Emeridius, C.D.
14 *Carius*, C.D.
15 *Iapiss*, MSS.
16 qui et Longimanus, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt, ins. B.C.D.; qui et Longimanus dictus est, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt, A. The versions also vary.
17 *septimus Xerxes* om. E.
18 *Fugandiannis*, MSS.
19 *Sarins*, B.
and tornede his kyngdom [to pe kyngdom] 1 of Persie and of Medes pe 3ere of pe transmygracioun of Iewes oon and pritty. And so passede two hundred 3ere and sixty from pe senenpe 3ere of Ezechias 2 kyng of Iuda. In pe whiche 3ere bygan to faile pe hool kyngdom of Assiries anon to pe 3ere of pe transmygracioun oon and pritty. Doo bygan pe hool kyng-
dom of Pers. 3 [Pan pe hool kyngdom of Perse,] 4 from pe 3ere of pe transmygracioun oon and pritty anon to pe senenpe 3ere of pe grete Alexandre, pat was from pe firste Cyrus to pe laste Darius Arsanius his son, durede two hundred 3ere and fyne and pritty vnder prittene kynges; pat was Cyrus pe firste, Cambyses pe seconde. His fader Cyrus 3af hym anoper name, and cleped hym Nabugodonosor, and 3af hym Nynyve wyf pe kyngdom of Assiries, whyle he was hym self alyve. 5 Vnder hym byfel pe storie of Iudith. Pe pridde Ermeudes Magus; pe ferpe Darius Tapsis his sone; pe siffte Excreses; pe sixte Athar Excreses, 6 pat heet Longimanus 7 also. Vnder hym were Esdras and Neemias. Pe senenpe Excreses; the eij 8pe Fogodian; pe nynpe Darius Nothus. Nothus is a bastard, or he pat is i-gete of a worpy fader and i-bore of an vnworpy moder. Pe tenpe

vncle, translate that realme to men of Persia and of Media MS. Harl. 2261. in the xxxj 10 yere of the transmigracon of the Iewes. And so cc. and xli 11 yere apassede from pe viij 12 the yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, in whiche tyne the monarchye of men of Assiria began to fayle, vn to the xxxj 10 yere of the transmigracon of Iewes, when the monarchy of men of Parthia began. And so the monarchy of men of Persia indurede from the xxxj 10 yere of the transmigracon vn to the viij 12 the yere of grete Alexander, whiche was from the firste Cirus vn to the laste Darius, son of Arsanius, by cc. and xxxv 13 yere, vn to xij. kynges. Whiche be, after Giraldus, Cirus; after hym Cambi-
ses, whom his fader namede Nabugodonozor, and 3afe to hym in his lyfe Ninuen with the realme of Assiria, by xij. yere afore his dethe, vnder whom the memory of that woman Judith happede. The thrydde was callede grete Ermeides. The iiiij 14 the Darius, son of Ytapsis. The v 15 the Xeres; the viij 12 the Artaxerses, whiche was namede otherwise Longimanus, 7 in the tyne of whom Esdras and Neemias floreschede. The viij 12 the Perses. Fogodianus the viij 12 the. Darius Nothus the ix 8 the.

---

1 Added from a.
2 So Trevisa for Ozias.
3 Peers, a. (Peers, above.)
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 Onlye, a.
6 Artaxerses, a.
7 Logimannus, a.; Longinianus, Harl. MS.
8 the ix the Nothus the ixth, Harl. MS.
Nothus; decimus Artaxerxes, qui et Assuerus, sub quo Hester fuit; undecimus Ochus; duodecimus Arsames; tertius decimus Darius, filius Arsamis; quem devincens Alexander Magnus transtulit regnum Persarum ad monarchiam Macedonum apud Graecos.

§ 5. Regnum Graecorum.

Hoc tamen regnum Macedonum prius inceperat sub primo Cranao quartodecimo anno Oziae regis Juda; et sic duravit per annos sexcentos triginta sex usque ad ultimum, Persium, quem occiderunt Romani nono anno Oniae pontificis, qui et Menelaus. Erant tamen in Graecia alia regna successive instituta; quorum primum fuit apud Arcadiam, id est Sieyonios, et inde translatum ad Peloponenses sicut supra dicitur. Aliud regnum Graecorum fuit apud Argivos, et inde translatum ad Mycenas. Aliud fuit apud Athenienses, aliud apud Lacedaemones, id est Spartanos, aliud apud Epirum sive Thraciam, aliud apud Macedoniam; quae omnia, sicut cetera terrarum regna, a regno Romano sunt absorpta, et eidem corporata in hunc modum.

1 Artaxerxes, A.D.; Artexerxes, E.
2 historia, ins. B.
3 Arsantes, MSS., and Arsantes below.
4 interficens, C.D.
5 Hoc cum, and the sentence beginning at apud Graecos, in C. (not D., which inserts in marg. Willems.)
6 quarto, D.
7 626, C.D.
8 So MSS. Higden should have written Persea.
9 R., ins. C.D.
10 etiam nihilominus, ins. C.D.
11 dicitur] om. E.
12 Graecorum] om. C.D.
13 Mecenas, A.E.; Messenas, D.
14 apud] om. B.
15 Traciam, E.D.(as usual); Aran
cium, B; Franciam, C.
16 tandem, ins. C.D.
17 sunt after concorporata, B.
Artharexerses, pat heet Assuerus also; vnder hym was Hester. Pe enleuene Ochus; pe twelpe Arsanius; pe prite-
tenpe Darius Arsanius his sone. Pe grete Alexandre over-
come hym, and tornede pe kynghom of Perses to pe hole kyn-
dom of Macedonies 1 and 2 of Greces. Nopeles pis kynghom 3 of Macedons bygan raper vnder pe firste Cranaus pe fourtenpe zere of Ozias kynge of Iuda, and so durede sexe hundred zere and sixe and pritty anon to pe laste Persius. Pe Romayns slowh hym pe nynpe zere of Onias pe bishopp, pat heet Me-
nelaus also. Nopeles pere were ojer kynghoms in Greces, eueriche after ojer i-ordeyned; of pe whiche pe firste was in Arcadia at pe Sicicions, pat peple, and was i-torned pens to pe Peloponenses, as it is i-seide tofore. Ano\per kynghom of Greces was among pe Argyues, and was i-torned pennes to pe Macens. 4 Ano\per was at Athenys, pat citee; ano\per among pe Lacedemons, pese were pe Sportans. Ano\per at Epirus, pat is T'h]'racia. Ano\per at Macedonie. Pe kynghom 5 of Rome swolowede vp alle pese kynghoms [as he dede o\per kynghoms] 6 of londes, and made hem [alle] 7 longe to pe kynghom of Rome. In pis manere pe kynghom of Rome 8

Artaxerses other Assuerus pe xthe, vnder whom Hester was. Ochus the xjthe. Arsanius the xijthe. Darius the son of Arsanius the xijthe. Whom Alexander overcom-
menge, did translate the realme of men of Persia vn to the monarchy of men of Macedony amonge the Grekes, whiche realme began afore vnder Cranaus in the xijthe yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda; and so that realme induerd by \j\te and xxxvi\j yere, vn to the laste, Persius, whom the Ro-
manes did see in the ix\jthe yere of Onias the bishopp, other Menelaus. After that other realmes were made in Grece by succession; the firste was at Archadia, after that tyme translate to men of Peloponense, as hit is expressede afore. An other realme of the Grekes was at Argiuos, which was translate from pens to Mecenas. An other was at Athenes, an other at Lacedemonia. An other realme at Epira other Tracia; an other at Macedonia. Whiche realmes were made subieete to the realme of Rome, and concorporate to hit, as other realmes were in this maner. The realme of Romanes, begynnenge vnder Ianus the firste

1 Macedons, a.  
2 at pe Grees, a.  
3 So a. and Cx. Nopeles pere were ojer kynghoms, but bis, MS.  
4 Mecens, a. and Cx.  
5 kynge, Cx.  
6 Added from a. and Cx.  
7 Added from a. and Cx.  
8 Text as in Cx.: words errone-
ously repeated in MS.
§ 6. Regnum Romanorum.

Regnum Romanorum sub Jano primo rege Italie exortum usque ad annum septimum Darii filii Arsamis regis Persarum, quem occidit Alexander Magnus, currit per annos octingentos octoginta sub regibus viginti septem; quorum sex primi fuerunt Latini, et quatuordecim sequentes Albani, reliqui septem post urbem conditam Romani. Ex quibus Romulus fuit primus, et Tarquinius Superbus fuit ultimus. Denuo, expulsis ab urbe regibus, duo consules annuatim creati; deinde tribuni plebis et dictatores rem publicam tractabant usque ad Julium Cæsarem per annos quadringentos sexaginta tres. Post hæc, omissa nomine regio, monarchæ, Cæsares, imperatores, et Augusti primatum tenuerunt. Quorum primus fuit Julius ex consule et dictatore factus imperator, cujus successor et nepos Octavianus Augustus regna totius orbis in unam redidit monarchiam. Tandem Philippus imperator vicesimus octavus primus Christianus est effectus. Deinde Constantinus Magnus sedem impe-
bygan vnder Ianus pe firste kyng of Italy, and durede anon to pe seuen pe 3ere of Darius Arsanius his sone, kyng of Persia,-Hym slowe pe grete Alexander. And so pe grete 1 kyngdom of Rome durede at pat cours ei3te hondred 3ere and foure score, vnder seuen 2 and twenty kynges. [Of pe whiche seuen and twenty 3 kynges] 4 sixe pe firste 5 were Latyns. Pe fourtene 6 pat were 7 after were Albans. Pe opere seene pat come after pat pe citee was i-bulde were Romayns, of pe whiche Romulus was pe firste and Tarquinius pe proude was pe laste. Afterward kynges were i-put 8 out of pe citee, and were from 3ere to 3ere tweie consulles i-chose. After consuls tribunes plebis 9 and dictatores 10 rulede the comoute anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme, foure hondred 3ere pre score and foure. Afterward he 11 lift of pe name of kynges, and ecleped here cheef lordes Cesares, emperours, and Augustes; of pe whiche Iulius Cesar was pe firste of a consul and dictator i-made empeavour; his successor and ne was Octauianus 12 Augustus, and brou3te alle pe kyngdoms of pe world in to oon kyngdom al hool. Panne Philippe pe ei3te and twentype empeavour was pe firste empeavour pat was Cristene. 13 Panne pe grete kyng of Iytaly, vn to the viij the yere of Darius, son of Arsanius, and kyng of Persia, whom Alexander the Conqueroure did slee, contynuuede by viij c and lxxx c yere, vnder xxvij kynges, the firste vj. of whom were Latynes, and other xiiiij, succeede were Albani. Other vij. were after the makenge of the city of Rome, of whom Romulus was firste and Tarquinius the proude was laste. Then, the kynges expulsede from the cite of Rome, ij. consulles were made and create yerly; after theym, tribuni, maisters of the peple, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar, by eee c yere lxiiiij. After that, the name of a kyng yle3te, monarche, Cesares, emperours, and men callede Augusti holide the primate and cheife place. Of whom Iulius Cesar, of a consul and a dictator, was made empeavour firste; Octauianus Augustus, his successor and nevewe, redacte in to oon monarchy the realmes of alle the worlde. At the laste, Philippus the xxvij 10 empeavour was made a Cristen man, firste of alle empeourers. After that, grete Constant-

1 grete om. a.
2 ei3te, MS. and a. (not Cx).
3 twey, a.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 The same order of words in a.
6 So Cx.; fourtenb, MS.
7 came, Cx.
8 put, a.
9 plebes, MS., Cx.
10 doctores, MS. a. and Cx.
11 they, Cx.
12 So Cx.; Octianus, a.; Oceanus, MS.
13 cristened, Cx.
rialem apud Constantinopolim constituit, dignitatem tamen sedis apostolicae apud Romam successoribus Beati Petri reliquit.\(^1\) Translato tandem imperio ad Karolum Magnum regem Francorum, Pipini regis filium, nomen imperiale solummodo apud Constantinopolim mansit.\(^3\)

**CAP. IX.**

*De Nini et Semiramidis imperio.*\(^4\)

\*Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* In die-bus Sarug, Belus Nemprotides, rex Babylonis, intravit Assyriam, sed parum ibi conquisivit. At,\(^5\) cum per sexaginta quinque annos regnasset, mortuus est. Cui successit Ninus filius suus tricesimo anno Thare,\(^6\) patris \(^7\) Abrahae, regnare incipientis, regnavitque fere toti Asiae, excepta India, quinquaginta tribus annis. In cuius regni\(^9\) anno quadragesimo tertio\(^10\) natus est Abraham, anno ante urbem Romam conditam M. et pene ccc.\(^11\)

\*Orosius, libro primo.* Anno ante urbem conditam M.ccc\(^9\). Ninus rex Assyriorum propagandae dominationis libidine arma foris extulit, cruentamque vitam quinquaginta annis per totam

---

\(^1\) *relinquit, A.; relinquent, C.D.*
\(^2\) *salamonde, E. (not A.)*
\(^3\) In the preceding chapter a few trivial errors of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly corrected; all the more serious errors are recorded.
\(^4\) Title wanting in MSS.
\(^5\) *Cumque, C.D.*
\(^6\) *Dionysius (in marg.) C.D.*
\(^7\) *ari, C.D.*
\(^8\) So D.; *fere after Asiae in A.E.*
\(^9\) *regni* om. C.D.
\(^10\) *anno ultimo, C.D.*
\(^11\) *anno...ccc.* om. C.D.
Constantyn made Constantynople\(^1\) pe chief citect of pe empere, and lefte Rome forto be chief see of pe pope to Seint Petre his successors. Whanne pe empere was translated and i-torned to pe grete Charles, kyng of Fraunce, Pipinus pe kynges sone, paune pe name of pe emperour [was] lefte\(^2\) allone at Constantynople.

**Capitulum nonum.**

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo.* In Sarug his tyme Belus, Nemprot his sonne, kyng of Babylonye, wente into Assyria, and wan it afterward wip ynuce a schort tyme; and whan he hadde i-reigned fīve and sixty ſere paune he deide. And his sone Nynus regnede after hym, and bygan to reigne pe £ere of Thare Abrahams fader euene pritty, and was kyng wol nygh of al Asia outake Inde pre and fifty ſere. In pe ſere of his kyngdom pre and forty Abraham was i-bore, to fore pe buldinge of pe citect of Rome nyh a powsand ſere and pre hondred. *Orosius, libro primo.* De ſere to fore pe buldyngge of pe citect of Rome a powsand and pre\(^3\) hondred, Nynus kyng of Assiriens for couetise to make hym greet lordschipe\(^4\) bare out armour, and lyuede tyne ordeine de the seete imperialle at Constantinople, levenge the dignite of the seete apostolicke at Rome to the succesores of Seynte Petre. At the laste, the empyre translate to grete Charles kyngge of Fraunce, son to kyngle Pipinus, the name imperialle remaynede oonly at Constantinople.

**Capitulum nonum.**

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo.* Belus Nemprotides kyngge of Babilon, entrede in to Assyria, in the daies of Sarug, conquerenge but lytel per, whiche diede after that he hade reignede lxxv, yere. Whom Ninnus his son succeede, bygynenge to reigne in the xxxd yere of Thare fader to Abraham, reignedenge in alle Asia, Ynde excepte, iiiij. yere; in the xliij\(^d\) of the reigne of whom Abraham was borne, by a m\(^1\) yere allemoste and ecc. afore the edifienge of the ciete of Rome. *Orosius, libro primo.* In the m\(^1\) and ecc. yere afore the edifieagenge of the ciete of Rome, Ninnus kyngge of Assyria, movede thro the luste\(^4\) domination,
Asiam bellis\(^1\) egit.\(^2\) A meridie atque mari\(^3\) Rubro surgens sub ultimo septentrione Euxinum Pontum vastando perdomuit. Scythicam\(^4\) barbariem adhuc tunc imbellem et innocentem vires suas nosse; et non jam lacte pecudum (ut prius) sed sanguine hominum vivere, dum vicit, edocuit. Novissime\(^5\) Zoroasten, Bactrianorum regem magicaque artis inventorem, interficit. Postremo, dum deficientem a se urbem quandam obsideret, icu sagittae interiiit.\(^6\) Petrus, capitulo tricesimo sexto.\(^7\) Ninus, filius Beli, mortuo patre obtinuit Assyriam; et civitatem Niniven, a nomine suo sic nuncupatam, caput\(^8\) regni sui fecit, ac\(^9\) trium dierum itinere ampliavit; nam prius Nemphrot eam\(^10\) fundaverat.\(^11\) Devicit etiam Chaam, qui et Zoroastes, regem Bactrie;\(^12\) qui\(^13\) septem liberales artes\(^14\) in quatuordecim columnis, septem aeneis et septem lateritis, contra utrumque diluvium conscrisit. Cujus etiam\(^15\) libros Ninus combussit. Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.\(^16\) Scripsit\(^17\) Aristoteles de Zoroaste, quod vicies centum milia versuum in arte magica\(^18\) com-
Heberia, science seven, melke and versus Zorastes, huger yere, xiiij. tyle, Armenya. Of made grete his alderne, and all pyllors, sleenge against in ageyne Cham, so Zoroastes his made pat science of the bataillc, and at pe laste he slow Zoroastes kyng of Bactrians pat was fyndere of wyche-craft, but at pe laste dede, while he bysegede a citee pat was tornede from hym, he was i-hit wip an arewe, and so he was i-slawe. Petrus, 369. Nynus Belus his sone, whanne his fader was dede, [hadde] 6 Assiria, and pe citee Ninyue i-nemped by his name, and made pat citee Ninyue [chef of his kyngdom, and made the citee] 7 huger and more by pe iourneyes. For Nemproth hadde tofoorhonde i-founded pat citee, and slow also Cham, pat hete Zoroastes 5 also, kyng of Bactria, pat wroot the seuen 8 science in fourtene pileres, in seuen of bras and seune of brenn 9 tyle, forto saue hem açenst ciper flood, 10 but Nynus brende his books. Isidorus, libro 8o. Aristotil of Zoroastes he wroot pat he made twenty hondred powsand vers of wyche-craftes, and Democtitus made
gedrede an hoste, ledenge a cruelle lyfe by l° yere, thro alle Asia, in batelles, begynmenge from the merqulien and the reedde sec, made tame the cruelle peple of Scitia; seenge also at the laste Zoroastes, kyng of Bactria, and the firste fynder of wyche-crafte. And at the laste Ninus was sleyne with an arowe at the seege of a cite. Petrus, 16o capitulado. Ninus, the son of Belus, after the dethe of his fader opteynde Assiria, and the cite of Ninuen, callede so after his name, and made hit the principalle place of his realme, makenge that cite more large by the iournye of thre daies, whom Nemproth founded firste, onercommenge Cham and Zoroastes kyng of Bactria, whiche did write aegyne either grete floode viij. artes liberalle in xiiiij. pyllors, viij. of brasse and viij. of tylestones. The books of whom Ninus brente also. Isidorus libro octavo. The grete clerke Aristotille wrytethe of Zoroastes, that he made xxii tymes a c.m 1 versus of wyche crafte, whiche

---

1 Heberia, MS.
2 an, a.
3 pesible, Cx.
4 with, Cx.
5 So a. and Cx.; Zorastes, MS., but Zoroastes below (once).
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 Added from a.; so also in Cx. (nearly).
8 So a. and Cx. (who has sciences below); see nence, MS.
9 brand, Cx.
10 agenste fyre and water, Cx.
posuerit; quam artem Democritus postmodum temperavit. Petrus tricesimo sexto.

pat craft more afterward in Ypocratis\(^1\) tyme. *Petrus* \(^{36}\) \(^{\text{a}}\) *Trevisa*. Of pis Nynus mawmetrie \(^{2}\) bygan in pis maner.\(^{3}\) When Bellus was dede his sone Nynus, for to have som of his sorwe, made an ymage of his fader, and he dede \emph{pat} ymage so grete worschippe and reuerence \emph{pat} he spared al euel doeres \emph{pat} fli\(z\)e to \emph{pat} ymage; by ensample of pis doynges meny men made ymages to her lene frendes, and so by ensample of Belus his mawmet come for\(p\) oper\(e\) mawmettes. [Also of Belus his name come for\(p\) \emph{pe} comoun names of mawmettis] \(^{4}\) in dyuerse longages and tonges; for som men clepe\(p\) her mawmet Beel, som Baal, and som Baalim, and som \emph{3a\(f\)} here mawmettes\(^{5}\) a surname, and clepe\(h\) ir names\(^{6}\) Belphegor, and som Belsebub. *Alexander in mythologia*.\(^{7}\) Of \emph{pe} brynyngye for\(p\) of mawmetrie com wel ny\(h\) al \emph{pe} feynynge of poetrie, for whanne Sirophanes of Egipt hadde an ymage of his sone \emph{pat} was dede, \emph{pat} ymage is i-cleped\(^{8}\) Ydolum, \emph{pat} is, likenesse and schappe, for likenes of sorwe. Whanne \emph{pe\(y\)} hadde i\(c\)made \emph{pat} image in mynyde of his sone, \emph{pat} ymage was hugeliche\(^{10}\) i\(w\)orshippe\(d\) of his seruauntes; it was refute and soecour to mysdoeres as he hadde i\(o\)rdeyned; and while \emph{pe\(y\)} sou\(z\)te helpe and remedye of sorwe \emph{pe\(i\)} fond seed and springynge of wel more sorowe; for \emph{pe old }

arte Democritus amplificcde in the tyme of Ypocras. *Petrus*, *MS. Harl. tricesimo sexto capitulo*. Ydoles toke begynnenge of pis Ninus in this maner. Belus fader to Ninus dedde, Ninus made an ymage to the similitude of his fader \(p\) to the solace of his sorowe. To whom he \emph{za\(f\)}e so grete reuerence that he sparede gyllty men fleenge to hit. Thro exemple of whom other nowble men made ymages of their frendes; and lyke as other ydoles toke begynnenge of the ydole of Belus, soe a generalle name of ydoles is deriuate of the name of hym, after diuersite of speeches. For men calle somme ydoles Beel, somme Baal, somme Baalim, specifienge somme names, as somme men Beelzabub, somme men Beelphegor. *Alexander in Mythologia*. Alle \(f\)igmente toke begynnenge allemoste of ydolatry, for when Sirophanes of Egypte hade made an ymage of his son for grete sorowe, worschippe\(d\) moche of his seruauntes, ordeyned hit to be a refute of gyllty men fleenge to hit. Whiche inquirenge a remedy of hevyynesse founde a grete place of sorowe, for olde erroure began to be diffudede thro the worschippenge

---

1. Ypocratis, a.; Ypocras, Cx.
2. Mawmetrye, first, a.
3. So Cx.; tyme, MS, and a.
4. Added from a. and Cx.
5. mawmett, a.
6. mawmett, a. (not Cx.)
7. Mitologia, MS., a.; Mytholog., Cx.
8. he cleped, Cx., which is better. (3. and y. agree with MS. and a.)
9. he, Cx.
10. gretyly, Cx.
in idolorum cultura coepit diffundi. Nee tamen eosdem ritus cuncti recipiendos\(^1\) statuerunt.\(^2\) Nam philosophi unum Deum colunt; quem pro\(^3\) multipli dispositione, qua variis modis mundum regit, variis vocabulis appellant; utpote\(^4\) Vitumnus, quia vitam praestat; Sentinus, quia sensum dat;\(^5\) Jupiter, quia juvat. Refert etiam Plato in libro qui intitulatur \textit{Philo}\(\text{\textsc{s}ph}\textit{op}\textit{l}\textit{us}}\(,\) quod poet\ae\ lucri causa et favoris rationes, scientias,\(^6\) et potentias ad usum vivendi concessas membratim effigiaverunt, et propriis nominibus assignaverunt; utpote scientiam colendi agros vocaverunt Cererem, scientiam colendi vineas Bacchum.\(^7\) Et etiam turpes actus hominum inter deos numeraverunt.\(^8\) \textit{Isidorus, E\textit{tymolog.}, libro octavo}. Quos pagani deos asserunt homines fuerunt, et pro uniuscujusque vita meritis vel magnificientia coli apud suos post mortem ceperunt. Sed etiam \(^9\) daemonibus persuasentibus\(^10\) quos illi pro sola memoria honoraverant, successores existimabant\(^11\) deos. Et ad ista magis extollenda accesserunt figmenta poetica. \textit{Ranulphus}. Et sicut inuit Augustinus de Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo, poeta Labeo\(^12\) tradidit tres differentias numinum. Nam quosdam

---

\(^1\) recipiendo, A.
\(^2\) recipiendos censuerunt, C.D.
\(^3\) ex, C.; om., D.
\(^4\) utpote\] nt, C.D.
\(^5\) For Vitumnus and Sentinus, see \textit{Aug. de Civ. Dei}, vii., 2, and 3.
\(^6\) et scientias, A.; om., C.D.
\(^7\) vocaverunt Bacchum, A.; Bacchum vocarentes, C.D.
\(^8\) numerantes, C.D.
\(^9\) etiam] om., C.D.E.
\(^10\) persuasentibus] so A.C.D.; om. E.; sustinentibus, B.
\(^11\) existimabant, A.; existimantes C.; existimarent, D.
\(^12\) Labio, E. (not A.). This clerical error sufficed to lead Trevisa astray, and the Harleian translator also apparently.
error in worchippe of mawmetis gan to sprede. Nopeles pe
same manere doyng was nougā 1 i-ordeyned of al men. For
philosophres worschipped oon 2 God and ḫaf 3 hym many names
for meny manere doynges and worchipynges þat he worcep;
lycep, 4 for he ϖeųep lyf; fedeþ, for he ϖeųep felynge; Jupiter,
þat is, helper, for he helcep. Also Plato, in þe book þat hatte
Philosophus, seip þat poetes, by cause of wynnynge and of
fauour, peynytede reasons sciens and mykst þat were i-graunted
to þe vse of lyuynge in meny manere schappes, and ḫaf euercich
a propre name. And so konnynge of telieenge 4 of feeldes þey
cleped Cerereś, 5 konnynge of telieenge of vyynes þey clepede 6
Ba[כ]chus, and accounde tote sole dedes of men amonge goddes. 7
Isidorus, Etymologia, libro 8°. þey þat payenis 8 clepþ goddis,
þey were men. And as þey bere hym in her liif, bettre or wers,
so þey were i-worschipped after her deep. Bote by false lore
of fendes men þat come afterward worschipped hem for goddis,
that were first i-worschipped onliche for myndes; and þat forto
make it more solempne com feynynges of poetes. B. Augusti-
nius de Civitate Dei, libro iij. capitulo xi. þe poete wip his
lippe spekeþ of þe manere of goddes; for som þey clepee
of ydoles, neuerthelesse that rite was not ordeyned for
alle men. For philosophers worschipped oon God, whom
THEIR namede by diuerse names for the monyfolde dispo-
sicion thro whom he gouernethe the worlde in diuerse
maneres; as Vitamnus, 9 in that he ßiffethe life; Sentinæs,
in that he ßiffeth wytte and felenge; Jupiter, for he ßelpethe.
Also that grete clerke Plato rehersethe in a boke of his
callede Philosophus, that poetes for cause of luere and of
fauore haue chaungedee reasones, sciences, and powers to the
vse of lyvenge grawwtede afore tyme to the actes and
vile operaciones of men, callenge Sereris the science of
tyllenge feldes, and Bac[כ]chus of vyynes, nowmbrengu these
symple actes amonge goddes. Isidorus, libro octavo. The
goddes, that pagances do worschippe, were men somme
tyme, and began to be worschippede after their merites
and magnificence in this lyfe; but, tho the persuasion of
the deul, theire successorres trawede thyme to be goddes,
whom men afore worschippede oonyly for a memory; whiche
thynges the figmentes of poetes helpede moche. B. And
as Seynte Austyn semethe to reherse, De Civitate Dei, libro
secundo, capitulo undecimo, poetes in wyntyng Ẓafe iij.
differences and diueries of ydoles, callenge somme of

---

1 So a. and Cx.; now, MS.
2 o. a.; o. Cx.
3 and lyere, MS. a. B. γ. Pro-
  bably we should read lyere (and
  feler below).
4 tellyng, a.; tellyng, Cx.
5 So MS.; and the error may be
  safely set down to Trevisa himself,

who elsewhere imagines Appolyon to
be the nominative of Apollo. The
Harl. version is somewhat worse.
6 So a.; clepe, MS.
7 So Cx.; gode, MS.; gode, a.
8 pagynus, Cx.
9 Victimus, Harl. MS.
dixit deos, ut Jupiter, Mars; quosdam semideos, ut Hercules, Romulus; quosdam heroes, id est, virtuosos et morigeratos homines, qui putabantur aliquid divinitatis habere, ut Hector, Achilles. Ex idolatria ortae sunt variae superstitiones et multae, qualis est illa de quae loquitur Hieronymus super Isaiah decimo\textsuperscript{1} octavo, dicens quod Aegyptii et pene omnes orientales colunt Fortunam, cujus idolum loco nominatissimo ponunt; dextre ejus cornu repletum hydromelle apponunt,\textsuperscript{2} de quo omnes\textsuperscript{3} circumsedentes nituntur gustare in ultimo die Novembris; quo tempore, si cornu plenum invenerint,\textsuperscript{4} pronosticant copiam rerum totum anno illo avertere; si econtra invenerint, gemunt.\textsuperscript{5}

\textit{Trogus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.}\textsuperscript{6} Mortuo Nino Semiramis uxor sua\textsuperscript{7} Semiramis cum filio impube Nino sive Ninian relictio; quae non ausa immaturo puero regnum tradere, nec ipsa quidem regnum palam tractare, simulat se\textsuperscript{8} pro matre filium, pro femina puerum. Nam vox utrique\textsuperscript{9} gracilis et statura mediocris. Igitur brachia et crura velamentis, caput tiara tegit. Et

\textsuperscript{1} So A.B.; \textit{viceismo}, E. The text is correct. See lib. xvi. e. 65. (tom. iv. p. 639. Ed. Migne).
\textsuperscript{2} ponunt, B.
\textsuperscript{3} omnes] homines, B.
\textsuperscript{4} invenerunt, A.
\textsuperscript{5} Ranulphus ... gemunt] om. C. D.
\textsuperscript{6} cap. septimo] om. A.C.D.; primo, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1. and c. 2.
\textsuperscript{7} sua] ejus, B.
\textsuperscript{8} se] om. B.
\textsuperscript{9} utriusque, D.
goddes, as Jupiter\(^1\) and Mars; som halfe goddes, as Hercules and Romulus; and som vertuous men pat me trowede pat hadde somwhat of godhede, as Hector\(^2\) and Achilles. Of manganesee come manye cuel manere of doyng; such is pat pat\(^3\) Ierom spekep vppon Isay [decimo] octavo,\(^4\) and selp pat Egipeciens and wel nyr alle men of est\(^5\) londes worschippeth Fortune, pat is, god of happes, as pey menep; the ymage of Fortune\(^6\) is i-sette in a place pat is wel i-knowe, and hasp in his riȝt hond an horne ful of mede; alle pat sittep aboute fondep\(^7\) to taste of pat horne pe laste day of Nouembre; and zif pey fyndep pan pe horne ful, it bodep a good corn ȝere, and zif pey fyndep it empty,\(^8\) panne pey makep sorwe. 

\(\text{Trogus, libro primo.}\)

Whanne Nynus was dede, his wyf Semiramis, wip hir sone Nynus, pat heet Nynyan also, reignede in pis manere: pe womman durste\(^9\) nouȝt bytake pe kyngdom to pe ȝong childe, noþer sche durste hir self regne ȝopenliche; perfore sche desgised hir self in pe childes liche, pe moder for pe sone, a womman in stede of pe childe, for eiper hadde a small voys and [was]\(^10\) mene of stature. Perfore sche\(^11\) hidde hir armes and hir pyȝhes wip dyuers helynges, and here heed wip a cappe. And for me schulde nouȝt seie pat sche hidde\(^12\) eny ping wip pe\(^13\)

theyme goddes, as Jupiter, Mars; somme halfe goddes, as MS. HARL. 2261. Hercules and Romulus; and somme vertuous as hauenge parte of godhede, as Hector and Achilles. Also diuerse supersticiones began of ydolatry, as Seynte Ierom spekethe on the xviiithe chapitre of Ysay, seyenge that men of Egipte and of the este partes worschippe Fortune. The ydole of whom thei sette in the chiefe place, holdenge an horne in the ryȝht echonde replete with hony, of whom alle men syyttenge aboute do taste in the laste day of Nouember; and if thay fyndye the horne fulle at that tyme thei prophesicte grete habundance of goddes to comme in that yere foloenge, and if hit be voide thei waile and sorowe. 

\(\text{Trogus, libro primo.}\)

Ninus dedde, Semiramis his wyfe, lefte with Nynus other Ninian his son tendre in age, began to reigne, whiche wyllenge not here childe to reigne for infancy, feynedde here as a son, beeng the moder. For thei were of an egalle stature, and lyke of speche. Wherefore sche made clothes for here heddes, legges, and armes of purpose, commandenge the

---

1. So a.; here, and elsewhere sometimes, MS. has fabler.
2. So a.; Ector, MS.
3. pa, MS.
4. 18\(^{5}\), a.; MS., correctly.
5. pe est, a.
6. the ymage of Fortune] twice repeated in MS.
7. foundeth, Cx.
8. leer, a.; cygd or empty, Cx.
9. burste, a.
10. Added from y.; a. B. and Cx. agree with MS.
11. they, Cx.
12. had, Cx.
ne novo habitu aliquid occultare videretur, populum suum similis modo vestiri jube.t. Quem quidem morem vestis gens illa adhuc tenet. Magna deinde huc mulier gessit; at cum cunctorum invidiam superasset, quae et qualis fuerit fatetur. Quod quidem factum magnam illi gloriam adauxit. Nam et Æthiopiam subjugavit, Indiam debellavit. Ad postremum, cum concubitum propria filii expetisset, ab eodem interfecta est, cum quadraginta duobus annis regnasset.

Ninus, Nini filius vero ejus Ninus, paternis ac maternis laboribus contentus, raro a viris visus est; in turba feminarum consenuit. Posterique sui ejus exemplum secuti responsa gentibus per internuntios dabant. Ranulfus. Quod et usque ad tempora Sardanapali observationem est.

CAP. X.

newe manere of cloppinge, sche hiȝte ṭat hir peple schulde goo i-cloped in ṭe same array, and ʒit ṭat peple vsep ṭe same manere cloppinge. ṭanne ṭis womann dede meny grete dedes, and whanne 1 sche had ouercome ṭe envie 2 of alle enemyes, ṭanne sche knowlechede what sche was and how sche hadde i-doo. ṭan ṭe doynge turned hire to ful 3 greet worschippe; for sche ouercome Ethiopia, blew men lond, and Ynde also. And ṭe laste sche desired hir owne sone, and bad him forto ligge by here; and he slow here, whan sche hadde i-reigned two and fourty ʒere. But hir sone Nynus helde hym apaied wip ṭe travaill 4 of his fader and moder, and was afterward selde i-seie amonche men, and leneđe and wax olde among wommen. And his successors, kynges ṭat come after hym, folwede ṭat ensample of hym and ʒeuen 5 answere to ṭe peple by messangers ṭat schulde goo by twene. R. ṭat manere doynge was i-vsed anon to ṭe kyng Sardanapallus his tyme.

Capitulum decimum.

Genesis. Thare whanne he was pre score ʒere olde and ten, ṭan he gat Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; [and Abraham] 6 was peple to be clothede in that maner also, whiche consuctuđe peple of ṭat cuntre vse ṭo ṭis tyme presencę; whiche woman did grete thynges in ṭere reigne. For sche made subiecte Ethioppe, and faughte score ageynes Ynde, whiche desiren gente ṭo ṭaude ṭe pleasure of the flesche with ṭere awne son was sleyne by hym. And ṭe whanne, son ṭo Semiramiś, hade reginede xlij 1 yere, contenite ṭo ṭe labores of ṭis fader, [he] was seen ṭo ṭe selde ṭe men, drawenge ṭaercyenge moche ṭo ṭe company of women; ṭos successors vseŋe ṭe seide condicion ʒafe answere ṭo peple ṭo ṭe messyngers betwene. R. Whiche thyngę was observęe ṭo ṭe kepede ṭo ṭe tymses ṭe Sardanapallus.

Capitulum decimum.

Thare beenge of lxxi 1 yere ṭo age Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; whiche Abraham was borne ṭo ṭe xlij 1 yere

1 and whan repeated in MS.
2 enemy, Cx.
3 right, Cx.
4 travaill, MS.; travaile, Cx.
5 ʒee, a.; yaf. Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
quadragesimo tertio anno Nini regis Assyriorum, du-
centesimo nonagesimo secundo anno post diluvium secundum Josephum. Ranulphus. De numero an-
norum istius secundae ætatis vide supra.\(^2\) Genesis. Porro Aram\(^3\) genuit Loth, Sarai,\(^4\) et Melcham. Sed\(^5\)
mortuus est Aram ante patrem suum Thare\(^6\) in Ur Chaldaeorum. Ex quibus liquet quod\(^7\) anno undecimo Abrahae mortuus est Ninus. Petrus, capitulo sexag-
semino. Cujus uxor Semiramis, ut regnare posset post maritum,\(^8\) nupsit proprio filio,\(^9\) quem ex Nino marito\(^10\)
susceperat; et ex eo filium suscepit,\(^11\) qui Babyloniam amphiavit. Genesis. Inde Thare, non valens ferre in-
jurias sibi illatas de adorando igne, in Chaldaeæ, ubi et Aram primogenitum suum\(^12\) extinxerant, peregrinatus est eum Abram et Nachor et familia Aram usque ad Charram\(^13\) Mesopotamia,\(^14\) ubi completis ducentis quin-
que annis mortuus est\(^15\) Abram, mortuo patre suum Thare,\(^16\) descendit de Charra in Sichem, et inde Penta-
polim; postmodum\(^17\) collocans tabernaculum inter Bethel et Hai,\(^18\) fame invalescente descendit in Ægyptum, dicens Sarai fore\(^19\) sororem suam,\(^20\) Josephus, libro pri-
mo,\(^21\) capitulo septimo. Abrahaem, apud Chaldaeos prius

\(^{1}\) 293, C.D.  
\(^{2}\) Ranulphus ... supra] om. C.D.  
\(^{3}\) So A.B.; Abraham, E.  
\(^{4}\) So A.; Saray, E.  
\(^{5}\) Setf] et, C.D.  
\(^{6}\) Thare] om. C.D.  
\(^{7}\) Ex quibus ... quod] om. C.D.  
\(^{8}\) maritam] cum, C.D.  
\(^{9}\) filio suo, B.  
\(^{10}\) marito] om. C.D.  
\(^{11}\) suscepit] genuit, C.D.  
\(^{12}\) filium suum pr. B.; filium suum C.D.  
\(^{13}\) in Carrum, A.B.C. (not D.)  
\(^{14}\) Mesopotamiae] om. B.  
\(^{15}\) moritur] Thare, C.D.  
\(^{16}\) suo Thare] om. C.D.  
\(^{17}\) postea, C.D.  
\(^{18}\) So A.; Hai, D.E.  
\(^{19}\) esse, B.C.D.  
\(^{20}\) dicens] Saray uxorem suam esse sororem, C.D., which is better.  
\(^{21}\) primo] om. E.  The true reference is to lib. i. c. 8.
i-bore pe 3ere of Nynus kyng of Assiria pre and fourty, two Trevisa.
hundred 3ere foure score and twelve after Noe his flood, so scip Iosephus. B. Pe nombre and pe somme of pis seconde age loke to fore in pis book. Genesis, Pan Aaram1 got Looth, Sarry, and Melcham: Aaram deide to fore his fader Thare in Ur Caldeorum, a place in Caldea: and so Nynus deide pe 3ere of Abraham his age elencene. Petrus 60°. Semyramis Nynus his wif, for sche wolde regigne after hir housbonde Nynus, sche wedded hir owne sone pat sche hadde by hir housbonde Nynus, and hadde by hir sone a childe pat echd 2 Babilonia and made it more. Genesis. Panne Thare myȝte nouȝt suffre pe wrong pat hym was doo of worschippynge of fuyr in Caldea, pei hadde i-slave his eldest sone Aaram. He wente out of pe 3 contre wip Abraham and Nachor and Aaram his meyny anon to Charram in Mesopotamia, and deide pere after two hundred 3ere and fyue. Abraham whanne 4 his fader Thare was dede he wente down out of Charra in to Sichem, and pennes into Fen[ta]polis; 5 afterward he piȝt his paulyoun bytwene Bethel and Hay. And honger wax 6 strong he wente down in to Egipte, and tolde pere pat Saray was his sustyr. Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo 7°. Abraham lernede in

of Nynus kyng of Assiria, cc.xeij. yere after the grete floode, MS. HARL. 2261.

—

1 So a. and Cx.: Aaron, MS.
2 echyd and enlarged. Cx.
3 pat, a., Cx.
4 So a. and Cx.: was, MS.
5 Pentapolis, a., Cx.
6 was, Cx.


---

1 veniens, C.D.
2 primus] om. B.
3 arismetica, A.; arismetica, B.
4 antea, C.D., which, after ignotam, add, a quibus postmodum istæ scientiae pervenerunt ad Ægyptios.
5 Reference added from A.
6 Abraham after Ægypto in E.
7 est] om. D.
8 dicitur] om. B.
9 ibi enim, C.D.
10 sepultae, D.E.
11 sunt] om. B.
12 Variousy written in MSS.
13 Ranulphus ... patet] om. C.D.
14 occasione, C.D., which vary the sentence.
15 occurrente, A.
16 43, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 46, and c. 47.
17 autem, C. (not D.)
18 Sem, A.
19 filium, D.
Caldea and wente doun in to Egipte, and was þe firste þat taȝte þe Egipcians ars metrick\(^1\) and astrologic, þat was unkone to hem to fore honde. *Genesis.* Abraham was ful riche, and went aȝen out of Egipte to þe place of þe forscide paulylun, and for strift of herdes he departede from洛th, and wente from hym anon to þe vale of Mambre besides Ebron. *Petrus* 42, *Hebron*. Hebron, þat hatte Chebron also, is \(^2\) a citee, and hatte [also]\(^3\) Cariatharbe, of Cariath, þat is a citee, and Arbe, þat is foure; for foure þe grettest patriarches were i-buryed þere, Adam, Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob; but Ioseph is i-buryed in Sichem besides Mount Ephraym, as it is i-seide abone in libro Iosue, capitulo ultimo. *Genesis.* Whan Abraham came aȝen from þe batayle of foure kynges, he þaf terynge of al þat he hadde i-gete to Melchysedek\(^4\) king of Salem; and Melchisedek offred bred and wyn. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus* 43, *Decima Melchisedek*.\(^5\) Men\(^6\) spekeþ and\(^7\) demeþ pat Abraham þaf firste tethynes; but Abel þaf raper þe firste þat God sente hym of alle manere kynde, þe Hebrewes telle þat Melchisedek was Sem, Noe his sone,

firste amonge men in Caldea, goenge in to Egipte tawȝte MS. Harl. 2261.

theyme arismetrik and geometry, and also astrology, not known amonge theyme afore that tyme. *Genesis.* Abra-

\(^1\) arismetrik, a. (not Cx.) \(^5\) Decima Melchisedek] om. a.

\(^2\) here is, MS. (not a. or Cx.) \(^6\) Me., a.

\(^3\) Added from a. and Cx. \(^7\) spekeþ and] om. a.; *Me* redeth

\(^4\) Melchisedech,a.; Melchysedech,Cx., that, Cx.

---

**MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. II.**

289
Isaak; et omnes primogenitos a Noe usque 1 ad Aaron 2 fuisset sacerdotes, qui in conviviis et oblationibus benedicebant populo, quibus et primogenita dabantur; 3 et haec esse 4 primogenita, quae Esau vendidit Jacob fratris suo. Ab 5 ista etiam victoria Abraham tradunt quidam annum Jubileum sumpsisse primordium 6 pro haec remissione 7 captivorum. Jobel enim dicitur remissio, vel 8 initium. Unde Jobeleus 9 vel Jubileus instituitur in quinquagesimo anno, eo quod Lotz tune fuerit 10 quinquaginta annorum, 11 vel quod 12 Abraham astrorum peritus noverat quod intemperies, quae proveniunt 13 ex planetis elevatis seu depressis usque ad quinquagesimum annum ad temperiem redeunt. Et quod Abraham 14 vidit in astris imitatus est in terris. Petrus, quinquagesimo tertio. 15 Abraham natus est Ismael de ancilla Agar, qui 16 tertio decimo etatis suae anno circumcisus est. 17 Quem ritum adhuc sequuntur Arabes, quorum auctor Ismael fuit. 18 Genesis. Hic postmodum vir sagittarius effectus progenuit ex suae uxore Agyptia 19 duodecim populorum duces, Saracenos, 20

---

1 usque] om. C. (not D.)
2 So A.D.; Aron, E.
3 debebantur, B.
4 et illa fuerunt, C.D.
5 Petrus, c. 41, ins. C.D. (in marg.)
6 initium, C.D.
7 redemptione, C.D.
8 et, C. (not D.)
9 Jobelius, A.
10 fuerat, B.

11 eo quod ... annorum] om. D.
12 quia, A.B.C.D.
13 provenient, B.
14 Adam, A.B.; Abram, E.
15 The true reference is to c. 50.
16 in, ins. C.D. (omitting etatis suae).
17 erat, D.
18 auctor fuerat, D.
19 ex ... Agyptia] om. C.D.
20 Saracenos videlicet, C.D.
and tellep pat he lenede anon to Isaac. Pey tellep also pat from Noe anon to Aron  
alle pe eldest sones were preostes, and 
blessid pe peple in offrynges [and festes],  
and fenge and hadde pe firste burpe of bestes, and me selp pat suche were pe firste burpse pat Esau solde to his broper Iacob. Also 
som men menep pat annus Iubileus,  
pat is pe zere of grace as  
is i-ordeyned pe fiftipe zere, took pe bygynnynge of pe victorie for pe delyueranence of prisoneres. Iobel is  
forzifnes oper bygynnynge; perop comep Ioboleus oper 
Iubileus, pe zere of grace, as is  
i-ordeyned pe fiftipe zere;  
for Looth was po fifty zere olde. For Abraham, pat was konnynge in pe craft of knowleche of pe planetes 
and sterres, knewe pat pe temperure  
pat comep of hi^nesse and lownesse of sterres and planetes,  
comep azen to temperure at pe fiftipe zere;  
and so Abraham ordeyned som liknesse here in erpe pat he say in pe sterres and planetes. 

_Petru 53._ Abraham hadde a sone Ismael i-bore of his 
sremaunt Agar, pe whiche Ismael was i-circumcised  
when he was prittene zere olde. Pe Arabes vsep  
it pat manere of doyinge. Ismael was hire auctor. _Genesis._ Pis Ismael was afterward an archer, and gat on his wif pat was of Egipte twelue dukes, lederes of peple, pat cleped hem self  

Isaac, and alle the firste geten childer from Noe vn to  
Aaron to haue be prestes, whiche blessede the peple in  
festes, and in oblaciones; to whom the firste geten thynge  
were ziffen, whom Esau solde to Iacob his brother. From  
whiche victory of Abraham, somme men say the yere of  
Iubile is to haue taken originalle, for that remission of captif  
men; for Iobel is callede remission other begynnenge, where-
fore the yere of Iubile is ordeynede in the 1st yere. Other  
ellles Abraham, experte in astronomy, knowenge by the  
planetes the intemperance of wedre eleuate and depre-
sede to returne to temperance at the 1st yere, folowede in  
erthe that he vnderstode by the dispositon of bodies supra-
celestialle. _Petru 53o capitulu._ Abraham gate Ismael of  
Agar servaunte, whiche Ismael was circumsisede in the  
xiiij the yere of his age, whiche rite men of Araby kepe  
vn to this tymne, the auctor of whom Ismael was. _Genesis._  
Whiche, made an archer, gate of his wifte of Egipte xij.

---

1 Aaron, a.  
2 Added from a. and Cx.  
3 Iubileus, a.  
4 and, a. Cx. has omissions here.  
5 So a.; his, MS.  
6 and is, a.  

T 2

---
ex parte Saræ\(^1\) se vocantes;\(^2\) cum verius sint Agareni, ab Agar matre Ismaelis, sive Ismaelitae ex patre sic dicti, seu\(^3\) Madanianæ. Indixit Deus Abrahæ* et semini * Anno Abr. 99. suo circumcisionem, quasi quodam charactere volens populum suum distinguere a cæteris nationibus.\(^4\)

* Petrus, quadragesimo septimo.\(^5\) Quia tempore circumcisionis mutatum est nomen Abrahæ, ideo Hebraei nomina mutantur. octavo die, quando circumcidunt \(^6\) pueros,\(^7\) nomina illis imponunt. In veteri\(^8\) testamento quatuor nomina leguntur praenuntiata, scilicet,\(^9\) Ismaelis, Isaak, Sampsonis, et Josiae; et in novo\(^10\) solummodo \(^11\) Johannis Baptiste, et Christi. Ranulphus.\(^12\) Quod quando fit, singularis meriti aut virtutis indicium est, sicut legitur in vita Remigii.\(^13\) Genesis. Hoc anno subversa\(^14\) est Sodoma, et Loth inde liberatus transiens in \(^15\) Segor, modicum urbem juxta montem, vinoque inebriatus genuit ex seniore filia Moab; de quo Moabite descendunt. Et ex altera\(^16\) filia genuit Amon, de quo Amonitæ descendunt. Ranulphus. De loco Sodomæ, qui nunc Mare Mortuum dicitur, vide\(^17\) supra, libro primo de provinciis Asie, capitulo Judææ.

---

\(^1\) Sarra, B.  
\(^2\) revocantes, E.  
\(^3\) sive, B.  
\(^4\) C.D. add: Promisitque ei filium, quem Ysaac vocaret.  
\(^5\) The true reference is to c. 50.  
\(^6\) circumciderunt, D.  
\(^7\) pueros suos, Α.  
\(^8\) veteri quoque, C.D.  
\(^9\) scilicet om. B.  
\(^10\) et in novo testamento duo tan- 
 
\(^11\) So Α.; solomodo, Ε.  
\(^12\) Added from A.B.  
\(^13\) C.D. have in the margin, In vita Remigii, omitting sicut, &c. from the text.  
\(^14\) subversa, C.D.  
\(^15\) in om. E., which (with Α.) has modica urbe; C.D. omit these words, and otherwise vary the sentence.  
\(^16\) alia, E.  
\(^17\) quere, C.D.
Saracenys, as pogh pей were i-come of Sarra; but pей becep Verrarlike Agarenes, for pей come of Agar [Ismael his moder. Also pей becep cleped] 2 Ismaelites, for pей come of Ismael; and becep Madianites3 also. Р. Oure Lorde þat Abraham and his children þe circumcisioun forto make and departe4 his peple from oper naciounes. Petrus 47. For Abraham his name was i-chauenged when he was circum-sised, þerfore þe Hebrewes þeue hir children names þe eiþte5 day when þey becep circumcised. In þe olde testa-
ment me rede þat men were i-warnde of fourre men names to fore þe burpe: of Ismael, Isaac, Sampson, and Iosyas. In þe newe testament onliche of John Baptiste and Crist. Р. And whan þat [pat] 6 was i-doo it bodid grete merite and vertue; so me rede þin Remigius his lyf. Genesis. Щis þere Sodoma was destroyed, and Looth delyuered, and wente into Segor, a litel citee þere besides an hul; and was wyndronken; and in his sleep he gat Moab on his eldest douȝter and7 Amon on his oper douȝter. Of Moab come þe Moabites, and of Amon come8 Amonytes. Р. Of þe place of Sodoma, þat hatte now þe dede see, loke above in þe firste book, in þe province of Asia, in þe chapitre Iudea, þat is þe Iewerye.

dukes and gouvernours of peple, callenge theyme Saracenys, 71 2261. MS. HARL.
as commenge of Sara, but in trawthe thei awe to be namede raper Agarenes, of Agar moder of Ismael, other elles Ismaelites after Ismael, as Madianites were namede of Madian. Р. God commandede to Abraham the vse of circumcission, and to his sede, wyllenge to make a distinccion, as by a careecte, betwene his peple and other nacioones. Petrus, 47° capituló. And for cause that the name of Abraham was chaunged in the circumcission, perfore men of Hebrewe name theire childer in the viijthe day, when the childer be circumcisede. And iiij. names be pronunciate in the olde testamente, that is to say, Ismael, Ysaac, Sampson, and Iosias, and ii. only in the newe testamente, John Baptiste and Criste. Р. Whiche thynge is a specialle schewenge of a singuler merite and vertu, as hit is redde in the life of Seynte Remigius. Genesis. Sodoma was destroyede that yere, and Loth delyuered; and salvede, goenge in to Segor, a litelcite nye to the hille, drunke þro wyne gate of his elder doȝter Moab, of whom Moabites come. Of Sodoma, whiche is callede the dedde see, loke in the firste boke, capitulo 14°.

1 pей, a.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 Madianites, MS. and a.
4 departed, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
5 eiþte, a.
6 Added from a.; not in Cx.
7 an, a.
8 come] the, a. and Cx.
Isaac nascitur. 

A filiis Cethurae separatur.

Isaac Rebeccam ductit in uxorem.

De Issae et ejus familia; et de mythica Graecorum historia.1

Petrus quinquagesimo tertio.2 Natus est Isaak3 de Anno Abr. 100. Sara nonagenaria;3 qui trimus effectus4 ablectatus est; et tune factum est convivium eo quod tune primo5 accessorit6 ad mensam patris. Crescet regnare in Creta,7 a quo et Creta insula7 dicta est; quem aiuntuisse unum Curetarum8 qui Jovem abscondit et educavit.9 Moritur10 Sara;4 cum centum et viginti septem annorum, sepultaque est11 in Hebron.12 Et cito post Eliezer,13 procurator Abrahæ, missus ad querendum uxorem pro Isaak,14 adduxit Rebeccam. Duxit quoque15 Abraham Cethuram in uxorem, ex qua genuit sex liberos, quos omnes separavit a filio suo Isaak.17

Petrus, quinquagesimo nono.18 Dicunt Hebraei Cethuram esse19 nomen appellativum quod interpretatur copulata, quam dicunt etiam20 fuisset Agar, quæ de concubina post mortem Sarai transivit in conjugem; ne, si senex aliam quam prius a se cognitam duceret,21 lascivire videretur. Isaak quadraginta²⁰ erat annorum, quando duxit Rebeccam in uxorem; quæ mansit

---

1 Title wanting in MSS. 2 Reference added from A.C.D. The true reference is to c. 56. 3 vetula, D. 4 effectus4 om. D. 5 postea, B. 6 accessit, D. 7 insula7 om. C.D., which have in margin Dionisius. 8 Cætariæ, A. 9 qui...educavit] a quo Jupiter, ut ferunt, absconditus fuit et nutritus, C.D. 10 Petrus 56, ins. C.D. in marg. 11 et sepulta est, B. 12 Sentence slightly varied in C.D., as also the following. 13 Eliezer, A.; Eleazar, B.D. 14 Isaac, A.; Ysaac, C.D.; and so usually. 15 quæ, A. 16 in] om. D. 17 quo separavit ab Ysaac, C.D. 18 The true reference is to c. 62. 19 fuisset, C.D. 20 etiam dicunt, A. 21 novis imperitiis, ins. C.D.
Capitulum undecimum.

Isaac was i-bore of his moder Sarra whan she was foure skore three olde and ten. Petrus 53. Isaac was i-wened when he was pro three olde, and po was i-made a grete feste; for po he wente firste to his fader bord. Crees bygan to regne in Creta; of hym pat ilond Creta hap pat name Creta. Som men tellep pat Crees was oon of pe gouernours pat norsched and hidde Jupiter. Sarra deide when she was sixe score three olde and seuen, and was i-buried in Hebron. And sone pere after Heleeser Abrahams seruant was i-sent ferto feste three a wyf for Isaac, and brouȝte Rebekka. Also Abraham wedded Cethura to wyf, and gatt on hire sixe children, and departed hem alle from his sone Isaac. Petrus 59. Hebreus seide pat Cethura is a comyn name, and is to menyge i-coupled; and seip pat pis Cethura was Agar, and of a leman was i-made a wyf after pe deep of Sarra, ananuer leste pe olde man schulde be holde a lcechour; and he hadde i-take aneper pan he hadde i-lay by to fore honde. Isaac was fourty three olde whan he wedded Rebekka, pat bare

Capitulum undecimum.

Ysaac was borne of Sara beenge of xe. yere in age, whiche, hauenge iij. yere in age, was weynede, and then a grete feste was made, in that Ysaac comme that tyme firste to the burde of his fader. Crees began to reigne in the yle callede Creta, of whom that yle tooke name, whom thei seye to be oon of them wyche did hyde Jupiter and noryschede hym secretely. Sara beenge of a cxxvij. yere diede, and was beriede in Hebron: after that Heleeser, proctor of Abraham, was sende to gette a wife for Ysaac, whiche brouȝhte Rebecca. Abraham did wedde Cethura in to his wyfe, of whom he gate vj. childer, whom he departede from Ysaac his son. Petrus, 59o capitulo. Men of Hebrewe say Cethura to be a nowne appellatine, as cowpled, by interpretacion, whom thei say Agar, whiche beenge his concubynye, was made his wyfe after the dethe of Sara. Ysaac was of xlii. yere in age when he did wedde Rebecca,
sterilis 1 per viginti annos. *Augustinus de Civitate, *De Pallade. libro octavodecimo. *Apud lacum 2 Tritonidem apparu-
rit virgo 3 Tritona 4 nomine, quam Graeci Minervam dicunt, quae etiam dicta est Pallas a Pallante, 5
insula Thraciae, ubi nutrita fuit, sive a Pallante gi
gante, quem interfecit. *Ranulphus. Hie nota quod
iste Pallas gigas aliquus est ab illo Pallante gigante,
filio Evandri, quem Turnus occidit sub tempore
Æneæ. 6 *Augustinus. Hae virgo Pallas sive Minerva
3 plures artes adinvenit, potissime lanificium;
quae tanto proclivius dea credita est, quanto minus
innotuit ejus origo. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo. 9
Nati sunt Isaak 1 duo gemelli filii ex Rebecca, 10
Esau 11 et Jacob. *Augustinus, libro octavo
decimo. 11 Regnum Argivorum exortum est in Graecia
sub Inachus 13
qua regnavit Inacius 13
quinquaginta annis. Duravitque hoc 14 regnum quin-
gentis quadraginta quattuor annis sub regibus qua-
tuordecim usque ad ultimum Acrisium, quem occidit
Perseus, 15 licet non sponte, duodecimo scilicet anno
Deebora 16 judicis Israel; et inde timens sibi Persens
agros 17 relinquens transtulit regnum ad Mycenas. 18

---

1 postmodum, ins. C.D.
2 Apud lacum apud, A.
3 virgo] om. A.E.
4 Tritona, B.D.
5 Pallene, C.D.
6 Hie notat...Æneæ] om. C.D.
7 Augustinus] om. C.D.
8 virgo...Minerva] om. C.D.
10 filii ex Rebecca] om. C.D.
11 Hoc anno, ins. C.D.
12 quï, E.
13 Inachus] om. C.D.
14 hoc] Argivorum, C. (not D.)
15 So D.E.; but E has Persius
below. Persius A., and Persius
below.
16 So MSS. and versions for Deb
dora.
17 Argos, A.C.; Argo, B.
18 Micenas, MSS. C.D. add, abib
Danaus postmodum regnavit.

lake Tritonides was i-sele a woman man pat hect Tritona; pe Grees cleopop hir Mynerua; and hatte Pallas also of Pallas pe ilond of Tracia, pere he was i-norsched, oper of Pallas pe geant pat he slowh. R. Here take hede pat pis geant Pallas was anoer geant pan pe geant Pallas, pat Turnus Euander is some slowh in Eneas his tyme. *Augustinus, ut 3 supra. Pis mayde Pallas, pat hect Mynerua also, fonde yp meny craftes, and specialiche woler(craft, 4 and was pe lihtloker 5 i-trowed a goddes. For me wiste wel litel whennes sche come. 8 Isaac hade tweye twynnes i-bore of Rebecc, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra. Pe kyngdom of Argiiues bygan in Grecia vnder Inachus Isis his fader. Isis hect [Io] 7 also, and Inachus regnedey fifty sere, and pat kyngdom durede fyue hundred sere and foure and fourty vnder fourtene kynges anon to pe laste Acrisius: hym slow Persius, pey 3 it were nouz 4 wilp 5 his wille, pe twelfp 6 sere of Delborn iuge of Israel. And perfor Persius dradde ful sore, and

whiche was bareyne by xx 5 yeres. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. A woman callede Tritona apperede at a water callede Tritonides, 0 whom men of Grew calle Minerua, which was callede also Pallas, of an yle in Tracia of that name, where sche was norischede, other elles of Pallas the gigante, whom sche did slee. R. Hit is to be attendede that this gigante, called Pallas, was an other then Pallas son of Euander, whom Turnus did sle in the tyme of Eneas. *Augustinus, ubi supra. That virgyn callede Pallas other Minerua founde mony artes, and specially of makenge clothe, pe originalle of the byrthe of whom is not knownen, where-fore sche is callede a godesse. Ysaac gate ij. childer of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra. The realme of men callede Argiues, in Greece, began vnder Inachus fader of Ysides, otherwise callede Io, whiche Inachus reignede 14 yere; and that realme contynnde by v5, and xliiiij 6 yere, under xiiij. kynges, vn to the laste, Acrisius, whom Persius did sle ageyne his wille, in the xij 7 the yere of Delbora iuge of Israel. Wherefore Persius dredenge

---

1 heo, B; a, γ; she, Cx., quite rightly, who notwithstanding has he slough. The pronouns are so strangely employed by Trevisa or his scribes, that the concordant readings of MS. and a. have been rarely corrected.

2 So MS., a, β, Cx.; heo, γ.

3 ubi, a, Cx.

4 woler craft, a, Cx.

5 lightner, Cx.

6 can, Cx.

7 Added from a. and Cx.

8 by, Cx.

9 Tritonides, Harl. MS.
Moritur Abraham\(\textsuperscript{a}\) centum septuaginta quinque ann\(\textsuperscript{a}\) norum existens, et \(\textsuperscript{b}\) sepulitur in Hebron, \(\textsuperscript{c}\) Petrus, sexto. Idioma Hebræi sermonis et mos antique Latinitatis est, \(\textsuperscript{d}\) ut prins supputetur minor numerus, deinde major sequatur; \(\textsuperscript{e}\) verbi gratia, nos dicimus juxta proprietatem linguæ nostræ: Vixit Abraham\(\textsuperscript{g}\) centum septuaginta quinque annis. Illi e contrario dicunt sic: \(\textsuperscript{h}\) Vixit Abraham quinque septuaginta annis. \(\textsuperscript{i}\) Augustinus\(\textsuperscript{j}\) de Civitate, libro octavodecimo. Argivorum\(\textsuperscript{k}\) secundus rex Foroneus filius Inachi cæpit regnare, et regnavit sexaginta annis. Iste Foroneus Argolicus primus Graeciae leges dedit, \(\textsuperscript{l}\) et sub judice causas agi instituit, unde et locum judiciorum a nomine suo appellavit Forum; \(\textsuperscript{m}\) cujus frater Fougous\(\textsuperscript{n}\) astrologus ad deos colendos invenit sacellos, ob quod deificatus est. \(\textsuperscript{o}\) Horum soror fuit Isis sive Io, qua? ad Aegyptum navigans literas et agriculturam eos docuit; unde et post mortem apud illos\(\textsuperscript{p}\) deificata est. \(\textsuperscript{q}\) Isidorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto. \(\textsuperscript{r}\) Isis primo sistrum invenit, unde et Amazones cum sistris exercitum vocabant ad bellum.

\(\textsuperscript{a}\) et\(\textsuperscript{a}\) om. A.B.
\(\textsuperscript{b}\) sepultus est, C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{c}\) spelanca duplici in, ins. C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{d}\) Erbron, A.
\(\textsuperscript{e}\) ita se habent, C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{f}\) prior, A.
\(\textsuperscript{g}\) sepultrur, B.; ut, ins. C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{h}\) Abraham\(\textsuperscript{i}\) om. C. (not 1.)
\(\textsuperscript{i}\) Illi . . . sic\(\textsuperscript{j}\) Illi e contra, C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{k}\) Item, ins. A.
\(\textsuperscript{l}\) C.D. omit reference here, and place it before Iste Foroneus.
\(\textsuperscript{m}\) edidit, B.
\(\textsuperscript{n}\) appellavit Forum\(\textsuperscript{o}\) dictum forum denominavit, C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{p}\) Fougous, D. August. (C. D. xviii, 3) has Phegous. The classical forms of the names are Phoroneus and Phegeus.
\(\textsuperscript{q}\) est\(\textsuperscript{q}\) Added from B.C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{r}\) eos, C.D.
\(\textsuperscript{s}\) honorum . . . est\(\textsuperscript{s}\) om. B.
\(\textsuperscript{t}\) capitulo sexto\(\textsuperscript{t}\) om. A.B.C.; libro 13, D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 22.
lefte pe Argus and tornede pe kyngdon to pe Mycenes.  
Abraham lyuede fiftene 3ere pre skore and an hondred 3ere, 
and was i-buried in Ebron.  

Petrus 66.  
De longage of 
Hebreu 2 and pe vsage of olde Latyn is forto acompte the 
lasse nombre to fore pe more, contrarye to pe manere //at 
Latyn vsep now, for now we sceip in Latyn, Abraham lyuede 
an hondred 3ere pre skore and fiftene; but pe Hebrewes 
seip in pis 3 manere, Abraham lyuede fiftene 3ere pre skore 
and an hondred 3ere.  

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 18.  
Feronesus, Inachus his sone, was pe secounde kynge of pe 
Argines, 4 and reignede sixtene 5 3ere.  

Pis Feronesus Argolicus 
3af firste lawes in Grees, and ordeynede pat causes schulde 
be i-pleded 6 to fore inges.  
Perfore pey cleped pe places of 
domes Forum after his owne name.  
His brofer hect Fogons, 7 
and kowpe 8 moche astrologie, and ordeyned temples to 
worschip pe 9 false goddesse ync; perfore he was accouted a 
god amonge hem pat worshipped suche goddes.  
His suster 
hect Isus, 10 and Io also; he 11 seilled into Egipt and tauhte men 
here letters and telynge of feldes; 12 perfore after her deth 
sche was i-made a godesse among.  

Isidorus, libro 3.  
Isis ordeynede firste trompes, perfore pe Amazones cleped hire

---

1 So a. and Cx. ; Mycenes, MS., in which (as well as in a.) several words are wrongly inserted from below.
2 So a. and Cx.; Ebron, MS.
3 So a. and Cx.; his, MS.
4 armes, MS.
5 sixty, Cx.
6 pleted, Cx.
7 So a.; Fogrons, MS.
8 and the Fgons conde, Cx., who varies the sentence.
9 [e] om. a.
10 Ysis, Cx.
11 she, Cx. (not a.)
12 jildes, a.
13 Cx. adds theyn.
Ranulphus. Quod legitur 1 Jovem rapuisse Io et Epaphum genuisse, fabula est et figuramentum poeticum propter utriusque personae 2 famosam excellentiam. 3 Nam 4 fingunt poetae nonnullos illustres personas 5 ex Jove progenitos, ut ex hoc genus illorum amplius illustretur. 6 Io namque fuit sub diebus Isak, et Jupiter postmodum sub diebus 7 Josue. Thessalus Greci filius regnavit in Thessalia. 8 Jacob 9 post empta primogenita 8 post benedictionem surreptam 9 a patre, juxta matris sua consilium descendit in Mesopotamiam. Petrus, sexagesimo quarto. Primogenita dicuntur quaedam dignitates et prerogativae quas habebant filii primogeniti in suis cognitionibus usque ad Aaron, videlicet quod induerentur veste 10 speciali in sacrificiis offerendis, quod etiam paternam recipierent benedictionem, quod etiam 11 duplam recipierent portionem in couviviis et in divisione hereditatis, et quod 12 suis minoribus bendericerent. Jacob genuit ex Lya 13 Reuben 14 primogenitum suum. 15 Hoc anno 16 factum est diluvium particulare in Achaia sive in Attica terrae, sub Ogyge 17 rege, qui urbem

1 sequitur, C. (not D.)
2 personam, B.
3 excellentiam om. A.B.
4 Nam om. C.D.
5 personas om. C.D.
6 illustrarent, D.
7 diebus] tempore, C.D.
8 a fiate, sua, ins. C.D.
9 surreptam, A.
10 veste] om. A.; speciali indumento, B.
11 etiam] om. C.D.
12 et quod] quod etiam, C.; quod minoribus suis, D. (omitting et.)
13 ex Lya after suum, B.
14 Reuben] om. E. D. has in margin the dates 245, 145.
15 Supplied according to the mind of Higden. The date is wanting altogether in A.; D. has 251 and 151.
16 Hoc anno] om. C.D.
17 Ogyge, D.
ofte to batailleward, wip trompes. [R.] 2 Pat me redep pat Jupiter ravesched Io and gat Epaphus, it is but a fable and feynynge of poetes for noble fame of eyther persone. 4 For poetes feynep meny noble persones i-gete of Jupiter, for pe kyn schulde be pe more gentil and noble i-holde. 6 But Io was in Ysac his tyme, and Jupiter was afterward in Isue his tyme. Thessalus, Greecs his sone, reigne in Tressal. Iacob, after pat he hadde i-bouȝt pe firste birpe, and styliche i-gete his fader blessynge by his moder counsaille pey wente down in to Mesopotamia. *Petru* 64. Pe furste burpe of hem were special profytyes 10 and worschippes 11 to the eldest sones, 12 hadde in hire kynrede anon to Aaron; for pey were cloped in special cloynge in offrynge of sacrifisce, and hadde hire fader blessynge, and double porcioun in festes and in delynge of heritage, and he schulde blesse hire lasse. 13 Iacob gat his firste sone Ruben on his wyfe Lya. Pis 3ere was a litel flood in Achaia, pat hatte Atthica pat lond, vnder 15 Ogiges pe kyng, pat renewede after here dethe. *Isidorus, libro 3°, et R.* That men say Jupiter to have ravesched Io, and to have geten Epaphus, is but a fable, and a feynynge of poetes, for the famous excellence of bothe persones. For poetes feyny mony nowble men to have ben geten by Jupiter, that the kynde of theyne myȝhte be made more nowble þere by. For Io was in the tyme of Ysac, and Jupiter was after the tyme of Isue. Thessalus the son of Greecs reigne in Greece. Iacob wente in to Mesopotamy, after the counselle of his moder, after that he hade bouȝte the fyrrste frutes of Esau, and after the blessenge of his fader. *Petrus, sexagesimo quarto capitulo.* The firste geten thynges were callede certyne dignites and prerogatifs, whom the firste childre hadde in theire cognizancions vn to Aaron; that is to say, they were induede with a specialle vesture, in sacrificis and oblaciones to be offrede, that thei scholde receyve also the beneficcion of the fader, and thei scholde have als a doublle portion in festes, and in the diuision of inheritaunce, and that thei scholde blesse the yongeres of theyne. Iacob gate of Lia Ruben his firste son. A particuler floode was that yere in Achaia, vnder Ogiges 17 kyng, whiche renewenge

---

1 bataynbeard, a.
2 Added from a.
3 flame, MS. (not a.)
4 person, a.
5 holde, added in a.
6 i-holde] om. a.
7 he, Cx.
8 burpes, a., Cx.
9 of hem] om. a., Cx.
10 profyty, a. (not Cx.)
11 worschippe, a., Cx.
12 oldest sone, Cx.
13 they, Cx.
14 be lasse, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
15 was vnder, Cx.
16 Egip, Harl. MS. (first hand).
17 Ogides, Harl. MS.
Atthen innovans, etiam Eleusim condidit. Hoc anno anno

De strophis Jacob xci. annorum existens genuit Joseph ex Rachel. Petrus, septuagesimo quarto. Finitis quatuordecim annis, quibus Jacob servivit pro uxoribus, pe-pigiti Laban cum eo quod quicquid varium nascetur de unicolore merces sua foret. Unde et tuliit Jacob virgas virides populeas, amygdalinas, et plataninas, quas per loca decorticans posuit in canalibus aqua-rum ante conspectum ovium in ipso fervore coitus, ut sic tales fetus conceivequent quales umbras ascendentium arietum in aquarum speculo videbant. Et ne omnes fetus varii coloris fieren et sic dolus deprehenderetur, in verno conceptu ponebat virgas, sed in serotina admissura non ponebat. Sicque novam naturae stropham commentatus est Jacob, qua contra naturam arte naturali pugnaret. Ranulphus.

1 innovatur, B.
2 etiam om. C.D.
3 Apparuit etiam virgo Minerva sive Pallas apud lacum Tritonidem, C.D.
4 novem, A.
5 suis, ins. B.
6 cum] om. A.
7 et] om. C.D.
8 decorticavit et, B.
9 in, B.
10 in] om. B.
11 unde, C. (not D.)
12 Et ne] Ne antem, C.D.
13 sic] om. D.
14 Petrus, ins. C.D. (The latter omits several words.)
15 Ranulphus] In the place of this next passage the following occurs in C.D.: "Hugatia, capitulo Molo. Talem autem* ferunt faminarum esse naturam, ut quales formas in extremo voluptatis restu conspexerint dum concipiunt talem sobo-

* etiam, D.
pe citee Athen and bulde Eleusis. Pis ʒere Iacob fourre score ʒere olde and enlenene gat Ioseph on Rachel. Petrus 74.

Whanne pe fourtene ʒere were i-doo in pe whiche Iacob ser-

\nuede for his wifes, Laban made couenent wip hym pat alle pe splekced lamberne ¹ and kedes pat schulden be i-zened ²
durynge his couenent schulde be Iacob his ³ mede, and al pat

t were of oon colour whyte oper blak, schulde be Laban his

owne. Perfore Iacob took grene ʒerdes of populers of almand
trees and of platans,⁴ and pyled of pe rynde in som place of pe ʒerdes, and in som place pyled hem nouʒt; and so he made pe ʒerdes splekced,⁵ and leyde hem in pe waterynge place to fore pe schepes cyʒen, whan pey schulde conceyue ⁶ lambru liche to pe schadewes pat pey seie of rammes in pe merroure of pe water in pe conceyuynge. And for pey schulde not al be splekked leste pey gyle were i-knowe, perfore in pe firste conceyuynge tyme he leyde so ʒerdes, but not in pe latter conceyuynge tyme, and so Iacob fonde a newe manere tornyng of kynde,⁷ wip kyndeliche craft to siʒte agenst kynde.

R. Loke more of pis mater aboue, libro ejus, capitulo

the cite of Athenes made the cite of Eleusis. Iacob, beenge MS. HARL, that tyme of xcj. yere, gate Ioseph of Rachel. Petrus, 74⁶ capitulo. The xiiij. yere ypaste in whom Iacob did seruuce for his wifes, he made a couenent with Laban that he scholde haue alle lambs of diuerse coloures that comme of ewes of oon coloure. Wherefore Iacob gate roddes of almonde trees, of populer, and of other trees, whiche takenge barke from peim putte the roddes in the places of water, afore the siʒte of schepe when thei scholde be blissomede, that thei myʒhte haue lambs of diuerse coloure, lyke to

---

¹ Lambru, a.; lammes, Cx. ² Admined, a.; ewed, Cx. ³ Iacobys, a. ⁴ So Cx.; plantez, MS. ⁵ spekled, Cx. ⁶ for they shold conceyue, added in Cx. ⁷ hynge, MS.
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

primo. Whanne Iacob was i-come a\text{\textasciitilde}e wip his wyfes and his children, or \text{\textasciitilde}e come to his fader, twelve \textsuperscript{1} \text{\textasciitilde}ere to fore Isaa\text{\textasciitilde}c his de\text{\textasciitilde}p, Ioseph sextene \text{\textasciitilde}ere olde was i-solde in to Egipte to oon pat heet Putyphar, \text{\textasciitilde}at was eunuchus,\textsuperscript{2} and maister of Pharao his ky\text{\textasciitilde}thes. \textit{Trevisa}. Eunuchus is he pat is i-gilded,\textsuperscript{3} and suche were somtyyme i-made wardyynes of luydes in Egipte. \textit{Augustinus super Genesim}. Pis Putiph\text{\textasciitilde}r was\textsuperscript{4} not so eunuchus as \text{\textasciitilde}e pat were i-gilded in hir childhode, for he hadde a\textsuperscript{5} wyf and children, and Ioseph hadde i-wedded his dou\text{\textasciitilde}ter. But Pis Putiph\text{\textasciitilde}r \text{\textasciitilde}at Ioseph was fay\text{\textasciitilde}re,\textsuperscript{6} and bou\text{\textasciitilde}te him forto my\text{\textasciitilde}use hym, perfore God made Pis Putyphar\textsuperscript{7} so colde \text{\textasciitilde}at he my\text{\textasciitilde}te neuer after hauue to doynge flescheliche wip his owne wyf na more pan \text{\textasciitilde}e he were eunuchus\textsuperscript{8} i-gelded, and perfore, as \text{\textasciitilde}e pat was most worshypful, he was i-made bisshopp of God Heliopoloces. Apis \textit{pe prilde kyng of Argiu\text{\textasciitilde}s was Foroneus his sone, and regned two and twenty \text{\textasciitilde}ere. Isaa\text{\textasciitilde}c an hundred \text{\textasciitilde}ere [olde]\textsuperscript{9} and four skore\textsuperscript{10} deyde, and was i-buryed in \text{\textasciitilde}e double graue of MS. 11 Ebron. \text{\textasciitilde}ate \text{\textasciitilde}ere Pharao sigh\textsuperscript{12} \text{\textasciitilde}e sweuene of the seuen corn e\text{\textasciitilde}e, and of \text{\textasciitilde}e seuen kny\text{\textasciitilde}n.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{1} twelf, a.
  \item \textsuperscript{2} eunuch-s, MS. (not a. or Cx.); sone after eunuches in MS. (not a. or Cx.)
  \item \textsuperscript{3} gelded, Cx.
  \item \textsuperscript{4} So Cx.; but was, MS. and a.
  \item \textsuperscript{5} a] om. a., Cx.
  \item \textsuperscript{6} so fayre, a. (not Cx.)
  \item \textsuperscript{7} Added from a. and Cx.
  \item \textsuperscript{8} eunuches, a.
  \item \textsuperscript{9} Added from a. and Cx.
  \item \textsuperscript{10} \text{\textasciitilde}ere olde, added in MS.
  \item \textsuperscript{11} in, Cx.
  \item \textsuperscript{12} \text{\textasciitilde}ere, a.
  \item \textsuperscript{13} Oliopolis, Harl. MS.
\end{itemize}
De reliqua patriarcharum historia. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.

Caputulm duodecimum.

This first ere, that was the second ere of hunger, Iacob, an hundred ere old and pretty, went wiþ his children down in to Egipte. Augustinus, libro 18o. Eis 3ere Apeis pe kyng Argolicus seiled in to Egipt and dyde, and was i-cleped Serapis. [Varro tellith why he was called Serapis,] and scip pat pe chisto pat he was i-patte inne was i-cleped Seron in Grewe, and perfore Apeis was i-cleped [Seronapys], and afterward by wip drawynge of letters, as me vseþ, he was i-cleped Serapis. Pat whyte splekked oxe pat men of Egipt hadde, and it was [i-worshippe onlye, hit was] i-cleped Æpy; and when pat oxe was dead, pey ordeyned hem anoþer oxe pat was also whyte splekked and tenderliche i-norsched and i-worshippe. Hugutio, capitulo Apeis. Pat bole heet Apeis, pat was i-woned to come out of þe ryuer Nylus, and warne by his pleyenge and stertelynge what was to comyngue. Petrus. Som men telleþ pat eneriche 3ere in Serapis feste come vp a bole out

Caputulm duodecimum.

Iacob, beunge of a c. and xxxd yere in age, wente in to Egipte that yere, which was the secunde yere of the hungre. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Apeis, kyng Argolicus, cariede in to Egipt with schippe, diede that yere, otherwise callede Serapis. The poete Varro scheweth a cause and a reason as for that name. For Senaropis in Grewe sounedethe as a beryalle, in whom Apeis was putte. And after hit was callede Serapis, ij. letters taken aweye. That oxe distincte with white spottes, whom Egipte worshipped, was callede Apeis, in that Ninus was worshippede; whiche ote other bulle dedde, an other calfe was inquirede that was like to hit, whiche founde thei norischede hit tenderly. Hugutio, capitulo Apeis. That bulle was callede Apeis, whiche was woned to swymme over the floode callede Nilus, and to schewe thynges to comme thro his gesticulation. Petrus. Somme men say that bulle apperede above the water in the feste of Serapis, whiche

1 Yis, a.  
2 Fanus, a., Cx.; Phanus, γ.  
3 Added from γ., Cx.  
4 Seron, γ.  
5 Added from a. and Cx.  
6 hadde] om. a. β. γ., Cx. For hadde we should perhaps read hadde in worship.  
7 Added from a. and Cx.  
8 So a. β. γ. and Cx.; stelynge, MS.  
9 The Harleian translator has misread his MS.

U 2
Serapis festo annuatim\textsuperscript{1} emergebat\textsuperscript{2} ille de\textsuperscript{3} Nilo flu-
mine,\textsuperscript{4} habens in humero dextro signum candidum instar lunae corniculatum, ad quem cum \AE{}gyptii statim confluuerunt\textsuperscript{5} omni genere musicorum psallentes, taurus ille levabatur in aere tanquam psallens; ad cujus motum seu stationem \AE{}gyptii in terra move-
bantur seu stabant, sed eadem die evanescerat. Igi-
tur \AE{}gyptii taurus pro Ape, vacca pro Iside, ovem pro Hammone, id est Jove, adorabant. Unde et abo-
minabile fuit apud eos hujusmodi\textsuperscript{6} animalia\textsuperscript{7} occidere aut edere.\textsuperscript{8}

Argivorum quartus\textsuperscript{9} rex Argus coepit regnare, et regnavit quadraginta sex annis; sub quo etiam\textsuperscript{10} Grec-
cia, allatis aliunde seminibus, segetes habere coepit.\textsuperscript{12} Jacob\textsuperscript{13} centum quadraginta septem annorum existens,\textsuperscript{14} benedictis filiis suis ac filiis filiorum\textsuperscript{15} singulis bene-
dictionibus, moritur;\textsuperscript{17} servatusque est\textsuperscript{18} et conditus triginta diebus. Tandem delatus est\textsuperscript{19} ad\textsuperscript{20} Hebron in spelunca duplici tumulandus. \textit{Petrus, capitulo decimo.}

Mos erat ethnicorum incondita servare corpora novem diebus, quibus 'deplangerent'\textsuperscript{21} et corpora aqua calida 'foverent';\textsuperscript{22} ut sic sciretur an\textsuperscript{23} anima esset egressa vel \textsuperscript{24}

\textsuperscript{1} annuatim\textsuperscript{2} taurus\textsuperscript{3} flumine\textsuperscript{4} So D. ; huius, A.E.\textsuperscript{7} aut, ins. B.\textsuperscript{8} comedere, C.D.\textsuperscript{9} tertius, D.\textsuperscript{10} et, A.\textsuperscript{11} In the Harleian MS. the years of Isaac (not Jacob) are computed; thus giving 193, &c. instead of 133, &c.\textsuperscript{12} segetes habuit, C.D.\textsuperscript{13} autem, ins. C. (not D.)\textsuperscript{14} postquam mansisset in terra illa septuadecim annis, ins. C.D.\textsuperscript{15} filiorum\textsuperscript{16} est\textsuperscript{17} mortuus est, B.\textsuperscript{18} est\textsuperscript{19} defertur, C.D.\textsuperscript{20} ad\textsuperscript{21} quibus deplangerent\textsuperscript{22} anima esset egressa vel \textsuperscript{23} an, C.D.
of pe ryuer Nilus, and hadde a whyte mark in pe rjst schuldre i-schape as a newe mone, and whanne pe Egipecians come to hym wip alle manere musyk and merpe, pat bole was i left vp in to pe ayer as it were wip iolyte, and at pe menyngge and styntyngge of pat boole pe Egipecians meu-d and stynte vp on pe erthe, but pat bole vanisched out of hir siȝt pe same day. Perfore pe Egipecians worschipped pe bole for pat man Apis, and a kowe in stede of Isis pat woman, and a bole also for Jupiter. Perfore it was a grete abhominacioun among pe Egipecians to ele reperen or ete reperen flesche. Argus pe fourpe kyng of Argiu-s bygan to regne, and regned sixe and fowryt ðere. In his [tyrne] Grees hadde seed i-brouȝt out of oþer loudes, and gan to ere and sowe and haue corne i teled pere ymeye. Iacob, an hundred ðere olde and seuen and fowry, blessede his children, and ðaf eniere his blessyngge, and dedyde. and was anoyn, and i-kept pritty dayes, and at pe laste i-bore in to Ebron, and i-buried ðere in pe double graue. Petrus. Hit was pe manere of mysbel sued men forto kepe a dede body nyne dayes wip oute oignement, and make sorwe for hym nyne dayes, and wasche pe body nyne daies, for to wete wheþer pe soule were apassed oþer no. Afterward pey

water was callede Nilus, hauenge in the ryȝhte schulder a white signe other merke cornerede lyke to the moone; whom men of Egipte attendenge synyenge with alle kyndes of musikes, that bulle was eluate anoon in to the aiwer, as makeuge a melody; at the movenge or stondenge of whom men of Egipte were moveved oþer stode; whiche bulle euanneschede a weye the same day. Therefore men of Egipte worschippede a bulle for Apis, a kowe for Isis, and a schepe for Jupiter; wherefore to sle eny of those bestes was an abominable thynge amonghe theyme, other elles to eite eny of theyme. Argus, the iiiij the kyng of Argyues, began to regne, whiche regned sixe xlvij. yeres, in whiche tyrne the londe of Greece began to sawe corne. Iacob beenge of a c.xlvij, yere in age, blessenge his childer with single beneficences, and the childer of his childer, diede, whiche kepede xxxi daies, was brouȝhte at the laste to Hebron, and beriede in a threfolde deune. Petrus, decimo capitulo. The maner and consuetude of Ethnikes was to kepe bodies dedde by ix. daies, in whom they myȝhte sorowe theire deth, and norishe the body with hoote water, that thei myȝhte haua perfecte knowlege wheder thei were

1 pat, Cx. 2 pat, a., Cx. 3 Isus, MS. 4 reperen] neet, Cx. 5 oþer, a. 6 Added from a, and Cx.

---

3 Slightly transposed in C.D.
4 homines, E.
5 deambulare, C.D.
6 Et . . . iste] Iste etiam, B.
7 in quo, B.; et, D.
8 Slightly varied in C.D.
9 Annulus, MSS., here and everywhere.
10 Item] om. C.D.
11 deferre, C.D.
12 hac] om. C. (not D.)
13 sic] om. D.
14 cujus] om. B.
15 fecerunt] om. E.
kepte pe bodies fourty dayes anoynt. 1 But it was pe manere of Iewes forto kepe dede bodyes seuene dayes wiþ outhe oy涅-
mentis, and afterward pritty dayes anoynt. Augustinus, libro 18°. Me selþ pat Prometheus 2 Rapetus 3 his sone, and Atlas 4 pe astronomer, his brojer, made men; so selþ Ouidius in Magno; nopeles pat is i-seide, for of men pat were vnkonnyngge and boistous as bestes he made konnyngge [men] 5 and wise. 6 Isidorus 13°. Also for me redeþ pat he made ymageþ of men gego and walke in 7 pe grounde by a certeyn craft. Also þese fonde first a ryngge of ire, and closed þeyryme a precious stone, and cleped it a nayle, for as pe nayle is i-closed in pe flesche, so is suche 8 a stoon i-closed in þe metal. Hugutio, capitulo Anulus. Anulus is a ryngg i-seide of anus an ers, for somtyme þeues and mansleers, whan þey were i-take, scholde bere an ape on hire nekke and holde hir nayle to þe apes 9 ers. But þis foule vsage cessed, and þeues and mansleers whan þey were i-take schulde bere ryngges of iren on hire fyngres. And þefore gentil men, for to haue dyuersite and distinccion from
dedde other nay. After that thei dressede the bodies with spices, and kepèd theyme by xl 10 dayes, other elles thei kepèd theyme after thei were beriede by xl 11 daies. But the consuetude of the Iewes was to kepe the bodies vnberiede by viij dayes, and kepèd theym by xxx 12 daies after theire beri-
enge. Augustinus, libro octavo decimo. Prometheus, the son of Iapetus, 10 and brother to Atlas 4 the astronomier, after Ouidus in Magno, is seide to haue made men, in that he made discrete men of rude peple. Isidorus, libro tertio decimo. And also for cause that he made the ymageþ of men to walke by crafte. Also he founde firste a ryngge of yrne, puttenge a gemme in hit, callenge hit vngulum, for like as the nayle of a fyngre is cloosed with flesche, so he compassede that gemme with metalle. Hugutio, capitulo Anulus. Also anulus, whichis called a ryngge, toke begynnege of this worde, anus; for somme tymen men taken in manslaughter other in thefes were wonte to bere an aþe in their nekke, holdenge therei mouthes to the hyndeer partes of that ape. That vile consuetude y-ceasede, suche men taken in felony were wonte to bere a ryngge of yrne in theiyr fyngere, yn to the distinccion of whom now-

1 uncoumed, Cx.
2 So a.; Prometheus, Cx. (and so MSS. often); Pitholomeus, MS.
3 So MSS. (including 8. and 7.) and Cx., for Iapetus.
4 Atlas, MSS. and Harl. MS., and so below.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 wise men, MS.
7 ou, Cx.
8 suche is, MS.
9 aþe his, a.
10 Iapetus, Harl. MS.
aureos et argenteos\textsuperscript{1} quos ponebant in quarto digito, quem medicum\textsuperscript{2} appellant, causa ornatus dignioris; eo quod in\textsuperscript{3} illo digito vena quaedam\textsuperscript{4} corde protenditur.\textsuperscript{5} Sed apud Romanos annuli quondam dabantur ex publico sed nobilibus viris; ceteris autem dabantur solidi, unde et liberi utebantur annulo aureo, libertini argenteo, servi ferreo. Et quidem apud veteres ultra unum annulum\textsuperscript{6} uti infame fuit.\textsuperscript{7} Isidorus, libro vice-simo\textsuperscript{8} in fine.\textsuperscript{9} Hujus Promethei frater\textsuperscript{10} Atlas astrologus\textsuperscript{11} fuit; quapropter cælum portare fingebatur; unde et mons enormis\textsuperscript{12} in Africa ab ejus\textsuperscript{13} nonine Atlas dicitur, et\textsuperscript{14} cælum portare a vulgo creditur.\textsuperscript{15} Petrus. Eo in\textsuperscript{16} tempore dicitur Tri[p]tölemus\textsuperscript{17} in nave\textsuperscript{18} dracone\textsuperscript{19} depicta Græciam intrasse, et agri culturae ampliasse.\textsuperscript{20} Tunc quoque Ceres, quæ a Græcis Demetra\textsuperscript{21} dicitur, praeter instrumenta arandi etiam\textsuperscript{22} mensuras tritici\textsuperscript{23} ad invenit, cum tamen prius triticum\textsuperscript{24} per acervos numerarentur.\textsuperscript{25} Ranulphus.

\textsuperscript{1} A.B.C.D. rightly introduce here the reference to Isidore below. See Lib. xix. c. 32.
\textsuperscript{2} medicus, B.; medium, E.
\textsuperscript{3} ab, B.
\textsuperscript{4} ad cor pretendens, A.
\textsuperscript{5} So B.; pertingit, D.; pranten-ditur, E.
\textsuperscript{6} uti ultra uno anulo, B.
\textsuperscript{7} fuit) erat, A. The whole extract considerably varied and transposed in C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} 19°, C.; 9, B.
\textsuperscript{9} Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18, A.B.C.D. correctly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8.
\textsuperscript{10} frater) originally filius in C.; but corrected in the margin in another ink.
\textsuperscript{11} quidam, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} unde et mons enormis in Africa] Mons etiam in Libia, C.D.
\textsuperscript{13} hujus, B.
\textsuperscript{14} cf] quem propter enormem altitudinem, C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} vulgus credit, C.D.
\textsuperscript{16} in] om. B.D.
\textsuperscript{17} Tritholomus, B., and versions.
\textsuperscript{18} nave sua, A.B.
\textsuperscript{19} draco, A.
\textsuperscript{20} Extract altered verbally and transposed in C.D.
\textsuperscript{21} So Higden writes for Demeter.
\textsuperscript{22} etiam] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{23} triticum] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{24} numerabant, B.; numerarent, D.
\textsuperscript{25} Ranulphus ... habere] om. C.D.
suche bribouries, made hem rynges of gold other of siluer. *Isidorus, libro 19°, in fine.* Gentile men vsede here rynge of gold and of siluer\(^1\) on þe fourþe fynger, þat is y-cleped þe leche by cause of þe more liȝtynge and fairenesse, for in þat fynger is a veyne þat strecheþ to þe herte. But Romayns hadde rynge of þe common tresour\(^2\): gentle men hade rynge, and opere hadde solidy þat were hole and sownde. Fremen of blood vsede [rynges of gold; free men that came of bonde men vsed\(^3\)] rynge of siluer, but bonde men vsede rynge of iren. Somtyne it were a greet dislamacion for a man to vse more rynge þan oon. *Augustinus de Civitate.* Þis Prometheus hadde a brýpet þat het Athlas, and was an astronomer; þepore mo fynede þat he bare heuene; also a greet hille in Affrica, þat\(^4\) hette Athlas by þis man Athlas his name; and þe lewed peple wenep þat þat lylle bereþ vp heuene. *Petras.* Me seip þat Thretholomus wente þat tyme in his schippe þat was i-peynt wip a dragoun into Greces, and made þere more craft of telynge of feeldes. Also þat tyme Ceres, þe womman þat þe Grees clepeþ Demetra, wip oute instrumentes þat sche fonde vp of erynge crafte, sche fonde vp also mesure of whete; for to forehonde þey delede whete by hepes\(^5\) smal oþer greet. R. After

ble men made rynge of golde and of syluyr. *Isidorus, MS. Harl. 2261.* Whom thei putte in the liij\(^6\) fynge, which is callede the fynge medicinable, for cause of more dignite, in that a veyne is protendede from that fynger to the herte. Also rynge were ȝiften to nowable men in Rome, and seilenges were ȝiften to other men. Wherefore free men vsede rynge of golde, libertynes rynge of syluyr, and seruanute\(^6\) rynge of yme. For hit was somme tyme as a thynge of grete inflammy to haue werede moo rynge then oon amonge olde men. *Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro 18\(\text{mo.}\) Atlas, the astronomer, and broder to Prometheus, was seide to bere heuyn, wherefore there was a grete hille in Affrike callede Atlas after his name, which he by the estimation of commune peple is supposede to bere heuyn. *Petras.* Thretholomus, peynteþe a dragon in his schippe, is seide to hane entred in to Grece, and to hane amplifieþe the tyllenge of londe; and Ceres, which is callede Demetra of the Grekes, founde diuere measures of whete, for whete was newbrede afore that tyme by grete heepeþ. R. And after Isidorus, libro

\(^{1}\) of seluer and of gold, a. β. γ., Cx.

\(^{2}\) tresorce, a. β. γ., Cx.

\(^{3}\) Added from β. γ., Cx.

\(^{4}\) þat om. a. β. γ., Cx.

\(^{5}\) huples, Cx.

\(^{6}\) So Harl. MS.
Et ex tunc, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, Græcia expit segetes habere.

Joseph centum et decem annorum existens moritur in Ægypto, et conditus aromatibus conservatus est usque ad exitum Hebræorum de Ægypto per centum quadraginta quattuor annos, quibus Hebræi servierunt Ægyptiis. Fratres quoque Joseph, prout singillatim moriebantur, sepeliebantur in Hebron; ossa tamen eorum cum ossibus Joseph postmodum translata sunt in Sichem, quæ modo dicitur Neapolis, urbs Samaritanorum. Et sic a descensu Jacob in Ægyptum usque ad exitum Hebræorum sunt anni ducenti quindecim.

CAP. XLI.

De Moyse.

Moyse nascitur.

pat tyme Grees by gau to haupe tilpe and corne; so seeip Isidre, libro 5°. Ioseph, an hundred zere olde and ten, dyde in Egipt, and was ano courtyard swete ouenementis, and i-kepte anon to pe goyuge of pe children of Israel out of Egipte, an hundred zere and foure and fourty, in pe which tyme pe Hebrewes seruede pe Egipcians; also as Ioseph his breperen deide eueriche after oper, they were i-buried in Hebron.

Capitulo tertium-decimum.

Amram was Caath is sone, Caath was Leuy is sone. Pis Amram, sixty zere olde, gat Moyses on his wif Jacobeth. Petrus, libro 2°. Pharao, vnder wom Ioseph was, heet Nephres by his owne propre name; pe ejtpe Pharao after hym heet Amonophis, in his tyme Moyes was i-bore. Iosephus, libro 2°. Pis Pharao hatede pe children of Israel for quinto, from that tyme the londe of Grees began to haupe trevisa.

corunes. Ioseph, beeng of a cx. yere in age, dyede in Egipte, which dressed dressed with spisce, was kepethere vn to the goeunge furthe of men of Ebrewe from Egipte, that was by c. and xliii° yere, in whom men of Hebrewse seruede men of Egipte. But the breder of Ioseph were beriede in Hebron, but the boones of theim were translate with the boones of Ioseph in to Sicem, now callede Neapolis, the cite of Samaritans. And so hit was that cc. yere a passe and xv. from the commenge of Jacob in to Egipte vn to the goeunge furthe of men of Hebrewse from hit.

Capitulo tertium-decimum.

Amram, the son of Caat, the son of Leui, beenge of lxx° yere, gate of Jacobeth his wife Moyses. Petrus. The pro-name of Pharao, vnder whom Ioseph was, was Nymphers; the viith the Pharao after whom was callede Amonophis, vnder whom Moises was borne. Iosephus, libro secundo. This Pharao did hate moche the peple of Israel, for the vertu of

---

1 and] of, Cx.  
2 So γ, Cx.; and were, MS. and a. (without sense); also Ioseph his breperen (sic), as hy dyde, &c. were, β.  
3 Petrus] So a., Cx.; Iosephus, MS.  
4 Iohannes, Cx.
propert virtutem ingenii, laboris industriam, opum affluentiam, et sobolis elegantiam; unde et callide excogitavit filios\(^1\) Israel opprimere, ne multiplicatus contra eum\(^2\) insurget. Imposuitque eis angarias operum multimodorum, scilicet lateres\(^3\) coquendi, fossata circa rivulos Nili faciendi, lutum exportandi, sed paleas tantum ad victum præbens; quibus operibus populus\(^4\) contractus et fame confectus amplexibus non vacaret, et per consequens proles sic deficeret.\(^5\) Insuper et quidam scriba sacrorum præscius futurorum nunciavit Pharaoni unum quemdam de\(^6\) Hebræis nasciturum, qui principatum Ægypti\(^7\) humiliaret et genus Israel exaltaret. Qua\(^8\) de causa jussi sunt infants necari. Petrus.\(^9\) Sed his non obstantibus, populo\(^10\) adhuc\(^11\) multiplicato,\(^12\) præcepit\(^13\) Pharaoh obstetricibus Ægypti\(^14\) masculos infants necare, fœminas\(^15\) vero reservare; tanquam sexum invalidum ad rebellandum,\(^16\) delicatum tamen ad libidinem Ægyptiorum. Sed eum

\(^1\) filios\] om. C.D.  
\(^2\) eum\] om. E.  
\(^3\) lateris, D.  
\(^4\) populus\] om. E.  
\(^5\) Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.  
\(^6\) de\] om. E.  
\(^7\) Ægypti\] ejus, A.C. (not D.)  
\(^8\) Hæc, C.D.  
\(^9\) capitulo primo, ins. C.D. In the Lyons edition of 1543 it is c. 3.  
\(^10\) populo| populoque, A.C.D.  
\(^11\) adhæc, B.  
\(^12\) multiplicante, C.D.  
\(^13\) præcepit| præcepit ex nescere, B.  
\(^14\) Ægypti\] om. C.D.  
\(^15\) fœminasque, B.  
\(^16\) rebellandum, B.
vertu of witte, flor konynge of travaile, flor plente of richesse 1 and for fairnesse of children; perfore he byponȝt hym felliche and gilefulliche to bere a donn pe children of Israel, and holde hem lowe, leste pey wolde multeple to swyçe 2 and arye aȝenst hym; also he putte vpon hem charges of many manere works forto make brend tyle forto digge diche aboute pe rennynge stremes of pe ryuer of Nilus, and for to bere fen and clay; and 2 af hem nouȝt to mete but smal chaf; for he wolde so onercome hem wip travaile and wip honger, pey schulde haue no wille to ligge by here wyfes; and so it schulde folowe pat children schulde faile. Also oon, pat was a writere of holy lettres and wiste what was 3 to comyngge, warnede Pharao pe kynge of Egipt pat oon schulde [be i-bore of pe Hebrewes pe schulde] 4 bere adoun pe principat of Egypt, and arepe pe kynde of Israel, and make hem ful grete. Perfore it was i-hote pat 5 pe knaue 6 children of Israel schulde be i slawe when pei were i-bore. Petrus. But ȝit for al this pe peple multeplied wel faste, and Pharao hecct pe mydwylynes of Egipte pat pey schulde kylle? alle pe knaue children of Hebrewes, and kepe pe mayde children; flor he heede womanne kynde ful feble to be rebel, and nopeles wel likynge to pe leccherie of 8 pe Eqypicians. And when Pharao myȝt nouȝt so haue 9 his wille, he hecct powe pe children pat were the witte of thyme, for the affluence of richesse, for the beauthe of theire childer; where fore he thoughte to slee thyme priuely, that theire multipliacacion and frute scholde not be able to resiste theim. Where fore he putte to thyme diversites of labores, to make tyle stones, diche abowte ryneres, and to make clay, ȝiffenge to theire fyndenge but chaffe, that peple oppressede with labore and hungre scholde refuse multipliacacion, and so theire frute scholde decrease and faile. But a scribe, havenge prenostication of thynges to comme, schewede to kyng Pharao oon childre to comme of men of Hebrew, that scholde make Egipte meke and tane, and exalte the kynde of Israel. Where fore the infantes of thyme were commandevede to be sleynge. Petrus. This not withstondenge and the peple causeenge multipliacacion, kyng Pharao commandevede the mydde wifes of Egipte to slee the male childer and to kepe the childer female, as a kynde not apt to make batelle, and pleasante to the luste of men of Egipte, commandevenge the childer to be caste

---

1 riches, a.
2 fast, Cx.
3 was to done and] MS. (not a.
4 Added from a. and Cx.
5 pat] So a. and Cx.; þe, MS.
6 men, Cx.
7 see, Cx.
8 of lechery to, Cx.
9 have se] MS. (not a. or Cx.)
nec sic praevaleret, jussit recenter natos in flumine projici. Pro hoc peccato creditur Aegyptios in hunc errorem incidisse, ut Apim pro deo coherent. *Genesis*. Quapropter natus Moyses tribus mensibus absconditus est; sed tandem in fiscella scirpea bituminata conclusus projectus est in carecto fluminis; quem filia Pharaonis Thermut reperiens in filium adoptavit, Moysenque appellavit. *Josephus, libro secundo*. Quod Graece componitur a moy, quo est aqua, et esis, quoest salvatus; quasi per aquam salvatus. Hic quoque omnem mammam Aegyptiarum abhorrens a propria matre prudenter lactatus est; at cum trimus effectus esset, speciem ejus et staturam Deus auxit; ut, ubieuncunque per plateas efferretur, circumstantes relictis occupationibus suis, quantumcunque severi aut turbati essent animi, in eum intenderent. Die igitur quadam cum Thermuth eum Pharaoni inspiciendum offerret ut et ipse adoptaret in filium, admirans rex pueri venustatem coronam suam

1 So B.; *Apum, A.E.*
2 *Genesis* om. E.
3 added from B.
4 Extract slightly varied in C.D.
5 moys, B.D.
6 Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.; quasi . . . salutus, om. B.
7 esset] om. E.
8 in, A.
9 ita, ins. C.D.

10 deferretur, C.D.
11 animi essent, B. Probably we should read animos, placing the comma after essent.
12 Sentence slightly varied in D.
13 So B.; dum, D.E.
14 Thermuth, B.
15 So B.; obtidisset, E., after Thermuth.
16 Moysen, ins. C.D.; eum, B.
Monachi Cestrensis, Lib. II.

319

by and on, weele and bore, hire a,; so pat thys, hire a,; so pt™ £ere s i-doo So " Added tyme he in 2°. was was i-prowe to knaue childe doubtre, i-broug to trowes, to kynge Thermit, Pharao his douzet, fond hym, and took hym up of pe water, and made hym as it were hire owne sone, and cleped hym Moyses. Joseiphus, libro 2°. Moyses is a name i-made of tweie names of Grewe, of moy, pat is water, and esis, pat is i-saue; and so Moyses is i-seide as he pat is i-saue by water. Also pis childe Moyses hatede alle pe wommen brestes of pe Egipciens, and wolde souke no woman breste of pe Egipciens, but he was sylliche i-brouget to his owne moder, and sche fed hym; and when he was pre 3ere olde, God Almyʒty made hym so fayre of schap and of stature, pat whanne they were i-bore 7 by stretes al pat were aboute lefte [of] 8 hire work and occupacion for to loke and byholde on pat childe, were pey neuere so sterne ne so angry. Pan in 9 a day Thermuth, Pharao his douzet, brouget pe childe to Pharao, for he schulde see pe childe and make hym as hit were his owne sone. Panne the

freschely or newly in to the water after theire byrthe, lesthe that he scholde not preunyle in pat other wyse. For whiche synne hit is trawede men of Egipte to haue fallen in to that errore that thei scholde worschippe Apis for Godde. Genesis. But Moyses borne was hidde iij. monethes, at the laste he was putte in a weele made of rishes dressede with piche, and caste in to the water, whom Thermuth, pe douzet of kyng Pharao, fyndenge, desirede hym in to here childe. Joseiphus, libro secundo. That name Moyses is compounde of thys worde moy, that is, water, in Grewe, and esis, that is saluede, callede Moyses, as saluede by water. Whiche aborrenge the noryschenge of men of Egipcie, was norischede of his owne moder, and when he was of iij. yere in age, God uncoverede the beaute and stature of hit, that men movede thro labore, other in trouble, wolde refuse their occupacion to beholde pat childe. In a tyme when Thermuth offrede that childe to kyng Pharao here fader, vn to beholde hym, and that he scholde

1 the men childer, Cx.
2 an oxe, Cx.
3 Added from a. β. γ. and Cx. (β. γ. Cx. have atte last.)
4 reaches, a.
5 So a. and Cx.; Isidórus, MS.
6 so pre, MS. (not a.)
7 So MS. and a.; he was born, Cx.; he were ye bore, β.; a wer y bore, γ.
8 Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.
9 on, Cx.
Contra Æthiopes Moysen sibi praeficerunt Ægyptii.

(in qua Hammonis, id est Jovis, imago insculpebatur) in capite infantis apposuit; quam statim puer pedibus conculeavit. Astansque sacerdos Heliopoleos exclamavit: "Hic est puer, quem nobis occidendum Deus monstravit, ut de cetero timore careamus." Et sic in puerum irruisset, nisi persuasione cujusdam sapientis, qui hoc per insipientiam puerilem factum asseverabat, liberatus fuisse. Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo xlv. In cujus rei argumentum allatae sunt prunae ardentes coram puero, qui statim eas ori applanens linguae summitatem ardore corruptit. Unde et ipsum in antea impeditoris linguae fuisse Hebræi autem. Tantæ autem fuit pulchritudinis, ut intuentes aspectui ejus haererent, rigorem animi deponerent, occupationes di. Circa hac tempora Hercules fertur Antaeum lucta vicisse. Josephus libro secundo. Aethiopibus Ægyptum infestantibus, augures Ægyptii responsum acceperant, ut uterentur duce Hebræo; et vix obtinuerunt ut Moysen sibi praeficerent, qui tamen in

---

1 fabrefacta fuerat, C.D. (with other slight variations).
2 tamen, ins. A.B.
3 Astans quoque, A.D.
4 d'ecos] om. C.D.
5 Deus before nobis, B.
6 puerilem] om. C.D. (with other slight variations).
7 libro ... xlv.] om. C.D.
9 ardentia] om. C.D.
10 eas] om. E.
11 cuncti, ins. C.D.
12 si quas haberent, ins. C.D.
13 circa hac tempora] om. C.D.
14 Capitulum tertium decimum, A.
15 B. omits reference; Cum adul-tus esset Moyses, ins. C.D.
16 vastantibus, C.D.; vastantibus vel infestantibus, B.
17 acceperant, B.
18 venterentur, B.
19 obtinuerint, B.
20 sibi] om. C.D.
21 tamen] om. C.D.
kyng wondred of pe childes fairnesse, and took his owne
crowne in pe whiche the ymage of Iupiter was i-graune, and
sette it on pe childes heed; but pe childes anon prewe don\(^2\)
pe crowne, and traddde peron spitousliche wip his feet. And
phere stood one pat was god Eleopoleos his preoste, and cride
and seide: "Pis is pat child le pat oure god heet vs slee, pat we
" drede na\(^3\) more;" and wolde anon hawe i-slawe pe childle;
but pere was a wise man and seide pat pe childle hadde so
i-doo by vnkonnyge of childhode, and so he saued pe child.

*Petrus, libro 2*\(^2\). In enyedence of pis excusacioun of pe childle
were brenmyng cooles i-brout to fore pe childle Moyses, and
anor he putte hem in his moupe and scaldede pe poynct of his
touge. Pe Hebrewes trowep pat bycause perof he hadde\(^4\)
a lettre of his touge. Pis childle Moyses was so faire, pat men
pat by helde hym took so great hede to pe fairnesse of hym\(^5\)
pat pey putte away\(^6\) alle anger and tene,\(^7\) and toke hede to pe
fairnesse of the childle.\(^8\) Me seip pat aboute pis tyme
Hercules overcome Anteus\(^9\) in wrastlynge. *Iosephus, libro 2*\(^0\).
Pe Ethioppe, blewse men, werred vppon Egipt, and pe dyuy-
nours of Egipt feuge answere pat pey schulde take a leedere
of Hebrewes; and vnape pey gat Moyses, and made hym hire
desire hym in to his son, Pharao meruellenge the beaute of
pe childle, put the crowne on his heede, in whom an ymage
of Iupiter was graven, whom that childle did trede with his
feete. A presto stondenge per by seide, " This ys the childle
" whom Godde willethe to be sleyne of vs, that we scholde
" not be in drede afterwarde." And so he wolde hawe
perschede that childle, but that a discrete man was by
and seide contrary, excusenge that thyngge by the insolence
of the childle. *Petrus, libro secundo.* For the probacion of
whiche thyngge hoote cooles of fire were broujhte a fore
the childle, whiche takegne oon of theym, putte hit to his
mowthe, and brente the extremite of his touge. From
whiche tyme men of Hebrew suppose Moyses to haue hade
an impedimente in his touge. Hercules is seide to haue
geten victories at Athenes abowte these tymes. *Iosephus,
libro secundo.* Men of Ethioppe guerenge ageyn men of
Egipte, theire wices 3afe answere that thei scholde take
a man of Hebrew in to theire gouernoure, whiche huenenge
grawnte made Moises theire gouernoure. Whiche beenge

---

1. had wonder, Cx.
2. it done, MS. (not a.)
3. no, a., Cx.
4. a. and Cx. add afterward.
5. hym] so a. and Cx.; the childle, MS.
bellicis rebus peritus, relictō itinere per aquam Nili, circumduxit exercitum per loca serpentibus plena; quibus tamen de nocte objectō ibices, id est, ciconias Ægyptias, quae naturaliter infestae sunt serpentibus, sed mites sunt hominibus. 1 Et sic improvisos conclusit Æthiopes in Saba civitate regia, quam postmodum Cambyses rex ex nomine sororis 2 Meroen nuncupavit. Est autem civitas illa ratione murorum, fossarum, et circumfluentium aquarum fortissima; poniturque in confinio Ægyptiorum et Æthiopum super Nīlum fluvium. 3 Tharbis vero filia regis Æthiopum, respiciens in elegantiam Moysi, tradidit ei ex condicio urbem, ita ut eam duceret in uxorem. 4 Petrus, libro secundo, capitolo quinto. Hæc est illa Æthiopissa, pro qua jurgati sunt Maria et Aaron contra Moysen 5 in deserto. Cum autem 6 Moyses 7 redire voluisset 8 ad Ægyptum, non adquievit 9 uxor. Prōinde Moyses, tanquam vir astrarum peritus, duos annulos fecit; unum memorie, quem secum retinuit; alterum oblivionis, quem uxori tradidit, et sic 10

---

1 Sentence slightly abbreviated in D.
2 sue, ins. A.B.D.
3 flumen, B.
4 Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
5 postmodum, ins. C.D.
6 vero, C.D.
7 Moyses after voluisset, B.
8 voluit, A.D.
9 quievit, B.
10 in Ægyptum, ins. C.D. (omitting ad Ægyptum above).
ledere and cheueteyn.\textsuperscript{1} Moyses was konnynge in dedes of batayle, and forsook pe wy waye by pe water Nilus, and ladde his oost by a wilennesse pat was ful of serpentes; nopeles he putte ciconias\textsuperscript{2} by ny\textsuperscript{3}te a\textsuperscript{4}zenst pe serpentes; ciconie\textsuperscript{3} beep briddes\textsuperscript{4} of the loud of Egipt, pat hatep and destroyep serpentes, pat\textsuperscript{5} beep mylde i-now to mankynde; and so com vnuwar vppon pe Ethiopes, and closed hem in a rial citee Saba. Afterward Cambyses\textsuperscript{6} pe kyng eloped pat citee Meroen after his owne [suster]\textsuperscript{7} name. Pat citee is ful strong by cause of walles of ditches and wateres pat reyne aboute pat citee, pat\textsuperscript{8} is i-sette bytwene pe Ethiopes and pe Egipcians vppon pe ryer Nilus. Tarbis,\textsuperscript{9} pe kynges dou\textsuperscript{3}ter of Ethiopes, sigh pe fairnesse of Moyses, and bytook hym\textsuperscript{10} pe citee vppon a coynent pat he schulde wedde hir to wif. Petrus, libro 2\textsuperscript{2}. Pis is pe\textsuperscript{11} wwoman of Ethiopia for pe whiche Mary and Aaron stryue\textsuperscript{12} with Moyses in desert. Whan Moyses wolde torne a\textsuperscript{3}zen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not assente; wherefor Moyses, as a man pat was konnynge in pe cours of\textsuperscript{13} worchynge of pe sterres and planetes, made twelwe rynges, oon of mynde and anoper of for\textsuperscript{3}etyngnesse; and kepte pe ryngge of mynde wip hym self, and took his wif pe ryngg of for\textsuperscript{3}etyngnesse. His hoste thro places fulle of serpentes, to whom he putte briddes callede snypes, odious to serpentes and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethioppe, as without deliberacion, in the regalle cite of Saba, whom kyngge Cam-

\textsuperscript{1} capitayne, Cx.
\textsuperscript{2} ciconias, MS.
\textsuperscript{3} So a.; cicone, MS.
\textsuperscript{4} So a. β. γ.; briddde, MS.
\textsuperscript{5} pat] and, Cx.
\textsuperscript{6} Cambises, MS. and Harl. MS.
\textsuperscript{7} Added from a., &c.
\textsuperscript{8} and, a., Cx.
\textsuperscript{9} Tharbis, Cx.
\textsuperscript{10} deluuered him, Cx.
\textsuperscript{11} that, Cx.
\textsuperscript{12} So a. β. γ.; stryuep, MS.; stroof, Cx.
\textsuperscript{13} and, Cx.

wise in batelle, lefte the journey by water, and broughte his hoste thro places fulle of serpentes, to whom he putte briddes callede snypes, odious to serpentes and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethiopia, as without deliberacion, in the regalle cite of Saba, whom kyngge Cambises called Merone afterwarde, after the name of his sustyr. That is a stronge cite, by reason of the ditches of waters renenge abowte hit, and of stronge walles, whiche is sette in the costes of Egipte, on that floode callede Nilus. Tharbis, the doyghter to the kyngge of Ethioppe, seenge the beawte of Moyses, toke to hym that cite, that he scholde wedde here to his wif. Petrus, libro secundo. That is the woman of Ethioppe for whom Maria and Aaron were at debate, and stryvede ageyne Moises in deserte. And when Moyses wolde haue goen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not condescende; wherefore Moises causeide ij. rynges to be made, reteynego with hym a ryngge of memory, [and] 3afe to his
rediit.\(^1\) *Genesis*. Quo in tempore dum Moyses visitaret fratres suos in terra Gessen, occidit virum Ægyptium, qui percurserat virum Hebræum,\(^2\) abscondens eum\(^3\) sub sabulo.\(^4\) Quod cum\(^5\) die sequenti\(^6\) sibi improperaretur a viro Hebræo,\(^7\) tremens\(^8\) fugit in terram Madian, ubi despensavit Sephoram,\(^9\) filiam sacerdotis; ex qua genuit Gersan et Eliezer.\(^10\) *Petrus, libro secundo. capitulo sexto.*\(^11\) Sacerdos iste primas fuit in terra Madian circa\(^12\) Mare Rubrum, cujus nomen prærium fuit\(^13\) Raguel, agnomen\(^14\) Jethro,\(^15\) cognomen Cineus; habuitque\(^16\) septem filias pastrices; nam\(^17\) officium alendorum gregum tune erat mulieribus commendatum,\(^18\) maxime in regione Trogoditarum.\(^19\)

**Ceerops.** Regnum Atheniensium incept sub Ceeropo, ex cujus\(^20\) Anno Moysi 39.\(^21\) Anno Abr. 463.

uxore Latona et\(^22\) Jove ferunt fabulae Apollinem deum sapientiae\(^23\) progenitum fuisse.

**Deucalion.** Deucalion cepit regnare in Thessalia,\(^24\) cujus anno\(^25\) Anno Moysi 40.\(^26\) Anno Abr. 484.

duodecimo\(^27\) factum est tertium\(^28\) diluvium particularis\(^29\) in Thessalia, et incendium\(^30\) sub Phaethonte.\(^31\) *Augus-

---

\(1\) quiévít, B.
\(2\) oœvisum, ins. B.
\(3\) cum\(] om. B.
\(4\) abscondens . . . sabulo\(] om. C.D.
\(5\) dum, A.E.
\(6\) dum, ins. B. (omitting cum).
\(7\) a viro Hebræo\(] om. C.D.
\(8\) tīnum, A.B.
\(9\) Zephóras, A.
\(10\) Eliezar, A.; Eliezar, D.
\(11\) capítulo sexto\(] om. C.
\(12\) contra, C. (not D.)
\(13\) dictus nomine proprio, C.D.
\(14\) agnominé, C.D.

\(15\) So A.; Getro, E.
\(16\) habèus, C.D.
\(17\) enim, C.D.
\(18\) commendatum\(] om. C.D.
\(19\) Trogoditarum, MSS.
\(20\) ex, C. (not D.)
\(21\) deum sapientiæ\(] om. C.D.
\(22\) in, ins. C.D.
\(23\) Moysi 42°, ins. C.D.
\(24\) tertium\(] om. C.D.
\(25\) particularis\(] om. C.D.
\(26\) incendii, D.

This and other classical proper names in this chapter are variously corrupted in MSS.
nesse; 1 and so sche 2 torne home azen. Genesis. 3 Pat

tyme, whanne Moyses visited his breperen in pe lond of
Jessen, he slow2 a man of pe Egipcians, and hydde hym in
pe soude; for he hadde i-smyte a man of pe Hebrewes. A
morwe 3 a man of Hebrewe putte pat azen Moyses bred, and
Moyses dradde sore, and li2 into pe lond of Madian, and
wedded Zephora a preostes dou3ter of pat lond, and gat on
hire Gersan 5 and Eliezer. Petrus, libro 20. Dis preost was
primat in pat 6 lond of Madyan aboute pe Rede Sece; his propre
name [was] 7 Raguel; and hadde tweie surnames, Jethro and
Cineus; and hadde seuen dou3ters pat were herdes and kepte
bestes. For pe office of kepynge of bestes was pat tyme i-ordeyned to 8 wommen, and specialliche in pe lond of Trog-

The kyngdom of Athenes bygan under Cecrops. 9 Fables
tellep pat on his wife Latona 10 Apolyn lord of witt and of
wisdom was 1-gete of 11 Jupiter. Deucalion bygan to reigne in
Thessalia; in his twelpe 3ere was pe priddle particular flood in Thessalia, 12 and pe brynnynge under Feton. 13 Augus-

wife that other rynge of oblivion and forgetenge. Genesis. MS. Harl.
In whiche tyme, when Moises visitte his brethren in the
lone of Gessen, he did sle a man of Egipte, whiche hade
smyten a man of Hebrewe, hidenge hym vnder soude. Whiche
dredenge in the day folowenge, when that thyenge was seide
to hym by a man of Egipte, fledde in to the londe of Madian,
where he did wedde Zephora, of whom he gate Gersan
and Eliezer. Petrus, libro secundolo. That priste, fader to
Zephora, was the moste nowble man in the londe of Madian,
abowte the Rede Sece; the propur name of whom was Raguel,
by an other name Ietro, hauenge vij. do3hters, and kepers
of bestes. For that office of kepynge and norischenge bestes
was commendede to women, and specially in the region of
Trog[1]odites. The realme of men of Athenes began vnder
Cecrops, 9 of Latona the wife of whom, and of Jupiter, fables
rhere Apolno to hame be geten. Deucalion began to reigne
in Thessalia; in the xijth 8ere of the reigne of whom the
thrydde particular floode was made in Thessalia, and a
brennenge under Pheton. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.

1 oblyyon, Cx. (who has however
forgetynynesse above).
2 he, a. b. Cx., a, y.
3 On the morne, Cx.
4 awayed for drede in to, Cx.
5 So a, and Cx.; Tersan, MS.
6 pe, a, Cx.
7 Added from a, and Cx.
8 for, Cx.
9 Cecrops, MS. and Harl. MS.,
and so below.
10 Latona, MS.
11 by, Cx.
12 in Thessalia] om. Cx.
13 Pheton, Cx.; but Feton below.
tinus, libro octavodecimo.¹ Istud diluvium magnam partem Græciae absumpsit; unde² qui ad regem The-ssalæ Deucalionem, tunc temporis Parnassum montem occupantem, ratibus advecti confugerant, salvabantur. Ranulphus.³ Ex isto eventu finxerunt poëtae quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.⁴ Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.⁵ Cum flumina supra modum inundant,⁶ non solum praesentia damna inferre, sed ⁷ aliqua futura significare consueverunt. ⁸ Orosius, libro primo. Eo quoque tempore sol fervescens non solum Æthiopiam, sed et ⁹ Scythiam ¹⁰ intolerabiliter exussit. Qua de causa gentiles fabulam Phaetontis conﬁnxerunt.

CAP. XIV.

Historia Moysi concluditur. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.¹¹

Moyses octoginta annorum existens,¹² una cum Aaron fratre suo octoginta trium annorum tunc ¹³ existente, Pharaonem alloquitur, ut populum Dei dimittat; quo indurato percussa est Ægyptus decem plagis. Augustinus, tinus, libro xviii.¹⁴ Ea tempestate quidam Ægyptiorum,

¹ B. omits reference.
² et, C.D.
³ Ranulphus . . . . renovaverint] om. C.D.
⁴ renovaverunt, A.
⁵ capitulo ultimo, ins. A.B. (correctly).
⁶ habundant, D., which omits supra modum.
⁷ sed etiam, D.

¹¹ Anno Moysi 80. Anno Abr. 504.
¹² instead of this next passage C.D. have, Corinthus condita est, quae prius Epira dicitur.
¹³ Cicit, B.
¹⁴ post visionem rubi flammei in monte Oreb, ins. C.D.
¹⁵ tunce] om. E.
Thine, libro 18°. This flood destroyed a great deal of Greece, and men fli; in schipps to Deucalion, kyng of Thessalia, and were i-saued. Deucalion occupied pat tyme he hil Parnas[s]us. For pis happe poetes feyne de Deucalion and bis wyf Pyrrha brewe doun stones and arered men. Isidorus, libro 13°, capitello 61°. Whau reueres were xexep over mesure pey doop not harme onlicie in pe arisyenge, but pey bodep also harme pat schul come afterward. Orosius, libro 2°. Also pe sonne pat tyme brende nouzt onlicie Ethiopia bleue men lond, bote he brende also the lond of Scythia7 so greuousliche, pat men myzte nouzt endure. Bycause pe of mysbeleued men feyne de pe fable of Feton.8

Capitulum quartumdecimun.

Moyse fowre skore three olde, wip his broder Aaron fowre skore three olde and pse, spak to Pharao kyng of Egipt, for he schulde delyuer God Allemy\^ty his peple and lete9 hem goe to doo sacrifice to God. But Pharao was harde and faste in his malice,11 and wolde nouzt lete goe pe peple. And Egipte MS. Harl. 2261.

This floode destroyede a grete parte of Greeke, in whiche tyme men fleeng to Deucalion in schippes, to that grete mownte callede Parnassus,12 occypenyge hit were salue. R. Thro whiche channe poetes feyne that Deucalion and Pyrrha,3 his wife renewede men of stones caste vp with the water. Isidorus, libro tertio, capitello sexto. Where and when floodes be more habundante then thei were wonte, thei be wonte to signifie not onely hurtes presente but also to come. Orosius, libro primo. In whiche tyme the son beeng of feruente heete, brente not onely Ethioppe, but also Scyttica7 for whiche thynges the fable of Feton is feyne of the Gentiles.

Capitulum quartumdecimun.

Moyse beengo of lxxx. yere in age, and Aaron his brother of lxxxiiij. yere in age, spake to Pharao that he scholde suffre the peple of God to goe and to do sacrifice; whose herte was made harde, wherefore Egipte was smyten

1 partye, Cx. 5 This form, though unclassical, has been allowed to stand, as being in a manner anglicised.
2 felle into, Cx. 2 So a. B., Cx.; hete, MS.
3 Pyrrha, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected. 10 see to om. Cx., who has other slight variations.
4 waxen, Cx. 11 malys, a. 5 mesure, Cx. 12 Parnas[s], Harl. MS.
timentes Ægyptium perituram, egressi sunt, ut Cecrops, qui
vagans Greciam urbem Atthen condidit, quae
postmodum dicta est Athenæ. Ranulfus. De qua
vide supra libro primo, capitulo Græcia, scilicet
Helladia. Veruntamen Corinthus, quæ prius Ephyra
tocabatur, quinque annis ante Athenæ condita est.
Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo vicesimo tertio.
Multæ aliae fuerunt Ægypti plagæ praeter illas decem
famosas plagas; unde et quidam dies in kalendario
Ægyptiaci vocantur, quia in illis diebus passa est
Ægyptus aliquas plagas. Ex quibus duos solummodo
dies singulis mensibus annotamus ad memoriam ;
quamvis fortassì plures fuerint. Nee est credendum
quod Ægyptii, quamvis astrorum periti, deprehende-
rent hos dies nefastos in inchoatione operis vel iti-
neris seu munitionis. Genesis. Igitur Moyses, cum
octoginta esset amorum, quo die Israel in Ægypto,
luna existente quintadécima, post quadringentes triginta
annis egressionis Abraham de Carra Mesopotamie in

---

1 vide] urbe quæ re, C.D.
2 libro primo] de provinciis, C.D.
3 Græcia . . . Helladia] vicesimo secundo, B. See vol. i. p. 190, where
for Athenæ we have Acten, which is probably right. The similarity of
c and e in MSS. is a source of
great confusion.
4 Elladia, MSS. (s. s. usually stands
for scilicet, but sice would be better.
The standard MS. of Trevisa has
scilicet at length.)
5 C.D. transpose this passage to
the end of previous chapter.
6 Epira, MSS.
7 dectim, B.
8 libro . . . tertio] om. C.D.
9 et ideo focte locutus, ins. C.D.
10 dies] om. C.D. (with other
slight variations.)
11 patiebatur, B.
12 dies] om. C.D.
13 liceat, C.D.
14 fuerant, B.
15 liceat, C.D. ; om. A.
16 duos, A.
17 vel] om. B.
18 iammissionis, B.
20 Igitur] om. C.D.
21 cum] om. B.
22 esset] om. B.
23 die quo, B.
24 in Ægyptum] om. B.
25 ex, C.
26 Charran, B. ; Carran, D.
Carrhis would be more classical, if
Haran or Charran is identical with
Carrhae.
was i-smyte wip ten grete wreche.\(^1\) *Augustinus, libro 18\(^{o}\).

\(^1\) wreche and pyngysshments, Cx.

\(^2\) *lue, a.:* sentence varied in Cx.

\(^3\) *Athenes, Cx*

\(^4\) So MS. for *Helladia*, the barbarous form in the Latin text.

\(^5\) Sentence varied in Cx.

\(^6\) Added from a, b. and Cx.

\(^7\) in *Egipte*, Cx., and so below.

\(^8\) to be denied we trowed, Cx.

\(^9\) Added from a. and Cx.

\(^10\) *Charran, MSS.*

\(^11\) *Mesopotanea, MSS.* and Cx.
terræ promissionis. Egressi autem de Ægypto\(^1\) quasi
dc. milia\(^2\) viri portaverunt secum ossa Joseph et
ossa\(^3\) undecim fratrum ejus, qui vocantur patriarchæ.
Et considerunt ea in Sichem,\(^4\) prout dicit Hieronymus.
Tulerunt etiam secum\(^5\) farinam conspersam, qua usi
sunt triginta diebus.\(^6\) Columnæ\(^7\) nubia præcessit cos de
die, et columna, ignis de nocte. Ad introitum quoque
Hebræorum divisum est Mare Rubrum, quod quidem
submersit Ægyptios sequentes.\(^8\) Josephus, libro septi-
timo.\(^9\) Hujus maris divisio non est\(^10\) discrepanda, cum
mare Pamphylicum legatur divisum fuisse coram Alex-
andro Macedone et etiam coram\(^11\) ejus exercitu in per-
sequendo\(^12\) Darium. Petrus, libro secundo,\(^13\) capitulo
tricesimo. Aqua maris hujus non est rubea, sed ex
terra rubra circumjacentе gurges ipse et quod ex eo
sumitur inficitur. Ob hoc\(^15\) gemmæ ibidem sunt rubrae,\(^16\)
et minium acutissimum inde\(^17\) sumitur. Dividiturque\(^18\)
in duos sinus, Persicum et Arabicum. Josephus, libro
tertio. Post triginta dies egressionis deficientie annona,
dedit eis Dominus coturnices, manna, et aquam de petra

\(^{1}\) autem de Ægypto\] sunt, C.D.
\(^{2}\) milia\] om. A.E. and versions.
Added from C.D. and Cx. See Ex. xii. 37. The Latinity is awk-
ward, but is given as in D.
\(^{3}\) ossa . . . secum\] om. C.D.
\(^{4}\) Sichen, A.
\(^{5}\) secum\] om. E.
\(^{6}\) diebus\] om. B.
\(^{7}\) vero, ins. C.D.
\(^{8}\) insequentes, A.B.; prosequentes,
C.D. (placing submersit last).

\(^{9}\) libro septimo\] om. A.B.C.D. The
reference is to Ant. Jud. ii. 16.
\(^{10}\) est\] om. E.
\(^{11}\) etiam coram\] om. B.; etiam,
om. C.D.
\(^{12}\) in perseguendo\] prosequente,
C.; perseguente, D.
\(^{13}\) libro secundo\] om. C.D.
\(^{14}\) de, B.
\(^{15}\) E. places the point after hoc.
\(^{16}\) rubie, B.
\(^{17}\) inde\] om. E.
\(^{18}\) Dividitur autem, C.D.
byheste. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, aboute siue 1 hon-
dred [powsand] 2 men bare 3 wip hem Joseph his bones and his
enleuene breperen bones, that beep i-cleped patriarkes, and
buried hem in Sychem, so seip Ierom. Israel toke wip hem
mele and floure i-sponge wip oyle, and vised pat pritty dayes.
A pyler of a cloude wente to fore Israel, and ladde hem by day;
and a pyler of fuyre by nyzte. Whanne Israel wente out of
Egipt, pe Reede See openede and lete hem passe, and drenche 4
alle pe Egipciains pat took pe same weye in pe openynge of
pis 5 see forto pursewe.  

Josephus. Pe openynge of pis see schal not ben vntrowed, for me redeth pat pe see Pamphyliecum
openede to forge kyng Alexander Macedo and also to forge his
oost when he pursewed Darius.  

Petrus, libro 2o. Pe water of pis see is nonzt rede of kynde, but is i-dyzed 6 of reed olyues and
erthe pat liep pere aboute. Perfore also pere beep i-founde
reed precious stooones, and pere is i-founde scharpe fermyloun. 7
Pis see is i-deled atweyne; pat oon is cleped pe see Persicus
and [pat oper] 8 pe see Arabicous.  

Isidorus, libro 2o. 9  

pritty dayes after pat Israel wente out of Egipt, hem faillede corn; 10
and oure Lorde 3af hem cordlewes and 11 manna and water of

men goenge furthe from Egipte bare the boones of Joseph
with theyme, and also the boones of his xj. brether, whiche
ar callede patriarkes, and beriese thyeme in Sychem, as
Scynte Ierom seythe. They toke floure with theyme, whiche
thi did vse; and a pylloure off a close wepte a fore
theyme xxxi dayes in the day, and a pillore of fire in the
nyzte. And the Redde See was diuidede at the entrenge
of men of Hebrewe, and drownede the men of Egipte
folowenge theyme.  

Josephus. The diuision of that see is not zeffen to diffidence, sythe hit is redde the see Pam-
phylieke to hanc bene diuidede afore grete Alexander the
Conqueroure, and afore his hoste, in the persecucion of
Darius.  

Petrus, libro secundo. The water of that see is not redde, but that water is infecte of the redde grownde
beenge abowte hit, where gemmes be founde of redde colour;
whiche water is diuidede in to partes, as in to Persia and
in to Arabia.  

Josephus, libro tertio. The corne of the childer of Israel faylenge after the xxxiv day of the goenge
furthe of theyme from Egipte, God sende to them certeyne
bryddes, angelles foode, and water from the ston of Oreb.

---

1 an siue, a. β.
2 Added from Cx.
3 hy (i.e. they) bar, γ, which is better.
4 drenched, α, Cx.
5 the, α, Cx.
6 dyed, α.
7 vermynloun, α.
8 Added from MS., α, β, γ.
9 Johannes, libro trecio, Cx. The true reference is to Joseph.  

Ant. Jud. iii. 1.
10 they fayilled corne, Cx.
11 and] om. α.
Oreb. Adhuc autem sic\(^1\) rigatur locus ille imbribus, sicut tunc per Moyses Deus ministravit.\(^2\) Post tres menses egressionis corum\(^3\) ascendit Moyses in montem,\(^4\) ubi jejunando quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus legem accept,\(^5\) et tabernaculum secundum quod sibi ostensum fuerat\(^6\) in monte\(^7\) septem semibus construxit. Et sic\(^8\) secundo anno egressionis, prima die mensis Aprilis, erectum est tabernaculum. \textit{Ranulphus}.\(^9\) Ab hoc\(^10\) loco usque ad ædificationem templi\(^11\) numerantur anni quadrangenti octoginta. Sub hoc etiam tempore secundum quosdam\(^12\) Io profecta est ab Argivis\(^13\) usque\(^14\) Egyptum, ubi et\(^15\) Isis appellata est; quae et nupsit Telegono\(^16\) et Epaphum genuit.\(^17\) Petrus, \textit{libro quarto, capitulio sextodecimo}. Post secundum annum egressionis missis duodecim exploratoribus ad terram promissionis et reversis ob murmur populi et desperationem, prohibiti sunt filii Israel ulterior procedere. Unde et\(^18\) reversi ad solitudinem, per quadraginta annos\(^19\) afflicti; ex quibus nullus ingressus est\(^20\) terram promissionis, exceptis Calebibus et Josue. Hoc\(^21\)

\(^1\) sic\(\) om. C. (not D.) ; si, A.
\(^2\) Slightly transposed in C.D.
\(^3\) corum\(\) om. C.D.
\(^4\) Synay, ins. C.D.
\(^5\) accept\(\) So A.B.D.; suscepit, E.
\(^6\) fcerat\(\) om. B.
\(^7\) secundum . . . monte\(\) om. C.D.
\(^8\) Et sic\(\) om. C.D.
\(^9\) Dionysius, C.D.
\(^10\) isto, B.
\(^11\) templi\(\) om. B.
\(^12\) Argivorum, ins. C.D.
\(^13\) Arivis, B.
\(^14\) ab . . . usque\(\) ad, C.D.
\(^15\) ibi quoque, B.
\(^16\) Theleponi, MSS.
\(^17\) Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
\(^18\) et\(\) om. C.D.
\(^19\) jungiti, ins. C.D.
\(^20\) ad, ins. B.
\(^21\) Hoc\(\) om. C.D. (having Dionysius in margin).
pe stone in Oreb. 3it pat place is i-watered wip reyn, as God 3af water pat tyme by Moyes hond. [Pre monthes]1 after pat2 Israel went out of Egipt, Moyes wente vp in to the hille, and fasted fourty dayes and fourty ny3tes, and fenge pe lawe; and seuene montes he made pe tabernacle [by esample pat was i-schewed hym on pe hille; and so pe tabernacle]3 was arered pe firste day of Auerel in pe secounde 3ere of here out goynge of Egipt. From pis tyme to pe buldyng of the temple in Jerusalem is accounted foure hundred 3ere and foure score. Also pis tyme, as some men tellep, Io that womman wente from pe Arguines in to Egipt, and pe sehe was i-cleped Isis,4 and was i-wedded to Telegon,5 and hadde a child pat heet Epaphus. Petrus, libro 4o, [capitulo 16o.]6 After pe secounde 3ere of pe out goynge of Egipt, twelue spies were i-sente to the londe of bystande, and come a7en; and for grucchyng of pe peple and despeyre and wanhope pe chil-\dern of Israel were forbode to goo forpere. Derefore pey tornede a7en in to wildernesse, and were pei-punisched fourty 3ere; and noon of hem entrede into pe lond of bystande outake Caleph and Iosue.

Whiche place is habundaunte with water vn to this tyme, as God ministrde hit in that tyme by Moyes. Whiche Moyes ascendede in to the mounte of Syun, after iiij. monthes of the egression of the peple of Israel from Egipt, fastenge by xlii daies afore and xlii ny\dhtes, toke a lawe of God, settenge his tabernacle pere by vij. monethes, as he was commandede to do; and so the tabernacle was erecte in the secunde yere of the goenge furthe of the peple of Israel from Egipt, in the firste day of Aprile. From whiche tyme cccclxxx. yere be annumerate other nowmbrede vn to the edification of the temple. In whiche tyme, after somme men, Io goenge furthe from the Argyues vn to Egipt, callede there Isis, and mariede to Theologenes,7 gate Epaphus. Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo decimo sexto. After the secunde yere of pe egression of the peple of Israel from Egipt, xij. meassyngers sende to the londe of promission, and returnede a7e; for pe murmure and desperation off the peple, the childer of Israel hade in commandemente that thei scholde returne, whiche returneng were afflicte in descerte by xlii yere, of whom eny entrede not in to the londe of promission, Iosue and Caleph ex-

---

1 Added from a, b, γ, and Cx.
2 Pat tyme, MS. (only).
3 Added from a, and Cx.
4 So a; Iesus, MS.
5 Thelegen, MS.
6 Added from a, and Cx.
7 Here and below the proper names, which are considerably corrup, have been left unaltered.
sexto anno egressionis templum Apollinis Delphici ab Aristone \textsuperscript{1} ædificatur. Quo etiam anno Atheniensium secundus Cranaus cæpit regnare, et regnavit novem annis; ex ejus filia Athis\textsuperscript{2} Attica terra \textsuperscript{3} nuncupatur. \textit{Ranulphus}. Vide supra libro primo,\textsuperscript{5} capitulo Græcia, scilicet \textsuperscript{6} Helladia. Quo in tempore \textsuperscript{7} Hebrœi receperunt \textsuperscript{8} literas, et Græcia vites.\textsuperscript{9} 10 Lacedæmonia quoque \textsuperscript{11} a Lacedæmone filio Semelis condita est. Et Atheniensium quartus Ericthonius regnavit quinquaginta annis. Et Argivorum nonus Sthenelus. Et Sicyoniorum Ericthonius. Argivorum rex Arcas Arcadiam a nomine suo\textsuperscript{12} nominavit, quæ prius Sicyonia dicebatur. 13 \textit{Ægyptus}, quæ prius\textsuperscript{14} Aerea\textsuperscript{15} dicebatur, ab \textit{Ægypto}\textsuperscript{16} tune regnante, 17 \textit{Ægyptus} dicta est.\textsuperscript{18} Argivorum decimus Danaus regnavit quinquaginta annis. \textit{Orosius}, libro primo. Danaus et \textit{Ægyptus}\textsuperscript{19} fratres fuerunt; Danaus autem per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios \textit{Ægypti} una nocte interfecit, uno\textsuperscript{30} filio solummodo relickto, qui post illum regnaret.\textsuperscript{21} Inde ipse Danaus tot malorum fabricator Argos conscendit; ubi per fraudem expulsu Sthenelo, qui eum exulem et inopem

\textsuperscript{1} So A.; Eristone, D.F. (and versions). There is, however, no doubt that \textit{Erysichthone} is the true reading. See Eusebius Chron. (Vers. Armen.), vol. ii. p. 61. (Vers. 1818.)

\textsuperscript{2} nomine terra, ins. C.D. Higden should have written \textit{Attide}.

\textsuperscript{3} terra] om. E.

\textsuperscript{4} nominatur, C.D.

\textsuperscript{5} Vide ... primo] Quære supra de provinciis, C.D.-See vol. i. p. 190.

\textsuperscript{6} scilicet] om. E.; capitulo 22, B.

\textsuperscript{7} Tempore ducatus Moysi, C.D.

\textsuperscript{8} So A.B.; ceperunt, C.D.E.; habere, ins. C.D.

\textsuperscript{9} citem, D.

\textsuperscript{10} Dionisius, ins. C.D. (in marg.)

\textsuperscript{11} quoque] om. B.C.D.

\textsuperscript{12} a nomine suo] om. C. D.

\textsuperscript{13} quæ ... dicebatur] so B.; cm. C.D.; dicitur, E.

\textsuperscript{14} prius] om. B.

\textsuperscript{15} Aerea, B.

\textsuperscript{16} rege, ins. C.D.

\textsuperscript{17} in ea, ins. B.

\textsuperscript{18} vocabatur, C.D.

\textsuperscript{19} Epistus, A.B.; and so E. below.

\textsuperscript{20} mari, B.

\textsuperscript{21} regnavit, B.
The temple of Apollo Delphicus was edifieed of MS. HARL. Heristones the vijth yeare of the egression of the childer of Israel. In whiche yeare also Cranana, the secunde kynge of men of Athene, began to reigne, and reigne dix. yeare. Of Athic, the do8tler of whom, that londe callede Athica was namede, as hit is schewede afore, libro j., capitullo 22o., Elladia. In whiche tyme men of Hebrwe receyvede letters, and men of Greece vynes. Lacedemonia was edifieed oones of Lacedemon. Eructonius, the iiijth kynge of men of Athene, reigne the 1st yeare. Archas, kynge of Arguies, namede Archadia after his name, whiche was callede afore Scicionia. Egiptus toke the name of hit of a man callede Egiptus reigne in hit, for hit was callede afore Aeria. Danaus, the xth kynge of Arguies, reigne the 1st yeare. Oroasius, libro primo; et Petrus, li. 2, 6° capitullo. Danaus and Egiestus were brother, but Danaus, by his 1st do8hters, did slee in oon nyghte 1st sonnes of Egiestus, oon childe lefte oonly, whiche scholde reigne after hym; wherefore Danaus, the causer of that mischefe, wente to the Arguies, expelledde S[th]enelus by fraud, whiche norischede

---

1 Attica, MSS.
2 in be MS. (not a.): Cx. has some omissions here.
3 So a.; Erietorius, MS.
4 Archas and Archadia, MSS.
5 Here and below MSS. and Cx. have Egystus.
foverat, ipse quoque regnavit.\textsuperscript{1} Sub ea tempestate egressus creditur Liber pater, qui et Dionysus Bacchus; qui Argos condidit, et usum vincee Grecis dedit.

\textit{Augustinianus de Civitate, libro 18\textsuperscript{o}.\textsuperscript{3}} His temporibus major ille Mercurius\textsuperscript{4} fuisse perhibetur\textsuperscript{5} nepos Atlantis, ex Maia filia Atlantis progenitus,\textsuperscript{6} multarum artium peritus; unde et\textsuperscript{7} deificatus est. Posterior illo\textsuperscript{8} quodammodo fuit Hercules ille major,\textsuperscript{9} qui cognominatus est Dasaneus secundum\textsuperscript{10} Marianum, libro primo, capitulo xlv.\textsuperscript{11} Iste etiam est Hercules ille (Ranulphus)\textsuperscript{12} qui\textsuperscript{13} secundum Ovidium occidit Busirim\textsuperscript{14} tyrannum. \textit{Josephus}. Iste Hercules desponsavit Ethieam,\textsuperscript{15} filiam Afer, filii Madian; qua de\textsuperscript{16} causa profectus est cum eo ad subjugandum Libyam, quae ex Afer coniugata dicta est Africa.\textsuperscript{17} Quadragesimo anno egressionis\textsuperscript{18} Israel de \AE'gypto\textsuperscript{19} Aaron centum viginti trium annorum existens obiit in Oreb;\textsuperscript{20} eodemque anno Myses, cum quadraginta annis in \AE'gypto, quadraginta annis in Madian, et quadraginta annis, triginta diebus minus, in eremo\textsuperscript{21} profuisset, centesimo vicesimo ætatis sue anno\textsuperscript{22} obiit in monte Abarim contra Jherico. Sepultus\textsuperscript{23} est a Domino in valle Moab.

---

\textsuperscript{1} Orosius ... regnavit] om. C.D.; regnavit, om. B.
\textsuperscript{2} Petrus, ins. C.D. (in margin; varying also the sentence).
\textsuperscript{3} Alfridus xvii\textsuperscript{b}, A.E. The reference is to Aug. de Civ. xviii. 8.
\textsuperscript{4} qui, ins. B.
\textsuperscript{5} probihetor, A.
\textsuperscript{6} ex ... progenitus] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{7} et] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} eo, C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} B, ins. B.
\textsuperscript{10} sicut dicit, B.
\textsuperscript{11} 45] added from B.
\textsuperscript{12} g.] om. B.
\textsuperscript{13} qui ... qui] om. A.C.D.
\textsuperscript{14} Busirim, MSS.
\textsuperscript{15} Ethieam, A.; Ethieam, B.; Otheam, D.
\textsuperscript{16} de] om. A.
\textsuperscript{17} Sentence altered verbally and transposed in C.D.
\textsuperscript{18} filorun, ins. B.
\textsuperscript{19} Israel de \AE'gypto] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{20} Oreb] in Arabia in monte Asini (for Sinai ?; D. has Asi.) qui nunc Oreb dicitur, C.D.
\textsuperscript{21} populo, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{22} anno] om. A.
\textsuperscript{23} sepaltusque, A.B.D. In this chapter several slight errors of MSS. in the spelling of proper names have been tacitly corrected.
and outlawe, and reigned hym self. Me trowe p[. pat in pat
tempest went out pat man pat heet Liber pater and heet Dio-
nysus 1 [Bacchus] 2 also; he made vp Argiues, and [af] pe
Greee vse of vynes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei.* Me seip pat
pe grete Mercurius was in pat tymc; pis Mercurius was Maia
Atlas 3 is dou[. ster sone. P[. pis Mercurius was connynge
in meny craftes, and pere he was i-made among hem as it were a
god. But pe grete Hercules 4 was somdel latte p[. han he. R.
Pis grete Hercules hadde a surname Dasaneus, so seip Marianus,
libro primo, capitulo fyne honord fourty and fyue. Also pis
is pat Hercules pat slowh Busiris 5 pe tyrant, so seip Ouyde.
*Josephus.* Pis Hercules weddede Eth[. e[. Affer 6 his dou[. ster.
Affer was Madian his sone. Perfore Hercules wente wip
Affer to wynne Libya, and pat lond was Panne i-cleped Africa
by Affer pe conquerour his name. Pe fourry zere after pe out
goynge of Egipte Aaron an honord zere olde and pe and
twenty deyde in Oreb. Also pe same zere Moyses when he
hadde i-lyued fourty zere in Madian, and fourty zere saue
pritty dayes in desert, sex score zere old almost, he deide in pe
hil Mont Abarim, azenst Ierico pat town, and was i-buried of
oure Lord in pe valey of Moab.

Danaus when he was in exile and ponerte, that he my[. bte
reigne per. Dionysus Bacchus is trawede to haue bene
that tymc, whiche made feldes, and began the vse of vynes,
among men of Grece. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro
decimo octavo.* The nowble Mercury is seide to haue bene
in this tymc son to the dozi[. ter of Atlas, geten of Maia,
wise in mony artes, wherefo[. re he was callede a godde after
his dethe. After whom grete Hercules was. R. Whiche
was otherwise callede Dasaneus, as Marianus rehersethe,
libro 3o, capitulo cxlivto. Also that is Hercules, whiche
did see Busiris 5 the tyrant, as Ouidius the poete dothe
reherse. *Josephus.* This Hercules did mary Stea, the
dozi[. ter of Affer, son of Madian; wherefo[. re he wente furthe
with Affer to make Libya subiecte to hym, whiche was callede
after Africa, after the name of Affer. Aaron hauenge a
cxxiij [yere] in age, in the xlii yere of the egession of the
childer of Israel from Egipte, die[. de in Oreb; and Moises
the same yere, in the c. and xxvi yere of his age, die[. de in
Abarim, ageynes Ierico, and was beriede of our Lord in
the vale of Moab.


1 *Dyonisius,* MSS.
2 Added from a. and Cx. (*Bac-
hus*).
3 Athlas a.; Athalas, MS.

\* Text as in a. and Cx.; MS.
has words repeated from below.
4 Busiris, MSS. and Cx.
5 So b. γ., Cx.; after, MS., a.

---

**Trevisa.**

**MS. HARL. 2261.**
CAP. XV.

De gestis et morte Josue; varia de Jove et Saturno aliisque.

Josue populum in Chanaan introducit.

Isidorus, Etym., libro quinto. Josue, minister Moysi, per viginti sex annos rexit populum secundum Josephum; Scriptura tamen de annis tacet; qui primo anno ducatus sui, patefacto Jordane, populum ad terram promissionis introduxit, Phase, id est Pascha, immolavit, circuncisionem per quadraginta annos intermissam innovavit; ac comendentibus illis de fructu terrae illius manna, quod per quadraginta annos duraverat, tune defecit. Petrus. Secundum Eusebium in chronica sua annus ille erat Jubileus, et erat quinquagesimus primus inter Jubileos annos; ac si fluxissent ab initio mundi usque ad tune dua miliaria quingenti quinginti anni, singularis Jubileos per annos quinquagenos computatis; sed secundum LXX. interpretetes longe plures anni fluxerant. Beda vero sequens Hebraicam veritatem probat a praedicta summa annorum septem annos deficere.

Anno primo Josue Erichthonius, quartus rex Athe-
Capitulum quintumdecimum. Iosue.

Iosue, Moyses seruaut, rulede pe peple sixe and twenty yereres. Neuerpeles pe Scripture rekenep not pe yereres. Iosue, pe firste yereres of his leynges hadde pe peple into pe londe of byheste; and pe ryuer flom Jordan oponede, and lethe hem passe, and Iosue offrede pe Ester oflyngge, and renewede pe circumciscioun pat was forbode fourty yereres in wyldernessse. And whanne pey eter of fruyt of pat londe, panne manna faillede pat hadde i-dured fourty wynter. Petrus. Eusebius in his book seip pat yereres was Iubileus, pe yereres of grace, and was pat oon and fyfty yereres of grace, as pey; poo were apassed from pe bygynnynge of pe world two pouwsand pere fyue hundrede and fifty, pat is oon and fifty [sipes fifty] yereres. Pan forto take of eueriche fifty yereres oon yereres of grace it commep to oon and fifty yereres of grace; but by pe Seuenty pere were apassed meny mo yereres. And Beda folwepe pe Hebrewes, and preuepe pat pere lakkede seuenne yereres of two pouwsand fyue hundrede and fifty. De firste yereres of Iosue Erichthonius, pe fourpe kyng of Athenes, was pe firste pat

Capitulum quintumdecimum.

Iosue, the minister of Moyses, rewlede the peple of Israel, MS. Harl. after Iosephus, xxvij yereres; neuertheles Scripture expressethe not the yereres. Whiche ledenge the peple pro the water of Jordan, in the firste yerere of his gouernayle, vn to the londe y-promysede, offrede Ester, and renewede circumcision, refusede by xlv yereres; and then the noryschenge that was ziffen of God to theyme failede, after xl yereres. Petrus. That yerere was the yerere of iubile, after Eusebius in his cronicle, and hit was the firste lyter yerere amonge other yereres, as if ij, mi yerere vs, and lii hade bene from the begynnenge of the worlde, alle the yereres of the iuble aecompte by lyte yerere: but after the lxiti interpretatores, there were mony moo yereres from the begynnenge of pe worlde vn to that tym. Bede, folowenge the trawthe and the trewe aecompte of men of Hebrew, provethe vij. yerere to faile from the noymbre rehersede. Erichthonius the iiiijthe kyng of men of Athenes, in the firste yerere of Iosue,

---

1 of Iosue, MS. (not Cx.)
2 leynges, a., Cx.
3 flom, a., Cx.
4 cronike, a., Cx.
5 that that, a., Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 prowep, Cx.
8 Eractonius, MSS.
9 Eractonius, Harl. MS., twice.
niensis, primus in Graecia quadrigam junxisse creditur.  
Erat tamen quadriga prius apud alias nationes. Augustinus, libro xvii.  
Hic primus instituit ludos Apollini et Minervae.  

eaque tempore Busiris tyrannus, rex Ægypti, tyrannidem exercuit in hospites suos.  
Nam diis suis homines immolavit, quem ferunt fuisse filium Neptuni ex Libya, filia Epaphi.  

eaque tempore, Phœnix et Cadmus fratres de Thebis Ægyptiorum Syriam pro-
fecti, apud Tyram et Sidonem regnaverunt.  
Jupiter rex Creτæ rapuit Europam, filiam Agenoris regis Libyæ, 
quam postmodum Asterius rex Cretensium uxorem sibi fecit.  
Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.  
Jupiter ex Europa quam rapuit genuit Radamanthum, Sar-
pedon, Minois, qui post eum regnavit in Creta.  
Ranulphus. Veruntamen Marianus, libro primo, capí-
tulo dco., dicit quod Asterius genuit ex Europa hos 
tres filios.  
Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.  
Agenor, rex Libyæ, genuit tres filios, Cilicem, Phœnicem et Cadnum, et unam 
filiam nomine Europam; quam cum Jupiter rapuisset, navi suæ,  
quæ taurum

1 tertur, B.C.D.  
2 primusque currum junxisse tertur, ins. C.D.  
3 Eo quoque, B.  
4 Busiris, MSS. and versions.  
5 Dionysius (marg.). Anno decimo, ins. C.D.  
6 Joseph, E.  
7 Eoque tempore, A.; Eo quoque tempore, B.; Anno 18° C.D.  
8 Anno 22 Josue, ins. C.D.  
9 Astius, B.; Astrius, E.D.  
10 duxit in uxorem, C.D.  
11 et, ins. C.D. Higden's inflections have been left unchanged.  
12 Astius, B.  
13 Ranulphus . . . filios] om. C.D.  
14 Silicem, MSS.  
15 unanque, B.  
16 rex Creta, ins. C.D.  
17 suæ] om. B.
brouȝte chariot in to Greekes, as me seip. Nopeles to fore honde were chariottes in oper londes. *Augustinus, libro 18.* Bis ordeyned firste playes to Appolyon, and to Minerva. Also pat tyrne Busiris pe tyraunte, kynge of Egipte, he kyddde 2 his tyrauntyse on his gestes; for he slowh men, and offred hem to goddes. Me seip pat he was Neptunus his sone i-gete on Libya, Epaphus his douȝter. Isoue departed pe loud of Palestines to pe Iewes. Also pat tyrne Fenix and Cadmus, 3 twayne breperen of Thebe, pat is in Egipte, wente into Syria, and reigned at Tyrus and at Sidon, tweic citices pat so hatte. Iupiter, kyng of Creta, rauesched Europa, pe douȝter of Agenor, 4 kyng of Libya. Afterward Asterius, kyng of Creta, wedde 5 Europa to his wyf. *Augustinus, libro 18.* Iupiter on Europa pat he rauesched he pat Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos, 5 pat reigned after hym in Creta. Nopeles, Marianus, libro primo, capitulo 610, 6 seip pat Asterius on Europa gat pese pre sones. *Isidorus, libro 14.* Agenor, kyng of Libya, gat pre sones, Silex, 7 Phenix, Cadmus, and oon douȝter pat heet Europa. Whan Iupiter hadde i-rauisched hire, he dede hire in

ordine de lese thei were afoire in other places. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* The seide Erichthonius ordeyne de places to Apollo and to Minerva. In whiche tyrne Busiris, the tyraunte and kynge of Egipte, exercisede cruellenesse, for he offred men to his goddes, whom men say to haue bene the son of Neptunus of Libya the douȝter of Epaphus. Isoue distribute to the peple of Iewes the londe of Palestines. In whiche tyrne Fenix and Cadmus brether, goenge from Egipte to Syria, reignede at Tyrus and Sidon. Iupiter kynghe of Creta toke a weye Europa the douȝter of Agenor kynghe of Libya, whom Asterius kynghe of men of Creta did wedde. Iupiter gate of Europa, whom he toke awewe, Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos, 8 which reignede after hym in Creta. R. Neuerthelies Marianus reherceth the, libro 12. capitulo 70 ca x8, that Asterius gate those iiij. childer of Europa. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Agenor kynghe of Libya gate thre sonnes, Cilix, 9 Fenix and Cadmus, and oon douȝter, Europa by name. But when Iupiter hade taken

1 chariot, a. 8. 7. chariote, Cx.
2 So a.; hiddle, MS.; vse, Cx.
3 tyrauntyse, Cx.
4 Cadmus, MS. (not a.)
5 Sciria, MS.
6 Agenore, MS.
7 wedde, a.
8 his] om. a., Cx.
9 Minois, MS.; Minows, Harl. MS.
10 61, Cx.
11 So MSS. for Cilix.
12 Silex, Harl. MS.
Cilix, Phoenix et Cadmus Ciliciam, Phoeniciam et Boeotiam condunt.

Varia de Jove et Satyro.

habebat depictum eam imposuit. Qua de causa

1 Quamobrem, C.D.
2 habebat . . . taurum] om. B.
3 fuisse] om. C.D.
4 Recessitque, B.; igitur, C.D.
5 filii, ins. C.D.
6 recessit, B.
7 Ciliciam] om. B.
8 conspecti, C.D.
9 Boetiam, MSS.
10 Slightly transposed in C.D.
11 De . . . Graecia] Quaeren supra de provinciis, capitulo Boetia, C.D.
12 C.D. here introduce the follow-
ing passage:— "Petrus. Eoque tem-
13 per quinquaginta filias suas quin-
14 quaginta filios Egisti fratris sui
15 interfecit, uno solummodo super-
16 stite relieto, qui post eum regna-
17 "vit."
18 B. omits reference.
19 Asier, ins. C.D.
20 et bellicosissimus] om. B.
21 acquisitiv, C.D.
22 Deus, A.B.
23 nominatus] om. C.D.
24 loquitur, B.
25 dicunt, E.
26 apud Gracos mendaces putan-
tur, C.D.
his schippe pat was i-peynt wip a bole; and wherefore poetes feynep pat Jupiter was i-torned in to a boole. Agenor heet\(^1\) his pre sones pat they schulde goo and seche her suster pat was so i-rauisshed and l-lad away, and forbede hem fortme come a\(\tilde{\text{c}}\)en, but \(\tilde{\text{s}}\)if pey br\(\tilde{\text{o}}\)nte hir suster wip hem. And for\(^2\) pey my\(\tilde{\text{s}}\)te not fynde hir, pey drede pe wreppe of here\(^3\) fader. Silex abood in a contray and cleped hit Sellicia\(^4\) after his owene name, and Phenix\(^5\) abood in Phenicia. But Cadmus chees his exilynge in Grecia. Pere he folowede pe fore\(^6\) of an oxe, and come to a contray, and aboode pere, and cleped it Bocia, Oxelond. Afterward he bulde pere pe citee of Thebe. B: Loke more here in pe firste book, capitulo Grecia. Augustinus, libro 18\(^o\). Jupiter regined in pe ilond Creta, and his fader Saturnus was i-put out, and wente to Itali. Henricus. Pis was a wicked man a a greet werriour, and conquered Grees. Pere after his deth, pe Grees pat were ful of lesynges hilde hym god of heuene, and nempted hym god of goddes for his grete power and my\(\tilde{\text{s}}\)t. Pe men of Creta, fore he was i-buried among hem, wolde speke of his burials. Wherefore pe Grees cleped hem ly\(\tilde{\text{s}}\)ers. Alexander in Mythol.\(^7\)

here awaye, he putte her in a schippe in whom he hade a MS. HARL. bulle depicte, wherefore poetes feyne Jupiter to be transmutate in to the similitude of a bulle. Wherefore Agenor comandede his thre sonnes that thei scholde inquire for theiris sustyr, and not to comme to hym in eny wyse with owte here. Whiche childer not fyndenge here and dredenge the wrath of theire fader, Cilix returnede to Cilicia, namenge that cuntre after his owne name, and Fenix to Fenicea, and Cadmus to the londe of Grece, where he desyrede exile; whiche folowenge the stappes of an oxe made a place, namenge hit Boctia, where he made Thebas afterwa-arde. B: Beholde more of this mater afore, libro 3\(^o\), capitulo 22\(^o\), Boctia. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Jupiter regined that tyne in the yle called Creta, Saturnus his fader expulsede to Italy. Henricus. Whiche beenge wyckede and bellicose gate the londe of Grece by conqueste; wherefore he was callede of men of Grece, that be and were the greteste lyers, a god, after his death, and namede as godde of alle goddes for the magnitude of his power. Alexander in Mythologia. The trewe story hathe

---

1. \(\text{bad, Cx.}\)
2. \(\text{by cause, Cx.}\)
3. \(\text{So a. and Cx.; the, MS.}\)
4. \(\text{So a. and Cx. (for Cilicia); Scientia, MS.}\)
5. \(\text{So a.; Fenix, MS.; and Fenicea below.}\)
6. \(\text{steppe, Cx.}\)
7. \(\text{So Cx. (Mith.); Math., a.; Matthew, MS.}\)
in *Mythologia*. Vera historia habet Saturnum patrem et Jovem filium regna contigua in Creta habuisse; inter quos bello pro finibus agrorum exorto prævaluit Jupiter; Saturnusque fugatus Italian petiti, ubi a Jano regnante ob usum vinearum, falcis, et agricultura in partem imperii admissus est, dictusque Saturnus a saturitate, quam ibidem promovit. Eutropius. Hic Saturnus fugiens filium suum Jovem et Graccia, in finibus Tusciæ non procul a loco Romæ latuit, in loco quem Saturniam a nomine suo, et postmodum Latium a latebra sua denominavit, ubi rudes populos adificare, colere, et plantare docuit, cum tamen antea glandibus sustentarentur et sub frondibus contextis habitarent. Hic etiam nummos æreos instituit, quamobrem a multitudine rustica deus putatus est. Ranulphus. Et quamvis poete contendant Jovem castrasse Saturnum, ne in sui supplantationem filios generaret; tamen historia Romana dicit Saturnum genuisse Picum in Italia. Alex-

---

1 *de*, C.D.  
2 *orto*, C.D.  
3 *cum prævalisset*, C.D.  
4 *ubiique*, C.D.  
5 *tunc*, ins. D.  
6 *est*, ins. B.D.  
7 Sentence slightly varied in C.D., which omit *quam... promovit*.  
8 *Saturnus quoque*, C.D.  
9 *Creta*, B.  
10 *Thusici*, A.; *Thusien*, B.  
11 *a loco* ab urbe, C.D.  
12 *Lucia*, E.  
13 *et* om. D.E.  
14 *tamen* om. C.D.  
15 *rusticana*, C. (not D.)  
16 *aliqui*, C.D.  
17 *eunuchas sive*, ins. C.D.  
18 *patrem suum*, ins. C.D.  
19 *alios*, ins. C.D.  
20 *narrat*, C.D.  
Verrey storie seip pat Saturnus ðe fader [and Jupiter] ¹ ðe sone hadde tweie kungdoms ioynynge to gidres in Creta, and for endes and bondes of feeldes was a bataile bytwene hem; and Jupiter hadde ðe maistrie, and Saturnus was i-chased out and weute into Ýtaly; and ðere Ianus ðe kung feng hym to a part of ðe empere, by cause pat he koupe skile of vynes ² and ³ in repynge and in telyenge of feeldes. And he was i-cleped Saturnus of sатурitas, pat is plente; for he made a ⁴ grete plente in ðat lond. ⁵ Eutropius. Òis Saturnus fly ⁶ his sone Jupiter out of Grees to ðe endes of Tuscia nouz⁷ fer from ðe place of Rome; he lidded hym ðere in a place, and cleped ðe place Saturnia after his owne name; and afterward he cleped hit Latium, pat is his bydnyng place. Þere he tauȝte boistons men to bulde and to crye and sowe, and to sette vynes. For to ðorehonde ðey lyued by acres, ⁸ and wonede vnder bowes and twiggis i-wounde⁹ to gidres. Also ðis ordeyned pannes of bras; perfore ðe vplondische men hilde hym a god. ¹⁰ And ðey poetes mene pat Jupiter gildede Saturnus, for he schulde not gete children to supplante hym, neuerpeles ðe storie of Rome seip pat Saturnus gat Þicus in Òtalii.

Saturnus to the fader, and Jupiter to the son, and to ¹¹ haue hade realmes contiguite in Creta; but at the last a batelle movede betwene theyme for ceretyn londe, Jupiter hade the victory, and Saturnus fleenge wente to Ýtaly, which was receyvede of Ianus, regnenghe there in to parte of thempyre, for the vse of vynes and off tillenge of londe, that he brouȝhte in to Ýtaly, where he was callede Saturnus, for the plenteuseness that he brouȝhte in to that centre. ¹² Eutropius. This Saturnus fleenge Jupiter his son lay priuely in a parte of Tuscia not ferre from Rome, whichhe place he callede Saturnia, after his name, where he tauȝhte rude peple to edifiye, to tyle fieldes, and to sette vynes, whichhe peple lyffede alore with akornes, and inhabite places made with bowȝes of trees. Also he institute penyes of brasse, wherefore he was truwede to haue bene a godde of the rusticalle peple. ¹³ And thauȝthe poetes feyne Jupiter to have gildede Saturnus leste that he scholde gette eny childer to his supplantacion, neuertheless the story of the Romanes seith that Saturnus gate

1. Added from a. β. γ., Cx.
2. So a. β. γ., Cx.; wyne, MS.
3. and] om. a.
4. a] om. a. and Cx.
5. So a.; fleeþ, MS.; flemed, Cx.
6. akres, a.; akornes, β., Cx.; akkarns, γ.
7. i-wene, a.; wouen, β., Cx.
8. geldede, a.
ander in Mythol.\textsuperscript{1} Hunc\textsuperscript{2} Jovem post patris expulsionem pacem quoque\textsuperscript{3} perturbantem allì potentes tyranni expellere sunt conati; quos quia bellicis machinis superavit, gigantes fingitur fulminasse. Genesis.\textsuperscript{4} Josue, antequam\textsuperscript{5} moreretur, effudit aquam in terram coram populo\textsuperscript{6} in signum fœderis initi inter\textsuperscript{7} Deum et populum;\textsuperscript{7} quod\textsuperscript{8} scilicet\textsuperscript{9} populus\textsuperscript{10} verum Deum elegisset. Petrus. Mos erat gentibus in signum fœderis contracti\textsuperscript{11} sanguinem suillum effundere. Huguto, capitulo Fœdus. Inde dicitur fœdus a fœda, porca scilicet\textsuperscript{12} maëtata, quasi diceretur: sic effundatur sanguis ejus,\textsuperscript{13} qui violaverit hoc fœdus. Petrus, capitulo sextodecimo.\textsuperscript{14} Sed Hebræi aquam fuderunt\textsuperscript{15} in signum quod, sicut aqua effunditur totaliter absque vestigio sui relictæ, ita violator fœderis pereat cum tota progenie sua. Solebant etiam veteres\textsuperscript{16} aliqua durabiliæ erigere, utpote\textsuperscript{17} lapides aut cumulos, ut diuturnitate sui initiæ fœdus posteris memorarent.\textsuperscript{18}

\textsuperscript{1} in Mythol.] om. C.D.\textsuperscript{10} populus] om. B.\textsuperscript{11} initi, C.D.\textsuperscript{12} sic, A.D.\textsuperscript{13} illius, C.D.\textsuperscript{14} capitulo sextodecimo] om. C.D.\textsuperscript{15} fuderunt aquam, B.\textsuperscript{16} veteres] om. D.\textsuperscript{17} ut, C.D.\textsuperscript{18} Slightly transposed in C.D.
Alexander in Mythologia. Oper me\textsuperscript{2} ty tyrantauntes fondede to putte out pis Jupiter, pat\textsuperscript{3} was ful cruel and desturbed pe pees, after pat his fader was i-pit out, and overcompe geantes wp gyymes of werre. Me feynep pat he li\textsuperscript{4}uede out geantene. Petrue. Ioseue, or he deide,\textsuperscript{5} helte\textsuperscript{6} water on pe epe to fore pe pele in toke of pe covenante pat was i-made bytwene God and pe pele; \textsuperscript{7} pat was, pat pe pele\textsuperscript{8} hadde i-chose pe soopfast God. Petrue. Mysbyleuned men vsede to helde out,\textsuperscript{9} and schede out\textsuperscript{10} pe blood of a sowe pat is i-slawe\textsuperscript{11} in tokene of covenante i-made. Huguitio, capitulo Fedus. Fedus, pat is a covenante, is i-seide of \textit{seda},\textsuperscript{12} a sowep pat is so\textsuperscript{13} i-slawe, as it were to menpe, pat is blood pat brekep pe covenante schulde in pat manere be i-sched. Petrue. But pe Hebrewes hilde out water in token pat as pe water is al i-schad and nou\textsuperscript{14} i-left, so he pat brekep pe covenante schulde be ded, and al his kyn.

Picus in Italy. Alexander in Mythologia. Other my\textit{xy}ty tyrantunes trowblengue peace were abowte to expelle Jupiter, whom he overcompe for he eueynde of poctes Jupiter to haue sleyn dieruse gigantes. Petrue. Ioseue afoe that he dieue schedde water in to the erthe, in to a signe of Luft\textit{e} begunne betwene God and the pele, that the pele hade chosen a trewe Godde. But the gentiles vsede to caste downe the bloodo of a sowe in to a signe of Luft\textit{e}.

Huguitio, capitulo Fedus. Fedus is callede so of a fowluy swyne sleynpe per, as if hit scholde be seide, his bloodo be schedde in lyke wyse that dothe violate and breke this bonde of Luft\textit{e}. Petrue, capitulo decimo sexto. But men of Hebrewe schedde water in to a signe, for like as water is schedde holly with owte eny signe or stappe apperenge afterwarde, se in lyke wise the breker of that bonde scholde peresche with alle his progeny. Also olde men were wuneto elcte thynges duraule in to the signe of Luft\textit{e}, as stones and beryelles, that men succedene my\textit{yst}te remembre the seide token of Luft\textit{e}.

\footnotesize
\begin{itemize}
\item [1] pat [his Jupiter, a., Cx.]
\item [2] Some words repeated in a.
\item [3] hyeld, Cx.
\item [4] Added from a. and Cx.
\item [5] out water, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\item [7] pat is i-slawe] om. a. B. y.; Cx.
\item [8] So a., Cx. ; pheda, MS.
\item [9] So a. B. y. ; is i-slawe, MS., Cx.
\item [10] So a. and Cx. (MS. has repetitions from above).
\item [11] to] of, Cx.
\item [12] arered and enhanceed, Cx.
\end{itemize}

Slight corrections of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly made in this chapter for both versions.
Cap. XVI.


Othoniel. Igitur Othoniel annumeratis octo annis servitutis precedentis dux fuit super Hebraeos quadraginta annis.


1 No title in MSS.
2 junguntur temporibus] annis, B.
3 idem, C.D.
4 Ranulphus] om. A.C.D.
5 autem] om. C.D.; tamen, B.
6 cum . . . posterior] Hercule posterior, C. (not D.)
7 servierat Meeot, B.
8 Hanc . . Isidem] om. C.D.
9 Sentence varied in C.D.
11 Semela, MSS., and so below.
12 Dionysius Bacchus, MSS., and so below; similarly the versions.
13 Latine, ins. B.
14 Marandina, B.
15 The whole sentence slightly varied in C.D.
16 In vol. i. p. 128, the same passage is quoted from "Isido, us, libro " secundo, capitulo quinto," but the reference is false. Cf. lib. i. c. 3., but this does not contain all here quoted.
Capitulum sextumdecimum. Othoniel.

After Iosue his death Israel seruade Chusan, kyng of Mesopotamia, ei^ste ãere. Neuerpeles pese ei^ste ãere beep accounted wiþ Othoniel his tyme, Caleph his broer, by pe Hebrewes; but pe ãeres of reste and of praldom were accounted to gidres vnder iuges of Israel pe soothnesse of acountes wolde not stonde in pe storie. [Augustinus, libro 18o.]2 Aboute this tyme pat womman Latona baar Appolyne in pe ilond Delos.3 But nou^st pat oper Appolyne Delphicus, pat hadde i-be longe to forehonde, but pat Appolyne pat seruade pe kyng Admetus 4 wiþ pe lattre Hercules. Me seip pat pis Latona 5 was pe same womman [that heet] 6 Isis. Panne Othoniel was ledere of Israel fourty ãere forto rekeene pe forseide ei^ste ãere of praldom. Neptunus reguende and was pe fift kyng of Athene. Cadmus 7 reguende in pe citee Thebes; of his do^ster Semela was i-bore Denys Bacchus, pat heet also Liber Pater, pat is pe Fre Fader. In his tyme was Linus 8 of Thebe in Egipt, pe grete chaunctor, in his floures. Fenix bulde Bithynia, pat heet somtyme Mariandyna.

Capitulum sextumdecimum.

The childer of Israel did seruye to Chusan, kyng of Mesopotamia, viij. yere after the death of Iosuc, whiche yeres be ioynde to the yeres10 of Othoniel the brother of Caleph, after men of Hebrewe. Petrus. But if the yeres of the quietnes and seruitute be comprehended to geder vnder the daies of the iugges, the trawthe of computacion scholde not be in the storie. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Latona childeede Apollo abowe this tyme at the yle of Delos, whiche was not Apollo Delphicus, for he was longe aforre, but this Apollo seruade kyng Admetus, with the later Hercules. The viijthe yere of the seruite of men of Israel annumerate, Othoniel was gouvernour of men of Hebrewe xi^d yere. Neptunus the vi^the kyng of men of Athenes reguende. Cadmus did regiene in Thebis, of pe do^ster of whom, Semela by name, Dionysus Bacchus was gene, other Liber pater. In pe tyme of whom Thebeus the musician was. Bithynia was made of Phenix, callede aforre.

1 So a. and Cx. ; Chusan, MS.
2 Added from a. and Cx.
3 So Cx. ; Dolos, MS.
4 So a. and Cx. ; Admetrius, MS.
5 Lathona, MS., and so below.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 So a. ; Cadmus, MS., Cx.
8 Lynus, MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter and the following.
9 yeres, MS.


---

1 tradidit: primo dedit, C.D.
2 Transposed in C.D., which add— unde et color ille Feniciæ dictus est qui postea litera mutata punicæ dicitur. Hugutio, capitulo Fenix. Et quia Fenices fuerunt primi literarum inventores, adhuc literas capitales rubeo colore scribimus, ut sic representemus cosuisse literarum repertores.
3 Ranulphus et Phœnicia om. C.
4 ubi Fenicia, B. See vol. i. p. 128.
5 Ranulphus om. C.
6 enim om. B.
7 a ... deinceps: ponitur, litera Graeca talen numerum significat.
8 ad, ins. A.
9 designat, A.
10 duo om. B.
11 denominat, B.
12 signat, A.
13 vicesima secunda quadringenta om. A.
14 designat ... ferri: deferri, B.
15 reperta est, B.; repertur, C.D.
16 Et om. C.D.
17 So Higden, for Demetra, who has also Dæne.
18 de Metra Dianæ matre, B.
19 facta facerunt, C.D.
20 conditur secundum quosdam, C.D.
**Isidorus, libro 2°, capitullo 5°.** And as Fenix \\ af pe Fenices some reed lettres. B. \\ por of loke more in pe firste book, capitulo quintodecimo, in Fenicia. **Isidorus, libro 2°.** Pe lettres of Grees pat Cadmus \\ af hem speled words, and stondep for nombres. [B.]. Pe lettres of Grees from pe firste to pe tenpe as pey stondep in ordre [in pe A.B.C., so pey stondep] for nombre among pe Grees; for pe firste stondep for oon; pe seconde for tweyne, [and] pe pridde for pre, and so forp anon to pe tenpe. But pe eleuepe lettre stondep for twenty, pe twelve for pritty, pe prittene for forty, and so anon to an hundred. For an hundred stondep lettepe lettre; paenne pe twentye lettre stondep for two hundred; pe oon and twenty for pre hundred, and so forp. **Petrus.** Craft and vse of iren was i-founde in Egiphte. Pe dedes pat me tellep of Demetra and of Dan, Persius his moder, byfel pat tyme. And pe citee Corinthi was i-balde pat tyme.

Mariandyna. Isidorus, libris 2° et quinto. And lyke as MS. Harl. Cadmus toke to men of Greece xvij. letters so in like maner, Phenix, brother to hym, toke certeyne letters of a redde colour to the Phenicieans. R. Attendee to this processe afore, capitulo 15°, Phenicia. Isidorus, libro 2°. The letters of men of Greece, whom Cadmus toke to peim, compounde words and make nowmbrere. R. And in what nowmbrer a letter is putte from the firste letter to the xithe, hit signifie the a like nowmbrer amonge men of Grewe, for the firste letter signifie the oon, the secunde tweyne, and so vn to x, for the xithe letter signifie the x and the xithe letter xx, the xijthe xxxi, the xiiijthe xxxiii, the xijixthe xlii, and so on to a c, whiche is signifie by the xixthe letter. The xxiiith letter signifie the cce, xxixi cce, and so furthe. **Petrus.** The vse of yrne was founde this tyme amonge men of Egiphte, and also those things happede whiche be sayde of Mictri and Dana, the moder of Perseus. The cite of Corinthus was made, whom thei say to be Isis.

---

1 So Cx., rightly; 5, MS. Trevisa's version is evidently mutilated here.
2 Reference added from a. and Cx.
3 Added from a. and Cx.
4 *the fourth*, Cx.; badly.
5 *prittene*, a.
6 So a.; *nyche*, MS.
7 So Cx.; *foure*, MS.
8 Cx. adds: *the xxij. for four hundred*.
9 So a. and Cx.; *Dometra*, MS.
10 Mariandyna, Harl. MS.
11 So Harl. MS. for *Demeter and Danae*. 

---

2261
Aod vel
Ehud.

Ayoth 1 annumeratis octodecim annis, quibus servi-
vit Israel Eglon pingui regi Moab, et etiam connu-
ererato uno anno 2 ducis Sangar, qui occidit sexcen-
tos viros vomere suo, 3 fuit dux super Israel octoginta
annis. 4 Iste Ayoth, filius Jhera 5 filii 6 Gemini, fuit
ambidexter, utraque scilicet 7 manu utens pro dextra.

Petrus. Geminum aliqui dicunt fuisse unam vilen
personam in 8 tribu Benjamin; qui posteris suis legi-
tur saepe improperatus ob ignominiam. Hebrews tamen
tradunt hunc fuisse Benjamin, et quasi per aphaere-
sim 9 sic dictum. Nam 10 ubi nos ponimus Geminum, 11
ipsi ponunt Jamyn, 12 quod sonat dextrarium seu dex-
tralem; qui Latine geminus dici posset.

Triptolemus 13 longa navi 14 Eleusim veniens frumenta
distribuit; et rex Molos[ ]orum atque Thraciae, Oreus
 nomine, 15 Proserpinam rapuit, cujus canis ingens Cer-
berus Pirithoum 16 devoravit, 17 qui cum Theseo 18 venerat
ad raptum Proserpine; sed et Theseum devorasset, nisi
Hercules superveniens cum liberasset. Et ob hoc 19 ab
inferis receptus est. 20 Achaia ab Achaio fundata 21 est.

1 Aioth, A.
2 et . . . . anno] annumerato
etiam uno, B.
3 uno, B.D.
4 Slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.
5 Jera, A.D.
6 filius, C. (not D.) om. B.
7 scilicet] om. C.D.
8 de, B.
9 Variously barbarized in MSS.
10 sic dictum. Nam] om. C.D.,
with other slight variations.

11 Jeminum, A.E.
12 Jamin, A.
13 Tritholomus, A.; Tritolomus,
B.D.; Triptolemus, E.
14 navigatione, B.
15 nomine] cm. C.D.
16 Pirithoum, A.E.; Pirotinem, B.;
Pirotinem, C.D.
17 devoraverat, B.
18 eum] om. E.
19 hoc] id quoque, C.D.
20 dicitur, C.D.
21 condita, C.D.
Capitulum septimumdecimum. Aioth.

Ayoth was ledere of Israel foure score 3ere, forto acontante estilo etene 3ere in pe whiche Israel seruede Eglon pe fatte king of Moab; also forto rekene oon 3ere of Sangar, pe duke and ledere 1 pat slow sixe hundred men wip a plowh schare. Pis Aioth vsede eiper hond for his riȝt hond, and was Ihera his sone; Ihera was Geminus 2 his sone. Petrus. Som tellep pat Geminus was a vile persone of pe lynage of Beniamyn, and was ofte i-nempned in reprofe to al his ofspringe, for he was so fyle 3 and so vnworpy. Nopeles pe Hebrewes menep pat pis Geminus was Beniamyn, as pey he were 4 so i-nempned by chaungynge oper wipdrawing of somwhat of pe begynynge of pe name. For pey we settep Geminus pe Hebrewes settep Iamyn, pat is a ryngge pat longepe to pe riȝt side, and may be side 5 Geminus in 6 Latyn. Ritholomus 7 com yn a longe schipphe to Eleusis, and delede pere whete; and Orcus, kynge of Molos and of Thracia, rauesched Proserpina; hire hound, pat heet Cerberus, sweloweved vp a man, pat heet Pirion, pat come with Theseus to raylyshe Proserpina; and pe same hound Cerberus wolde have i-ete Theseus also, but Hercules hadde i-come pe mene tyme and i-saued hym, and perfere he was i-fonge in to helle. Acheus

Capitulum decimum septimum.

Then xvij. yere annumerate in whom the peple of Israel ministred to Eglon the fatte kynge of Moab, and also oon yere of Sangar the duke, which did sle vj. men with the cultur of a plowe, Aioth reignevede on the peple of Israel lxxxv yere. This Aioth, son of Ihera, the son of Geminus, vsede either honde as the ryȝhte honde. Petrus. Somme men say Geminus to hauke bene a vile person in the tribe of Beniamyn, callede so as by effresis; for pei putte Iamyn where we putte Geminus, whiche sowndethe as pertenege to the ryȝhte parte, whiche may be called welle in Latyn Geminus. Tritholomus commenge to Eleusis in a longe schipphe, and the kynge of Thracia, raueschede and toke away Proserpina, whose dogge callede Cerberus de-noured Pirotonus, which come with Theseus to the takenge aweye of Proserpina; whiche hade denouredd Theseus also, but that Hercules deluyerede hym, for whiche thynghe he was receyvede of helle. Achaia was foundede of Acheus,

1 be ledere, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
2 So a. and Cx.; Geminus, MS., which has sometimes Gemynus below.
3 fyle, Cx.
4 So a. B. γ.; and pey were, MS.
5 seid, a.

Trevisa.

MS. HARL.

2261.

1 in] a. B. γ.
2 Here and elsewhere in this chapter the orthography of the versions has been left unaltered; to correct them in such cases is to re-write them. The MSS. of Trevisa agree.
et Atheniensium dux, Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater dicitur, secundum quosdam, nascitur ex Semele; et mysteria de Perseo ceperunt, qui occidit Gorgonem meretricem quae ob nimiam pulchritudinem obstupecit 1 aspicientes in eam. 2 Sub 3 qua etiam aratar Phrixus 4 et Helle 5 soror 6 sua fugientes insidias noverales submersi sunt in mari, quod usque hodie a nomine sororis vocatur Hellespontus; at quia 7 insigne navis eorum fuit aries, ideo finguntur per aerem vehi ariete 8 velleris aurei. 9 Laomedon, Sicyoniorum rex octavus decimus, 10 regnavit 11 quinquaginta annis. Amphion et 13 Zethus 14 regnavant 15 apud Thebas 16 Græcorum expulso Cadmo. 17 Tros, a quo dicuntur Trojani, regnavit in Dardania, quæ est Phrygia, 18 et postmodum indixit bellum Tantalo, regi Atheniensium, propter raptum Ganymedis filii sui. Ranulphus. 19 Frustra ergo Jovis fabula et raptrix aquila confingitur. 20 Perseus, frater Erechthei, 21 dimicavit adversus Persas capite Gorgonis 22 desecto. Pegasus equus velocissimus ejusdam mulieris seu Bellerophontis 23 navis fuit. Ion vir fortis ex suo vocabulo appellavit Athenienses Iones. Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater, debellando Indos 25 urbem Nysam 26 construxit. Iste Dio-

---

1 obstupefasiebat, C.D.
2 in eam] om. C.D.
3 Sub] om. C.D.
4 Fixus or Frixus, MSS.
5 Elles, MSS.
6 cum Helle sorore, C.D.
7 atque, B.
8 ab ariete, A.
9 Slightly varied in C.D.
10 Scicionorum, MSS.
11 finguntur ... xvij.] om. B.
12 regnavit cepit, C.D.
13 et] om. B.
14 Zephyros or Zepus, MSS. and versions.
15 regnaverunt, C.D.
16 apud Thebas] Thebis, A.B.
17 Transposed in C.D.
18 Frigia, MSS.
19 Added from B.
20 Tros ... confingitur] Varied in C.D.
21 Evieci, MSS.
22 meretricis, ins. C.D.
23 bellorontis, A.
24 vocavit, A.
25 debellando Indos] adversus Indos dimicans, C.D.
26 juxta Indum fluvium, ins. C.D.
bulde Achaia. Denys Liber Pater, duke of Athene, was i-bore of Semela, as som men tellep, and took misterya of Perseus, fat slow3 fat hore Gorgon, fat was so faire, [that she] 1 astonyed men fat byhelde hire wip hir fairnesse. Also fat tyme Frixus and his suster Elles flyþe pe malice and pe pursute of here stepdame, and were adraynt 2 in pe see fat heet Ellespontus. And for a weper was i-peynt in pe signe of here schippe, perfore me feynede fat a wether wip gildene flees bare hem forþ by pe ayer. Laomedon, pe eiþte pe kyng of Sciciones, regnede fifty þere. Amphion and Zethus regned in Thebe, pe 3 citee of Grees, and put out Cadmus. Tros 4 regnede in Dardania, pis is Frigia, 5 and werred afterward aþe1st Tantalus, kyng of Athene, for pe rauyschyng of Ganymedes. Of pis Tros pe Troians haunþ pat name, and hatte Troians. [R.] 6 Þan pe fable of Iupiter is i-feyned; and so pe rauyschyng of an egle is i-feyned and 7 ydul. Perseus, Ericteus his broper, fauþt aþe1st pe Perses, and 8 smoot of pe heed of pat hoor Gorgon. Pegasus was a ful swift hors of a womman, oþer 9 heet Bellefrontys his schip. Ion 10 pe strong man eleped pe men of Athenes Iones by his owne name. Denys, that hatte Liber Pater also, werred wip pe Indes, and bulde pe

and Dionysus 12 Bacchus, other Liber Pater, gouernoure of men of Athenes, was borne abowte this tyme of Semela. And the misterya of Perseus beganne, which did see a strumpette other hore. Gorgones by name, makenge men beholdenge to meruyle the excellente beaute of here. In whiche tyme Frixus, and Elle his sustyr, dredenghe in the see whiche is callede vn to this tyme Ellespontus, 11 after the name of his sustyr: Laomedon, the kyngye of men of Seitin, the xvii1the kynge, reignede 16 yere. Amphion and Zethus reignede at Thebas in Greece, Cadmus expulsede. Tros, of whom the Troianes toke name, reignede in Dardania, otherwise called Frigia, after that liffenge batayle to Tantalus kyngye of Athenes, for the rape of Ganymedes his son. Perseus, the brother of Ericteus, 13 Þafe batelle ageyne men of Persia for the sleenge of Gorgones. That stronge man called Ion namede men of Athenes Iones after his name. Dionysus, 12 other Liber

---

1 Added from Cx.; fat (only), ß.
2 drowned, Cx.
3 in ße, MS. (not ß e, ß y.)
4 So ß, ß e; Troos, MS.
5 Frista, MS.
6 Added from ß, and Cx.
7 ß, ß e; in, Cx.; ß, ß e.
8 he, Cx.
9 oþer] that, Cx.
10 So ß a, and Cx.; Ione, MS.
11 Ellespontus, Harl. MS.
12 Dionissius, Harl. MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in both versiions.
13 Clerical error for Ericteus (Erechtheus).
Pelops, nysus 1 foeminas cum viris primus in exercitu habuit. 2
Pelops, primus Peloponnesensibus 3 regnans, Olympiis
quoque praefuit; qui tamen postmodum 4 adversus
Ilium 5 rebellans 6 a Dardano superatur. 7 Augustinus,
libro octavodecimo. Temporibus Ayoth, ducis Israel, 8
floruit Hercules posterior; plane [diversus] ab illo
Hercule superius memorato. Trogus. 9 Iste Hercules 10
fortis fuit, 11 orbis domitor, Amazonum contritor, 12
Indiae penetrator, Trojanorum expugnator, Libye invasor,
Hispanie dominator. Ranulphius. 13 Iste Hercules 14
secundum Ovidium in Magno, libro octavo, Antaeum 15
gigantem 16 Libye 17 devicit, Geryonem 18 gigantem regem
Hispanie occidit, armenta ejus in signum victorie per
Italian duxit; ex filia Faumi Latinum regem pro-
creavit; leonem 19 interfecit; hydram serpentem in
Lerna palude extinxit; stadium itineris uno 20 anhelitu
percurreit; agonem 21 Olympicum instauravit; Centauros
contrivit; apud Gades insulas columnas posuit; duode-
cim immensos labores consummavit. Augustinus de Civi-
tate, libro octavo decimo. Et cum post insignes virtutes

1 pariter in armis, C.D. (ad arma, D.)
2 primus . . . habuit] sociavit, C.D.
3 Peloponnesibus, MSS.
4 tamen postmodum] postea, C.D.
5 ilium, C. (not D.)
6 rebellando, B.
7 supercranter, C. (not D.)
8 ducis Israel] om. C.D.
9 So A.B.C.D.; Titus, E.
10 Iste Hercules] om. C.D.
11 fuit] om. C.D.
12 Hercules, ins. C. (not D.)
13 Ranulphus] om. B.
14 Hie, C.D.
15 Anteum, A.; Athenum, E.
16 regem, ins. A.
17 Libye] om. B.; Libia, MSS., as usual.
18 Cerionem, A.
19 leonem] om. B.
20 unico, B.
21 Aganum, A.B.; Aganem, E.
citie Nisan.¹ Pis Denys ordeyned first wommen in his oost wip ² men. Pelopes,³ pe firste kyng of Peloponens, was heed of pe Olimpies;⁴ nenerpeles afterward he was aženst Troye, and overcom of Dardanus. In Aioth his tyme, duke of Israel, pe latter Hercules, anofer pan we spak of raper, was in his floures. Trogus. Pis Hercules was strong, and temede pe world, and overcome pe Amazones, and passed in to Inde and werred pere, and overcame pe Troians, and werred in Libya, and was lord of⁵ Spayne. R. Pis Hercules overcom Anteus,⁶ pe geant of Libya, so seip Ouyde, in Magno, libro octavo; and slow; Geryon pe geaunt, kyng of Spayne, and ladde his catel and his bestes porsw Italy in tokyn of pe maistrye; and he gat pe kyng Latyn on pe dougter of Faunus;⁷ and he slow; a leon; he slow; pe serpen Ydra in pe water Lerna; and he ran a furlong at oon breep; and he re¬stored pe tormenents and loustes of Mont Olymp; he over¬come pe Centaures; and p itselfe his pilers in pe see at pe Ihondes Gades; and he dede twelue grete dedes. Trevisa. Pe Cen¬taures were men of Thessalia; pey were pe firste pat chastede⁸ hors, and ladde hem wip brydels, and ride⁹ on hors bakkes. Augustinus, libro 18o. And after his grete dedes he fille in a

Pater, fištengo ageyne men of Ynde, made that cite callede MS. Harl. Nisan. This Dionysus hace firste women mixte with men in his hoste. Pelopos reignede firste amonge men of Peloponens, and also at Olympus, which rebellenge ageyne Troianes was overcommen by Dardanus. The later Hercules was in the tynes of Aioth, duke and governoure of Israel. This myȝhty Hercules was the tamer of the worlde, the victor of pe Amazones, the perescher of Ynde, the expugnator of Troianes, the enterer of Libya, the lorde of Speyne. R. This Hercules, after Ouidius, in Methamorphoseon libro octavo, overcame the giaunte of Libia at Athenes, and did sle Geryon the giaunte and kyng of Speyne, causenge his bestes to be brouytheth thro Ytaly in a signe of victory, gettenge of the doȝhter of Faunus¹⁰ Latinus the kyng; which did sée also a lyon and a grete serpente in a marras callede Lerna, rennenge the space of a fore¬longe with oon brethe, settenghe pilores at the yle of Gades; which finischede xij. huge laborees. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo. Whiche hauenge as a disease intollerable after his grete laborees, commandeued hym selfe to be caste

¹ So all the MSS.
² her men, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
³ Pelopis, MS. (not a.)
⁴ So a., Cx.; Olimpus, MS.
⁵ of] in, MS. (only).
⁶ Antheus, MSS., and so below.
⁷ So γ.; Faunus, MS., a. β.
⁸ chastised, Cx.
⁹ rode, Cx.
¹⁰ Faunus, Harl. MS.
morbnum, quo vehementer languebat, ferre non posset, seipsum in Oeta monte Hispianæ cremandum flammis tradidit. Ranulphus. Qui sunt isti duodecim immensi sive inhumani labores, quos consummavit, patet per Claudiaum libro sexto de raptu Proserpine, et per Virgilium Æneidos octavo, et per Ovidium Met. nono libro. Quorum primus labor fuit de Centauris quos devicit; secundus fuit interfictio et excoriatio leonis in Nemeæa silva; tertius effugatio Harpyiarum; quartus tangitur in Lucano, libro nono, scilicet ablatio pomorum aureorum de horto septem filiarum Atlantis; sopito dracone custode; quintus catenatio Cerberi devorantis Pirithoun in raptu Proserpine; sextus oppressio Diomedis regis Thraciae, qui pavit eos suos carne humana; septimus extinctio hydra serpentis in Lerna palude; octavus devictio Acheloë in varias formas se mutantis; nonus prostratio Antæi gigantis Libye, qui terram tangendo semper vires resumebat; decimus occisio Caci, qui dicebatur igno...
Clementius, 
Berna, maris, 
which was in the daughters labores of his Centauri, in the victory of Hercules deo. Of pe which dedes pe firste was pe victorie pat he hadde of pe Centaures. De seconde pe sleynge and pe hildynge of a leon in a wode pat hatte Nemea. De pridade pe chasynge of pe foutes pat hatte Arpies. De ferpe pe takyng of goldene apples out of pe orche3erd of pe seene dou3ters of Atlas pe geant, and pe sleynge of the dragon pat kepe pe place. De fite pe chaynyng and teieenge of pe grete hound Cerberus pat denoured Pirithous in pe rauischynge of Proserpina. De sixte pe berynge doun of Dionede, de kyng of Thracia, pat fedde his hors wip manis flesche. The seuenpe pe destroyenge of Ydra pe serpent in pe water Lerna. De ei3 pe ve ouercommynge of Acheleous, pat chaunged ofte tyme in to dyuers liknes and schappes. Pe nunpe pe prowynge doun of Auteus, pe geant of Libya, pat took azen my3te and strenghe as ofte as he touched pe erpe. De tenpe pe sleynge10 of the cat pat cast out fuyre of his moup, in to a grete fire, in Ceta an hille of Speyne. B. Whiche labores were not like to be the labores of man, as hit is schewed by the poete Claudianus, libro vi10 de raptu Proserpine, and by Virgilius, Eneyd, libro vii5, and by Ouidius in Metamorphoseon libro nono. The firste was tak-enge aweye of apples of golde from the gardyn of pe vii, dou3ters of Atlas, the dragon and keper of theyne beenge in slepe. The seconde was of the grete bestes calleded Centauri, whom he ouercome. The thridde was the sleenge of a lyon, in a wode calleded Menena. The iiiijth was the chasenge of Arpines. The viij the was the chenenge of the grete dogge calleded Cerberus, which did sle Pirithous in the takenge aweye of Proserpina. The viij the was the oppression of Dionedes kyng of Thracia, which fedde his horse with the flesche of man. The viij the was the sleenge of the serpent in that marras calleded Lerna. The viij the was the victory of Acheleous, chaungenge hym in to diuerser formes. The ixthe was the victory of Auteus the gigaunte of Libya, which euercasede in strenghte as he towchede the erthe. The xth the labore was the sleenge of Caues, whom men seide to euomette fire. The xith the was the sleenge of

1 hard] payable, Cx.  
2 Added from a. and Cx.  
3 Nenia, Cx.; Menu, MSS.  
4 Atlas, MSS., as usual ; which conversely have Tracia below.  
5 palce, Cx.  
6 Pyrotheus and Perithoeus, MSS.  
7 So a.; maris, MSS.; mennis, Cx.  
8 So a.; Berna, MS.  
9 eche, Cx.  
10 sleynge, MS. (clerical error.)
nem evomere;¹ undecimus interfectio apri Arcadie; duodecimus supportatio coeli, donec Atlas fatigatus respiraret. Sed ² in tertio decimo labore, videlicet ³ induendo se ⁴ interum.⁵ Dejanirre,⁶ extinctus est. In quo notandum⁷ est quod isti labores Herculi attributi vel solam ⁸ sonant historiam, ut secundus de leone et undecimus de apro; vel solummodo spectant ad integumentum morum,⁹ et tunc fabulosum est quod explicant, quamvis ¹⁰ veritatem implicit, quales sunt tertius de fuga Harpyiarum, et quartus de raptu pomo- rum; vel etiam¹¹ sonant historiam mixtam cum fabula, ut εκετερι omines labores. Est etiam hic¹² advertendum quod non videtur unus et idem Hercules fuisse, cui ¹³ isti duodecim labores¹⁴ attribuuntur; tum ¹⁵ quia Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo,¹⁶ dicit ¹⁷ quod alius fuit Hercules cui ista duodecim attribuuntur et alius qui ¹⁸ Antæum in palestra¹⁹ devicit, et tamen Boethius ²⁰ in fine quarti libri de consolatione narrat istud ²¹ de Antæo ²² inter duodecim labores²³ Herculis; tum etiam quia Augustinus ²⁴ ubi supra et etiam ²² in capitulo xix²⁵ dicit multos fuisse Hercules; et etiam ²³ dicit quod Sampson propter mirabilem fortitudinem putatus est Hercules.

¹ evomuisse, C. (not D.)
² Sed] om. C.D.
³ videlicet] om. C.D.
⁴ se] om. C.D.
⁵ interum, A.
⁶ Dejaniras, B.; Dianire, D.
⁷ sciendum, C.D.
⁸ solam] om. B.
⁹ moralum, B.
¹⁰ licet, C.D.
¹¹ etiam] om. B.
¹² hic] om. C.D.
¹³ omnès, ins. B.
¹⁴ ingentia facta, C.D.
¹⁵ etiam, ins. C.D.
¹⁶ ⁹°, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 12.
¹⁷ dicit] om. B.
¹⁸ qui] om. E.
¹⁹ palaestra, B.
²⁰ Boecius or Boetius, MSS.
²¹ illud, B.D.
²² de Antæo] om. C.D.
²³ labores] om. B.
²⁴ alius, A.
²⁵ etiam! m. C.D.
as me seide. *P*e enleuenpe *p*e sleynge of *p*e boor in Arcadia,\(^1\) *P*e twelpe *p*e berynge and *p*e holdynge vp of heune, while Atlas *p*e geant reste hym, whan he was wery. But in *p*e prittenpe he dede on a corsette of Ianyt,\(^2\) and deide. Here take hede pat *pis*\(^3\) twelpe dedes *pat* beep acounted to Hercules sownep *p*e storie as it is i-tolde; soo doop the secounde of *p*e leon, and *p*e enleuenpe of *p*e boor; oper he perteynep onliche *p*e couerynge of pewes; and panne *p*e tale is a fable, but *p*e menyynge is ful of trowpe and of sopnesse. So is *p*e priddle of *p*e arpies, and *p*e fourpe of *p*e takynge and raymyschynge of *p*e goldene apples. Other he tokenep and sownepe the storrye meddled wip a fable; so doop alle his oper dedes of *p*e twelne.\(^4\) Also here take hede, it semep *pat* it is nouzt al oon Hercules pat *jexe* twelpe dedes beep acounted to; fore\(^5\) Seint Austyn, de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 14, *seip* *pat* it was an oper Hercules *pat* [these dedes beep acounted\(^6\) to, and anoper Hercules *pat*]\(^7\) overcome Anteus *p*e geant in wrastlynge. And also Boecius, in fine quarti libri de Consolatione tellep *pe* same of Anteus among *p*e twelue dedes of Hercules. Also Seint Austyn, ubi supra, et capitulo 19, *seip* *pat* pere were meny Hercules; and also Sampson for his wonder strengpe was acounted Hercules.

the boore of Arcadia.\(^1\) The xij\(^{th}\) labore was the suppor-
tation of heyun while that Atlas beenge wery did reste; whiche diede or that he hade fullefylled the xij\(^{th}\) labore. Of whom hit is to be attendede, pat these labores attribute to Hercules sounde other a story, as that of the lyon, and the xij\(^{th}\) of the boore; other elles thei longe oonly to the couerenge of maneres, and then hit is a fable that thei expresse, pau3he thei do implicate trawthe, as the thrysterde and xij\(^{th}\) labore were of the takenge aweye of the apples; other elles thei sownde a story mixte with a fable, as elle other labores. Also hit is to be attendede, that these xij. labores be not to be attribute to oon Hercules, for as Seynte Austyn seythe, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo quarto decimo,\(^8\) that there was an other Hercules to whom these xij. labores were attribute, then that Hercules which overcom Antheus the giaunante of Palen-
stri. And Boecius, quarto libro de Consolatione Philos-
ophiae, rehersethe that of Antheus among the xij. labores of Hercules. Also Seynte Austyn seithe that *per* were mony Hercules, and also Sampson was trawede to haue be namede

---

1 *Archadia*, MSS., as usual.
2 So MSS.; *Dianier*, Cx. (i.e., *Dejanira*.)
3 these, Cx.
4 So *a* and Cx.; *twelve dedes*, MS.
5 *too*, *for* *a*.
6 *aretted*, Cx.
7 Added from *a* and Cx.
8 *he* *that*, Cx.
9 The numbers are so written at length.
10 It is possible that the translator’s Latin text was corrupt.
Et in libello Phrygii Dareti de bello Trojano Jason ipse qui quaesivit pellem auream apud Colchos cognominatus est Hercules. Unde illud Ovidii tertio-decimo Metamorphoseon:

Mœnia sub furti Trojana sub Hercule, et cætera. Et Ovidius octavo Met. attribuit interfectionem apri Arcadiæ Meleandro, et etiam Met. septimo attribuit fugam Harpyiarum filiis Boreæ, scilicet Zoe et Calai. Unde dicitur a nonnullis sciolis quod Hercules sit potius cognomen virorum illustrium, qui virtute et audacia singulares apparuerunt; quod etiam nominis hujus interpretatio sonare videtur. Dicitur enim Hercules ab heros, quod est vir, et ecleos, gloria; quasi vir gloriosus.

CAP. XVIII.

De Grecorum fabulis, tempore potissimum Aod inventis.

Eusebius in Chronicis. Tempore Ayoth potissime in Græcia inventæ sunt fabulae; et dicitur quod Aesopus primus eas inveniret ad exornandum veritatem

---

1 bello, E.; libro, D.
2 vellus, B.
3 apud Colchos] om. C.D.
4 Trojana] So D.; Trojanæ, A.E.
5 The true reading is:
   "Mœnia qui fortì Trojana sub Hercule cepit."
   Ov. Met. xiii. 23.
6 Similiter, C.D.
7 illud, B.
8 So MSS. for Meleagro. See Ovid. Met. viii. 270.
9 scilicet] om. C.D.
10 Zethes and Cafnis, sons of Borcas, are mentioned by Ovid, Met. vi. 716; but Higden’s statement is a mere blunder.
11 dicitur .. sciolis] videtur ple-risque, C.D.
12 videbantur, the rest of the chapter being omitted, in C.D.
13 autem, A.
14 No title in MSS.
15 primus] om. E.
16 exornandum, B.
And Frigius Dares, 1 in his book of bataille of Troye, seip pat Iason pat gat 2 pe weper wip the 3 goldene flees at Colchos had a surname, and was i-cleped Hercules. Perfore Ouid, Methamorphoses 13o, seip ; Menia vnder furt 4 and pe Troians vnder Hercules. And Ouidius, 8o Methamorphoses, aconthe 5 the sleyunge of pe boor of Arcadia to Melandrus; 6 and also 7o 7 Methamorphoses aconthe pe chasyunge of pe arpies to Boros his sones, pat heet Zoes and Calaius. 8 Perfore meny wise men telleth pat Hercules is pe surname of noble men and stalworpe, pat passed oper men hugely 9 in boldenesse and in strengte. And so hit semep al by kyndeliche menynge of pat name ; for Hercules is i-seide of heros, 10 pat is a man, and of cleos, pat is blisse ; as pey Hercules were to menynge a blisful man and glorious.

Capitulum octavumdecimum

Eusebius in Cronica. In Aioth his tyme, namelicte in Grees fables were i-founde, and 11 me seip pat Esopus fonde first fables for to hit 12 kyndeliche sootheses; 13 for pe Hercule for his meruellous strenthe. Also hit is expressed in the bokes of Frigius Dareis, of the batelle of Troy, that Iason, whiche did feche the fleece of golde at Colchos, was callede Hercules. Also Ouidius, in libro octavo Metamorphoseon, fiffeth the labore of the sleyenge of boore of Arcadia to Melandrus other Melander. For that name of Hercules was fifen to nowble men for a singuler vertu and audacite, whiche thynge semethe to appere by interpretation of that name. For this worde, Hercules, is seide of this worde, eros, whiche is a man, and cleos, that is joy, as a glorious man.

Capitulum decimum octavum

Eusebius in Cronica. Fables were founde specially in Greece in the tyme of Aioth, and hit is seide that Ysopus founde theym firste to onorne trawthe naturalle, leste the secrete

---

1 So Cx.; Daret, MS. a. β. γ.
2 wan, Cx.
3 [the] om. a.
4 So a. and Cx.; fruit, MS. Trevisa cannot be blamed for making no sense of a corrupt text; nor the Harleian translator for leaving it out.
5 arrreteth, Cx.
6 Meleandris, MS. (only).
7 So a. β. γ., Cx.; 17, MS.
8 So a. 2. γ., Cx.; Calcanis, MS.
9 grettely, Cx.
10 So Cx.; eros, MS.
11 as, MS. (only.)
12 So a. β. γ.; histo wip, MS.
13 Sentence varied in Cx.
De varia fabularum ratione.

naturalem, ne scilicet vilescerent secretâ naturâ. Unde secundum diversas rerum naturas et qualitates confinxerunt deorum nomina et actiones. *Alexander in Mythol.* Utpote quod post diluvium homines de saxis et de arboribus nasci dicuntur, ab antiquissima hominum cohabitatione confictum est. Nam ante factas domos homines aut in cavis arboribus aut saxis speluncis manebant; vel certe, dum deerrat usus casarum, ipsi homines more pecorum vagabantur. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviiöm, capitulo xiiöm.* Post mortem Josue usque ad bellum Trojanum confictae sunt fabule in Græcia; ut quod ex impetuosa libidine Vulcani cum Minerva Erichthonius cum pedibus draconinis fuerit progenitus, fabulosum est et poeticum. Re autem vera in templo Vulcani et Minerva, quod ambo Athenis commune habebant, inventus est puer expositus, draconis involutus, qui eum significabat magnum futurum. Et sic propter commune amborum templum dicebatur utriusque filius; cum tamen ejus parentes fuissent ignoti. Item de Triptolemo, quod jubente Cerere anguibus portatus alitibus indigentibus terris frumenta volando contulerit. Item de Minotauro, quod fuit bestia inclusa labyrintho, quo cum intrassent homines,
[Text from the page]

priuate of kynde schulde nouȝt be despised: wherefore [by]
ykyne of pinges and by dyuers manere of doynte pe fyned
names and worseynge of goddes. Aleyne, 2 in Mythologia. And
so he 3 fyned pat after pe flood men come of stonees and of
trees; bote pat was i-fyned for pe manere wonynge of men
in olde tyme; for, ere 4 housynge were i-made, men wonede
in holonesse of treen oper in dennes of erpe and of stones,
and som wente aboute as it were bestes. Augustinus, libro
18°, capitulo 13°. After Ioanne his deep anon to pe bataile
of Troye fables were i-fyned in Grecia. As pat Vulcaneus 6
in grete hete and brennyng of leccherie wip Minerva gat
Eruotonius 6 i-foted as a dragon, pat is a fable and a poetes
feynyng and sawe. But pe sooþ menyng is pat in pe citee
Athene was 00 temple of Vulcaneus and of Minerva; in pat
temple was a childe i-founde byelipped aboute wip a dragoun.
Pat bytokened pat pe childe schulde be greet; and for pe childe
was i-founde in here bope tyme, perfore pe childe was
i-cleped hir bope sone. Also Trithomolus, pat was i-bore of
feynyng addres in to nedy londes at pe neste of Cercer 7 and
brouȝt hem whete, it is a fable. Also of Minotaurus, 8 pat
was a best i-closed in laborintus, Dedalus his hous; and

thynges of nature schulde wexe vile. Wherefore thei feyned
diuers manes and actiones of goddes after diuers
natures and qualites of thynges. Alexander in Mythologia.
As thei seide men to haue bene made of stones after the
grete floode; whiche was a thyngye feyned of olde men, for
men inhabite other in dennes made of ston, other in holow
trees, afore that they hade houyes made; other elles, if
thei hade not suche habitaciones, thei wente abowte in
the maner of bestes. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo,
capitulo 13°. Fables were made in the londe of Greece
after the deth of Ioanne vn to the batelle of Troy, as
Vulcanus to haue tariede with Minerva, and that Eruotonius
was geten with the fecte of a dragon, which is but a fable
and a fenyede thyngye of poetes. Neuerthelasse there was
a childe founde in the temple of Vulcaneus and of Minerva
at Athenes, sette per compassede and wrappee abowte with
the tayle of a dragon, whiche signifieude the childe to be a
grete man in tyme to come, whichelde childe was callede
the childe of Vulcaneus and of Minerva, the faders of whom
were not known in trawth. Also hit is seide off Tritho-

---

1 Added from conjecture only.
2 So also a. b. γ., Cx. Read Alexander.
3 [he] om. MS.
4 So a.; here, MS.; Cx. omits twenty words.
6 Vulcaneus, MS. a. β.; and so below (not γ.).
6 So a. b. γ. (for Erichthionius);
Eruotonius, MS.; Erucyneus, Cx.
7 So all MSS. (or Cerceræ.) The error is certainly due to Trevisa.
8 So β.; Mynataurus, MS., a. γ.
Etiam de Cerbero, Phrixo, Bellerophon, aliisque.

Vera Geryonis historia explicatur; ut et Gorgone meretricum.

inextricabili errore non possent\textsuperscript{1} exiere. Item de Centauris, quod equorum hominumque natura fuerint commixa.\textsuperscript{2} Item de Cerbero, quod sit triceps inferorum canis. Item de Phrixo et Helle sorore,\textsuperscript{3} quod vecti ariete volaverint.\textsuperscript{4} Item de Gorgone meretric,\textsuperscript{5} quod fuit crinita serpentibus et aspicientes vertebat\textsuperscript{6} in lapides. 7 De Bellerophon, quod equo pennis volante vectus sit,\textsuperscript{8} cujus' equus dicitur\textsuperscript{9} Pegasus. 10 De Amphione,\textsuperscript{11} quod\textsuperscript{12} eithare suavitate lapides mulserit et attraxerit. 13 De fabro Dædalo et ejus filio Icaro\textsuperscript{14} quod pennis coaptatis volaverint.\textsuperscript{15} 16 De Antaeo quem necavit Hercules, quod sit\textsuperscript{17} filius Terre propter\textsuperscript{18} quod cadens fortior surrexit.\textsuperscript{19} Isidorus Etymologiarum, libro undecimo.\textsuperscript{20} Item quod Geryon gigas, rex Hispanic ab Hercule occisis, tripli formae constare descriptur, fabula\textsuperscript{21} est. Nam fuerunt ibi tres fratres tantæ concordie, ut in illis quasi unus animus videretur.\textsuperscript{22} Quod Gorgones meretrices, crinitæ ut serpentes, unumque oculum habentes, convertebant aspicientes in lapides, fabula est. Sed fuerunt tres sorores unius pulchritu-
whan men wente into pat hous, þey were so i-brigedæ† þat þey couple nouȝt come out. Also of Centaures, pat were i-medled of mankynde and of hors kynde. Also of Cerberus þe bound of helle, þat þadde þre heedes. Also of Frixus and his suster Elle, þat were i-bore of a wether by þe ayer and flǐþæ as foules. Also of Gorgon þe hore,þ pat selie was i-hered wip adдрес and torked in to stones men þat byhelde her. Also of Bellifront, þat he was i-bore of a slyenge hors wip þeþeres and wynges; his hors heet Pegasus. Also of Amphion, þat he plesed stones, and drew hem to hym wip swettesse of his har-pyne. Also of Dedalus þe carpunter and his sone Icarus, þat made hem wynges of þeþeres and flǐþe as foules. Also of Anteus; hym slow¾ Hercules. Anteus was þe sone of þe erþe þat þem þe hel down, he roos anon aþen in wel more streŋþe. Isidorus, libro 11º. Also Geryon, þe geant kynge of Speyne, þat was i-slawe of Hercules, and was deseecued in þre likinesses and schappes, it is a fable. For þere were þre breþeren so wel acordynge to gedres þat it semed þat þey hadde oon soule, oon witte, and oon wil. Also þe hoores æ† Gorgones, i-hered as serpentes, hadde oon yþe, and torked in to stones men þat byhelde hem, it is a fable. But þere were þre sustres

lomus, that corne beengo skarse, he was brouȝhte in to the MS. Harl. 2261. aier with brydde, which þe slyenge brouȝhte corners to londes hauenge necessite þer of. Also that Cerberus scholde be a dogge of helle. Also that Frixus and Elle hys sustyr cariede with a weder flye. Also that the ylle disposede woman, Gorgones by name, chaungede men beholdenge here into stones. Also of Bellofrons, þat he was cariede with an horse slyenge with wynges, þe horse of whom was callede Pegasus. Also of Amphion, þat he attracete stones to hym throu the swettenesse of an harpe. Also of Dedalus, and Icarus þis sone, þat they did flye. Also that Anteus was the sone of the erthe, whom Hercules did sle, in þat he fallenge and tawchenge þe erthe was more stronge when he did ariye. Isidorus, libro undecimo. Also hit is but a fable þat Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of Speyne, slyne by Hercules, was of þre similitudes. For þere were þre breþer of suche concorde þat þei were alle as of oon sawle. That the commune women, Gorgones by þeir names, torked men beholdenge them in to stones, is but a fable. But there were iij sustyras as of oon pul-

---

1 bessled, Cx. 2 of þem om. MS. 3 flewen, Cx. 4 strompet, Cx. 5 þis om. MS. 6 strompettes, Cx.
Sirenes meretrices fuerunt.

Quid de Scylla judicandum;

et de Hydra.

dinis, quasi unius oculi; 1 quae spectatores suos, ac si 2 lapides essent, obstupefaciabant. Item quod fingunt 3 tres Sirenes 4 fuisset ex parte virgines et ex parte volucres, habentes alas et ungulas; quarum una voce, altera tuba, 5 tertia lyra canebat, quae navigantes trahebant ad naufragia, 6 fabula est. Sed fuerunt meretrices, quae quia adherentes sibi 7 ducabant ad in-opiam, ideo naufragium ingerere dicuntur. 8 Item quod fingunt Scyllam 9 fuisset 10 feminam succinetam capitis caninis cum latratibus magnis, hoc dicitur 11 propter fretum 12 maris Siculi, ubi 13 navigantes, verticibus 14 concurrentium undarum 15 exterriti, undas latrare putabant. 16 Sic fingunt Hydram serpem cum novem capitis, ita 17 quod uno abscisso tria succrescant. 18

Constat Hydram fuisset locum quendam aquas evom mentem, 19 ubi uno meatu clauso multi erumpabant; quod videns 20 Herculem locum exussit, 21 et sic meatus

---

1 quasi unius oculi] om. C.D.
2 ac si] velut, C.D.
3 finguntur, C.D.
4 Sirenes] om. E.; before fingunt in C.D.
5 tibia, A.C.D.
6 naufragium, C.D.
7 sibi] om. B.
8 So A. B. C. D.; ingererebant, (ingerere being followed by bant in another hand) E.; perhaps for ingerere dicebant.
9 Cilium, B.
10 esse, C.D.
11 fit, C.D.
12 sevictum, B. (i.e. sevictum.)
13 ubi] in quo, C.D.
14 virutibus, C.D.
15 aquarum, C.D.
16 estimant, C.D.
17 ita] om. C.D.
18 succrescent, C.D.
19 vomenent, B.
20 quod videns] quem, B.
21 excussit, B.
all of oon fairness; men pat byhelde hem [pe] ¹ made hem as stille and as stedfast as stones. Also pe þre Sirenes, þat were half maydens, half foules, and hadde wynges and clawes ² as haukes; and oon of hem songe, þat opere pipede, and þe priddes harpede, and drow ³ to hemward schipmen þat seilled in þe see in to shipbruche; ⁴ it is a fable. But þere were þre hoores ⁴ þat brouȝte men þat vsede hem in to meschief; and perfore me seide þat þey brouȝte hem to shipbreche. Also [þat] ⁴ me fyneph þat Scylla ⁶ was a womman byelipped aboute wip hedes of houndes and wip grete berkynges of houndes, þat is i-seide for þe ⁷ wavnes of þe ⁸ see Siculus, þat flascheþ and waschep vpon þe þree þat hadde Scylla, makeþ suche manere noyse þat men þat seilleþ þerby beþ þose aferd þat þey weneþ þat þe wawes berkeþ þat waschep on þat rokke. ¹⁰ So þey fyneph þat þe serpente Ýdra vip ¹¹ nyne hedes; and if oon hede were i-smyte of, þanne grewe vp þre for þat oon. Þe sopþ tale is þat Ýdra was somtyme a place þat wonderliche and perilous-liche caste vp water; and ³if oo water wye were i-stopped, þe water brak vp in meny places and weyes. Hercules seigh þat, and destroyed the swolle and closede alle þe weies; þer-

François, MS. Harl. 2261.

¹ Added from b. and Cx.; γ has and.
² talentes, Cx.
³ So a. and Cx. (shipvereke); þe shippe to berke, MS.
⁴ So a. and Cx.; hores, MS.
⁵ Added from a. b. γ. and Cx.
⁶ Scilla, MS., and Silla below.
⁷ þe] om. MS.
⁸ þat, a. b. γ. and Cx.
⁹ a)] that, a. b. γ. and Cx.
¹⁰ So a. and Cx.; rokkes, MS.
¹¹ Probably we should read was vij, or if not, cancel þat.
illos \(^1\) clausit; \(^2\) unde et Hydram serpente m extinxisse fingitur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo.* \(^3\) Fabulae dicuntur a fando, non quia sunt \(^4\) res factae, sed loquendo fictae; quas poetae primo induxerunt tripli di causa. Aut enim causa delectandi, quales sunt apud Plautum et Terentium, et illae quae vulgo narrantur; aut etiam ad naturam rerum velandam \(^5\) seu exornandam, \(^6\) ut quod Vulcanus sit claudus, quia per naturam nunquam rectus est ignis; et quod Chimæra, hominis ætatem exprimens, sit bestia \(^7\) triformis; cujus prima pars, adolescentia, est ferox, ut leo; secunda, juventus, acute videt, ut caprea, seu per luxuriam fervida fetet, \(^8\) ut capra; tertia, senectus, casibus est inflexus, ut \(^9\) draco. Sic fabula Hippocentauri, \(^10\) ex homine et equo mixti, humanæ vitæ velocitatem exprimit. Tertio, fabulae coninguntur ad mores componentibus; ut cum res finguntur ad se loquentes, ut per narrationem fictam ad quod agitur vera significatio referatur; ut apud Horatium de mure et mustela, apud ÀEsopum \(^11\) et Avianum de vulpe et lupo, et in libro

---

\(^1\) ilter\] om. C.D.
\(^2\) clausit\] om. E.
\(^3\) capitulo 27\(\text{a}\), C.; 32, D.; capitulo 31, A.B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 40.
\(^4\) sunt\] om. D.
\(^5\) velando, B.
\(^6\) exornandum, B.
\(^7\) et, ins. C. (not D.)
\(^8\) fervida fetet\] feitis, D.
\(^9\) ut caprea . . . inflexus ut\] om. E.
\(^10\) hippocentauri, MSS.
\(^11\) Variousy corrupted in MSS.
fore me feyned\textsuperscript{1} pat he destroyed Ydra pe serpent. \textit{Isidorus, libro primo, capitolo 13\textsuperscript{o}}. Fables beep i-seide of \textit{fando}, pat is spekyenge; nouzt for pei bep soop indele, but i-feyned in spekyenge. Poetes brou\textsuperscript{2}t in fables for pre skiles; for likynge of\textsuperscript{2} talkynge and of sayre spekinge; suche beep pe fables [of Plantus and of Terentius and fables]\textsuperscript{3} pat beep comoun-liche i-tolde. Also for helynge and hi\textsuperscript{4}tinge\textsuperscript{4} of kynde; so me seip pat Vulcana\textsuperscript{5} haltep, for\textsuperscript{6} pe fuyre is neure euene; Vulcana is i-feyned god of fuyr. So Chimera is i-feyned a beest of pre manere schappe and kynde, and bytokenep pe ages of mankynde; pe firste 3owpe of manhede\textsuperscript{7} is cruel as a lyoun; pe secounde age of manhode is scharp of si\textsuperscript{8}t as a goot, oher stynkep by leccerie as a goot; pe prilde age is elde and bowepe as a dragoun, and wastep alle away. And so pe fable of Ypocentaurus,\textsuperscript{8} pat was feyned i-medled of hors kynde and of mankynde, bytokenep pe swift passyng of manis lyf. Also fables beep i-feyned for derke and faire manere speking of pewes; as whan me feynepe pat pinges pat konnepe no resoun spekepe hem self, pat by pe tale pat is i-feyned pe soop by tokenyngpe may be remenep [to pat]\textsuperscript{9} pat is soperliche i-do\textsuperscript{10} in dede. So Oras\textsuperscript{10} spekep of pe Mous and pe Wesel, and Esopus and Avenet of pe Fox and of pe Wolf, and in libro Iudicium

\textit{MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. II.} 371

\textit{REVISA.}

\begin{align*}
\text{did slee Idra the serpente. \textit{Isidorus, libro primo, capitolo tricesimo primo}}. \text{Hit is to be attended that poets in-}
duced fables for iij, especialle causes. Oon was for cause of 
pleasure and delectacion, as Plautus\textsuperscript{11} and Terentius do 
reherse, and also the fables that be rehersed of commune 
peple. An other cause was for nature to be couerede and 
onorneede that as a figurmente callede chimera, expressenge 
The age of a man, scholde be of a triplicate nature. The 
firste parte of whom, that is adolescency, is cruelle as a 
lyon. The secunde is youthe, scharpe of si\textsuperscript{8}hte, or elles 
ille sauorengye like to a goote. The thrydde is age, de-
clynenge to feblenesse like to a dragon. Therefore hit 
may be schewed that fables were ordeinede to the com-
posicion and cause of vertuous exercise, that thane 
thynges be feynede the significacion of theymne is profit-
able, as in Oratius of the mowe and wesylle, in Ysoppe 
and Arrian of the fox and of the wulf pe, and Demosthenes\textsuperscript{12}
\end{align*}

\begin{footnotes}
\begin{enumerate}
\item feynep, a. \beta. \gamma.
\item So a. \beta. \gamma. Cx.; and, MS.
\item Added from a. \beta. \gamma. and Cx.
\item helthe and enhauing, Cx.
\item Vicanus, MS., here and below.
\item for me seip, MS., a. (not \beta. \gamma.)
\item manhod, a.
\item Read Hippocentaurus, but the barbarous form indicates the false derivation; cf. Ypocras, Ypoluta, \&c.
\item Added from a. \beta. \gamma. Cx.
\item Orace, Cx.
\item Plauctus, or Plautius, Harl. MS., and so below.
\item Demostines, Harl. MS.
\end{enumerate}
\end{footnotes}
Judicium de lignis Libani, et apud Demosthenem de lupis et canibus ad liberationem oratorum confictis.  

Ranulphus. Et hoc est quod dicit Augustinus libro De Mendacio: "Fabulae," inquit, "licet veritatem in se "non habeant, faciunt tamen in re significata."  

Augustinus, libro tertio, capitulo tertio. Auctoritate etiam Romana firmatum est quod Æneas ex matre dea Venere sit genitus; quod Romulus ex patre deo Marte sit genitus. Sed ego non credo, sicut nec Varro Romanus historiographus doctus credidit; dicens latenter utile esse civibus, ut viri fortes, etiam si falsum sit, se credant ex diis progenitos, ut eo modo animus humanus, velut divinae stirpis fiduciam gerens, res majores aggradiendas praemunat audacios, agat vehementius, consummet felicius. Alexander in Mythol. Fabularum, teste Macrobio super somnium Scipionis, aliae causa delectationis confinguntur, quales sunt comediae Menandri et Terentii, et hæ ad philosophos non pertinent. Aliae vero utilitatis causa ad exhortationem confinguntur, in quibus aut ipsa materia aut narr-
of þe treet of Libanus; and so speke Demosthenes of wulfes
and houndes i-feyned for þe delueraunce of þe advoketes and
ditoures.\(^2\) And þat is þat Seynt Austyn seip in his book
De Mendacio. Fables, as seip Seynt Austyn, þey have no
soñenesse in ham self, no þeþe þey makeþ soñenesse in ping þat
þei\(^3\) betokene.\(^4\) Augustinus, libro 3\(^6\), capitulo 3\(^6\). By auctorite
of þe Romanes it was affermed þat þe goddes Venus was Enyas
his moder, and þat god Mars was Romulus his fader. But I
trowe not so; Varro\(^5\) trowe þat nouȝt, þe wriþere of stories of
Rome, þat seip priueliche, it were profitable to cîteçyns þat
stronge men and orpeþe trowe\(^6\) þat þey ben i-gete\(^7\) of goddes,
þey\(^2\) it be false; þat in þat manere þe men hertes schulde be
þe boldere, and haue trust in þe lynage\(^8\) of goddes, and aunþre
hem to þe grettere dedes, and doon\(^10\) gret þe dedes wiþ þe more
boldenesse and myȝt in trist of gracious ende by cause þat þey
holdeþ hem self of þe kynde of goddes.\(^11\) Alexander in Mytho-
logia. Macrobius super somnium Scipionis seip þat som fables
beþ i-feyned by cause of likynge; suche beþ of Menander and
Terentius, and suche longeþ nouȝt to philosophes. And som
fables beþ i-feyned by cause of profiþi in excitynge and con-
forte; in þe whiche fables þe matiere, þat me spekeþ of, oper þe

\(^1\) Demosthenes, MSS.
\(^2\) lavers, Cx.
\(^3\) hit, a.; a., \(\gamma\).
\(^4\) neþeþes they represente and en-
duce to manyx mynde soñthesse that
they betokene and signýfe, Cx.
\(^5\) So Cx.; Farro, MS.
\(^6\) trowed, Cx.
\(^7\) were bigeten, Cx.
\(^8\) lynage, Cx.
\(^9\) aventure, Cx.
\(^10\) do, a, \(\beta\), \(\gamma\), and Cx.
\(^11\) Clause slightly varied in Cx.
tionis ordo de re ficta et fictae, (hoc est falsum per falsum) narratur, ut patet in fabulis Æsopi et Aviani. Et nec istae ad philosophos spectant. Aut etiam res vera per ficta narratur, quales sunt fictitiae Hesiodi et Orphei de deorum actu et progenie; et hujusmodi non est fabula sed fabulosa narratio, quae si fiat per obscena, turpia, vel monstruosa, non spectat ad philosophos nec ad theologos; sed illa quae narratur per pia et honesta ad philosophos pertinet. Sic Plato finxit quendem militem Er nomine surrexisse a mortuis, et multa de animæ immortalitate narrasse; sic finxit Tullius Seipionem somniasse de animæ immortalitate. Ranulphus. Et Boethius finxit Philosophiam in specie puellæ sibi apparuisse. His modis poterit theologus uti temperate, excepto penultimo modo. Petrus. Tempore Ayoth Apollo ille filius Latonae secundum traditionem Graecorum, artem medicinæ invenit, et lyram condidit. Ranulphus. Veruntamen, secundum Isidorum libro tertio Etym., Mercurius postmodum sub diebus Ge-

1 aut, B. 10 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
2 et, ins. B. 11 sibris] om. C.D.
3 quando, ins. B. 12 Omnibus, ins. C.D.
4 spectant . . . philosophos] om. C.D. 13 predictos, ins. C.D.
5 So A.; hujus, E. 14 ultimo, B.
6 Eer, B. 15 Petrus] om. C.D.
7 a mortuis] om. B. 16 Mercurius, ins. C.D.
8 sicut, C. (not D.) 17 Ranulphus] om. C.D.
9 sic . . . immortalitate] om. B. 18 tempore, C.D.
ordre of tellynge of pe ping pat is i-feyned is feynyngliche
i-tolde; pat is to menynge, oo fals is tolde by a noiper false.
So it spake in Esopus his fables and in Auian his fables also;
and pese fables longep nouȝt to philosofres.1 Also somtyne
a sop sawe is i-tolde by a feynyng2 tale; and soche were pe
feynynges of Hesiodus3 and of Orpheus, when he spekep4 of
dyners dedes and kynde of goodes;5 and such a tale is no fable,
but a tale liche a fable. And if suche a tale is i-tolde by lik-
nesse of foule ping and barlotrie, þan it longep nouȝt to phi-
losofres [neper to dyynes; but siche as þep tolde by liknesse
of feirnesse and of honeste perteynep to philosophris].6 So
Plato feynede þat a knyȝt, þat heet Ær, aros from7 dep to
lyue, and tolde meny pinges of pe euerlastyng lyf of manis
soule. B. And Boys8 feynede þat Philosofye appere to hym in
þe lyknesse of a mayde; in þis manere may a denyn9 vse
ensamples manerliche in his talkyng and spekyngue. Petru.s. In Ayoth his tyme þe lattre Apollo,10 þat was Latona
his11 sone, as þe Grees tellep, fond vp þe art of phisik and made
harpe.12 B. Lyphes Isidorus, libro 3o, Ethym., scip þat Mercu-

the ordre of the narracion of the thyng y-feyned, that
is feynede falsely, and telledy by a fals thyng; and these
fables perteyne not to a philosophre; as the fables of Isope
and Auian. Other elles a trewe thyng is rehersede by a
feynede thyngyn, as the seyenges of Esiodus and of Orpheus
of the acte and progeny of goddes; and that is not a
fable, but a fabulous narracion; whiche perteyne not to
philosophres and to diuines. But fables whiche be re-
hersed be meke thynges and honeste, as Plato feynede a
knyȝhte, Ær by name, to haue risen from dethe, and to
haue schewedye mony thynges of the immortalitie of
the sawle. Soe in lyke wise Tollius feynede Scipio to haue
dreamede of the immortalite of the sawle. B. Also Boe-
tius, the grete clerke, feynede philosophy to haue apperede
to hym. A diuynye may vse these maneres, the laste
maner excepthe but oon. Petru.s. The latere Apollo, son
of Latona, after the wryteng of men of Grewe, founde
the arte of medicines, and made an harpe, in the tyme of
Aioth. B. And, after Isidorus, Ethymol., libro 3o, that man

1 Clause varied in Cx.
2 feyned, Cx.
3 Hesiodus, MS.
4 they spake, Cx.
5 Goddes, Cx.; the more usual
      orm in MS. also.
6 Added from B. γ.
7 son, MS.
8 Boece, B. Cx.
9 dyynes, Cx.
10 Apollo, MSS.
11 Latonaes, Cx.; both forms are
      instructive.
12 harpes, Cx.
deonis ad lyram sic\(^1\) inventam septem chordas addidit, et in\(^2\) nervos sonum strinxit in hunc modum:
Cum Nilus post suam inundationem regrederetur in\(^3\) proprios meatus, variaque in campis animalia reliquisset\(^4\) mortua, relictis est et\(^5\) testudo; qua\(^6\) putrefacta nervi extendebantur infra corium\(^7\) conchae, qui ad tenuem auram sonum\(^8\) reddabant. Quod comperiens Mercurius ad ejus similitudinem\(^9\) lyram condidit, et\(^10\) Orpheo citharædo tradidit. Petrus. Illis etiam temporibus præfatus Mercurius syringas\(^11\) invenit, quæ sunt musica instrumenta de fistulis seu calamis composita; quorum nomen tractatum\(^12\) est\(^13\) a Syringe\(^14\) uxore Cadmi,\(^15\) quæ propter zelum harmoniae a viro suo recessit.\(^16\) Incertum est autem quis fuit iste Mercurius, an Hermes, an Trimegistus philosophus, an Mercurius ille major;\(^17\) nam\(^18\) apud Josephum tres leguntur Mercurii. Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo viij.\(^19\) Eo

---

\(^{1}\) sic] om. B.
\(^{2}\) in\]] om. B.
\(^{3}\) ad, C.D.
\(^{4}\) relictæ essent, C.; relictæ fuisse- sent, D.
\(^{5}\) etiam] om. B.; etiam et, D.
\(^{6}\) quæ, B.; de qua, A.
\(^{7}\) So D.E.; cornu, A.B., which is perhaps right.
\(^{8}\) sibilum, A.B.C.D.
\(^{9}\) speciem, C.D.
\(^{10}\) et\]] om. E.
\(^{11}\) seringas, B.
\(^{12}\) tractatum, B.
\(^{13}\) trahitur, C.D.
\(^{14}\) Seringa, B.; Siringa, A.D.E.
\(^{15}\) Cadene, B.
\(^{16}\) recesserat, C.D.
\(^{17}\) minor, C.D.
\(^{18}\) nam . . . Mercurii] qui fuit nepos majoris Mercurii apud Josephum, C.D.
\(^{19}\) capitulo viij\]] om. B.C.D. The true reference is lib. v. c. 39.
Curious afterward in Gedeon his tyme putte seene strenges to pe harpe, pat was to fore honde i-founde; and pey putte to pe strenges and streyned hem in pis manere. Pe ryuer Nilus had be vppe and byfolwe pe lond and was a falle into pe chanel azen, pan lay many beestes dede on pe feeldes, and among opere lay a dede snayle. Whan pis snayl was i-roted, pe senewes were i-streyned with ynne pe skyn of pe snayles hous, and sownede as pe wynde blewde perynne esifile and softe-liche, Dan Mercurius took hede perto and made an harpe to pe liknesse perof, and took hit to Orpheus pe harpour. 

Mercurius did add to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede peim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the floenage of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diverse bestes in the feildes, a schelle fische was lefte also, which putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the coveringe of that fische, whiche zafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and take hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. 

Mercurius did add to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede peim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the floenage of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diverse bestes in the feildes, a schelle fische was lefte also, which putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the coveringe of that fische, whiche zafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and take hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. 

Mercurius did add to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede peim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the floenage of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diverse bestes in the feildes, a schelle fische was lefte also, which putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the coveringe of that fische, whiche zafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and take hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. 

The seide Mercurius founde in that tyme siringas, whiche be musicalle instrumentes made of pipes other reedes, whiche name was taken of Siringa, wife to Cadmus, whiche departede from here housebonde for the luffe of armoy. But hit is not hade in certitude what Mercury this was, wheder hit was Hermes, other Trimegistus the philosopher, other elles grete Mercurius. For Josephus rehersethe that there were thre nowble men cal- lede by that name Mercurius. Isidorus, Ethym., libro sexto;
quoque 1 tempore chorus in Grecia repertus est. 2
Petrus, vj°. 3 Quod quidem instrumentum Strabu 4
dicit esse pellem cum duabus eicitis, per quarum 5
alteram inspiratur 6 et 7 per 8 alteram 9 sonus redditur.

CAP. XIX.

De Delbora, et de ultimis Argivorum, et de primis
Laurentinorum regibus. 10

Augustinus de Civitate, libro xvij°, capitulo xij°. 11
Delbora prophetissa de tribu Ephraim simul cum
Barak de tribu Neptalim, connumeratis viginti annis
quibus Jabin 12 rex Chanaan afflxit 13 Israel, rexit
populum 14 quadraginta annis. In cuius diebus reges
Argivorum defecerunt, qui quingentis quadraginta annis
regnaverunt a primo 15 Inacho usque ad tempora Pe-
lopis primi Peloponnesium regis. Et tunc translatum
est regnum ad 16 Mycenas. 17 Eo 18 tempore cepit reg-
num Laurentinorum in Italia, ubi post mortem Jani
et Saturni, qui diu ibidem regnaverant, Picus filius
Saturni 19 cepit regnare. Augustinus de Civitate, libro
octavodecimo, capitulo tertio decimo. Circa illud tempus
obit Dionysus, 20 qui et Liber pater dicitur, qui ali-

1 etiam, C.D.
2 adiunctus est, C.D.
3 ejus om. A.D.
4 So A.B.C.D. ; Stabus, E.
5 aquarum, B.
6 inspirator, B.
7 et] om. C.D.
8 per] om. B.
9 alien, C.D.
10 No title in MSS.
11 A.B.C.D. omit reference. It should be lib. xviii. c. 15.
12 Jubia, A.D.
13 oppressit, C.D.
14 rexit populum] So A.D. ; om. E. ; regens populum Israel, B.
15 scilicet, ins. B.C.D.
16 So A.B., om. E. ; usque ad, C. ; usque, D.
17 Mecenas, A.B. ; Micenas, D.
18 quoque, ins. C.D.
19 jam, ins. D.
20 Dionysius, MSS. and Harl. MS. as usual.
was i-founde vp an instrument of musyk pat hatte chorus. Trevisa.

Petrus. Strabuc scelp pat pat instrument is a skynne\(^1\) wip twoe pipes; by oon pipe pe ayer goop yn, and by pe ooper pe soun goop out.

**Capitulum nonum decimum.**

Augustinus, de Civitate, libro 18\(^o\), capitulo 13\(^o\). Delbora pat woman was a prophetes of the lynage of Effraym. Pis Delbora wip Barach of pe lynage of Neptalym rulede pe peple of Israel fourty þere, for to rekene twenty þere in þe whiche Iabyn kyng of Canaan pursued Israel. In hir tyme kynges of Argyues faillede þat hadde i-regned fyue hundred þere and fourty, þat was from þe firste Inachus to þe firste Pelops his tyme, kyng of þe Peloponenses; and panne þe kyngdom tornde to þe Mecenes.\(^2\) Pat tyme bygan þe kyngdom of Laurentynes in Italy. After þe deth of Ianus and Saturnus þat hadde longe i-regned þere, þere regned Picus Saturnus his sone. Augustinus de Civitate, ubi supra. Aboute þat tyme deyde Denys þat heet also Liber Pater, þat werred in

Petrus. A instrumente callede chorus, other a chore, was MS. Harl. founde in Greece, of fewe cordes and stryuges, which is callede nowe a crowthe or a crowde.

**Capitulum decimum nonum.**

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo tertio. The xx\(^{11}\) yere of Barach annumerate, which was of the tribe of Neptalym, in whom Iabyn, kyng of Canaan, trowblede þe peple of Israel, Delbora, the prophetisse of the tribe of Effraym, governede the peple of Israel x\(^{16}\) yere. In the dayes of whom the kynges of men callede Argyues began to fayle, whiche reignede v\(^e\). and x\(^{14}\) yere from Inachus to Pelopis firste kyngye of men of Peloponense; and then the realme of Argynes was translate to Micanas. In whiche tyme the realme of Laurentines began in Ytaly, where Picus the son of Saturnus began to reigne after the dethe of his fader and of Ianus, whiche reignede there longe. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo tertio decimo. Dionysus other Liber pater diede abowte thys tyme, whiche þiffenge batelle to

---

\(^{1}\) is a skynne\] om. Cx.  
\(^{2}\) So a. and Cx.; Macenes, MS.
quando Indiam debellans habuit foeminas cum viris mixtatas in suo exercitu; tandem tamen devincebatur a Perseo. Eius sepulchrum aureum adhuc ostenditur in Thessalia juxta Apollinem Delphicum in Parnasso. Mida rex dives sub hoc tempore regnavit in Phrygia, de quo poetae multa confixerunt, sicut patet in Mythologia et Fulgentii et Alexandri. Et Ilium ab Ilo filio Apollinis condita est in Troja.

CAP. XX.

De Gedeon, Minoe, et Daedalo.


---

1 *vincitutur*, C.D., which transpose other words.
2 *sepulchrum* om. B.
3 *monte*, ins. C.D.
4 *Midas*, C. (not D.)
5 *et* om. A.
6 *de . . . Alexandri* om. C.D.
7 *Ilio*, MSS.

---

8 *in* om. E.
9 *annumeratis*, C.D.
10 *populum* om. B.
11 *in . . . anno* om. C.D.
12 *Petrus, quarto* om. C.D.; *quarto*, om. A.B.
13 *Petrus*, ins. C.D.
14 *regis Athenarum* om. C.D.
Inde, and hadde in his oost men and wommen i-medled to Trevisa.

**Capitulum vicesimum.**

Gedeon, pat heet Iherobal, was ledere of Israel fourty 3ere, forto rekene 3 e3te 3ere 4at Israel servede Midianites and Amalachites. Iosephus seip 4at pe citee Tyrus was i-bulde in Gedeon his tyme, aboute an4 two hundred 3ere and fourty to fore Salomon his temple. Petrus. Minos, kyng of Creta, Iupiter his sone, occupied pe see pat [tyme and 3af lawe to pe men of Creta. Pat tyme] 4 pe strong man Theseus, Egeus pe kynges sone of Athene, slow2 Minotaurus in pe tornemente. Perfore men of Ynde, hade women mixte with men in his hoste. MS. Harl. 2261. But at the laste he was deuicte of Perseus, whose sepulcre of golde is schewed 3itte in Thessalia, nye to Apollo Delphicus in mount Parnassus. Mida, the riche kyng, reignede abowte this tyme in Frigia, of whom poetes feynede mony thynges, as hit is schewede in Methologe of Fulgentius and of Alexander. And also a cite callede Ilium was edisfede and made in Troy by Ilus the son of Apollo.

**Capitulum vicesimum.**

The viij. yere commenrate in whom the peple of Israel servede the Madianites, Gedeon other Iherobal gournede the peple of Israel xl1 yere. In the thyme of whom, after Iosephus, that cite callede Tirus was made, abowte ee. and xl1 yere afore the makenge of the temple of Salomon. Petrus. Minos kyng of Creta, son of Iupiter, obteyned that tyme the see, and 3afe lawe to men of Creta. In whiche tyme Theseus, the son of Egeus, kyng of Athenes, a myghty man, whiche ouercome a beste.
interemit; quam ob causam Athenienses qui prius tributarii fuerant a praestatione vectigalis liberabantur.\(^1\) Fuit autem Minotaurus vir quidam inhumanus multum valens in lucta palæstræ. Et etiam fuit carnisfex regis Minois; qui ideo sic dictus est, quasi Minois\(^3\) taurus, id est, Carnifex. Circa illud\(^4\) tempus Theseus Helenam rapuit, quam rursus fratres sui Castor et Pollux reduxerunt, capta matre\(^5\) Theseoque peregre profugato.\(^6\)

Daedalus. Eo quoque\(^7\) tempore Dædalus\(^8\) fertur floriisse. Hic fecit aves metallinas volare artificioso spiritu incluso. Dicitur etiam fecisse simulacra sese moventes. Primus enim omnium pedes statuarum a se invicem divisit,\(^9\) cum\(^10\) caeteri eos conjungerent.\(^11\) Isidorus,\(^12\) libro nono.\(^13\) Hic Dædalus habuit nepotem, Perdicem nomine, quem erudiendum susceperat; qui factus ingeniösus, dum materiæ dividendiæ compendiun quæreret, spinam piscis imitatus\(^14\) laminam ferri exasperavit, quam\(^15\) dentium\(^16\) mordacitate armavit, quam modo\(^17\) serram\(^18\) nominamus. Hic quoque puer excogitavit primus usum circini; quamobrem Dædalus magister suus invidia

---

\(^1\) So B.; liberantur, A.D.E.
\(^2\) Transposed in C.D.
\(^3\) Minois, A.E. (not D.); but Minos or Minois above.
\(^4\) idem, C.D.
\(^5\) Thesi, ins. A.C.D.
\(^6\) profecto, C.D.
\(^7\) coque, C.D.
\(^8\) faber, ins. C.D.
\(^9\) separavit, C.D.
\(^10\) tamen, ins. C.D.
\(^11\) conjunctos eos fuerent, C.D.
\(^12\) Petrus, B.
\(^13\) 19°., A. correctly. See lib. xix. c. 19.
\(^14\) imitando, B.
\(^15\) quam quia, E.
\(^16\) dentium] om. B.
\(^17\) et, C.D.
\(^18\) serram, A.D.
men of Athene pat were tributarii to forhonde1 were quyted and
free of al tribute. Minotaurus was a grete man and huge,
mystry and strong, and a wi[t] wrastlere,2 and was kyng Minois
his bocher. Perfore he was i-cleped as it were Minois taurus,
pat is a bocher. Aboute pat tyme Theseus rauesched Eleyne3
and here tweye brepered Castor and Pollux fette hir, and brought
hir a3en, and took Theseus moder and chasede Theseus out of
contray. Also me seip pat Dedalus was pat tyme in his floures.
Dedalus made briddes4 of metal by craft of5 spirit en-
closed6 for to flece aboute. Me seip also pat he made ymages
pat mened hem self. He was þe firste pat departede feet of
ymages atwyynge; flor oper men-joyned hem to gidres. Isido-
rus, libro nono.7 Pat Dedalus hadde a newv pat heet Perdix,7
and fæge hym to his lore. Pat Perdix wax soif and connyng
of craft, and bypou3t hym8 for to haue som spedful manere
cleuyng of tyme, and took a plate of ieren, and fyled it, and
made it i-toped9 as a rugge10 boon of a fische, and þanne it was
a sawe. Also pis childe bypou3t hym and made þe firste com-
pas, and wro3t perwip. Perfore his mayster Dedalus took
greet envie to þe childe, and prewe hym downe of an hi3e toure,
ductus precipitavit eum de quadam arce.\(^1\) Inde\(^2\) Dædalus cum Icaro filio suo apud Cretam fugiens de- venit Siciliam; ubi et\(^3\) primo fecit labyrinthum.\(^4\) Petrus, sexto.\(^5\) Idecirco propter celerem\(^6\) et investiga- bilem fugam ejus post homicidium perpetratum fingitur pennis volasse.\(^7\) Isidorus libro quintodecimo. Laby- rinthus\(^8\) est edificio quoddam ex perplexis parietibus compositum, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; quo siquis sine glomere fili ingredetur, exitum facile\(^9\) non reperiret. Aperientibusque\(^10\) in ea fores tonitus terribilis audiebatur. Hugutio, capitulo Labyrinthus. Descenditur\(^11\) quasi gradibus centum; transitus ibi sunt quasi innumeris\(^12\) per tenebras. Et sunt quatuor tales domus in orbe:\(^13\) una\(^14\) Ægyptia,\(^15\) secunda Cretica,\(^16\) tertia in Lemno\(^17\) insula, quarta in Italia. Omnes quidem ita constructae\(^18\) ut vix per secula dissolvi\(^19\) quaeant. Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.\(^20\)

\(^1\) arce\] om. B.

\(^2\) Unde, C. (not D.)

\(^3\) et\] om. B.

\(^4\) Laberintum, MSS. Variousy written below.

\(^5\) sexto\] om. A.B.D.

\(^6\) So A.B.; celebrem, E.

\(^7\) The two preceding sentences are varied and transposed in C.D.

\(^8\) Laberintum, C.D.

\(^9\) innumeri\] om. C.D.

\(^10\) apparentibusque, B.; a parietibus quaer, C. (not D.)

\(^11\) in illo, ins. C.D.

\(^12\) centum . . . innumeris\] innumeris, C.D.

\(^13\) in orbe\] om. C.D.

\(^14\) una, &c.] unus, &c., all masculine in MSS. It is harsh to understand labyrinthus; and Higden could hardly intend domus to be masculine. (See vol. I. p. 216, &c.)

\(^15\) apud Ægyptios, B.

\(^16\) in Creta, B.

\(^17\) Lempe, B.

\(^18\) constructi, MSS.

\(^19\) solvi, B.

\(^20\) 2540, C. (not D.)

\(^21\) Erigonis, MSS., and so below.

\(^22\) ab\] om. A.
and brak his nekke. Wherefore Dedalus wip his son Icarus 1 at Creta flye and come in to Sicilia,2 and pere he made first laborinthus,3 Petrus. For Dedalus fly away so swiftilche after pe manslaus,4 me feynep pat he fluy flyewynes as a bryd by pe ayer. Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. Laborinthus is a manere buldyne wonderliche i-bulde wip daunfers 5 walles; perynne Minotaurus was i-closed. 2if eny man wente pider yn wip oute a clewe of prede, it were ful harde to fynde a way out. Pey pat oponed pe zates schulde here dredful pondringe. Hugutio, capitulo Labor. Me goop adoun [as hit were] 6 by an hundred greees; 7 pere beep also in derkenesse wonder meny dyuers wyndynges and tornynges; and suche soure beep in pis worlde of suche hous; 8 oon in Egipt, anoer in Creta, pe priddle in pe ylond Lemno,9 and pe ferpe in Italy; and beep so i-made pat vneepe pey mowe be destroyed, while pe worlde durep. Hugutio, capitulo Cilceo. Whanne pere fefel a pestilence among men of Athene 10 for pe deth of Icarus and his douther Erigon, and maydens of Athene were compeled as it were to sneares and greues; 1ane pei hadde lus fleeenge with Icarus 1 his son to that yle calde Creta, MS. Harl. 2261. come afterwarde to Sicilia,2 and made a mase pere firste. Petrus. Whom men feyne to haue flyede, for the swyfte flye of hym after that he hade doen that offense. Isidorus, libro quintodecimo. A turnege, other elles a mase, is a thynge made with mony turnenges, and a man entrenge in to hit with owte a clewe of threde, can not comme furthe from hit ageyne lihtely, and also a thunbre dothe appere to men openenge the durres of hit. Hugutio, capitulo Labor. To whom men goe downe as by a c. grees, the weies per be as innumerable by derkenesse, and per be iij. suche places in the worlde; oon is in Egipt, an other is in Creta, the thrydde is in the yle calde Lemno,9 the iijthe is in Italy; whiche be made soe that thei can not be destroyede vn to the ende of the worlde. Hugutio, capitulo Cilceo. When men of Athenes labored in pe pestilence for the deth of Icarus, and of Erigon his douther, and virgynes were compellede as vn to hongenge, hit was answerede to theyme by Apollo Del-

1 Ycarus, MSS., and so below.
2 Sicilia, MSS.; Sicilia, Harl. MS.
3 Cx. adds, otherwise callyd a mase.
4 after he had slayn his newe, Cx.
5 daunfers, Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
7 grees or steppes, Cx.
8 houses, Cx.
9 Lemno, MS. Similarly Harl. MS.
10 MS. has some words repeated.
Pestis remedium. Delphico illum pestem sedari non posse nisi Icari et Erigones cadavera requiritur. Quae cum diu quiesita reperiri non possent, ad ostendendum devotionem quam ad inquirendum habuerant, ut in alio elemento viderentur quærere quod in terra reperire non possent, Athenienses suspendebant funes in aëre, ad quos homines innexi huc et illuc agitabantur, ut sic viderentur quærere in aëre cadavera prædicta. At dum inde caderent homines et læderentur, statutum fuit apud illos ut statuae illis cadaveribus similis imponerentur et sic moverentur. Ludus autem ille apud Latinos vocatur Oscillum, quod componitur a cilleo -les quod est moveo, et os, oris, quia sic agitati in ora hominum movebantur.

1 pestem] So A.B.C.D.; om. E.
2 non posse] om. E.; posse, A.
3 nisi] So B.C.D.; sì, A.E
4 dum, B.D.
5 quam . . . habuerant] suam, C.D.
6 cum, C.D.
7 Ac dummodo, B.
8 eos, C.D.
9 cadaveribus] om. C.D., which is better.
10 innexi, C.D.
11 trahentium, C.D., which transpose various words in this extract.
answeref of Appolyne Delphicus pat pe pestilence myȝt cese, TREVISO.
3if pey souȝte besiliche pe bodyes of Icarus and his douȝter Erigon. Pan pey souȝte besiliche, and whanne pey hadde longe i-souȝt; and myȝte nouȝt1 fynde,2 for to schewe pe deuocioun and wil pat pey hadde forto seche [and]3 forto be seie seche besiliche in anopen element pat pey myȝte nouȝt fynde in erȝe, men of Athene heyn4 vp ropes in pe aier and men totrede peron and mened hider and pider; for pey wolde be seie seche pe bodies in pe nier above pe erȝe. And whan men[riel]5 of pe totros and were i-hei te sore,6 it was i-ordeyned among hem pat images i-biȝe to pe bodies schulde be sette in pe totros,7 and meue and totery in stede of hem pat were a-falle. Pat game is cleped ocellum in Latyn, and is com-nowned and i-mayde of twyne, of cilleo cilles pat is forto meu,8 toterynge,9 and os oris pat is a mouȝ; for pey pat totered so moused aȝenst men mouȝes.

phicus that pestilence to be mitigate if thei wolde inquire the cariones and bodies of Icarus and of Erigon his doȝter. Whiche inquirede longe cowthe not be founde, men of Athenes schewenge a deuocioun to the inquisicion of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an open element that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were hurte, ymages were made lyke to theyme, and movede per in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocellum, whiche worde taketh the composicion of this worde cilleo es, that is, to move, and of this worde os oris for a mouȝe; for men steryde in that wyse were mousede towarde the movethes of men.

1 nowther, Cx.; nowhar, B. γ.
2 fynde in erȝe, MS. (not a. B. γ. or Cx.)
3 Added from conjecture; but perhaps the five words following should be cancelled.
4 kyng, a.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 i-kart, a.
7 totres, a., Cx.
8 meoune, a.
9 toterynge] om. a. and Cx.
388 POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

CAP. XXI.

Abimelech et Thola judicant Israel. De Fauno; item de Amazonibus.1

De Abimelech.

ABIMELECH, filius Gedeon2 sive Jeroboal,3 ex con-
cubina natus, dux fuit4 in Sichem5 tribus annis post
patrem, et occidit septuaginta fratres suos ex variis
uxoribus progenitos excepto uno.5 Eoque7 tempore
Atheniense8 bellum fuit inter Lapithas9 et Centauros,
quos Palæphatus libro De Incredilibus dict fuisse10
nobiles equites Thessalorum, qui pugnabat contra11
Thebaos.12 Thola de tribu Isachar13 judicavit Israel
viginti tribus annis, cujus anno quarto Medea dis-
cessit14 a viro suo Ægeo, Atheniensium15 rege, usque ad
Colchos insulam unde fuit oriunda. Trogus, libro quad-
ragesimo tertio. Circa hos dies Faunus filius Pici
regnavit in Italia, sub quo Evander de finibus Arca-
diae16 veniens agros17 et montem Palatinum accepit.
Huic Fauno fuit18 uxor nomine Fatua, spiritu vatidico
frequenter19 repleta, unde et adhibit qui inspirari
solent fatuari21 dicuntur. Ex filia22 hujus23 Fauni et
Hercule,24 qui tunc extincto Geryone gigante25 rege

De Fauno.

1 No title in MSS.
2 So A.B.E.; Gedeonis, C.D.;
3 sive Jeroboal] om. A.B.C.D.
4 regnavit, C.D.
5 Sichen, A.
6 solo, ins. C.D.
7 Eo quoque, B.
8 apud Athenienses, B.
9 Laphitas, B.; Lapithas, D.E.
10 centum, ins. C.D.
11 adversus, C.D.
12 Thebas, C.; Thebes, D.
13 Isacar, A.
11 discendit, C.D. (first hand.)
15 Atheniensium] Atheniensi, D.
16 Arcadiæ] om. B.
17 aros, B.
18 prefuit, B.
19 assidue, C.D.
20 et] om. C. (not D.)
21 fatuati, C.D. (first hand.)
22 quoque, ins. C.D.
23 hujus] om. B.
24 Herculis, A.
25 gigante] om. C.D.
Capitulum vicesimum primum.

Abymalech, Gedeon 1 his son i-bore of a concubyn, was ledere in Sichem after his fader yeere, and slow his owne bropern pre score and ten, outale oon, pet were 2-bore of diuers wise. 3 Pat tyme was pe batayle of Athene bytwene pe Laphites and Centaures. Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seip pat pe Centaures 4 were noble hors men of Thessalia, pat a3t a3ent pe Thebes men of Thebe in Egipt. Thola of pe lynage of Isachar was inge in Israel pre and twenty yeere. In his fourpe yeere Medea 5 wente from hire housbonde Egenes, kyng of Athenes, in to pe ilonde Colchos, pere sche was i-bore. Trogus, 43. Aboute pat tyme Fanus [Pics his sone regnede in Italy. In his tyme Euander come out of Arcadia and feng iildes 5 and pe hil mount Palatyne. Pis Fanus6 had a wyf pat heet Fatua, and hadde ofte a spirit of prophecie. Perfore yt ofte pey pat hauo a spirit of prophie beep i-cleped Fatui. Doe Hercules hadde i-slawe Geryon pe geant, kyng of Spayne, and hadde

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

Abymalech, the son of Gedeon, geten of a concubyne, was gouernoure in Sichem iij. yere after his fader, whiche did slee lxxiij brether to hym, geten of diuerse women, oon excepte. In whiche tyme the batelle of Athenes betwene Laphites and Centaures, whom Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seithe to hace ben nowble horse men of Thessalia whiche did fighte ageyne the Thebes. Thola, of the tribe of Ysachar, reignede on Israel xxiiij yere. In the iij the yere of whom Medea wente from here housbonde Egenes, kyng of Athenes, vn to that yle callede Colchos, where sche was borne. Trogus, capitulo quadragesimo tertio. Fanus, the son off Pics, reignede abowe this tyme in Ytal, vnder whom Euander, of the costes of Archadia, commenge to those costes, toke the felde and the mownte Palatyne. This Fanus hade a wife, Fatua by name, whiche was vexede moche with a spiritte, whereof peple so vexede now in this tyme bene seide to be fataune, after the name

1 So a.; Geon, MS.
2 So a and Cx.; a concubyn, MS.
3 So a.; Sentauers, MS.
4 Meda, MS., and so below. A few similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter; as Gereon, Synope, Archadia.
5 receyued and take feldes, Cx.
6 Added from a. and Cx.
Hispaniae armenta ejus in signum victoriae per Italianum duxerat, stupro conceptus est Latinus; qui postmodum regnavit ibidem. Orosius, 1 libro primo. Circa hunc annum Vezoses rex Aegypti Scythis bellum primo indixit, 5 missis tamen prius legatis qui hostibus legem parendi indicerent. 6 Ad quod Scythae sic respondent: "Stolide rex opulentissimus adversus inopes "bellum movet, præsertim cum dubius sit belli eventus, "premia nulla, sed damna manifesta." Nee mora quin dictis facta subsequeat. Nam regem ad regnum Aegypti redire compellunt, exercitum ejus spoliant et invadunt, totamque Aegyptum spoliassent, nisi Nili paludibus impediti fuissent. Inde redeundo per quindecim annos Asiam conterentes vectigalem fecerunt; quibus denunciatum est ab uxoribus quod, nisi redirent, sobolem sibi a finitimis locis quererent. Medio tempore apud Scythas duo regii juvenes per factionem optimatum domo pulsi, contracta secum ingenti mult-
of that woman. Of the dothiter of whom Heracles gate a son, Latynus by name, whiche reignede after hym, not geten in trewe matrimony. Orosius, libro primo. Abowte whiche yere Vesores, kynge of Egipte, toke a very great partie to bataile to men of Scitia, sendenge to theyme messengers afore commande theyme to obey him. To whiche messengers the men of Scitians answerede, seynge, that the plentuous kynge of Egipte intende by a symple thynge to move bataile ageyne poore men, sythe the chaunce of victory in bataile is in dowr, where he knowthe to have noon ayable but grete hurtes and losse. Whiche thynge lappede accordenge to the seyenge of theyme; for they compellede the kynge off Egipte to returne, and persenenge a grete parte of his hoste hade spoiled a grete parte of Egipte, but that pe water of Nilus was an impedimmente to theyme. That peple of Scitia, returnenge towarde theire contre, faulyhte myshlyte ageyne men of Asia, and made theym theire tributaries. The wifes of whom sende worde to the- in that thei wolde take men to theym of ojer contres to cause multiplication, withowtte thei wolde come home. Wherefore ij. nowble men were electe amonoge theyme,

1 So a. and Cx.; Lathinius, MS.
2 set, Cx.
3 Added from Cx. (only), who varies the clause.
4 accord, Cx.
5 Added from a. and Cx.
6 So MS.; were, Cx.
7 Sic Harl. MS. Probably the word should be cancelled; if not, or must be added: which seems to be omitted after afore.
titudine, oram¹ Ponti et Cappadociae occuparunt,² ubi post multam depopulationem factam a finitimis viris trucidabantur. Quorum uxores exilio ac viduitate permutae arma sumunt, ultionem pro maritis faciunt. Amazones. Tunc pace armis quæsita externos³ concubitus⁴ ineunt, editos mares eneant, fœminas inustis dextris mammis reservant. Harum tandem duas fuerunt reginae Marcepia et Lapeto;⁵ quæ agmine diviso vicissim curam belli et domus custodiam sortiebantur. Igitur cum Europam magna ex parte perdouissent, captis aliquibus Asiae urbis praecipue exercitus sui partem spoliis onustam domi remisissent, reliquœ fœmineœ ad tuendum Asiam relicœ cum regina sua⁶ Marcepia ab hostibus trucidantur. Cujus filia Sinope post matrem regnum tenuit, singularem virtutis gloriam perpetuam virginitate cumulavit. Hujus nempe tanta⁷ admiratio gentes invaserat, ut cum Hercules juberetur a domino

¹ coram, A.  ² occupaverunt, A.B.  ³ exterios, B.  ⁴ So A.; cubitus, E.  ⁵ Lampeto, B.  ⁶ sue] om. B.  ⁷ tam, B.
from home, and took with hem a grete multitude of peple and
strengye, and werred in pe contrayes of Pontus and Capadocia. 1 And whanne pey hadde i-doo greet destruccion, pan pey were i-kilde of men of pe contrays aboute. Dame hire wifes exiled and wydewes armed hem, and toke wreche of hire housbonsdes dep; and whanne pey hadde i-made pees by strengye and by dedes of armes pey took men of oper londes to ligge 2 by hem forto haue children, and slow hire owne knaue children, 3 and keppe here mayde children, and brende of pe 4 rixt brest. At pe laste tweyne of pese women were queenes, Marsepia and Lampeto, and departed hire oost, and keppe and mayntenede hem. and batailled 5 eiper by hir coars. Then whanne pey hadde ouercome a grete dele of Europa and many citees of Asia, pey sent home pe bettre part of here oost wip prayes pat pey hadde i-take. Pan enemyes slow, Marsepia pe queere and pe opare women pat were i-left pere forto kepe Asia. And here douȝter Sinope regaad after hir moder dep, and gadered a singuler ioye of vertue by everlastynge chasite. Men wondrede so hugeliche of this woman, pat whanne Hercules hadde heste of his lorde for to werre

which, take with theyme a grete hoste, occupie the londes of Ponges and Capodocia, which were destroyed at the laste by oper peple oer ctrees. The wifes of whom movede there with toke armoure, inquirenge vengeance for theire housbonsdes. So at the laste, peace made by grete batelles and conflite, thei toke to theyme straunge men for cause of multiplicacion, sleenge the male childer, resereude the childer female, brengen the ryȝhte pappe of here. O other women were ij, qwenes at the laste, Marsepia and Lampeto, which keppe batelles by course. And when thei hade made that londe of Asia tame, and taken the principalle citees in hit, thei sende the chiefe parte of their hoste to theire cuntre with grete richesse and goodes. That other parte of women lefte with Marsepia to be the defence of Asia were sleyne. The doȝter of whom, Synope by name, keppe the realm after the dele of here moder, in keppe the glory of vertu with virginite perpetuall. Also thei were o ther grete myȝhte, that when Hercules was commandede of his lorde that he scholde brynge

---

1 Capadocie, Cx. 2 lye, Cx. 3 men childer, Cx.; who, however, has childerer above. 4 her, Cx. 5 hem in batel, Cx.; bataille, a. ɣ; batel, β. 6 So a. and Cx.; of, MS.

CAP. XXII.

De Jair; item de Carmente Nympha, litterarum Latinarum inventrice.

JAYR Caladites de tribu Manasse judicavit Israel viginti duobus annis, habuitque triginta filios, quos fecit principes supra triginta civitates, quas denominavit a nomine suo Anat Jair, id est, oppida Jair. Ranulphus. Hujus Jair anno tertio secundum quosdam Carthago condita est; sed de hoc vide supra

---

1 So A.; afferre, E.  
2 So A.; universitati, E.  
3 reparavit, B.  
4 reginis] om. B.  
5 Monalippam, MSS.  
6 Antrope, B.  
7 reddit, B.  
8 Penthesilea, MSS.  
9 sqve virtutis † Added from A.B.  
10 No title in MSS.  
11 Jair, A.C.D.  
12 sqve, C.D.  
13 principales, B.  
14 super, C.D.  
15 Anat jair, A.; Anathe jair, B.; Anot jair, D.  
\[\text{MONACHI CESTRENSIS, LIB. II. 395}\]

\textit{Capitulum vicesimum secundum.}

\textit{Iaïr}, of Galaad, of the lynage of Manasse, was judge of Israel two and twenty \(\text{xx}i\) yere, and hadde pritty sones, and made hem princes vppon pritty citees, and clepecl pe citees by his owne name, Anot Iair, that is to meane, Iair is townes. \(R\). Som tellep pat Carthago was i-bulde of Iaire, but to hym the armore of the qwene of theym, he toke with hym the nowble men of the londe of Greece in ix. schippes, which compassede the women as with owte deliberacion; hauenge more pleasure to do soe then to make an open batelle ageyne theym. The seide Hercules, those women oppressede, vppon hem come vppon hem wip a bataile opoumliche. Pan, whanne pe tweie queenes pat were sustres were sodeynliche overcome, Hercules Menalippa to his sustyr Antiopa, and mariede hym his kyng Thesecs, and fenge pe armure of pe qwene in prys of redempcion. At the laste after Orthia pe qwene, Penthesilea pe qwene was in pe batayle of Troye, and Antiopa and \(\text{\textit{Penthesilea}}\) to his kyng Theseus, and feende pe armure of pe qwene in prys of redempcion. After that qwene callede Orthia, the qwene Penthesilea was at the batayle of Troye, and schewede mony grete actes ageyne men of Greece.

\textit{Capitulum vicesimum secundum.}

\textit{Iaïr Galatides}, of the tribe of Manasses, reignede on the peple of Israel \(\text{xx}i\) yere, which hade \(\text{xxx}\) sones, whom he made princes of \(\text{xxx}\) citees, whom he callede, after his name, Anot Iair, that is to say, pe citees of Iaïr. \(R\). In the thrydde yere of whom, after diuerse men, that cite callede Carthago was edifide, of which mater \(h\) is hersedede afore,

---

1 \(\text{the, Cx.}\)
2 \(\text{to stele, Cx.}\)
3 \(\text{Ipolita, MS., e, Ipolita, B. 7.}\)
4 \(\text{Pentasilea, a; Pentafides, MS.}\)
5 \(\text{\textit{Pentasilea}}\) om. Cx.
6 \(\text{Lair, MS.}\)
7 \(\text{Cartago, MSS.,} \text{ Cartage, Cx.}\)
8 \(\text{Pentisilia, Harl, MS.}\)
libro primo, capitulo Africa.\textsuperscript{1} Anno Jair sextodecimo Aegyptiorum \textsuperscript{2} Minois \textsuperscript{3} adversus Dædalam in Sicilia arma corripiens \textsuperscript{5} a filiis Cocali \textsuperscript{6} occiditur. Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo decimo.\textsuperscript{7} Carmentis nympha, quæ et Nicostrata, mater Latini regis, Latinas literas reperit.\textsuperscript{9} Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo vii.\textsuperscript{10} Latina autem lingua in quatuor fuit dispartita; nam Prisca fuit sub Jano et Saturno; Latina sub rege Latino et ceteris regibus Tusciae, ex qua lingua fuerunt duodecim tabulae legum conscriptæ; item Romana, qua post exactos reges cœpit; qua usi sunt Plautus, Tullius, Virgilius, Cato; sed mixta lingua post dilatum imperium crevit.\textsuperscript{15} Post mortem Jair,\textsuperscript{17} Israel servivit Philistium et Ammonitis xvij. annis; qui deputantur annis Jepte subsequentibus.\textsuperscript{18}

\textsuperscript{1} sed ... Africa] Isidorus, libro primo, C.D.; Africa, sicut Numidia, A. (See vol. i. p. 164.)
\textsuperscript{2} The text has manifestly suffered. The Harl. tr. seems to have had rex.
\textsuperscript{3} Minoys, E. Read Minos.
\textsuperscript{4} in] om. A.
\textsuperscript{5} So A.E.; arrripiens, B.C.D.
\textsuperscript{6} filiis Dedali, B.; filiabas Dedali, C.; filiabas Cocali, D.
\textsuperscript{7} capitulo decimo] om. A.B.C.D.
\textsuperscript{8} Anno Jair vicesimo secondum quadam, ins. C.D.
\textsuperscript{9} Slightly varied in C.D.
\textsuperscript{11} nam] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{12} fuit] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{13} lingua] om. B.C.D.
\textsuperscript{14} item] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{15} Slightly varied in C.D.
\textsuperscript{16} Post ... subsequentibus] om. C.D.
\textsuperscript{17} Jair] om. E.
\textsuperscript{18} subsequentibus, A.
look in the first book, capitulo Africa, scilicet Numidia. 1

*Note: The text is a transcription of the Latin text, and some sections are marked as footnotes.*

1 So β. Mundia, a. γ., Cx.; Mundia, MS.

2 Nicostatha, MSS.

3 kyng of, MS., and so below.

1 PE Trevisa.

look in the first book, capitulo Africa, scilicet Numidia. 1 The sixth of the sons of Iare, Mynois of Egypt amended the armor of Dedalus in Sicilia, and was i-cyld of Cocalus his sons. *Isidorus, libro primo.* Carmentis Nymphæ, 2 kyng 3 Latyn his moder, fond and brought vp 4 Latyn lettres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* The longage of Latyn was departed in four; for the first was under Ianus and Saturnus, and was i-cleped Prisk; and Latyn vnder 5 kyng Latyn and after kynges of Thuscayn; 6 in that longage were the twelve tables of lawe i-write; also Romayn 4 kyngs of Latyn, and other kynges of Tuschia; 6 but medled 7 longage encresed after that langage that was mixte encreased after the increase of the Empyre. Israel, other the peple of hit, seruede the Philistis xvij. yere after the death of Iair, which be deputed to the yeres of Iepte folowenge.
Cap. XXIII.

De Jepte; item de Sibyllis, et de rebus Trojanis.¹

Jepte Galatides de tribu Gad, filius meretricis, judicavit Israel sex annis; cujus anno primo Latinus filius Fauni coepit regnare in Italia, in qua regnavit triginta duobus annis, a quo regnum Latinorum sumpset initium, cessante ex tunc vocabulo Laurentinorum.

Rex Latinus.

De decem Sibyllis.

Isidorus, libro octavo. Tempore hujus Latini floruit Sibylla Erythraea,² nomine Herophila,³ de Babylone oriunda, quae Graecis Ilium petentibus ὁ πρέδεν Ἰούλιον παρέδειξε περαν τῆς Τροιᾶς καταλύσεως, et Hominum mendacia postmodum scripturum. Et cum decem fuerunt Sibyllae, haec ponitur quinta in numero, et caeteris antefertur; quarum prima fuit Persica, secunda Libyca, tertia Delphica, in templo Apollinis progenita ante bellum Trojanum, cujus plurimos versus Homerus inseruit in suis opusculis.⁴ Quarta fuit Cimmeria de Italia; quinta Erythraea, de qua nunc agitur; sexta fuit Samia, in Samos insula nata; septima Cumana, de

---

¹ No title in MSS.
² Eritrea, MSS.
³ Eroibia, B.; Erofila, E.
⁴ potentibus, B.
⁵ fuerint, B.
⁶ et ... quarum] om. C.D.
⁷ enim, ins. C.D.
⁸ Delphici, ins. C.D.
⁹ suo opusculo, C.D.
¹⁰ Cimeria, B.
¹¹ fuit, ins. B.
¹² Eritrea, MSS.
¹³ dictum est, C.D.
Capitulum vicesimum tertium. Iepte.

Iepte of Galaad, of the lynage of Gad, an hoore\(^1\) son, was iuge of Israel xi\(\)e\(^2\)ere. Kyng Latyn, Faunus is sone, bygan to regne in Italy; and regned there two and pritty xi\(\)ere. Of hym pe kynges of\(^3\) Italti hadde pat name, and were i-cleped kynges of Latyns, and pan cesed pe name of Laurentines, and torned into pe name of Latyns.\(^4\) Isidorus, libro octavo. In pis kyng Latyn his tyme was Sibil Eritrea in hir flowres, pat hooct Erifola, and was i-bore in Babilon. Scho warnde pe Grees pat wente to Troye pat Troye schulde be destroyed, and pat Homerus schulde write lesynges afterward. Super were ten Sibilis, and pis is pe fift in nombre, and is i-patte tofore opere. Pe firste Sibilla was of Pers, pe\(^4\) seconde of Libya. Pe pridde was Delphica yn Appoly\(\)n his temple to fore pe bataile of Troye. Homerus wro\(\)t meny of hir vers in his bookes. Pe four\(\)pe was Cimeria of Italy, Pe fiftte was Eriire, of hiro is now oure speche. Pe sixte was Samia, i-bore in pe ylond\(^5\) of Samos.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium.

Iepte Galatides, son of an hoore of the tribe of Gad, was iugge in Israel vj. yere. In the firste yere off whom, Latins the son of Faunus began to regre in Italy, in whom he reigne xxxij\(^6\) yere. from whiche tyme the realme of Latines toke begynnenge, and the name of the Laurentynes decreased and flayede. Isidorus, libro octavo. Sibilla Eritria, Erifola by name, borne in Babilon, was in the tyme of Latins, which seide to the Grekes Troy to be destroyede, and that the poete Omerus scholde write mony lesynges afterward. But per were x. Sibilles, amonge whom sche was putte the v\(\)the in ordre, and is preferrede afore other. The firste of whom was callede Sibilla Persica. The seconde Sibilla Libica. The thrydde Sibilla Delphica, which was geten in the temple of Apollo afore the bataile of Troy, of the versus of whom Omerus toke mony and putte theyme in his werkes. The iiij\(\)the was Sibilla Temervia\(^6\) of Italy. The v\(\)the was Sibilla Eritria, of whom we spake of afore. The vi\(\)the was callede Sibilla Samia, of that yle callede Samos.

---

\(^{1}\) a comyn womans, Cx.
\(^{2}\) of\(\) om. MS. (only.)
\(^{3}\) and pan ... of Latyns] om. Cx.
\(^{4}\) Pierze, a.
\(^{5}\) londe, MS. (only.)
\(^{6}\) Sic Harl. MS. for Cimernia.
Campania oriunda, quae novem libros attulit Tarquinio Prisco, Romano regi, Romanis decretis conscriptos; octava fuit Hellespontia, in agro Trojan nata, quae legitur Cyri regis et Solonis temporibus extitisse; nona fuit Phrygia, quae legitur vaticinata Anchisae; decima Tiburtina, dicta Albunea. Quarum omnium carmina extolluntur, eo quod de Deo, de Christo, de gentibus multa scripisses comprobantur. Veruntamen Augustinus octavo libro De Civitate capitulo sextodecimo videtur velle, quod Sibylla Erythraea floruerit tempore Romuli; de qua etiam dicit quod multa de Christo manifeste scripsit, sicut patet in illis ejus versibus:

Judicii signum tellus sudore mades cet;
E coelo rex adveniet per saecula futurus.

Scilicet in carne præsens ut judicet orbem, et cætera. Quorum versuum capitales litterae reddunt sensum: JESUS CHRISTUS DEI FILIUS SALVATOR. Isidorus, libro quarto, capitulo sexto. Sibylla nomen est officii, non personæ. Dicitur enim a Syos, quod est deus, et Bele, quod est mens, quasi habens

---

1 Romano regi] om. C.D.
2 inscripto, D.
3 oriunda ... fuit] om. B.
4 Hellespontia, C.D.
5 regis] om. C.D.
6 Salonis, A.; Salamonis, B.D.;
Salonis, E.
7 Albinia, E.
8 Quorum, E.
9 Extract slightly varied in C.D.
10 decimo octavo, A. The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 23.
11 floruit, A.
12 ejus] om. B.
13 qui sic incipiunt, ins. C.D.
14 mades cit, B.
15 E ... orben] om. C.D. (D. having instead: sicut Augustinus illos ponit seriatim in omelia quadam de adventu.)
16 Scilicet ... cateria] om. B.
17 capitulo sexto] om. A.B.
18 Scios, A.; Sios, D.
19 quasi] om. A.
\( \text{pe seuenpe [was]} \) Cumana, i-bore in Campania; sche\(^2\) brought nine books to Torquynus Priscus, kyng of Romayns, in pe whiche were i-write pe domes of Rome. \( \text{pe oI}p\)pe was Ellespontia, i-bore in a feeld of Troye. Me redepe \( \text{pat sche}\(^3\) was in kyng Cyrus and \( \text{in} \)\(^4\) Solon\(^5\) his tyme. \( \text{pe nynepe was Frigia.} \) Me redepe \( \text{pat he}\(^6\) prophecied in Anchisa. \( \text{pe tenpe was Tybrutina, and heet also Albymea.} \)\(^7\) \( \text{pe bookes of hem alle beepe i- Meyprysed, for pey write moche of God, of Crist, and also of Payenis.} \)\(^8\) \( \text{R. Nopeles it semep} \)\(^9\) \( \text{pat Seynt Austyn, 18° libro, capitulo 16, wil mene} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{pat Sibille Eritria was in Romulus his tyme, and sche wroote moche of Criste, and pat openliche, as in pis vers of heroes:} \)

\( \text{" Taken of doome pe erbe schal wi}p\) sweot \(^9\) by come weet, " Out of heene pe kyng endeles schal come to siete. " And pat in flesche present forte do me pe world." And so forp Sibil hap many mo vers. \( \text{pe heed lettres of} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{pe verse, and of} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{pe oper as} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{pey beepe} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{i-write in Latyn, spelep} \)\(^{10}\) \( \text{pis menynge:} \)\(^{10}\) Ihesus Crist, Goddes sone, Sauyour. \( \text{Isidorus, libro 14°,} \)\(^{11}\) Sibille is a name of ofly, and nouf\(^t\) of persone, and is i-seide of syos, pat is God, and of bees, pat is pou\(\text{t}\)t; and so

where sche was borne. The vijthe was callede Sibilla Cumana, borne in Campania, whiche broughte to olde Tarquinius, kyng of the Romanes, ix. bokes of the decretes of the Romanes. The vijthe was callede Sibilla Ellespontia, borne in the centre of Troye, whiche was seide to haue bene in the tyme of kyngye Cyrus and Salomon. The ixthe was callede Sibilla Frigia. The xthe was callede Sibilla Tiburtina, the wrytenges of whom be extolled in that thei didde wryte mony thynges of God, of Criste, and of other peple. \( \text{R. Neuerthellesse Seynte Austyn semethe to expresse, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo sexto decimo, that Sibilla Eritria was in the time of Romulus, of whom he seith the sche did write mony thynges of Criste.} \)\(^{12}\) \( \text{Isidorus, libro octavo.} \) That name Sibilla is a name of an office, not of a person, for hit is seide of this worde, scio, pat is, God, and bele, that is a mynde, and perfoure Sibilla is seide, a

\(^{1}\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^{2}\) he, a.
\(^{3}\) he, a.
\(^{4}\) Added from a. and Cx.
\(^{5}\) Saloon, MSS.
\(^{6}\) she, Cx.
\(^{7}\) Albumea, Cx. Some proper names in this chapter being very corrupt, have been left unaltered.
\(^{8}\) Paynez, Cx. (who varies the sentence.)
\(^{9}\) of sweete, Cx.
\(^{10}\) spekep thus, Cx.
\(^{11}\) 9, a.; quarto, Cx. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 8.
mentem Dei; unde sicut vir prophetans dicitur vates seu\(^1\) propheta, sic fœmina prophetans Sibylla vocatur.\(^2\) Sub his diebus tempore regis Latini\(^3\) facta est Argonautarum navigatio, quæ\(^4\) fuit occasio belli Trojani, quod sic introductur. *Trogus, libro secundo.*

Post Neptunum successorem Ericthonii regnum Atheniensium ad Ægeum descenderat, qui ex priore uxore filium Theseum genuerat; tandem, uxore illa mortua, desponsavit Medeam filiam regis Colchorum, ex qua genuit filium suum Medum. Medea tandem sibi\(^5\) timens\(^6\) propter adultam Thesei privigni sui ætatem, ad patrem suum cum filio\(^7\) Medo Colchos redit.\(^8\)

Post\(^9\) Ægeum apud Athenas regnavit filius suus Theseus, qui aliquando cum Hercule protectus Amazones contrivit. Post Theseum Demophon\(^10\) filius ejus successit, qui adversus Trojanos Græcis opem tulit *Phrygiius.*\(^11\) Igitur Pelias rex Peloponnesensis\(^12\) seu Thessalæ,\(^13\) timens sibi ne Jason illustris filius Æsonis fratris sui regnum\(^14\) invaderet, se expulso, suadet

---

\(^1\) *vel,* C.D.  
\(^2\) *dicitur,* C.D. B. adds *quia habens mentem Dei.*  
\(^3\) *regis Latin*i] Latini prædicti, C.D.  
\(^4\) *et,* C.D.  
\(^5\) *sibi* om. B.  
\(^6\) *metuens,* C.D.  
\(^7\) *suo,* ins. B.  
\(^8\) Slightly transposed in C.D.  
\(^9\) *Post . . . Phrygiius* om. C.D.; for *Phrygiius,* B. has *Trogus libro xj*; A. has *Trogus 42.*  
\(^10\) *Demophon,* B.  
\(^11\) *Frigius,* E. The text is correct. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 1, which explains the absurd gloss, *seu Thessalia*; but Higden has also borrowed from Justin, lib. xiii. c. 2.  
\(^12\) *Peloponnesensis,* MSS., as usual.  
\(^13\) *seu Thessalia*] om. C. D.  
\(^14\) *suum,* ins. B.
Sibil is i-seide as it were a womman pat hap Goddes $^1$ pou$^2$.

Therefore as a man pat prophacies is i-cleped a prophete, so a womman pat prophaciep is i-cleped Sibil. Vnder pis dayes in kyng Latyns tyme was pe seyllynge i-made pat is i-cleped pe seyllynge of Argonautes. Pat seyllynge was cause and occasion of pe bataille of Troye, and bygan in pis manere. Trogus, libro 2$. After Neptunus, pe successour of Erictonius, $^3$ pe kyngdome of Athene fil to Egeus, pat hadde i-gete his sone Theseus on his firste wif; and at pe laste whanne pat wyf was deed, he wedded Medea, pe kynes dou$^4$ter of Colchos, and gat on hire Medus. At pe laste Medea dreddde hir step sone $^5$ Theseus, whan he come to age, and took wip here hir sone Medus, and wente hoom to hire fader in to Colchos. After Egeus his sone Theseus reignede in Athene; he wente somtyme wip Hercules and werred, and overcame pe Amazones. After Theseus his sone Demophon regnede; he halp $^6$ pe Grees a$^7$enst pe Troians. Trogus, libro 42$. Panne Pelias, kynge of Peloponens, pat is of Thessalia, dreddde Iason pe noble werriour $^8$ wolde werre in his londes $^9$ and putte hym out. Iason was Eson his sone; Eson was Pelias his owne broper. Pelias brou$^5$te

...woman hauenge the mynde of God. Wherefore like as a man prophecyg ende is callede Vates, soe in lyke wise a woman prophockinge is callede Sibilla. In this tyme of Latinus the kyng, the Organates seylede and keped the see, which was an occasion of the bataille of Troy, which was inducede in pis maner. Trogus, libro secundo. The realme of men of Athenes descendede to Egeus, after Neptunus, the successor of Erictonius, whiche gate of his firste wif a son callede Theseus. That wife dedde, he did wedde Medea, the do$^4$ter of the kyng of Colchos, of whom he gate a son callede Medus. Medea, dredenge Theseus when that he was commen to age, turnede agetyne to Colchos to here fader, with Medus here sonne. Theseus reignede at Athenes after Egeus his fader, which, goenge furthe with Hercules, hade the victory of the Amazones. Demophon, the son of Theseus, succeedede in that realme, which sa$^7$fe helpe to pe Grees agetyne the Troians. Trogus, libro 42$. Pelias, kynge of Peloponens other of Thessalia, dredenge leste that the nowble man, Iason by name, son of Eson his brother, scholde entre in to his realme, movede Iason

---

$^1$ God his, a.
$^2$ So a; Ericctorius, MS. Read Erihtonius.
$^3$ So a. b. y, Cx.; sone, MS.
$^4$ halp and assisted, Cx.
$^5$ werriour] om. a. b. y. and Cx.
$^6$ lond, Cx.
$^7$ Pelias, Harl. MS. here and below.
Jasoni querere pellem auream apud Colchos insulam; sperans per hoc juvenis interitum provenire aut ex longa navigatione aut ex bello barbarici. 1 Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo. 2 Insuper et Pelias fecit. 3 Argum parare navem pulcherrimam huic profectioni congruentem. Petrus. Ab hoc nomine, Argon, Argonautae descenderunt, qui fuerunt juvenes validi ad profectio- nem Jasonis undecumque collecti, cum quibus Phrygiam primo applicuit, 5 regnante tunc ibidem Laomedonte. Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo. 6 Sed et Jason de finibus Phrygiae repulsus cum suis sodalibus Colchos venit, regem devicit, filium regis ægealium occidit, pellem auream abstulit, Medeam regis filiam abduxit, et uxorem sibi fecit, quam tamen postmodum repudiavit. Sed cum postea a Pelise regis filiis esset pulsus et Thessalia, reconciliata sibi Medea cum privigno suo Medo de ægeo rege Atheniensium suscepto, 13 ingentem juvenum multitudinem recollegit, Colchos repetiti, ubi socerum suum regem regno pulsum viriliter restituit, nonnullas etiam civitates in recompensationem prioris injuriae regno ejus adiect. Phrygius Dares. Igitur Jason, 17

1 barbari, A.B.; barbariae, Just. xlii. 2.
2 Frigius Dares, A.B.C.D., which is better. See § 1.
3 et . . . fecit] fecit Pelleas, B.
4 ubicumque, C. (not D.)
5 applicavit, C. (not D.)
6 primo, C. libro quarto, D. The text is correct. See lib. xlii. c. 2.
and c. 3.
7 juvenibus, C.D.
8 postea] om. B.
9 Pellee, B.
10 expulsus, B.
11 e] a, C. (not D.)
12 primogenito, B.; filio, C.D.
13 de . . . suscepto] om. C.D.
14 socium, B.
15 suo quodam, ins. C.D.
16 expulsus, B.
17 Jason] om. B.
Iason in witte forto fette 1 pe goldene flees at Colchos and hopede perby pat pe 3ong man schulde be deed oper for long seillynge in pe see oper in bataile azenst straunge nacioens. *Phrygius* 2 *Dares*. Perfore Pelias made Argus ordeyne a wel faire schippe conenable to pis seillynge and passage. *Petrus*. Of pis name Argon come pis name Argonaute. Argonaute were stalworpe 3onge men i-gadred al aboute for Iason his viage; Janne Iason seelede for ip wip pese men and londede first in Frigia. Pe Laomedon 3 reignevede pere. *Troquis*. But Iason was put out of Frigia and come in to Colchos, and ouercome pe kynge and slow; his son Egeanluis and took pe goldene flees, and had wip hym Medea 4 pe kynges doucter, and made hire his wyf. Nopeles afterwode he forsooke hire and putte hir away. But afterwode whan kynge Pelias his sone was put out of Thessalia, Iason reconsilede 5 and took azen his wif Medea wip his stepsone Medus, and gaderede a stronge multitude of 3onge men and wente in to Colchos and restored orpedliche 6 his wifes fader, pat was putte out of his kyngdom, and 3af hym meny citees to his kyngdom in 7 recompensaciuon and amendement of pe olde wrong. *Phrygius* 8

mony fette, Cx.

Phrygius, MSS. and Cx.

So Cx.; Laomedon, MS.

So Cx.; Medea, MS.

reconsyelled, Cx.

orpedly, Cx.

So a, b. γ., Cx.; and, MS.
postquam Colchos subjugaverat, invitatis secum Castore et Polluce, Peleo \(^1\) de Phthia, \(^2\) Telamone de Salamine, \(^3\) paratis quindecim navibus Phrygiam \(^4\) nocte appulit, Laomedontem regem occidit, Ilium in \(^5\) Troja \(^6\) vastavit, Hesionam regis filiam rapuit, quam Telamoni, militi \(^7\) suo, uxorem \(^8\) dedit; eo quod primus Trojam intraverat. \(^9\) Præda quoque \(^{10}\) facta, Jason ad sua cum suis \(^{11}\) rediit. Quo \(^{12}\) audito Priamus Laomedonis primogenitus Ilium portis et muris firmavit et regnare cœpit.

CAP. XXIV.

*De Abessa; reliqua de bello Trojano narrantur.*\(^{13}\)

ABESSA Bedlemita \(^{14}\) judicavit Israel septem annis; Anno Abr. 825. Anno Abessa 1.

cujus \(^{15}\) anno secundo Priamus rex Phrygiae seu Troja \(^{16}\) misit Antenorem \(^{17}\) ad Græcos, dicens se omnes injurias preteritas æquanimiter passurum, si

---

\(^{1}\) Peleo de, B.  
\(^2\) Scitia, D.; Seitia, MSS. The emendation is certain. See Dar. Phryg. § 3.  
\(^3\) Salmania, B.; Salomonia, D. Salamina, E.  
\(^4\) de, ins. C.D.  
\(^5\) in] de, E.  
\(^6\) Troyæ, MSS., and similarly below.  
\(^7\) militi] om. C.D.  
\(^8\) in uxorem, D.  
\(^9\) introierit, C.D.  
\(^{10}\) Prædaque, C.D.  
\(^{11}\) Transposed in A.B.  
\(^{12}\) Hoc, C.D.  
\(^{13}\) No title in MSS.  
\(^{14}\) Bethlemita, A.; Bethlemita, B.; Bethlemita, D.; mortuo Jepte, ins. C.D.  
\(^{15}\) cujus] om. B.  
\(^{16}\) Trojà, B.  
\(^{17}\) Antenorem, MSS.
Dares. Whan Iason hadde sodued Colechos, he hadde wiþ hym at his prayenge Castor, Pollux, Peleus and 3 Scitia, Telamon of Salamina, and come yw fyue schippes by ny‡te into Frigia and slow Laomedon þe kyng and destroyed Ilium in Troye. He raüysched Hesiona þe kynges dou§ter and 3æft hire to his kni‡t Telamon of Salamina to wife; for he was þe firste pat entrede in to Troye and þere took a grete pray. And Iason tornede æ‡en wiþ his men. Whan Priamus Laomedon his eldest sone herde and wiste of al þis, he strengeþed Ilium pat is Troye wiþ 3ates and wiþ walles and bygan for to reigne.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum. Abessa.

Abessa of Bethleem was iug in Israel seuene ðere. In his seconde þere Priamus kyng of Frigia, þat is kyng of Troye, sente Antenor to þe Greeks, and seide þat he wolde gladliche forðene al trespas þat was doo to forehonde, 3if þey wolde made subiecte that yle of Colechos, desirede with hym Castor and Pollux, and Peleus of Scitia, and Thelamon of Salamina, with v. schippes entrede in to Frigia in the ny‡te, and did sle Laomedon the kyng of hit, and wastede Troy, and toke away Hesion the kynges dou§ter, whom he toke to Telamon his kny‡hte, to be his wife, in that he entrede in to the cite of Troy firste. And when thei hade taken préyes at theire pleasure, Iason returnede with his felow-schippe towarde his cuntre. Priamus the son of Laomedon, herenge of that treason, made that city of Troy stronge, dressenge hit with 3ates and walles, and began to reigne in hit.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

Abessa, of the cuntre of Bethleem, was iugge in Israel vij. yeres, and reignede þer. In the firste yere of whom Priamus, the kyngge off Frigia other elles Troy, sende Anthenor vn to the Grekes, seyenge that he wolde suffre alle

1 Thanne Iason whanne he hadde, a. B. y.  
2 Cx. ins. Hercules.  
3 and of, MS. a. (not B. y. Cx.) For Scitia read Phthia. See above.  
4 Thelamon, MSS. and Cx.  
5 So B. y.; Salomina, MS. a. Read Salaminis.  
6 wyre, a.  
7 and] om. a.  
8 was i-take, a. B. y.; was taken, Cx.  
9 Priamus, MS. A few similar corrections have been made tacitly in this chapter.  
10 Grekes, Cx.; and so below.  
11 trespasses that they had doe before, Cx.


---


sende a\[3]en his sustyr Hesiona, pat pey hadde i-rauesched. Pe Grees wolde nou\[3]t. Priamus arrayed for pe bataille and made his eldest son Hector\[1] ledere of opere men. Alisaundre, pat heet Paris also, Hector his broper, assentep her to, and seip pat whanne he hontede some tyme in pe woode pat hatte Ida,\[2] he sleep\[3] and mette \[4] pat Mercenirius broughte abowe to fore hym Iuno, Venus, and Minerua, for he schulde deme whiche of hem was fairest; and Minerua by heet hym wisdom, [Iuno worship, and Venus behete him]\[5] pe fairest wif of pe worlde, \[3]if he wolde deme pat\[6] sehe were pe fairest. Helenus pe opere broper propheciede pe contrarie; and seide pat \[3]if Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, took a wyf of Grees\[7] [pe Grees]\[8] wolde come and destroye Ilium, pat is Troye. Pat woman Cassandra propheciede pe same. No\[8]eles schippes were arrayed, and Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, wip Antenor\[9] sent\[10] into Grecia, and whenne wommen come\[11] into pe ilond Cythera to pe feste of Iuno, Helena kynge Menelaus his wyf come forto see pe fairenesse of Paris, [and Paris]\[12] rauesched hire and took hir wip hym and turned home a\[3]en.\[13] Pan was Priamus glad i-now, 

injuryes a-paste if that Hesiona his sustyr, taken aweye by theyme, my\[3]hte be restorede. The men of Greece denyenge that, Priamus made redy to make batelle ageyne theyme, makeenge Hector, his firste son, gouernoure and rewler of hit, whiche thynge Alexander other Paris exhortedede to be fullefillede, seycenge that as he wente to hunte in a woode callede Ida, he see in his slepe Mercurey to haue broughte to hym Venus and Minerua to jugge of the beawte of theyme. Then Minerua promise to hym sapience, if that he wolde preferre here beawte; and Venus promise to hym oon of the feyrest women of pe worlde to his wyfe, if pat he wolde preferre here beawte. Neuerthelesse schippes were made redy, and Alexander with Antenor were sende to the londe of Greece, whiche, commenge to an yle callede Cythera, where women were gedrede to the feste of Iuno, Paris toke aweye Helena, the wife of kynge Menelaus, commenge to mete Paris to beholde his beawte, and bro\[3]hte here to Priamus. At whiche acte Priamus ioyede moche,

---

1 So B., Cx.; Ector, MS., here and below.
2 So a., Cx.; Ydo, MS.
3 slept, Cx.
4 dremed, Cx.
5 Added from Cx. (only); wyt and wisdom and the fryestre wyf; Cx.
6 So a. and Cx.; if, MS.
7 Grecia, Cx.
8 Added from a. and Cx.
9 Anthenore, MS., but Antenor above.
10 and Paris with Antenor were sente, Cx.
11 tho men came, Cx.
12 Added from a. b. y., Cx.; MSS. sometimes have Paris.
13 and take hir with hym in to Troy, Cx. (omitting the rest.)
Greci classem parant, et Phrygian vasant. Agamemnon ad Priamum legatos mittit.

Bellum indicitur.

per hoc recuperaturus. Igitur Menelao rege Lacedaemoniae fratri suo Agamemnoni regi Mycenarum de raptu uxoris suae\(^2\) gravius\(^3\) conquerenti adnunti\(^4\) robusti\(^5\) quinque; \(^6\) Achilles, Patroclus, Ulixes, Ajax, Nestor, cum ceteris validis numero quadraginta septem, habentes naves paratas in portu Athenarum\(^7\) numero mille ducentas. Deinde responso\(^8\) accepto ab Apolline Delphico, quod in decimo anno Ilium foret subvertendum, Greci mare sulcant, classem navium\(^9\) solvunt, in Phrygia praedas agunt, et redeunt. Interea mittit Agammenon legatos Ulixem et Diomedem ad regem Priamum, si vellet Helenam reddere. Priamus illico commemorat Argonautarum injuriam, patris interitum, sororis raptum,\(^10\) Antenoris legati sui contemptum; idcirco\(^11\) pacem repudiat, et\(^12\) bellum indicit.\(^13\) Igitur exercitu hinc inde congregato Hector occidit Protesilaum, Patroclum et Merionem,\(^14\) multisque sauciatis; usque dum Ajax Telamonius, con-

---

\(^1\) Mecenorum, MSS.  
\(^2\) de . . . sue] om. C.D.  
\(^3\) graviter, B.  
\(^4\) congregantur, C.D.  
\(^5\) fortes, C.D.  
\(^6\) quique, MSS. See Harl. translation.  
\(^7\) Atheniensis, C.D.  
\(^8\) Responsoque, C.D.  
\(^9\) navium] om. C.D.  
\(^10\) et, ins. C.D.  
\(^11\) ideoque, C.D.  
\(^12\) et] om. C.D.  
\(^13\) So A.B.; inducit, E.  
\(^14\) Menonem, E.
as pey he schulde rekke neuere and haue azen his suster Hesiona.  
Pan Menelaus kyng of Lacedemonia made a greuous playnt to his broper Agamemnon, kyng of Messenes, of pe rauyschinge of his wif, and gadrede passyng strong men, Achille, Patroclus, Vlixes, \(\text{aix}^\dagger\) Nestor, wip opere stalworpe men, seuen and fourty; and hadde schippes redy in pe haunee of Athene in nombre of a powsand and two hundred, and hadde answere of Appolyon Delphicus, \(\text{at}^\dagger\) Ilium, \(\text{pat is Troye, schulde be destroyed in pe tenpe}^{\text{C}}\)ere.  
\(\text{Pe Grees took vp here ancers and seilled on pe see, and took grete prayers, and tornde home aze.}\) In pe mene tyme Agamemnon sende messangers Vlixes and Diomedes to kyng Priamus, \(\text{zi}^\dagger\) if he wolde \(\text{f}^\dagger\)elde vp Helene, and sende hisr home azen.  
\(\text{Pan}^\dagger\)e Priamus bypouzt hym, and hadde anon in mynde \(\text{pe}^\dagger\) wrong of \(\text{pe}^\dagger\) Argonautes, \(\text{pe}^\dagger\) deth of his fader, \(\text{pe}^\dagger\) rauyschynge of his suster, \(\text{pe}^\dagger\) displesynge of his messager Antenor.  
\(\text{Pan}^\dagger\) ehe he forsook pees, and heet array \(\text{for}^\dagger\) pe werce.  
Pan when pe oost was i-gadred in eiper side, Hector sloow Proteislaus and Menon, \(\text{and}^\dagger\) slow and felede to pe \(\text{11}^\dagger\) gronde meny men

\(\dagger\) as pey ... Hesiona] wenyngh therby recover his sister Hesiona, Cx.
\(\dagger\) greet and greuous, Cx.
\(\dagger\) Agamenon and Agamynon, MSS., and so below.
\(\dagger\) Mesenes, \(\beta\), \(\gamma\).
\(\dagger\) So \(\beta\), \(\gamma\), Cx.; Flixes, MS., \(\alpha\), and so below.
\(\dagger\) of Athene] om. Cx.
\(\dagger\) Argonautes, MS.
\(\dagger\) heet array] ordeyned, Cx.
\(\dagger\) Protothelus, MS.; Prothesalus, Harl. MS.
\(\dagger\) So MSS. here and below. The translators had Menenom (i.e. Memnon) in their text.
\(\dagger\) pe] om. \(\alpha\), \(\beta\).
\(\dagger\) So the MS.
sobrinus ejus de Hesiona natus, recognita inter eos consanguinitate, eum impediret. Interim conceduntur induciae biennales, ut quise post mortuum suum sepeliat; sed post biennium bellum repetitur, in quo Hector decem fortes duces occidit. Econtra Achilles quatuor illustres viros interimit; ac per octoginta dies acriter pugnatum est continue. Et post dantur induciae triennales. Post quas, inito certamine, plures utrisque corruunt. Et quamvis Hector per somnium Andromachae uxoris suae, ne in bellum prodiret eo die admonitus fuisset, in bellum tamen properat et ab Achille occiditur. Quo sepulto induciae dantur ad annum. Dumque dies anniversarius Hectoris ageretur, adest Achilles amore Polyxenae filiae Priami nimium succensus, cujus nuptias dum petit et consequitur a bello se subtrahit, asserens iniquum fore propter raptum Helenae totam Europam conturbari.
Hesiona, sustir to Priamus, did lette hym knowenge con-
sanguninite betwene themye. After that batelle doen, respite
of ij. yere was grawnte, that men sleyne myȝhte be beryede.
But that space a-paste, the batelle began, contynuenge by
lxxx. daies, in whiche batelle Hector did sle x. nowble
dukes, and Achilles did sle iiiij. stronge men. After whiche
batelle doen, space and respite of iij. yere were grawnte.
The batelle begunne ageyne, mony nowble men were sleyne,
where Hector, warnede by Andromacha his wife, that he
scholde not goe to batelle in that day, was sleyne by
Achilles, whiche beryede, respite was ȝifhen by a yere.
And at the ende of the yere, in the anniversery day of
Hector, Achilles, movede to the luffe of Polyxena, doȝhter
of kynge Priamus, wente to theymye. Whiche desirengre
of Priamus to haue Polyxena, his doȝhter, to his wife, and
hauenge grawnte, come not to pe batelle, seyenge that hit
was a wicked ye thynge alle Europe to be trowbled for
takenge aweye of Helena. Whiche, goenge to batelle at

1 fortō] til, Cx.
2 Thelamōnius, MS.
3 slayn, Cx.
4 was, Cx.; but were (trewes) just below.
5 Sentence slightly varied in Cx.
6 dreame, Cx.
7 not [at, a. and Cx.
8 nons] om. a. and Cx.
9 be batayle, a., here and below.
10 Polyxena, MSS.; Polixeia, Cx.
11 and had] to have, Cx.
12 done, Cx.
13 destrouye, Cx.
Tandem rogatu Græcorum procedens, a Troilo, qui multos Græcos occiderat, vulneratur. Quo jam exasperatus ipsum Troilum et Memnonem occidit. Exinde amaricata Hecuba, uxor Priami, dolum cogitât, diem Achilli statuit, qua filiam suam Poly-

Amazones Trojanos adjuvant.


Achillis mors.

Ad Notas

1 jam, ins. C.D.
2 vulnerat, B.
3 Quo jam] qui jam, B.; unde, C.D.
4 excogitat, A.B.C.D.
5 constituit, C. (not D.)
6 Polyxenam] om. C.D.
7 vulneratûr, D.
8 venit, B.
9 Penthesilea, MSS.
10 Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
pe laste he wente forp at pe prayere of pe Grees, and was i-wounded of Troilus,\(^1\) pat hadde i-slaye meny Grees. Perfore he was angri and wroo, and slow Troilus and Menon also. Pat was Hecuba wonder wroo, Priamus his wif, and by pou\(^2\)te [here of gyle],\(^3\) and sette Achilles a day when he schulde come and fecche home his wyf Polyxena, pat was hir owne dou\(^4\)ter. And whanne pe day was i-come,\(^5\) Alisaundre, pat het Paris, slow Achilles gilefulliche. Perfore pey hadde answere of goddes, pat pe Grees schulde haue pe victorie by Achilles his lynage. Neoptolemus,\(^6\) Achilles his sone, wente forp into bataille; in pe whiche bataile Alisaundre\(^7\) and Aiax were i-wounded to pe deth eiper of eiper. \(\text{Sou\}te pe seuenpe}\) \(\text{here of pe bataille}\)\(^8\) come Penthesilea,\(^9\) queene of Amazones,\(^10\) in help and socour pe Troians, and brak pe sege of pe Grees, and brende meny of hir schippes. No\(\text{peles sche was i-slaye of Neoptolemus pat sche hade i-wounded.}\) After pat Antenor\(^1\) and Eneas counsaillede forto delyuere hoom Eleyne, and forto axe\(^10\) pees. Priamus took grete indignacioun [of here

\(^1\) Troilus, MS. and Cx.  
\(^2\) Added from a, b, and Cx.  
\(^3\) comen, Cx.  
\(^4\) Neophtholomus, MSS., and so below; Neophtholomeus, Harl. MS.  
\(^5\) Paris, Cx.  
\(^6\) siege, Cx.  
\(^7\) Pentasilia, or Pentisilia, MSS.  
\(^8\) Amosons, Cx.  
\(^9\) So Cx.; Antenore, MS., as often; Antenor, Harl. MS.\(^5\)  
\(^10\) desire, Cx.
Priamus; mortem eis intentans, si ultra id persuadeant.\(^1\) Quamobrem ipsi indignati\(^2\) mittunt Polydamantem ad Graecos, urbis traditionem pro salute sua\(^3\) offerentes. Concessa\(^4\) igitur pace illis tribus et omnibus suis, scilicet Antenori, Æneas, et\(^5\) Polydamanti, urbs de nocte hostibus aperitur; ubi Priamus a Neoptolemo etiam ad aras deorum confugiens occiditur.\(^6\) Æneas Polyxenam apud patrem suum Anchisen\(^7\) abscondit ad instantiam Helenæ; libertas Andromachæ conceditur. Polyxena diu quaesita et tandem inventa a Neoptolemo ad patris sui\(^8\) tumulum jugulatur. Æneas propter abscessionem Polyxenæ discedere jubeitur; Antenori terra illa relinquitur; Helena cum suo Menelao domum redit.\(^9\) Igitur pugnatum fuerat\(^10\) apud Trojam decem annis sex mensibus, ceciderunt ex Trojanis ante urbem proditam delxxvi.,\(^11\) sed urbe prodata cellxxxvii.\(^12\) Æneas ergo cum viginti quatuor navibus a patria discessit, comitantibus eum tribus

---

1. *si . . . persuadeant* om. C.D.
2. *indignati* om. C.D.
3. *sua* om. B.
4. *Promissa*, C.D.
5. So B.D.; om. A.E.
6. Altered verbally in C.D.
7. *Enchisen*, B.
8. *sui* om. A.D.
10. *fuit*, B.; *pugnatum est itaque*, D.
11. *milia*, ins. B.C.D.
12. *milia*, ins. B.C.D. (D. has 296.)
counsail, and seide he schulde dey 2if enere he were so wood
to counsail pater et ctesones. [Perfore pey took greet indignacion,] 1
and sente Polydamas to pe Grekes forto betraye pe citee for hire
owne sauciones. The Grekes grauntepe pece to pese pre, [to] 2
Antenor, to Eneas, to Polydamas, and to alle hires, 3 and pe
citee was i-opened by ny3te to pe eneyes. 4 Dpane Priamus
fliz to autours of goddes, and Neoptolemus pursued hym and
slow hym stan deed. 5 Eneas hiddde Polyxena at his fader
Anchises at pe prayer of Helene. Andromache hadde fredon
i-graunted. Polyxena was longe i-souzt, and at pe laste i-founde
and i-slawe of Neoptolemus at here fader tombe. Eneas, for he
haddde hiddde Polyxena, was i-hote be agoo. Pe londe was
i-lefte to Antenor. Helen wente home ažen wip Menelans.
Me hadde i-foužte at Troye ten ̄ere and sixe monpes, and
were i-slawe of pe Troians, or pe citee was bytryed, sixe
hundred pousand pre skore and sixtene; and whan
pe citee was betrayed, pre score powsand and ežtten
powsand. 6 Dpane Eneas wente oute of pe contray wip foure
and twenty schippes, and wip hym pre powsend men and pre

seyanpe pey scholde loose theire lyfes, if thei movede to
hym eny more of pe mater. Wherefore thei, haunenge in-
dignacion, sende Polydamas to pe Grekes, offerenge
totheym the deleyeranunce of the cite, the lifes of theym
grauntepe and of theire men. Whiche grauntepe to theyme
peace, and to alle theire men, that is to saye, vn to An-
tenor, Eneas, and to Polydamas, and to alle theire men,
the ̄ates of the cite were sette open to the Grekes in pe
ny3hte. Where Priamus was sleyne of Neoptolomus. Eneas
takenpe Polyxena, hiddde here at a place of Anchisen
his fader, in the temple of goddes. Also liberte was
graunted to Andromache at the instaunce of Helena.
Polyxena, dožhter to Priamus, founde at the laste, was
throtelede at the beryalle of here fader. Wherefore Eneas
was commandede to departe from that cuntre, for the
hidenge off Polyxena. That londe was lefte to Antenor,
and Helena was restorede to Menelans her howsebonde,
kynge of Athenes. Where thei did sižhte by x. yere and
vj. monethes, and there were sleyne of the Troianes, afore
the treason of hit, vjc. lxxvij. m1, and after the treason of
that cite ec. lxxvij. m1. Eneas departede from that cuntre,
takenpe with hym xxiiij schippes, with iij. m1. men and eec.: 

---

1 Added from a. and Cx. (8. has
bei for he twice.)
2 Added from a. β. and Cx.
3 to alle thoyr retinue, Cx.
4 Grekes, Cx.
5 stan deed] om. Cx.
6 Sentence recast by Cx.

VOL. II.
milibus et trecentis, Antenorem quoque secuti sunt duo milia, Andromacham et Helenum duo milia.

**Cap. XXV.**


Aylon.  

Aylon de tribu Zabulon judicavit Israel decem annis; quos tamen Septuaginta interpretes non numerant, et ideo Eusebius annumerat ejus annos temporibus Josuæ, Samuelis, et Saulis, quorum annos Scriptura tacet, plus annorum ponens quam in Josepho reperitur. Ita ut ab egressu de Ægypto usque ad tempulum Salomonis sunt anni quadringenti octoginta.  

Abdon.  

Abdon sive Labdon judicavit Israel octo annis, cuius anno tertio capta est Troja, anno scilicet a nativitate Abrahæ octingentesimo xliij., ab egressu Israel de Ægypto ccxl., anno regni regis Latini in Italia xxv., anno ante urbem Romam conditam circiter quadringentesimo xxxii. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. Post Trojam eversam,
hundred, and wip Antenor two¹ powsand, wip Andromache² Trevisa, and Helenus two powsand.


Aylon, of þe lynage of Zabulon, was iuge of Israel ten þeres. Nepæles þe Sevene accountþ hem nonst, and þ erw Eusebius accountþ his þeres of Iosue, of Samuel, and of Saul; for þe Scripture spekeþ nonst of herþ þeres. Nepæles þey setteþ moo þeres þan beeþ i-founde by Iosephus. So þat þrom þe goynge out of Egipte anon to Salaman his temple were foure hundred þere and foure score. Abdon, þat heet Lapdon, was also iuge of Israel eiþte þere. In his þridde þere Troye was i-take, eiþte hundred þere and foure and foutry after Abraham his burþe, þre hundred þere and foutry after þe goynge out of Egipt, þe þere of kynge Latyn in Italy þyue and twenty, to þore þe buldyng of Rome aboute an ³ foure hundred þere and two and pritty.⁴ Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. After þat Troye was destroyed, þit while kynge Latyn reignede in Itali, þe Grekes þat tornede azen and ⁵ hadde þe

and also ij. m. folowede Antenor, and ij. m. Helena and MS. Harl. 2261. Andromacha.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

Aylon, of the tribe of Zabulon, was governoure in Israel x. yere, whom the lxxvi interpretatores do not annumerate; þerfore Eusebius ziffeth þat tyme to the yeres of Iosue, Samuel, and of Saul, the yeres of whom Scripture dothe not rehearse. Abdon, other Labdon, was governoure in Israel xliiiij. yere, in the cce. and fowrty yere of the egres- sion of the childer of Israel from Egipte, in the xxiv. yere off the reigne of kynge Latinus in Italy, and cce. xxxijij. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo sexto. After the de- struction of T Troye, Latinus the kynge reignenge that tyme in Italy, the Grekes were afflictie and trowlde soore in

¹ thre, Cx.
² Adromache, MS. A few similar trivial errors of orthography have been tacitly corrected in this chapter.
³ ou] So MS., a. β. γ.; om. Cx.
⁴ twenty, Cx.
⁵ This word should be cancelled apparently, though found in all the four MSS.
regnavit adhuc in Italia rege Latino, reversi Graeci multipliciter in itinere sunt afflictii. Nam, teste Varro libro tertio de historiis, socii Diomedes in volucres sunt conversi, ipseque Diomedes in itinere dispara\nuit, ita ut pro deo sit habitus, templumque ejus\ncelebre sit apud insulam Diomediam non longe a monte Gargano in Apulia; et hoc templum circumvolare atque incolere aves perhibentur tam mirabili obsequio ut aquam rostris\nspargant. Ubi si venerint Graeci aut Graecorum stirpe nati\neis adulantur;\nsi autem alienigenas viderint, grandibus rostris eos vulnerant.\n
Et ad id astraendum narrat Varro non fabuloso mendacio sed historica veritate de illa maga famosissima Circe, quae socius Ulixis mutavit in bestias; et de Arcadibus qui sorte ducti transnatabant quod\ndam stagnum atque ibi convertebantur\nin lupos, et cum feris\nvivebant. Si autem non vescerentur ibi\ncarne humana, rursum post novem annos renatato\nstagno re\nformabantur in homines. Dicit etiam\n
---

1 ejus] om. E
2 rostris, om. A B.
3 progeniti, C.D.
4 So D., which has et illic sic above; adulentur, A.E.
5 verberant, B.
6 vertebantur, B.
7 ibidem, ins. C.D.
8 ibi] om. B.
9 denatato, C. (not D.)
10 denique, C.D.
weie many mysshapes. For Varro, ¹ libro tertio de historia, seip pat Diomed his felawes were i-torned in to foules, and Diomedes hym self was na more i-seie; so pat he was i-holde a god. His temple is solempne in pe ilond Diomedia, nouȝt fer from Mont Gargan in Apulia. ² Me seip pat foules wonep and fleep about pis temple, and servep wonderliche, and springep water. ³if pe Grees or ³ eny oþer of pe kynde of [pe] ⁴ Grees comep peder, pe bryddes makep ⁵ hem good semblance; ⁶ and ³if eny oþer comeþ, þey woundep hem wiþ hire grete beeles. And forto conferme þe same Varro ⁷ telleþ nouȝt a fable lesynge, but sopenesse of storie of pat famous wicche ⁸ Circe, pat tornede ⁹ and chaungeþ Vlixes his felawes into bestes; and of þe Arcades ¹⁰ þat by lot swam ouer a pool and þan were i-torned into wolfes and leuede wiþ wylde bestes, and ³if he ¹¹ ete þere no manis flesche, þey schulde after nyne þere swymme home ouer þe pool and torne aþen in to schap of mankynde. [He sayth also that Demenetus, when he had

theire returnenge home. For as the poete Varro reheersethe, libro iiij, de Historia, the felowes of Diomedes were turnede in to bryddes, and the same Diomedes euandeschede awey sodenly in that journey, in so moche that he is worschippede for a god, whose temple is an yle callede Diomedia, not ferre from the bille callede Garganus, in that londe callede Apulia. In whiche temple bryddes be of so grete diligence that thei caste water with theire billes, and if men of Greece comme thider, other elles eny of the kynde of theyme, thei schewe pleasure to theym. And if thei fynde other straungeoures there, thei harte theyme with theire grete billes. To the whiche affirmacion Varro reheassethe, not as in fabulose lesynge, but as in a tawthe historicaele, of the moste famous Circes, whiche chaungeþ the felowes of Vlixes in to bestes; and of men of Arcadia, or of Arcades,¹⁰ whiche after chaunce did swymme ouer a water, and were turnede in to wolfes, lyvenge in deserte amonge wilde bestes; and if thei did not eite the flesche of man, thei scholde returne after ix. yere y-paste vn to theire propre similitude and kynde, that water y-swymmede ouer ageyne. Also he seythe, that when Demenetus hade tastede

¹ So b. 7., Cx.; Farro, MS., a. ² So a. and Cx.; Ampula, MS. ³ So also Cx.; oþer, a. (or is very frequently oþer in a.) ⁴ Added from a. and Cx. ⁵ make, a. ⁶ semblant, a., Cx. ⁷ So a. and Cx.; Farro, MS. ⁸ dygnocor, sorcrese, and wythe, Cx. ⁹ transfourmede, Cx. ¹⁰ Arcades, MSS. and Cx. ¹¹ they, CX. (a frequent variation.)
cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam 1 formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercuisse, et Olympico postmodum vicisse 2 certamine. Plinius, libro xvii., 3 capitulo xxiv. 4 Homines in lupos verti rursumque 5 restitui falsum existimamus. 6 Auctores tamen Graeciae tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu corundem in quercu suspenso tranare, 7 et in deserto in lupos transfigurari, 8 et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinerint, rursum restitutum stagnum ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem 9 annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat. 10 Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. 11 Quid igitur ad hae dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam 1 formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercuisse, et Olympico postmodum vicisse 2 certamine. Plinius, libro xvii., 3 capitulo xxiv. 4 Homines in lupos verti rursumque 5 restitui falsum existimamus. 6 Auctores tamen Graeciae tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu corundem in quercu suspenso tranare, 7 et in deserto in lupos transfigurari, 8 et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinerint, rursum restitutum stagnum ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem 9 annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat. 10 Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo. 11 Quid igitur ad hae dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam

---

1 pristinam, C. (not D.)
2 vixisse, B.
3 18°, C.D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 34. (c. 22 of some.)
4 2°., A.
5 rursusque, C.D.
6 existimamus, C.D.
7 transnatura, B.
8 transformari, B.
9 novem] om. E.
10 careat] om. E.
11 The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 18.
of the sacrifice of Archades he was turnede in to a wolfe, and restorede in to his propur forme after ix. yere y-paste, and to haue hade the victorie after that at the actes Olimpicalle. Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo secundo. Pat men torned in to 5 wolves and of 6 in to hire owne schap, we trowep it be false. Nopeles auctores of Grees tellep pat 7 Arcades were i-lad to a pool in pe same lond, and heng hire cloves on an ook, and swam ouer pe pool, and in wildernesse tornede into wolves, and nyne zeere wonede among wolves; and 8if pey kepte hem al pat tyme and ete no manis flesche, pey schulde swymme home a3e, and take here owne cloves and hire owne schap, and be nyne zeere eldere 9 pan pey were whan they wente out: but peere is no lesynges so grete pat is wip oute witnesse. 10 Augustinus, libro 18o., 10 capitulo 16. 11 Pan what schal we saye to alle pees sawes? 12 Certeynliche whanne we were in Italy we herde i-now of women hostelers of pat lond, pat vsede to zeue chese pat was bywicched to men pat

1 Read Arcos; but the error may salute be ascribed to the translators themselves. 2 Added from B. γ., Cx. (γ. omits of mankynde). 3 toryng, Cx. 4 Olymp, a. B. 5 be transformed into, Cx. 6 oft, Cx. 7 pat be, a. (not Cx.) 8 older, Cx. 9 pat ... witnesse] but it may be confirmed, Cx. 10 So a. and Cx.; 16, MS. 11 So a. and Cx.; 22, MS. 12 saynygs, Cx.
illarum partium mulieribus stabulariis, quae dare solebant caseum veneficum viatoribus; unde et in jumenta illico verterentur, et onera portarent, manente in eis mente rationali; iterumque perfuncto officio ad se redire. Sic quoque de se fatetur Apuleius in libro suo sibi contigisse, quod veneno hujusmodi sumpto, et humano manente animo, asinus fieret. Ranulphus.

Simile narrat Willelmus de Regibus libro secundo de duabus incantatricibus, quae in strata publica Romam ducente habitantes, hospitem, si quando solus veniebat, in aliquod animal vertebant. Unde et quendam histriomem sic hospitatum in asinum verterunt mirabilibus gesticulationibus insignitum, quem et pro ingenti summâ pecunie cuidam diviti vendiderunt; sub tali tamen admonitione, quod aquam nunquam transiret. Custos itaque illi appositus aliquandiu mandatum rigide observabat, verutamentem temporis lapsu sub laxiori custodia asinus evadens in proximum lacum se projecit, et sic pristinam formam humanam receptit. Custos insequens de asino amissò a quocumque occurrente sciscitatur. Refert ille sic reformatus se asinum fuisse,

---

1 et] om. A.B.C.D.
2 perfiuit, A.; perfecto, C.D.
3 officio] om. A.
4 hujusmodi] om. C.D.
5 in eo] ins. C.D.
6 animo] om. E.
7 Ranulphus . . . xer.] om. C.D.
8 So A.B.; ducentes, E.
9 quendam] om. B.
10 si, B.
11 diviti] om. A.
12 quod non in aquam transiret, A.; nunquam solus ad aquam, B.
13 cadens, B.
14 Transposed in B.
trauailed by pe weie, and anon 1 pe men tornede into bestes and bar heuy charges, and hadde kyndeliche witte and resoun; and when pey hadde i-doo hir servyce pey tornede a\^en into 2 hir owne schap. Also Apule[i]us in his book knowlechede 3 pat so hit happed hym self, pat he toke suche venym, and hadde his witte and resoun, and was i-made an asse.4 B. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo, tellep suche 5 doynge of twyne wicches pat wonede in pe hizede wye pat ledep to Rome; 6 and 7if eny gest come allone, pey torned 7 hym in to a beest; and so come by ham a mynstral pat coupe moche merpe, and pey tornede hem in to an asse, and solde hym to a riche man for a grete somme of monay. Nopeles wip suche warnyuge pat he schulde neuere passe water, and his wardeyn kepte hym besiliche longe tyme. Nopeles in passynge of tyme he took lasse hede to his asse; and pe asse seaped to water, and torned a\^en in to pe schappe of mankynde. Pe wardeyn of pe asse folowede after, and asked 8 his asse of euerich man pat he mette; and he, pat hadde ben an asse [and] 9 was torned to

to 11if chese to trauellenge men tho the whiche thei were changde in to other similitudes and did bere burthones, the mynde of man remanente in theyme. And to returne to theire propre forme, that office and labore doen. Also Apule[i]us rehersethe in his boke that same thynge to haue happede to hym tho the recepeion of suche venome, and to haue been made an asse, haunenge the mynde of a man. B. Willelmus, de Regibus et Pontificibus, libro 2°, rehersethe, acerdene to the confermacion of this mater, of ij. wicches dwellenenge at Rome, wonte to changhe a man in to an other similitude, if that he come to their place sole. Whiche women turnede in a season a icouler other myn- strelle in to the similitude of a ryalle asse, whom thei solde for a grete summe of money, vnder this condicion and monici to the byer, that the asse scholde not goe ouer the water in eny wise. The byer kepede that commandemente streytely a longe season, neuerthelesse he had more liberte in kepene by processe of tyme, whiche goeinge ouer a water was restoride in to his propre forme. The byer of the asse folowenge, inquirede of eueri man with whom he did mete of his asse. That man restoride to his propre forme seide that he was that asse, and to be restoride to

---

1 to be, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
2 to, a.
3 knowlechede, a. B.; saith, Cx.
4 Some words erroneously repeated in MS. (which omits $\beta$), and a.; (text as $\beta$. $\gamma$. and Cx.)
5 pat suche, MS. (not Cx.)
6 wey to Romeward, Cx.
7 turned, a. B.
8 azed after, Ux.
9 Added from a. and Cx.
et modo hominem induisse. Famulus custos ad do-
minum suum hunc adducit. Dominus autem ad Leonem
papam utrumque ducit. Incantatrices anicule coram
papa convictae id idem fatentur. Dubitantem papam
super hac re confirmat Petrus Damianus, litteraturae
peritus, exemplo Simonis Magi, qui Faustinianum in
Simonis figura videri et a filiis propriis horri
rat. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitul

decimo. Tenendum est igitur daemones, nisi Deo
mittente, nihil posse; nec etiam naturam aliquam
creare, neque animum neque corpus mutare. Quae
tamen a vero Deo conditore creata sunt specie
tenus videntur aliquando commutare, ita videlicet ut illud
hominis fantasticum, quod cogitando sive somnia
diant, per rerum genera, etiam cum corpus non sit, corpo
rum tamen similis formas mira celeritate capit, sopitis
corporeis sensibus; fantasticum autem illud velut cor
poratum in aliquus animalis effigie appareat sensibus aleni,
talisque homo sibi videatur esse, quals ibi
videri posset in somnis, et portare onera. Quae si vera

---

1 adducit, B.
2 So A.; om. E.
3 nec, A.
4 aliquod, ins. C.D.
5 permutare, B.
6 creator condita, C. (not D.)
7 daemones, ins. C.D.
8 variatur, A.D.
9 corporum, A.
10 mina, C.D.
11 fantasticum ... sensibus] om. A.B.
12 Sentence slightly varied in C.D.
man azen, seide pat he hadde ben an asse and was by come a man. And his waredeyn ladde hym to his lorde, and pe lorde ladde hem bope to Leon pe pope, and pe olde wieches were connyte tofore pe pope, and knowledged pe dede. Pe pope dowted of pis ping, and Petrus Damianus, a conwynde man of lettrure, confermede pe manere doynghe by ensample of Simon Magus, pat tornede Faustinus in to his owne schappe, and made his owne children drede hym ful sore. Augustinus ubi supra. Hit is to trowyng, pat fendet moved ouz to but at Goddis suffraunce; and so pe movie make no manere kynde, noper body chaunge. Nopeles it semep somtyyme pat pey chaungep liknes and schappe of pinges, pat God made and wrouzte; so pat pe fantasie of man pat chaungep in pouz and in metynge of sweueneys by dyuers manere pinges, and takep pe lyknesse of bodyes wip a wonder swiftnesse, pey no body be present. Whan pe wittes of pe body beep absent and i-lette of here worchynge, and pe ymage and liknesse, pat is in pouz and in fantasie, is as it were i-pynted in pe liknesse of som beest, and semep to oper men wittes in pe same liknesse. And so a man may seme to hym self suche as he seme in metynge of sweueneys; and so

his propre similitude. The seruante and keper of that MS. Harl. asse brozhte the man to his lorde. Then the lorde and byer of that asse brozhte bothe the wieches to Leo the pope, whiche conniete afore the pope graunte the thyng. The pope dowteng of that thyng, Damianus, a man excellente in sapience, affermede Faustinianus to be seen in the similitude of Simon Magus, and to be drede sore of his awne childer. Augustinus, ubi supra. Hit is to be holde that the deuelles may not do eny thyng but by the permission and sfferance of God, neither to create eny nature, neither to chaunge the body or sawle of those thynges which be create of Allemlyghty God. Neuerthelesse thei appere to chaunge thynges to the sijhte, as the vertu fantasticalle, when a man is in slepe, caesthe a man as to apparence to be chaungede in to en other similitude, and see that thyng fantasticalle appere the to theyme

\[1\] led., a., Cx.
\[2\] doute, a.
\[3\] Damianus, MS.; also Symon and Faustinus below. Other MSS. read as in text, but Faustinus is the mistake of Trevisa.
\[4\] lettrure, Cx.
\[5\] childer, Cx.
\[6\] It is to be bileyned, Cx.
\[7\] ne chaunge bodyes, Cx.
\[8\] a man, Cx.
\[9\] astent, a. (not Cx.)
\[10\] i-sette, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
\[11\] So a. and Cx.; in, MS.
\[12\] i-pynted, a. & y. and Cx.
\[13\] to] pat, MS. (not a.)
\[14\] in [pe] so b. y., Cx.; &e, MS., a.
sunt onera, portantur a daemonibus; ut sic illusio fiat hominibus. Nam quidam nomine Prestantius patri suo hoc contingisse narravit, ut venenum illud per caseum in domo sua suomeret, et jaceret in lecto quasi dormiens, nec posset aliquatenus excitari. Post aliquot vero dies evigilans quasi somnia narrabat, quae passus fuerat; se videlicet caballum effectum, et annonam inter alia animalia militibus apud Rhaeticam bajulasse; quod ita ut narravit factum fuisset commer
tum est. Dixit etiam se domi per noctem vidisse quandam philosophum sibi notum, sibique exposuisse nonnulla Platonica, quae antea rogatus exponere noluerat. Et cum ab eodem philosopho quæsitum fuisset cur in domo ejus fecerit quod in domo propria petenti negaverat, "Nec feci," inquit, "sed me sic fecisse somniavi." Ac per hoc alteri per imaginem fantasticam exhibitum est vigilanti, quod alter vidit in somnis. Proinde quod Arcades vertuntur in lupos; quod carminibus Circes socii Ulixis vertuntur in volucres secundum istum modum videtur mihi posse fieri, si tamen factum est. Socii vero Diomedis, quia cito disparuerunt et nusquam comparuerunt, perdentibus cos ulterioribus angelis malis, creduntur in alias aves conversi; que arte da-
hym may sene pat he berep burpnes and charges; [but if pey beep verrey burpnes and charges], 1 fendes berep hem, pat men move so be bygiled. For oon Prestantius tolde pat suche an happe byfel his owne fader, pat he took suche venym by chese in his owne hors, and lay in a bed, as he were slep-ynge; and no man myȝte hym awake, but after many dayes he wook, 2 and tolde as it were a sweuenue how hym was byfalle; for hym pouȝte pat he was i-made an hors, and bare corne among oper bestes to knyȝtes pat were at Retica; 3 and it was i-founde, pat riȝt as he tolde it was i-doo in dede. He seide also pat he say a philosopre at home in his hous; pe whiche philo-
sophe 4 expowne hym 5 many pinges 6 of Plato his bookes, pe whiche pinges he hadde i-bede hym expowne to fore honde, and he wolde not. And whan me axed of pe philosopre, why he wolde expowne in anoþer manis hous pat [he] 7 hadde denyed in his owne, “Nay,” quod he, “I dede nouȝt so, but I “mette pat I dede.” And in pat manere by pe ymage and liknes of fantasie it was schewed to pat oon woking what pat oper mette in his slepe. Perfore pat pe Arcades torned in to wolves by wiecheerhaft of Circa, 8 me sempe it myȝte bee in pis manere, noþele yf it were soop. But for Diomedes his felaweys vanschede sodeynliche awye, and were neuere after i-founde, me trouwe pat wicked angels took wreche of hem, and torned hem in to anoþer foules liknesse, 9 pat were i-made and i-brouȝt

as thynghe corporealle in a straunge similitude, and to bere burdenes, whiche be borne of deuelles and if the trawthe myȝhte be known. A nowble man, Prestantius by name, reherseth the a thynghe to haue happepede to his fader by the eyntene of chese, lyenge in his bedde that he myȝhte not move. Whiche man awakede rehersede meruellous thynges whiche he hade suffrede, and how that he was made in the similitude of an horse, and how he bare corne amonge other bestes to Retica, 3 whiche thyngue was provede to haue bene after his narracion. Also that men of Arcadie be chaungede in to wolues, and that pe felaweys of Vlixes were chaungede in to bryddes thro Circe, 8 y thenke that hit may be doen by this maner rehersede afor. The felaweys of Diomedes be supposede to haue bene chaungede in to bryddes, which were pereschede as sodenly of myȝhty bryddes, callede Gripes, but to be trawde raper that thei were deuelles, which bryddes were brouȝtethro the

---

1 Added from a. β. and Cx.
2 So a.; awafoon, Cx.; tok, MS.
3 Retica, MSS.
4 Words erroneously repeated in MS. and a.; text as β. γ., Cx.
5 to him, Cx.
6 secretes, Cx.
7 Added from a. and Cx.
8 So MSS. and Cx., for Circe; but correctly above; Sirices, Harl. MS.
9 torned hem in to oer foules, a.
β. γ.
monum aliunde deductæ sunt, et in loco illorum hominum subrogatæ, sicut cerva pro Iphigenia Agamemnonis filia supposta fuisset cognoscitur. Quod autem Diomedis templo aves rostratæ aquam spargunt et Graecigenis blandiuntur, daemonum fit instinctu; quorum interest persuadere hominibus Diomedem deum factum esse, ut sic decipiantur homines in cultura deorum falsorum. Ranulphus. De ista materia vide plus supra, primo libro, capitulo Hibernia. Giralduc in Topographia. Daemones seu mali homines naturae mutare non possunt; sed species, Deo permittente, transmutant seu transfigurant. Ita ut sensibus humanis illumine sopitis res non videantur sicut sunt, sed vi phantasmatis aut magicæ artis fictitiae formæ appareant; sed Deum sicut res creare ita et eas invicem commutare se vindicando aut potentiam suam seu misericordiam declarando non absurdum credimus; sicut uxorem Loth in statuam salis, et aquam in vinum, vel, interiore manente natura, extra solum transformare.
pider by craft of fondes in stede of pe men, as hit is i-knowe. Pat an hynde was i-brouȝt and i-put in stede of Iphigenia, Agamemnon\(^3\) his douȝter; and she was i-lad away. Pat foules at Diomedes temple springeþ water, and flatereth wip pe Grees, pat is by excitynge of pe deuel for to brynge men in witte for to trowe\(^4\) pat Dyomede is i-made a god, pat men be so begiled in worschippyng of false goddes. R. Loke more of pis matere in pe firste book, capitulo Hibernia. Giraldus in Topographia. Fondes and wicked men move not chaunge kynde but by suffraunce of God; pei move chaunge liknesse and schappe and lette manis wittes and bygile men, so pat pinges someþ nouȝt as þey bêep. But by strengþe of fantasis and of wicche craft man haueþ semynghe by feyned schappes; but it is nouȝt vnstinynghe\(^5\) pat we trowe pat God as he makeþ pinges of nouȝt, so he chaungeþ hem oon into anoþer,\(^6\) forto take riþful wrecche oper forto scheue his myȝt oper meriec. So he tornede Loth is wyf in to an ymage of salt, and water in to wyn; oper chaunge pe liknesse wip oute and leue pe kynde vnchaunged wip yne.

illusion of the deuelle, and subrogate in pe places of those men. Lyke as a herte was knowne to haue benc putte in the place of Iphigenia\(^2\) douȝter of Agamemnon.\(^3\) And that grete bryddes caste water with theire bylles in the temple of Diomedes, and scheue as a gloyenge chere to men of Grees, is causeþ by the illusion of the deuelle, causenge men to beleve that Diomedes was a godde, that men scholde be deceyvede in the worschippyng of false goddes. R. Behold more of this matere afore, libro primo, capitulo 34\(^o\). Giraldus in Topographia. Denelles or ylle men may not chaunge nature of eny thynge, but thei may chaunge similitudes thro the permission of God, so that the trawthe of the thynge dothe not appere, the wyttes oppressede with the illusion of the deuelle; but after a similitude fantasticalle made and causeþ by wycehecratf. But we beleve Godde, that made nature, to chaunge them, lyke as he chaungedde the wife of Loth in to a grete parte and quantite of salte, and water in to wynye.

---

1 Clauses varied in Cx.
2 *Ephigenia*, MSS. and Cx.
3 *Agamennon*, MSS. and Harl. MS.
4 for to trowe, [e.c.] to believe Diomed to be made a god, Cx.
5 Sic MS.; and so a. B. γ., Cx.
6 oper, a. B. γ.
CAP. XXVI.

De Ænea et Didone, et de regibus Latinis. Quæ in Græcia acciderunt tempore Sampson. ¹

Æneas in Italiam venit.

Martinus. Post Trojæ excidium Æneas ² cum Anchise patre suo ³ Ascanioque ⁴ filio in navibus duo-decem venerunt in Siciliam, ubi Anchise mortuo, cum vellet Æneas navigare Italianam, tempestate pulsus venit in Africam; ubi a Didone regina nimium est adamatus. Sed post aliquantulæ more spatiwm relicta Didone devenit ¹⁰ Italianam. Ranulphus. Sed si verum est quod Trogus et Papias et alii docti dicunt Carthaginem fuisse fundatam a Didone septuagesimo secundo anno ante conditionem urbis Rome, quæ condita est anno quarto Achaz regis Judæ, constabit ¹¹ quod Æneas nunquam vidit Didonem reginam Carthaginis, quia Æneas precessit Didonem, ¹² et obiit ante fundationem Carthaginis plusquam trecentis annis. Et hoc ¹³ innuit Augustinus primo libro Confectionum in fine, ¹⁴ dicens quod docti negant ¹⁵ Æneam vidisse Carthaginem. ¹⁶ Hugutio, capitulo Elissa. Hæc Dido vocata est Elissa, id est virago, ab eventu subsecuto; quia viriliter

¹ No title in MSS.
² Æneas] om. B.
³ et, ins. C.D.
⁴ So A.B.; E. omits que.
⁵ in] suo cum, C.D.
⁶ in] om. A.B.
⁷ repulsus, C.D.
⁸ devenit, C.D.
⁹ regina] om. B.
¹⁰ So A.B.D.; venit, E.
¹¹ constat, A.B.
¹² Didonem] om. A.B.
¹³ Et hoc] ut, B.
¹⁴ in fine] so A.B.; om. E.
¹⁵ negabant, A.B.
Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

After þe destroyenge of Troye, Eneas wip his fader Anchises and his son Ascanius wip twelve schippe come to Sicil. Þere Anchises deide. And whanne Eneas wolde seille into Itali, tempest drof hym in to Afriaca. Þere he was hugeliche i-loued of Dido þe queene; but after a schort tyme he lefte Dido and come in to Italy. R. Yf it is soop þat Trogus and Papy and oþer wise men telleþ, þat Dido bulde Cartage þre score þere and twelue to fore þe byldynge of þe citee of Rome, þat was i-bulde þe fourþe þere of Achaz, kyng of Juda, þanne it is soop þat Eneas sygþ neuere Dido þe queene of Cartago; for Eneas was to foþeronde, and deide þre honderd þere and more to fore þe buldyng of Cartage. And þat menþep þe Saint Austyn primo libro Confessionum in fine, and seip þat wise men denyeþ þat Eneas sey Cartage.7 Hugutio, capitulo Elissa. Þis Dido heete Elissa, þat is Virago, a manliche woman; for hap þat fel afterward, for sehe

Martinus. Eneas, with Anchisen his fader, and Ascanius his son, come to Sicille with xij. schippe, after the batelle of Troy, where Anchisen diede, whiche dedde, Eneas willenge to sayle to Italy, was broughte thr wordes in the see vn to Affrica, where he was luffede moche of Dido the qwene. Whiche, leveenge Dido the qwene, wente in to Italy. R. And if that be travethe that Trogus and Papis rehearse, seyenge that cite of Carthago to haue bene made by Dido in the lxxij. yere afor the makeenge of the cite of Rome, whiche was edifiede in the iiijthe yere of Achaz kyng of Juda; then hit may be concludeþ that Eneas see neuere Dido qwene of Carthago, for Eneas was before the fundacion of Carthago more than cccc. yere. To the whiche confirmacion Seynte Austyn seythe, primo libro Confessionum, in the ende, that men discrete denye Eneas to have seen Carthago.7 Hugutio, capitulo Elissa. That Dido was calleþ Elissa, that is to say, virago, of a chau[n]ce folowenge, for

1 destruction, Cx.
2 and there, Cx.
3 Sentence varied in Cx.
4 hugeliche] right wel, Cx.
5 So a.; seip, Cx.; seip, MS. (probably clerical error for sete).
6 was before, Cx., who varies the sentence.
7 So a, b. γ.; Cartago, MS. and Harl. MS.
Eneas et Evander contra Latinum et Turnum pugnant.

Eneas eorum regibus potitus. Lavinium condit;


1 ad] om. B.
2 ipsa] om. D.
3 sibi] om. C. (not D.)
4 et] om. B.D.
5 Thussie, A.
6 Citation slightly abbreviated in C.D.
7 Ramulphus] om. A.B.
8 Pompeius, ins. C.D.
9 93°., C.D. wrongly. See lib. xliii. c. 1.
10 Latini meruit, C.D.
11 Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
12 Eneas et Latinus] om. C.D.
13 adversus, C.D.
14 regem Tuscorum, ins. C.D.
15 susceperint, A.; protulerunt, C.D.
16 quidem, ins. C.D.
17 occubuerunt, C.D.
18 scilicet . . . Tuscorum] om. C.D.
19 et] om. C.D.
20 urbem . . . regem] om. A.B.
21 Tuscorum, ins. C.D.
slow\3 hir self manliche. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.*\(^1\) At \^e
laste \(\pis\) Elissa, Pygmalion\(^2\) hys dou\^zter, whan h\(\^e\)\(^3\) schulde be\(^4\) compelled of \^e peple forto take an housbonde, sche wene in
to a greet fuyre \^at sche hadde i-made; and so sche slow hir
self manliche, and was longe after i-worshipped as a goddes.
*Martinus.*\(^5\) Pan Eneas com in to Itali, and was confedered and
i-swore to kyng Euander, \^at poo regnedde in seuene hilles.
\^ese twaysne fausi\^ste a\^zenst Latyn, kyng of Latyns, and a\^zenst
Turnus,\(^5\) kyng [of Tusean, kyng]\(^6\) Latyn his dou\^zter hous-
bonde, in \^at batayle Pallas Euander his sone and Turnus
were i-slawe. \(^R\). No\^peles Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio,
wil mene \^at Eneas in his firste conyng fond so grete grace
wip kyng Latyn, \^at he entrede into a partye of \^e kyngdom,
and wedded Lauyn,\(^7\) kyng Latyn his dou\^zter, \^at was Turnus
his spouse; and so bope Latyn and Eneas i-confedered to
gidres toke batayle a\^zenst Turnus for \^e gileful mariage of
Lauyn, and Latyn and Turnus were bope dede in \^at bataile.
And Eneas afterward was kyng of eipher kyngdom of Latyns
and of Tuseans, and bulde a citee and cleped \^e citee Lau-
nium by \^e name of his wif, and werred afterward a\^zenst \^e

sche did sle here selfe manly. *Trogus, libro decimo octavo.*
That Elissa, do\^zhter vn to Pygmalion, compelled by the
peple to take an houwsebonde, wende in to a place that sche
hade made, and did sle here selfe, whiche was worship-
pede longe for a godesse. *Martinus.* Eneas, commenge
to Ytaly, was confederate with Euander kynghe, whiche
regnedde in vij. mowynes. Whiche i\(j\) so confederate \^afe
batelle ageyne Latinus, kyngge off Latynes, and ageyne
Turnus, kyngge of Tuseia, son in lawe to kyngge Latinus,
in whiche batelle Pallas, the son of Euander, and Turnus
were slyene. \(^R\). But Trogus rehersethe, libro xliij\(j\), that
Eneas in his firste commenge to Ytaly founde suche grace
of kyngge Latinus, that he admittede hym in to parte of
his realme; whiche toke Lauinia, \^e wife of Turnus and
do\^zhter of kyngge Latinus, in to his wife. Wherefore thei,
so confederate as Eneas and Latinus, \^afe batelle ageyne
Turnus for the fraude and delay of the weddyngge of La-
uma his do\^zhter. In whiche batelle Turnus and Latinus
were slyene. That batelle doen, Eneas reioycede bothe
the realmes, of Latynes and of Tuseia, and made a citee,
callenge hit Lauinium, after the name of his wife, whiche

---

1 So a, and Cx.; octavo, MS., wrongly. See *lib. xvi\(i\)*, c. 6.
2 Pygmaloeon, MS.
3 So also a, she, Cx.; hea, \(\beta\); a, \(\gamma\).
4 have be, Cx.
5 Turnus, MS., a. (not \(\beta\), Cx.)
6 Added from a, 8, and Cx.
7 So a, and Cx.; Lamyn, MS., and so below.
In bello contra Mezentium occiditur. De Iulo, qui et Ascanius vocatur.

Mesentium\(^1\) egit;\(^2\) in quo et\(^3\) Æneas\(^4\) occubuit, relecto post se Ascanio filio\(^5\) quem ex Creüsa genuerat apud Trojanam.\(^6\) Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quarto.\(^7\) Iulus\(^8\) fuit filius Æneae, qui primo loco dictus\(^9\) est Ascanius, ab Ascanio fluvio Phrygiae, et postmodum\(^10\) dictus est Iulus\(^11\) ab Ilo\(^12\) rege Trojanó. Hugutio, capitolio Iulus.\(^13\) Postmodum\(^11\) occiso Mesentio\(^15\) Tuscorum\(^16\) rege certamine singulari, Ascanius\(^17\) vocatus est lulus,\(^18\) a prima lanugine barbae tunc primum in ea\(^19\) apparente, quae proprie dicitur lulus;\(^21\) et est nomen disyllabum, licet quandoque metrice ponatur trisyllabum.\(^22\) Ranulphus. Hie notandum est quod nisi tres anni regni\(^24\) computentur infra annos regis\(^25\) Latini vacillabit historiae calculatio, quae dicit Latinum regnasse xxxij. annis; praeertim cum anno xxv\(^o\) regis Latini\(^27\) secundum omnes historicos Æneas, capta Troja,\(^28\) Italiam venerit.

20 Ascanius filius Æneas ceepit regnare apud Latinos, et regnavit triginta octo\(^30\) annis. Qui relecto oppido Lavinio, quod pater suus\(^31\) construxerat, AlbamLon-

---

1 So A.D.E.; Mezentium, B. Commonly written Mezentius, but text agrees with Greek form.
2 gessit, C.D., and gennit below.
3 et\(^3\) om. A.
4 et Æneas\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\) om. C.D.
5 filio\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\) om. C.D.
6 apud Trojanam\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\) om. C.D.
7 libro quarto\(^\text{[om. B.D.; quarto, om. A.]}\)
8 Ylus, B.
9 vocatus, C.D.
10 et postmodum\(^\text{[postea, C.D.]}\) om. A.
11 So D.E. (second hand); Ilus, A.; Ylus, B.C.
12 Ylo, B.D.
13 Julius, B.
14 Postea, C.D.
15 Meccacio, B.
16 So D.; Tuscorum, A.E., placing rege before Mesentio.
17 Ascanius\(^1\) om. C.D.
18 Ylus, B.
19 [tunc primum] primo, B.; populum, E.
20 so, B.D.
21 Yulus, B.
22 licet . . . trisyllabum\(^\text{[om. C.D.]}\)
23 Hic . . . quad\(^\text{[Et, C.D.]}\)
24 tres\(^\text{[added from C.D.]}\)
25 Added from A.B.C.D.
26 regni, C.D., with other slight variations.
27 xxvij. . . . Latin\(^\text{[small blank left in B.]}\)
28 Here and elsewhere MSS. frequently have Troya.
29 Troger, libro quadragesimo tertio, ins. A.B.
30 septem, C.D.
31 Æneas, ins. A.B.
kyng of Messene in Tuscan. And in pat bataile Eneas was
dede,\footnote{1} and lefte after hym his sone Ascanius, pat he hadde
i-gete on\footnote{2} Creusa at Troye. \textit{Isidorus, Ethymolog.} Iulus was
Eneas his sone, and heet firste Ascanius by pe name of a
ryuer of Frigia pat so hatte,\footnote{3} and was afterwarde i-cleped
\textit{Ilus}, by pe name of Illus kyng of Troye. \textit{Hugutio, capitulo
Iulus.} Afterward, when pe kyng of Mesens was i-slawe in
a singuler batayle of staworpe men, \\
panne Ascanius was
i-cleped Iulus for his firste spryngynge of berd \footnote{4} is properliche
i-cleped Iulus in Latyn \footnote{5} a name of tweie silables,
\footnote{6} by cause of
metre. \footnote{7} Here take hede pat but pe \textit{trees} of Eneas his
regnynge be acounted wip ynn pe \textit{trees} of kyng Latyn, pe
acountynge of pe storie schal faile. For pe storie seip pat
kyng Latyn reignede two and pritty \textit{tree} ; and specialliche
while Eneas, whan Troye was i-take, come in to Itali, pe fyue
and twenty \textit{trees} of kyng Latyn, as alle storiez telllep. \textit{Trogus,
libro quadragesimo tertio.} Ascanius, Eneas his sone, bygau
to regne among pe Latyns ; and regnede eithe and pritty \textit{tree},
and lefte \footnote{7} pe citee Lauinium, pat his fader Eneas hadde
sontyme i-bulde, and bulde pe citee Alben alonc ypon pe ryuer
\
\footnotesize{\textit{Trevisa.}\footnote{MS. Harl. 2261.}}

\footnotesize{\textit{\footnote{1} slayne, Cx.}\footnote{2} So a. and Cx.; in, MS.}\footnote{3} heet, Cx.\footnote{4} Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{5} Added from a. and Cx.}\footnote{6} Added from a. B. y. ; wanting in}\footnote{7} specialliche lefte, MS. (not a. B. or Cx.)}
gam super ripam Tiberis construixit, quae trecentis anniis caput regni Illius fuit; a qua urbe Latini reges dicti sunt Albani.  

1 Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

2 C.D. omit all reference, probably rightly; A.B. have Entropius only. The reference to Entropius is certainly false; and although Trogus, i.e. Justin (lib. xiii. e. 1), is properly quoted for the preceding sentence, the information here given does not occur there.

3 Ascanius, A.

4 sum] om. B.

5 a, B.

6 sui, ins. B.

7 Latini, B.

8 Hic . . . Silvii] slightly varied, in C.D.


10 Iulus] Hes, A.E.; om. B.

Hic Ascanius 3 fratrem suum 4 Silvium Posthumum ex 5 Lavinia noverca sua, post mortem patris 6 natum, summa pie-tate educavit. Qui ideo dictus est Posthumus, quia post humationem patris natus. Et Silvius dictus est, quia in silva nutritus. A quo postmodum Latinorum 7 reges dicti sunt Silvii. 8 Huc quoque 9 Silvio Posthumo Ascanius postquam regnasset triginta octo anniis regnum reliquit, eo quod filius suus Iulus, 10 a quo familia Juliorum 11 orta est, adhuc tenellae erat etatis, sicut dicit Marianus libro primo. 12

Sampson 13 judicavit Israel xx. anniis; cuius tempore 14 ea congerunt 15 de Graeco Uixe, quae fabule tradunt; quomodo videlicet Seyllam 16 fugerit et Sirenas. De quo dicit Paleaphatus, 17 libro primo Incredibilium, quod Seylla fuit mulier hospites suos spoliare 18 consueta, et Sirenas 19 dicit esse meretrices, 20 quae deceperunt 21 navigantes. 22 Eoque tempore 23 Ægyptiorum 24 Pyrrhus ab Oreste in templo Delphici Apollinis occiditur. 25 Quo etiam 26 tempore quidam tradunt Homerum floruisse. 27
Tibre. Pat cite was hede of pat kyngdom pre hundred 2ere; by pe name of pat citee kynges Latynes were i-cleped kynges Albans, Reges Albani. Eutropius. Pis Ascanius norsched vp ful myndeliche his breower Siluius Posthumus 1 pat was i-bore of his stepdame Lauinia 2 after his fader dep, and was i-cleped Posthumus, for he was i-bore after pat his fader was i-buried; and was i-cleped Siluius, for he was i-norsched in a wode. 3 A woode is silve in Latyn. By his name pe kynges of Latynes were i-cleped Siluies. Ascanius, whanne he hadde i-regned eiñte and pritty 3ere, he lefte pe kyngdom to 4 Siluius Posthumus; for his owne sone Ilus was 3et of tender age, so seip Marianus, libro primo. Of pis Ilus pe mayny 5 pat is i-cleped Familia Iliorum hadde pat name. Sampson was iuge in Israel twenty 3ere. In his tyme byfel pat pe fables telleth of Vlixes 6 of Grecia, how he sleigh Seylla and Sirenes. Perof speked Palephatus 7 libro primo Incredibilum, and seip pat Seylla was a womman pe svede to robe hir gestes, and seip pat Sirenes were hoores pat bygiled men pat seillede on pe see. Also pat tyme Orestes slow Pyrrhus 8 of Egipt in Appolyn Delphicus his temple. Also som tellep pat Homerus was pat

whiche was aduecte to the realme off Latynes by ccc. yere, MS. Harl. MS. 2261. of whom the kynges of Latynes were callede Albani. Eutropius. This Ascanius Norrisched for pite his breower Siluius Posthumus, geten of Lauinia 2 his stappemoder after the dethe of his fader, whiche was callede Posthumus, in that he was borne after the dethe of his fader. He was callede Siluus, for he was norisched in a woode; of whom kynges of Latynes were nameide Siluii afterwarde. To whom Ascanius, after that he hade reigneide xxxivij. [yere], lefte that realme, in that Iulius his son was but of tendre age, as Marianus reheersethe, libro primo. Sampson was gournoure in Israel xx11 yere; in whose tyme those thynges happeide of Vlixes the Greke, after the fables, that he causeide Seylla and Sirenes to flee, of whom Palephatus, libro primo Incredibilium, reheersethe, seyenge that Seylla was a womman wonte to sypole here gestes, and Sirenes to be commune women whiche deceyyved men saylenge, in that Pyrrhus was slyne of Orestes in the temple of Apollo Delphicus in the tymes of men of Egipte. In whiche tyme somme men saye Omerus the poete to hane bene, of the tyme of whom greet

---

1 Posthumus, MS., here and usually (not always) below. A few very slight errors in spelling proper names below have been tacitly corrected.
2 Lauinia, MS. and Cx.
3 Sentence varied in Cx.
4 So Cx.; of, MS.
5 meyne, Cx.
6 So Cx.; Vlixes, MS., as before.
7 Palephatus, MS.; Palephatus, Harl. MS.
8 Pirus, MS.; Pirrus, Cx., Harl. MS.
De Homeri De cujus tempore apud veteres magna dissonantia est; nam quidam centesimo anno, alii centesimo 1 quadragesimo anno, nonnulli centesimo octogesimo anno, alii ducentesimo quadragesimo 2 anno post eversum Trojam fuisse perhibent; quidam 3 ante Trojam eversum 4 fuisse putant. Huc usque liber Judicum annos trecentos 5 sub duodecim judicibus numerat.

CAP. XXVII.

Hely, [etiam de Bruto, et de verum Britannicarum primordiis]. 6

HELY sacerdos judicavit Israel post Sampsonem quadraginta annis, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, et secundum Josephum libro sexto; sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes Hely præsedit populo 7 viginti annis. In cjuis diebus facta fame in terra Israel contigit historia Ruth 8 Moabitidis. Hectoris filii receperunt 9 Ilium, id est Trojam, 10 expulsis posteris Antonoris, opitulante Heleno filio Priami. 11 Latinorum 12 tertius Silvius Posthumus, filius Æneæ et frater 13 Ascanii, ex Lavinia novverca progenitus, 14 cæpit regnare; et regnavit triginta

2 200°, C.D. 10 id est Trojam] om. C.D.
3 div, ins. C.D. 11 Slightly transposed in C.D.
4 captan, C.D. 12 Latinus, Gale.
6 MSS. have Hely only, for title. 14 progenitus] om. C.D.
tyme. But to speke of his tyme, olde men discordēp. For  
som menepl pat he was an hundred 3ere, some an hundred  
3ere and fourty, some an hundred 3ere and foure score, som  
two hundred 3ere and fourty after pat Troye was destroyed, 
and some trwōp pat he was to fore pat Troye was destroyed.²  
Hyderto þe book of Inges, liber Iudicum, acountēp þe  
prehundred 3ere vnder twelwe Inges.

**Capitulum vicesimum septimum. Hely.**

Hely þe preost after Sampson was inge in Israel fourty  
3ere; so seip Isidorus libro quinto, and Iosephus libro sexto;  
but þe Seuenty tellep þat Hely was ouer þe peple twenty 3ere.  
In his dayes fyl a greet³ longer in þe lond of Israel; and þe  
storie of Ruth, pat was of Moab, fyl in his tyme. Hector his  
children took Illyum, þat is Troye, and putte out Antenor  
his ofspringe by helpe of Helenus, Priamus his son. Siluius  
Posthumus, Eneas his sone, and Ascanius his broper, i-gete  
of his stepdame Lauinia, was þe pridde kyng of Latyns, and  
bygan to reigne and reigned nyne and pritty 3ere; in þe  
dissonaunce is hade amonge olde men, for somme men say  
that he was in the c. yere, other in the cxlii yere, and  
mony men in the clxxx., after the takenge of Troye. And  
mony men suppose that Omerus was a fore the takenge of  
Troye. The booke of Iudicum nowmbrethe ccc. yere vn  
to thys tyme, vnder xij. dukes and gouernoures.

**Capitulum vicesimum septimum.**

Ely the preste was gouernoure in Israel, after Sampson,  
xlith yere, after Ysidor, libro quinto, and after Iosephus,  
libro sexto; but after the lxxth interpretatores, Hely was  
gouernoure by xxiiith yere. In the tyme of whom the story  
of Ruth Moabitidis happede, a grete hungre beenge that  
tyme in Israel. The sonnes of Hector recurede and toke  
þe cite of Troye, expelenge the succession of Antenor,  
thro helpe off Helenus son off Priamus. Siluius Posthumus,  
son of Eneas, geten of Lauinia, brother to Ascanius, the  
thyddie kyngy of Latynes, began to reigne; whiche reignede  
xxxth yeres þer. In whiche yere Brutus, son of Siluius,

Gaufridus et Alfridus. Hic igitur Brutus, quia matrem in puerperio et patrem postmodum quindennis occidit, idcirco de Italia pulsus Graeciam adiit;

1 quinque, Gale.  
2 Hoc, C.D.  
3 secundum historicos om. C.D.  
4 Ranulphus] om. C.D.  
5 ills, C. (not D.)  
6 filii om. Gale.  
7 historia quoque, C.D.  
8 Julium, B.  
9 Iulorum, E. (not A.B.D.)  
10 penitus] om. C.D.  
11 igitur, A.D.  
12 Julius, B.  
13 istarum, B.  
11 multum nutat, C.D.  
15 quindennis venando, B.  
16 sit] om. C.D. (having Ascanii fuerit)  
17 Æscaniu, ins. C.D.  
18 vixerit et] om. C.D.  
19 forte, B.  
20 ob hoc] ideo, C.D.  
21 summ, B.  
22 quidem] om. C.D.  
23 venatu, ins. A.B.; venatu ut fertur, ins. C.D.  
24 occiderat, B.
whiche 3ere Brute, Siluius his sone, pat was Ascanius his sone, occupied Britayne, as stories tellep. B. 1 Hit semep pat stories discrede, pat tellep of pis Brute his fader; for pe storie of Britounus seip pat pis Brute was Siluius his sone, [pe whiche Siluius was Ascanius his sone]. 2 But pe storie of Rome seip pat Ascanius gat Iulus, of pe whiche come the mayny, Familia Iuliorum, and makep noon mencion of Siluius. Pan bot 3 pis Iulus hadde tweeie names, and were i-cleped Siluius also, pat 4 oon of pe stories faillep. For me seip pat pis Brute, whan he was fiffene 3ere olde, slow2 his fader at hontynge; and alle stories tellep pat Siluius Posthumus was Eneas his sone, and non3t Ascanius sone, and leued long age 5 afterward vnslawe, and regned also. Panne hit is soop pat pis Siluius Posthumus was no4t Brute his fader, bote yppon caas for pe storie of Rome seip pat Ascanius after Eneas his deth norschede vp tenderliche Siluius Posthumus, perfore he is acounted his fader. Herto I wolde assente wip oute doute, ner pat me redep pat Siluius was i-slawe of his sone Brute. Gaufridus. Pis Brute slowh his moder in his burpe, and his fader afterward an 6 hontynge, whan he was fiftene 3ere olde. Perfore he was i-putte out of Italy, and wente into Greee, and

son of Ascanius, after storyes, began to occupye Britayne. MS. HARL. 2261. 

B. Storyes semo to discrede moche of the fader of Brute. For the storie of Britones seythe Brute to hauene bene the son of Siluius, son to Ascanius. But the story of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to hauene gotten Iulus, makenge no mencion of Siluius: with owte pis Iulus hade ij. names, and [was] calde Siluius, the oon story faylethe. For hit ys seide that this Brute, of xv. yere in age, did sle his fader in huntenge, and Siluius Posthumus, after alle storyes, was the son of Eneas, and not the son of Ascanius, reignege and lyvenge longe after that; but peraunenture that the storie of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to hauene noryshed pro pite Siluius Posthumus after the deth of Eneas, and for that to hauene bene trauede his fader. Whiche thynge y wolde admite, if hit were not rede that Siluius Posthumus was sleyne of Brute his sone. Giraldus. This Brute, whiche did sle his moder in the childenge, and also when he was of xv. yere in age, he did slec his fader in huntenge; wherefore Brute, putte from Ytaly, wente to the londe

1 B. [ added from a. B. γ. (not in Cx.)
2 Added from a. B. γ.
3 if, Cx.
4 he, a. γ. (not B. or Cx.)
5 longe after, a. B. γ.; Cx.
6 at, Cx.
ubi ope Trojanorum Pandrasum regem Graecorum devicit, filiamque regis Pandrasi Innogen desponsavit, Trojanos liberavit; deinde enavigans,\(^3\) responso Dianae accepto, Africam appulit.\(^4\) Inde aris Philenorum,\(^5\) lacu salinarum, flumine Malæ, columnisque Herculis pertransitis, Tyrrhenum æquor apprehendit; ac reperto ibidem Corineo\(^7\); ad Aquitanniam pervenit; ubi Gophario\(^8\) Pictavorum duce devicto, (sed Turno, Bruti nepote, apud urbem Turnip\(^9\) seu Turonensem,\(^10\) de nomine suo dictam, occiso,) prosperis velis insulam Britanniæ apud Totonesium\(^11\) litus in Cornubia tenuit. In qua primus monarclia\(^12\) effectus\(^13\) gigantes incolas\(^14\) destruxit. Insulam a nomine suo Britanniam, sociosque suos Britones vocavit, Cornubiam Corineo tradidit, urbem Trinovantum, quasi Novam Trojam, quæ nunc Londonia,\(^15\) super Thamisim fluvium construxit. Tres filios, Lo- crinum, Cambrum, et Albanactum, progenuit; et, postquam viginti quatuor annis insulam rexisset, decessit. Sicyoniorum\(^16\) reges defecerunt, qui\(^17\) centum lxij. annis regnaverant.\(^18\)

---

\(^1\) ubi om. C.D.
\(^2\) So A.D.; Prandrasum, E.
\(^3\) enavigans] so A.B.; navigans, D.E.
\(^4\) Slightly varied and abbreviated in C.D.
\(^5\) Philenorum, B.
\(^6\) ac] om. C.D.
\(^7\) Corneo, B.; Corrineo, D.
\(^8\) Sophario, A.; Goffario, D.; Gaphario, Gale.
\(^9\) Turnei, B.; Turnew, Gale.
\(^10\) Tureñ, A.; Turonis, D.; Turn, Gale.
\(^11\) Tottenestium, B.
\(^12\) monarchia, C. (not D.)
\(^13\) effectus] om. C.D.
\(^14\) inhabitantes, C.D.
\(^15\) London, Gale.
\(^16\) Schicioniorum, B.; Schicionorum, E.
\(^17\) postquam, E.
\(^18\) post quos succedales constitut sunt, ins. C.D.
here by help of pe Troians he ouercome Pandrasus pe kynge of Greeks, and weded Pandrasus pe kynge's dougther Innoges. Sche ¹ deluyered pe Troians, and seillede pennes, and hadde aanswere of pe goddes, and londede in Affrica. Þan he passede pe aunteres ² of Philenes, pe lake þat hatte Lacus Salinarum, pe salt lake, þe ryuer þat hatte ³ Malue, and Hereules his pilers, and com in to þe see Tyren, and fonde þere Coriniius,⁴ and wente into Gyan, and ouercome þere Gopharnys,⁵ duke of Peytow. And Turnus, Brute his neuew, was i-slave at a citee þat heet Turnupt ⁶ ower Taroun ⁷ by his owne name. And panne Brute hadde good wynde, and seilled into Britayne, and helde Breitanye at pe clif of Totenes in Cornewayle, and was first kynge of Breteyne al hoole, and destroyed þe geantes þat wonede þerynne; and cephed pe ilond Breitanye by his owne name, and cephed his felawes Britoums, and bytake ⁸ Cornewylye to Cor[î]iueus, and bulde a citee, and cephed hit Trinouantum, as it were Newe Troye. Þat citee nowe hatte Londoun, and is vppon Themise.⁹ Brut gat þre sones, Locri-nus, Camber, and Albanactus; and deyde whan he hadde i-regned foure and twenty þere in þe ilond. Þe kynge of Sciciions ¹⁰ failléde whan pey hadde i-regned an hundred þere

of Greece, ouercommenge Pandrasus, kynge of hit, thro the helpe of the Troines, and did wedde Ymogen his dougther, and deluyerede the Troiannes; whiche saylenghe from þat cunte, hauenge an aanswere of Diana, londede at Affrike. After that he entrede in to the see of Tirus, whiche fyndenge there Corineus, brou^hte hym in his companye to Acquitanneye; whiche ouercommenge Gephyrus, the duke of Pictaues, and Turnus, the son of the suster to Brute, dedde, at Turnip, or elles Tiroune, callee after his name, come to Britayne, to Totenes in Coralwaiye. In whom he, occupienghe the monachye, destroyede gigantes that inhabite that cunte, namenge that yle Bruteyne, and his felawes Britones; þiflenge to Corinicus Cornewaiye; made a cite on the water of Thamys, callege hit Urb Trinouantum, as Newe Troye, callee now London. Whiche gate iij. childer, Locri[nus], Camber, and Albanactus, dieinghe after that he hadde gounerne that yle xxiiij. yere. The kynge of Scitia faylde, whiche hadde reigne de a clxij. yere; after that prestes ¹ He, a. β. Cx., correctly. ² aucters, Cx.; but auters (ullars) is doubtless the true reading, and so β. γ. ³ þat hatte] om. a. β. γ. ⁴ Corneus, Cx. ⁵ Gopharnys, Cx. ⁶ Turnip, a. β. γ. ⁷ Taroun, a. (Cx. has TARON othwer Turon). ⁸ bytook, a. ⁹ Tense, a. ¹⁰ Read Sicyon.
Samuel post mortem Hely judicavit Israel annis duodecim, secundum Josephum libro octavo; cum tamen Scriptura de hoc taceat. A quo tempora prophetarum incipiunt; cujus anno tertio David natus est. Iste Samuel judex et propheta primus instituit cuneos et conventus psallentium religiosorum; qui etiam dicebantur psallere, id est, jugiter Deum laudare. Postmodum sub Saule judicavit annis octodecim. Locrinus, filius Bruti, in Britannia regnat.

Anno Abr. 910. Anno Samuel 1.

Anno Abr. 911. Anno Samuel 2.

nascitur, C.D.

Petrus, ins. A.B.D.

judex et propheta] om. A.B.C.D.

primo, B.

cuneos et] om. A.B.C.D.

prophetae, A.B.C.D.

Deum laudare] laudabant, C.D.

Post hoc. This sentence transposed before the preceding one in C.D.

filius] primogenitus, A.C.D.

Locrinus primogenitus Bruti, B., Gale.

hoc anno, ins. C.D.

scilicet] om. C.D.

Humbrum, Gale; usque flumen

Humbrum, B.

insulae, ins. A.B.

a, ins. C.D., Gale.

appellavit, C.D.

* appellavit Cambriam, D.
pre score and twayne. Samuel after Hely was iuge in Israel twelfe 3ere; so seip Iosephus, libro octavo, nopeles pe Skripture spekep nonzi t perof. From his tyme bygan pe tymes of prophetes, tempora prophetarum. [And] 1 in his pridde 2ere Dauid was i-bore. Petrus. Pis Samuel ordeyned first companye of clerkes and queres forto sygne; and pan me seide pat pey prophecd, pat is to menyage, pei worschipped God bysiliche. Afterward Samuel was iuge in Israel vnder Saul eijtene 3ere. Locrinus, Brute his eldest sone, bygan to reigne as it were vppon pe sou? see to pe ryuer of Homber, 2 and cleped pat partye of pe ilond Loegria, pat is Engelond, as it is i-seide in pe firste book in pe chapitre of Briteyne. But Albanactus was i-slave, and Camber deide; and Locrinus, after pat pey 3 hadde i-regned twenty 3ere, was i-slave also in [a] 4 batayle pat his wif Guendolena 3af hym, by cause of a strompet pat heet Estrilda. And Guendolena reigned aftir hire honsbonde fiftene 3ere.

were made iugges and gouernoures. Samuel was gouernoure MS. HARL. in Israel xij. yere after the dethe of Ely, after Iosephus libero octavo; but the story dothe not expresse that from whom the tymes of prophetes began, in the thrtyde yere of whom kyng Dauid was borne. Petrus. This Samuel ordeyned conuntes of religious men, whiche were seide also to prophhecy, that is, to lawde Godde. Locrinus, the firste son of Brute, began to reigne as on the thrtyde parte of Briteyne, from the sowthe see of hit vn to the water of Humbre, whiche parte he callede Loegria, after his name. Albanactus his brother slyene, and Camber the thrtyde brother dedde, Locrinus was slyene in batelle after the xx4 yere of his reigne, whiche batelle Guendolenas his wife move de for an hoore callede Estrilda, whiche reigne de after her hownsebonde xv. yere.

1 Added from a. b. &. and Cx.
2 Humber, a.
3 he, a.
4 Added from a. b. &. (not in Cx.)
Saul. [Plura de Graecia, item de Britannia. Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.] ¹

Saul de tribu Benjamin, primus rex Hebraeorum, secundum Josephum regnavit viginti annis; de quibus Sacra ² Scriptura tacet. Petrus, capitulo quinto.³ Nam Saul, vivente Samuеле,⁴ regnavit octodecim annis, et post mortem ejus ⁵ duobus annis. ⁶ Latinorum quartus Æneas Silvius, filius Posthumi, coepit regnare; et regnavit xxxi.⁷ annis. Ranulphus. Secundum alius quas historias frater Posthumi Latinus Silvius ponitur quartus; sed hoc in ⁸ loco iste Æneas ponitur quintus.⁹

Atheniensium dux septimusdecimus Codrus, Melanthi filius, coepit regnare, et regnavit xxi. annis; post cujus mortem defecerunt reges Atheniensium ¹⁰. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.¹¹ ¹² Rebellantibus Peloponnesiensibus ¹³ contra Athenienses responsum est per oraculum, quod illi forent victores quorum dux occideretur; unde ¹⁴ militibus ante omnia indica est Codri ¹⁵ regis custodia. Rex tamen Codrus, assumpto pauperis habito, armamenta ¹⁶ collo gerens hostium ingreditur; ubi in turba, jurgio provocato a militi quem facie vulneraverat, occiditur.¹⁷ Quo cognito Dorienses ¹⁸ absque bello discedunt,¹⁹ Athenienses

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. Saul.

SAUL of ye lynage of Beniamyn was ye firste kyng of Hebrewes, and reigned twenty three yeares; so saith Iosephus. Of ye which three yeares ye Scripture spekep not. Petrus. For Saul reigne wythete three yeares while Samuel lyuede, and two yeares after his death. Ye fourpe kyng of Latyns, Eneas Siluius, was Posthuminus his son, and bygane to reigne and reigned oon and pritty three. In som stories Posthumus his brother, Latinus Silius,1 is i-sette ye fourpe, and2 pis Eneas is i-sette ye fift. But in pis place pis Eneas schal be sette ye fourpe. Ye seuentepe duke of Athene, Codrus, Melanthus3 his son, bygane to reigne, and reigned oon and twenty three. After his death kynges of Athene failede. Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo. Ye Peloponese, men of Thessalia, weren rebel a2enst men of Athene. Pame was answere i-three of4 pe goddes, pat in wherpe side ye duke were i-slawe, pat side schulde haue pe maistrye. Perfore pe knyhte was i-charged ouer al ping to take good kepe of kyng Codrus. Nopheles Codrus took a pore manis eloipinge and a burpen of fagettes on his nekke, and entrede in to ye strengte of his enemies. And pere was strif arced amouge pe pele; and a knyhte slow hym, pat he hadde raper i-wounded wip an hook. Whan pat was i-knewe pe Doreyns5 wente away wip oute

Capitulum vicesimum octavum.

SAUL, of the tribe of Beniamyn, firste kyng off men of Hebraewes, reigneved xxviij. yeares, after Iosephus, whom Holy Scripture expresseth the not. Petrus. For, Samuel lyuede, Saul reigneved xvij. yeares, and ij. yeares after his death. Eneas Siluius, the son of Siluius Posthumus, the iiij. the kyng of Latynes, began to reigne, which reigneved xxxiij. yeares. Codrus, the son of Melanthus,3 the xvij. the duke of Athenes, began to reigne, which reigneved xxxiij. yeares, after the death of whom kynges of Athenes failede. Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 14. Men of Peloponese byynge rebellious ageyne men of Athenes, an answere was 3ifin that theke perte scholde haue pe victory, the gouernoure of whom scholde be sleyne; wherefore the knyhtes were commandede that thei scholde not sleye kyng Codrus in eny wyse. Neuertheless kyng Codrus, clothenge hym in a vile habite, berenge as kyttinges of trees in his nekke, come amonge the companyes of his enmyes, where, a striple movede, Codrus was sleyne of a knyhte whom he hede woundede with a sythe. Whiche thynge ye-knowne, men callede Doriens wente from batelle, and men off Athenes

1 Siluius, MS. (not Cx.) 2 So a. and Cx.; in, MS. 3 Melanthus, MSS. 4 So a, B, 7; fo, MS. 5 that coreus, Cx.
liberantur. Maluit enim Cordus mori dummodo vin-
crent sui, quam vivere suis superatis. Post cujus mortem apud Athenas res publica per magistratus diu administrata est; solaque libido dominantium pro lege erat; quosque Solon, insignis legum conditor, in ducem eligeretur.

Maddan, filius Locrini et Guendolenæ, regnavit apud Britannos quadraginta annis, genuitque Mem-
pricium et Mauulum.

Amazones invadunt Asiam.

Saul cum filiis suis occiditur in Monte Gelboe.

Et sic terminatur tertia aetas seculi ab ortu Abrahæ usque ad regnum David; habens annos, secundum Isi-
dorum, nongentos quadraginta octo, per generationes quatuordecim; sed secundum utramque editionem habet annos nongentos quadraginta duos. Ranulphus. Hae diversitas emergit ex hoc, quod Isidorus dicit Samuelem et Saulem præfuisse populo Israel quadraginta annis; cum tamen Josephus, libro octavo, et Magister in historiis dicant Samuelem præfuisse duodecim annis solum, et post illum Saulem regnassequi viginti annis.

1 dum, C.D.
2 apud Athenas] om. C.D.
3 usque, B.
4 So B.; Salus, A.C.D.E.
5 judiceum, B.
6 So A,B.D., Gale; Mandan, E.
7 Gevaldene, A.
8 apud Britones, A.; in Britanniam, C.D.
9 suis] om. C.D.
10 quintu libro, ins. A.B.D.
bataile, and þe Athenes were delyuered. Codrus were leuered
deye and his men haue þe maistrie, þan lyue and his men be
ouercome. After his deep þe commounalty of Athenæ was
governed by maistres. For þere was no lawe bot likynge of
lordeschippe, forto þat Solon \(^1\) þe noble makere of lawes was
tyngge, iuger, yere, the. Maddan, Loquimis his sone, on Guendolena \(^3\)
i-gete, regnedde fowrty þere among þe Britouns, and gat Mem-
pricius and Maulus. þe Amazones werreþ in Asia. Saul
and his children beþe i-slawe in þe hille, Mont Gelboe. And
so endeþ þe priddle age of þe world from þe burþe of Abraham
to þe kynldom of Dauid. Þisidorus libro quinto seþ þat the
priddle age of þe world conteyneþ nyne honderd þere and
two \(^4\) and fourty by fourtene generaçions. But eþer trans-
lacione seþ þat þe priddle age of þe world conteyneþ nyne
honderd þere and two and fourty. þis dyuersite bifalleþ
for Þisidorus seþ þat Samuel and Saul ruleþe þe peple fourty
þere; noþeles Iosephus, libro octavo, and þe Maister of Stories
telleþ \(^5\) þat Samuel ruleþe þe peple allone twelue þere, and
after hym Saul regnedde twenty þere.

were delyueredde. For Codrus wy llede rather to dyc, that MS. HARL.
his subiectes myȝte be victores, then for to lyve his sub-
jectes oppressede. After the deth of whom eny man
reginede there after his pleasure, vn tille that Solon, \(^1\) the
nowble man and maker of theire lawes, was electe in to
theire gouernoure. Maddan, the son of Loquimis, reginede
on the Britones xl\(^{*}\) yere, whiche gat Mempricius and
Maulus. The Amazones entrede in to Asia. Saul
was sleyn with his sonnes in the hilles of Gelboe. And so
the thrylde age off the worlde is terminate, for \(^6\) the byrth
de Abraham vn to the reigne of kyng Dauid, hauenge afer
YSidor, libro 5\(^{o}\), ix\(^{c}\) yere and xlviij., by xiiij. genera-
ciones, and after eþer ix\(^{c}\). xlij. yere. þis dyuersite of
yeres may be cause of that thynge, that Þisidorus seythe
Samuel and Saul to haue rewlede the peple of Israel xlii
yere. But Iosephus seythe, libro octavo, and the Maister
of stories, Samuel to haue ben gouernoure in Israel oonly
xiiij. yere, and Saul to haue reginede after hym xxii
yere.

\(^{1}\) Salou, MSS. and Cx.  \(^{4}\) csyte, a., Cx.
\(^{2}\) So a.; inges, MS.; was chosen  \(^{5}\) acorden, Cx.
inynge, Cx.  \(^{6}\) So Harl. MS.; probably a
\(^{3}\) So Cx.; Guendolona, MS. clerical error for fro.

END OF VOL. II.